Academy Stars 1

SECOND EDITION

Teacher's Book
+ access to App

Dave Tucker

macmillan education

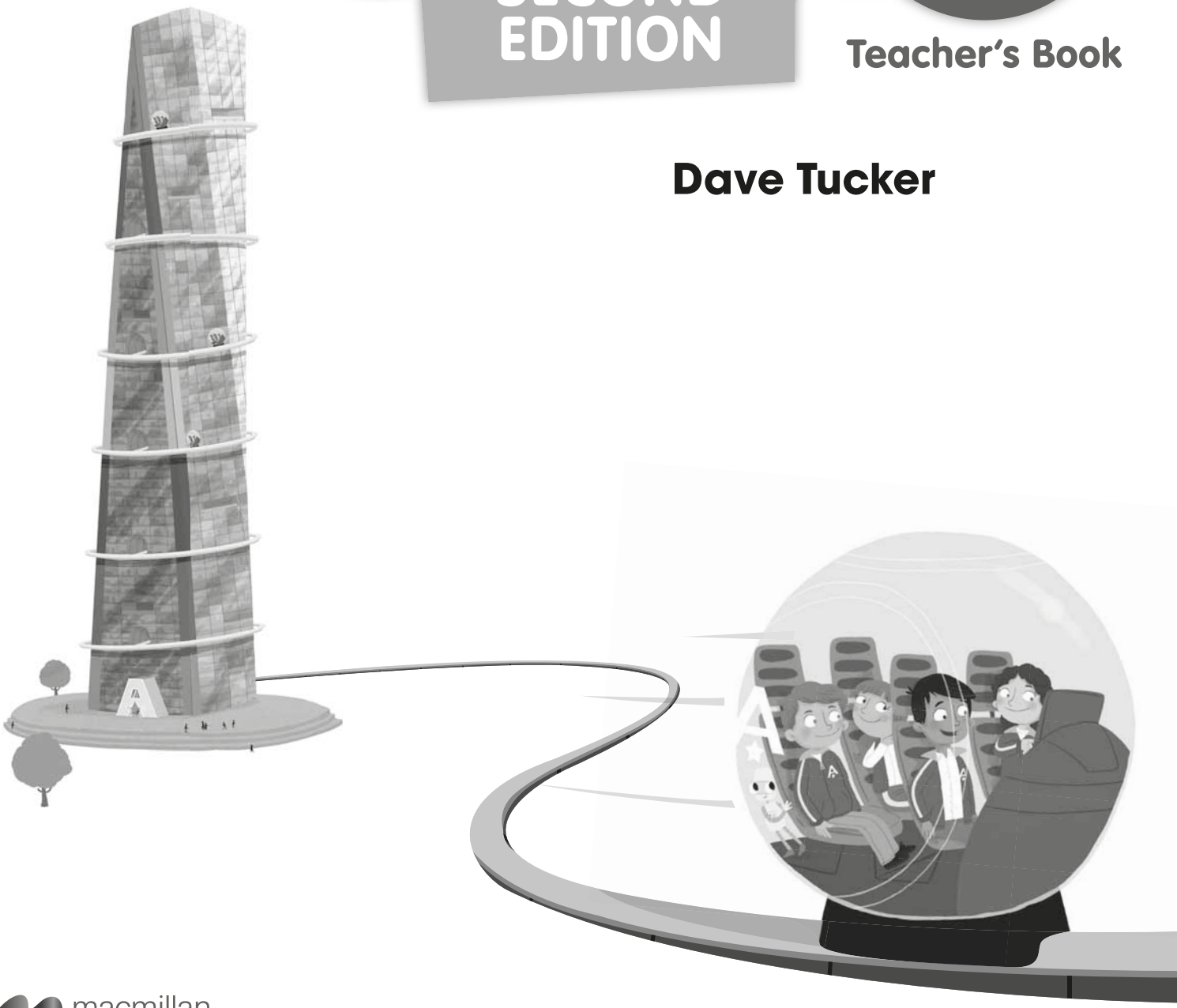
App

Academy Stars 1

SECOND EDITION

Teacher's Book

Dave Tucker



macmillan education

Macmillan Education Limited
4 Crinan Street
London N1 9XW

Companies and representatives throughout the world

Academy Stars Second Edition Level 1 Teacher's Book ISBN 978-1-380-09993-8

Academy Stars Second Edition Level 1 Teacher's Book with App Pack ISBN 978-1-035-10004-0

Text, design and illustration © Macmillan Education Limited 2024
Written by Dave Tucker

The author has asserted their right to be identified as the author of this work in accordance with the Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988.

This edition published 2024
First edition entitled *Academy Stars Level 1 Teacher's Book* published 2017 by Macmillan Education Limited

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise, without the prior written permission of the publishers.

Teacher's Book credits:
Original design by Stefan Hollıland, Well Nice Ltd.
Design and page make up by Composure

Cover design concept by Macmillan Education Ltd, with contributions by Darío Pérez Catalán
Cover design by Composure

Pupil's Book credits:
Text © Kathryn Harper and Gabrielle Pritchard 2024
Design and illustration © Macmillan Education Limited 2024

The authors have asserted their right to be identified as the authors of this work in accordance with the Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988.

Graphic Grammar™ belongs to Steve Elsworth and Jim Rose.



Full acknowledgements for illustrations and photographs in the facsimile pages can be found in the Academy Stars Second Edition Level 1 Pupil's Book ISBN 978-1-380-09947-1.

Workbook credits:
Text, design and illustration © Macmillan Education Limited 2024
Written by Sue Clarke with Emma Szlachta

The author has asserted their right to be identified as the author of this work in accordance with the Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988.

Graphic Grammar™ belongs to Steve Elsworth and Jim Rose.



Full acknowledgements for illustrations and photographs in the facsimile pages can be found in the Academy Stars Second Edition Level 1 Workbook ISBN 978-1-380-09996-9.

SDG logo and SDG icons from https://www.un.org/sustainabledevelopment/, Copyright © 2024 United Nations.

Used with the permission of the United Nations. The content of this publication has not been approved by the United Nations and does not reflect the views of the United Nations or its officials or Member States.

These materials may contain links for third party websites. We have no control over, and are not responsible for, the contents of such third party websites. Please use care when accessing them.

The inclusion of any specific companies, commercial products, trade names or otherwise does not constitute or imply its endorsement or recommendation by Macmillan Education Limited.

Printed and bound in TBC
2028 2027 2026 2025 2024
10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

Contents

Scope and sequence pp4–5
Introduction to Academy Stars Second Edition p6
- Components overview p7
- Teaching with the Pupil's Book and Workbook pp8–12
- Understanding the Teacher's Book p13
- Games bank pp14–15

Teacher's notes

	Unit	
	Welcome	pp16–21
1	My funny friends	pp22–37
2	New for school	pp38–53
	Review 1 and Cambridge Exams practice	pp54–55
3	This is my family	pp56–71
	Reading time 1	pp72–74
	Think about it!	p75
4	Fantastic feelings	pp76–91
	Review 2 and Cambridge Exams practice	pp92–93
5	I can do it!	pp94–109
	Reading time 2	pp110–112
	Think about it!	p113
6	Let's play today!	pp114–129
	Review 3 and Cambridge Exams practice	pp130–131
7	Long legs, short legs	pp132–147
	Reading time 3	pp148–150
	Think about it!	p151
8	Old and new clothes	pp152–167
	Review 4 and Cambridge Exams practice	pp168–169
9	Brilliant bedrooms	pp170–185
	Reading time 4	pp186–188
	Think about it!	p189
10	Fabulous food	pp190–205
	Review 5 and Cambridge Exams practice	pp206–207

Answer keys: Workbook Mid-year and End-of-year reviews p 208

Scope and sequence

	Unit	Vocabulary	Grammar	Language in use
	Welcome p4	Alphabet words Colours Numbers one to ten		
1	**My funny friends** p8	People Describing words	***to be:*** *I'm Beth. He's tall. She's six.*	**Question words: *What / How old...?*** *What's your name? How old are you?* ***to be* answers:** *I'm seven.*
2	**New for school** p18	Classroom objects	***a / an:*** *It's a pen. It's an umbrella.*	***to be* questions and short answers:** *Is it blue? Yes, it is. No, it isn't.*
	Review 1 Cambridge Exams practice: Pre A1 Starters: Reading and Writing Part 3; Speaking Part 2			
3	**This is my family** p30	Family members	***this / that; my / your:*** *This is my grandma. That's your grandma.*	***Who's this / that?; his / her:*** *Her name is Sally. That's his tiger.*
	Reading time 1: My school		**Think about it! 1:** Make a robot	
4	**Fantastic feelings** p44	Feelings adjectives	***to be* affirmative and negative:** *She's happy. She isn't happy.*	***to be* questions and short answers:** *Are you hungry? Yes, I am. No, I'm not.*
	Review 2 Cambridge Exams practice: Pre A1 Starters: Listening Part 2; Reading and Writing Part 1			
5	**I can do it!** p56	Action verbs	***can / can't* for ability:** *They can swim. They can't sing.*	***can* questions and short answers:** *Can you see the sun? Yes, I can. No, I can't.*
	Reading time 2: The King of the Forest		**Think about it! 2:** Make a graph	
6	**Let's play today!** p70	Play things	**Prepositions of place:** *It's on the seesaw. It's next to the swing.*	***Where's / Where are ... ?; It's / They're ... :*** *Where are the paintbrushes? They're in the blue box. Where's the orange paint? It's next to the pencils.*
	Review 3 Cambridge Exams practice: Pre A1 Starters: Listening Part 4; Speaking Part 1			
7	**Long legs, short legs** p82	Parts of the body Adjectives	***have got* affirmative and negative:** *I've got two legs. They haven't got ears.*	***have got* questions and short answers:** *Have you got long hair? Yes, I have. No, I haven't.*
	Reading time 3: Little Red Riding Hood		**Think about it! 3:** Categorise animals	
8	**Old and new clothes** p96	Clothes	***have got* affirmative and negative:** *He's got a hat. She hasn't got a hat..*	**Present continuous questions and answers:** *What are you wearing? I'm wearing a white shirt.*
	Review 4 Cambridge Exams practice: Pre A1 Starters: Reading and Writing Part 2; Speaking Part 4			
9	**Brilliant bedrooms** p108	Furniture	***there is / there are:*** *There's one bed. There are two beds.*	***have got* questions and short answers:** *Has he got a big bed? Yes, he has. No, he hasn't.*
	Reading time 4: Where's George?		**Think about it! 4:** Design a perfect bedroom	
10	**Fabulous food** p122	Food	**Present simple affirmative and negative:** *I like pears. I don't like carrots.*	***these / those:*** *These are coconuts. Those are melons.*
	Review 5 Cambridge Exams practice: Pre A1 Starters: Reading and Writing Part 3; Speaking Part 3			

Reading	Listening	Speaking	Writing	Phonics and Learning skills
				Review initial letter sounds
An information text Read for gist	Use pictures to help understanding	Greet people	An information card Capital letters	short ***a*** Capital letters
A short play Read for detail	Listen for key words	Give and receive a present	A puzzle card Full stops	short ***e*** Remember new words
A story Read for detail	Listen for detail	Ask about family members	A dialogue about a person Question marks	short ***i*** Write new words
A realistic story Find key facts	Activate prior knowledge	Support a friend	A story Question marks and full stops	short ***o*** Regular plurals
An information text Infer information from a text	Listen for key information	Encourage your friends	An email *and* to join two ideas	short ***u*** Read difficult words
An information text Use photos to help understanding	Listen for sequence	Ask for something	A quiz Contractions	***sh*** Remember new words
A poem Read for gist	Listen for key words	Describe people	A poem Rhyming words	***ch*** Rhyming words
An information text Find key facts	Activate prior knowledge	Ask about the weather	A description Order of adjectives	***th*** Make a class dictionary
An information text Use pictures to understand vocabulary	Listen for attitude	Agree / Disagree with someone	An email Start and end an email	***ck*** Nouns
A funny story Understand opinions	Listen for sequence	Describe food	A food blog *but* to join two different ideas	***th*** Irregular plurals

Academy Stars Second Edition is an accessible and stimulating seven-level course in British English designed to promote academic excellence and effective communication. It delivers a strong grammar and skills syllabus, while developing fluency in real-world interactions. Central to the course is a range of features that deliver excellence in learning and give children a sense of achievement and self-development.

1 Learning skills

A key strength of *Academy Stars Second Edition* is the unique importance it gives to **learning skills**. Recognised as highly transferable skills that children can apply to other subjects and throughout their life, these are developed in the following ways:

- **Critical thinking** tasks are embedded throughout, challenging children to analyse and infer, draw conclusions, express opinions and give a personal response to texts.
- The features **Learning to learn** and **Learning about language** help children identify patterns and acquire strategies that will make them more effective and independent learners.
- Regular **Think about it!** tasks activate critical thinking skills, with a particular emphasis on decision-making, problem solving and collaborative working.
- Regular **self-evaluation** activities in the Workbook encourage children to identify their learning strengths and take responsibility for their own learning.

2 Learning outcomes

A motivational **Be a star!** feature provides tangible lesson outcomes to show children what they can do with the language and skills they have learnt. It promotes a strong sense of progression and achievement, which motivates children to go further.

3 Graphic Grammar

An innovative approach to **grammar** helps children engage with language in a motivating and effective way. Structures are presented visually using appealing graphics and colour-coded building blocks to highlight and reinforce patterns. Beautiful animations bring language to life through memorable presentations, and clarify meaning, use and form. The **new Extra Stars: Grammar booster** section in the Pupil's Book gives children further practice opportunities.

4 Skills development

A step-by-step approach to each of the four skills ensures the effective development of key skills and strategies. Each Reading, Writing and Listening lesson practises a specific strategy to give children the tools they need to process or produce a variety of text types. A suite of completely **new reading texts** gives children an opportunity to work with a variety of text types, ranging from stories through blogs to articles. A **brand new listening strand in the Workbook** further supports the development of the listening skills, with emphasis on external exams preparation. Dedicated Speaking lessons in the Pupil's Book develop fluency in functional interactions and build confidence in presentation skills.

5 Literacy

Academy Stars Second Edition also develops **extensive reading skills** through beautifully illustrated Reading time sections. These lessons promote a life-long love of reading and build confidence in processing longer texts. Children are encouraged to analyse and interpret texts and give a personal response to them. The illustrations help develop visual literacy and engaging animations bring each story to life.

6 Assessment

Recognising the increasing popularity of external exams, *Academy Stars Second Edition* is mapped to the latest **Cambridge English Qualifications** tests for young learners, and includes regular test-style activities the **new Cambridge Exams practice lessons** in the Pupil's Book and throughout the Workbook. A comprehensive assessment pack offers a test builder, ready-to-go tests and Cambridge English sample tests to measure children's progress and achievement throughout the course.

ADVANCING FUTURES

Education for Sustainable Development and Citizenship

Macmillan Education's ESDC Program helps children become engaged global citizens. It ties classroom practice to Global Citizenship Education theory, incorporates an inclusive approach to language learning, and in most units references the UN Sustainable Development Goals (SDGs).

In *Academy Stars Second Edition*, children are encouraged to see themselves as valued members of local and global communities. They learn to think critically about how their actions affect the world around them, from caring for the environment to recognising the value of individual differences. Children are gently encouraged, with the support of the teacher, to express their own ideas and solutions for making the world a better place.

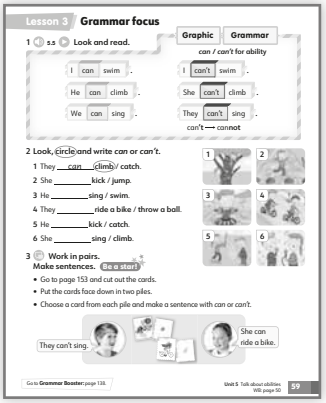
SUSTAINABLE DEVELOPMENT GOALS

Components overview

Academy Stars Second Edition presents a fully **integrated learning experience**, with print and digital components seamlessly linked to enable effective lesson planning and smooth classroom management.

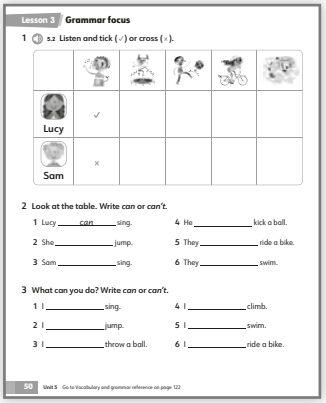
For the pupil

Pupil's Book



Consists of a Welcome unit, 10 core units, 4 **Reading time** spreads and 5 Review and **Cambridge Exams practice sections, Grammar booster and Communicative activities.** Each core unit contains eight lessons featuring clear vocabulary presentation and practice, an engaging reading text, a **Graphic Grammar** presentation and practice, a language in use grammar presentation and practice, sounds and spellings practice, contextualised listening and speaking activities, and guided writing practice.

Workbook



Provides further practice and reinforcement of key language from the Pupil's Book. Additional test-style listening, reading and writing practice further prepares children for the **Cambridge English Pre A1 Starters tests**. The Workbook includes a mid-year and end-of-year review to check progress at key points. A **Vocabulary and grammar reference** section presents vocabulary in a Picture dictionary and reinforces the grammar from the Pupil's Book whilst a **What I can do!** section provides children with the opportunity for self-evaluation.

Pupil's App on Navio

The Pupil's App allows children to explore Navio's immersive 3D worlds. They complete game-based activities designed to practise and review the language and content learnt in class. As they do so, they earn rewards, points and badges. The Pupil's App tracks children's progress so the teacher can see how they are doing and provide extra support where it is needed. The App also includes all the songs, stories, animations and videos from the course so that children can review them at home and share them with their family.

Digital Pupil's Book, Digital Workbook

The digital version of the books with audio and video embedded allows children more access to their materials outside the classroom.

Pupil's Resource Centre

- The **Pupil's Resource Centre (PB)** provides easy access to all the Pupil's Book audio and video files, so children can listen and watch in their own time. There is also a **Parents' Guide** which introduces the course and provides advice on how parents can support their child in home-learning environment.
- The **Pupil's Resource Centre (WB)** provides easy access to all the Workbook audio files.

For the teacher

Teacher's Book

Provides clear and concise support for lesson planning and teaching. User-friendly teaching notes are available for each lesson of the Pupil's Book with on-the-page audioscripts and answer keys. The **Teaching star!** boxes provide a professional development in action strand through useful classroom tips, practical activities and support for teachers. For the Workbook, there are helpful teaching notes for exams practice activities and writing lessons, as well as answer keys.

Videos

There are three types of video: a **Graphic Grammar** animated video which brings the language to life through a memorable presentation; a **Language in use** real-world video which shows real children acting out the dialogue; and an animated story video that brings to life the **Reading time** stories.

Teacher's App

The Teacher's App contains accessible and interactive digital resources to help teachers plan and deliver their lessons, while also increasing children's participation and engagement. The Teacher's App contains:

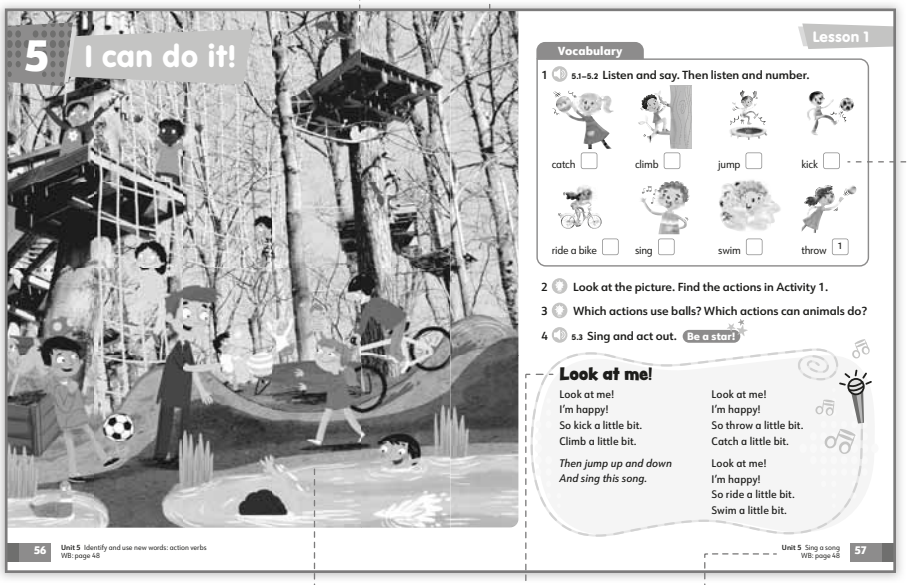
- **Classroom Presentation Kit:** This includes the **Digital Pupil's Book** and **Digital Activity Book**. The digital version of the books is a page-by-page representation of the printed versions and includes videos and audio, plus fun interactive activities and digital flashcard games.
- **Progress Tracker:** Accessed through the Classroom Presentation Kit, this helps teachers track and monitor progress of a whole class or individual child. Teachers can also use the **Classroom Management tool** to award points for good behaviour or success in class.
- **Test Generator:** Also accessed through the Classroom Presentation Kit. Teachers can choose to download ready-made tests or to make their own.
- **Teacher's Resource Centre:** Offers access to supplementary materials and resources available for teachers to download and print if needed. It includes:
    - **Methodology handbook** and **Graphic Grammar reference**
    - **Assessment pack:** placement, unit, mid-year and end-of-year tests as well as relevant **Cambridge English** practice tests. All tests cover the four skills, with Listening, Reading and Writing, and Speaking
    - **Printable worksheets**
    - **Printable flashcards**
    - **Lesson support materials:** all the course video, animation and audio files

Lesson 1: Vocabulary

A striking visual introduces the unit topic and engages children.

New vocabulary is contextualised.

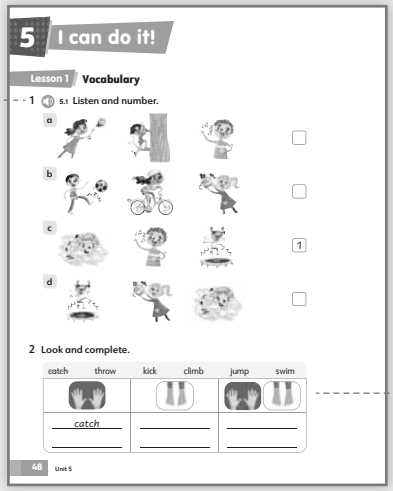
Carefully staged presentation of key unit vocabulary.



Activities develop **critical thinking** and **visual literacy**.

Lesson aims and outcomes are given at the bottom of each page.

A lively song activates new vocabulary and makes it more memorable.

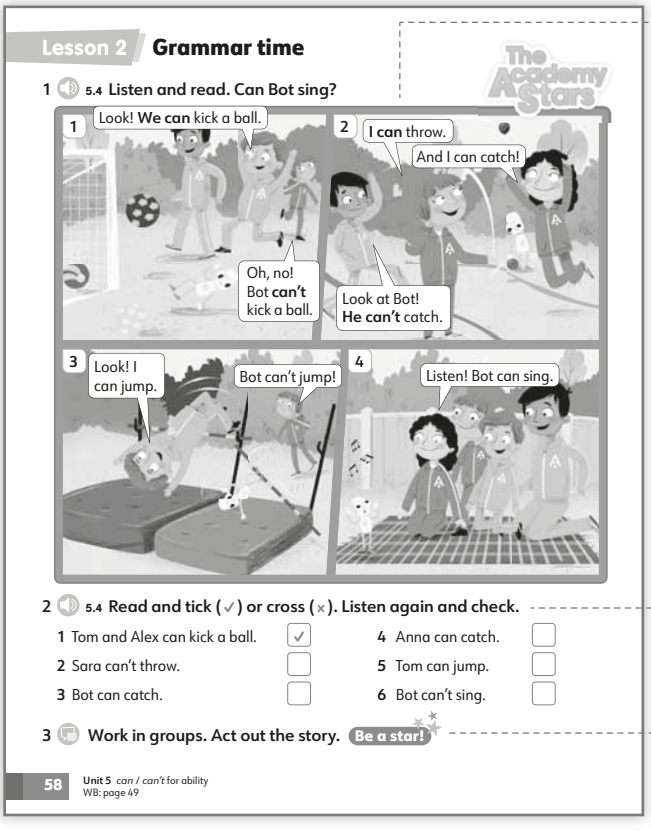


Activities provide carefully staged practice of key vocabulary.

Categorising activities develop **critical thinking** and encourage **learner autonomy**.

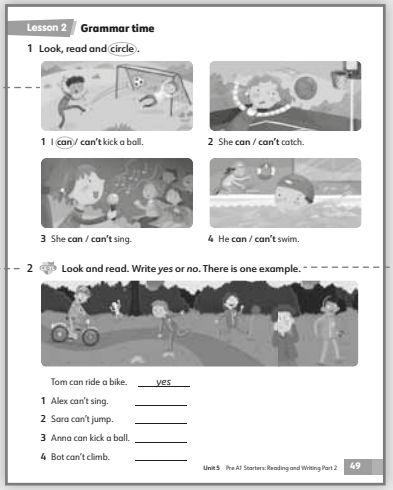
Lesson 2: Grammar time

An appealing story strip, supported by audio, presents new grammar clearly and naturally.



A receptive activity checks understanding of meaning and concept.

A collaborative activity encourages children to produce the new language in a supported way.

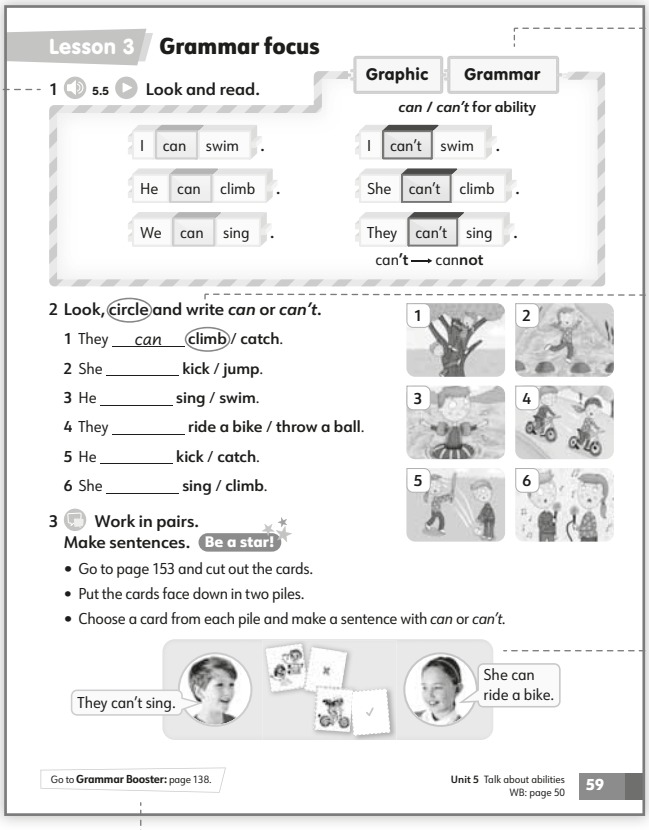


Receptive activities reinforce meaning and concept of the new grammar.

Exam-style activities practice tasks from the **Cambridge English Pre A1 Starters** tests.

Lesson 3: Grammar focus

Supporting animations present grammar and focus on form in an engaging and memorable way (available in the **Presentation Kit** and on the **Pupil's Resource Centre**).

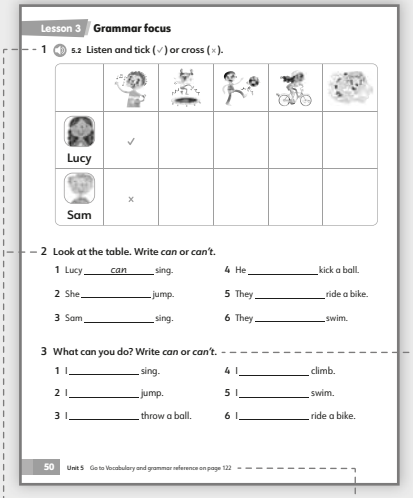


A visually appealing **Graphic Grammar** box highlights and clarifies form using a unique colour coding system.

A written activity provides controlled productive practice.

Children practise the new language in a communicative activity. The Communicative games section at the back of their book provides cut-out cards and other activity essentials.

Children are directed to the **Grammar booster** for further practice.



Carefully staged activities provide further practice and consolidation of target grammar.

Children are directed to the **Vocabulary and grammar reference** for further support.

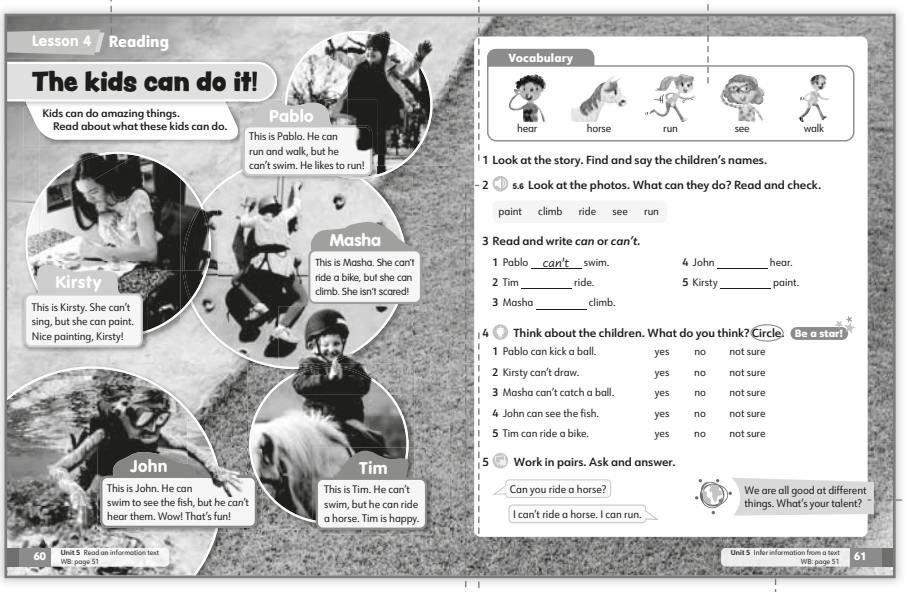
A personalisation activity enables children to relate language to their own lives.

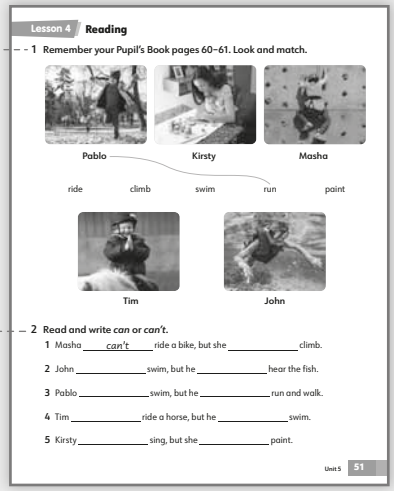
Lesson 4: Reading

A range of engaging fiction and non-fiction texts develop reading skills and enjoyment of reading.

A pre-reading task develops prediction skills to help understanding.

Additional vocabulary is contextualised in the reading text.





Further activities reinforce and check children's understanding of the reading text and encourage them to use key language.

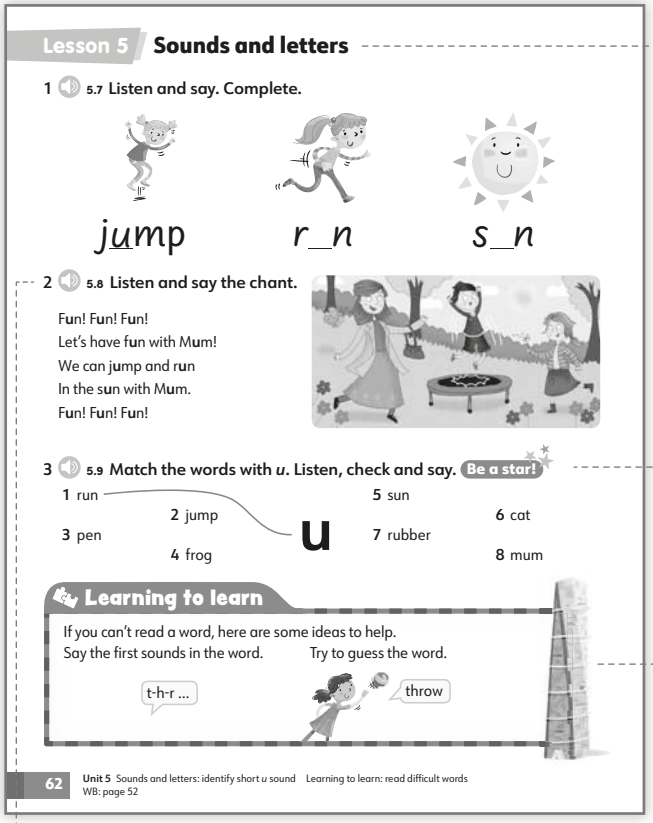
While reading activities check comprehension.

Critical thinking activities encourage children to give a personal response to the text and develop inferential skills.

A focus on a strategy in each unit develops key reading skills.

ESDC questions encourage children to reflect on real-life issues in their community and the world.

Lesson 5: Sounds and letters



Lesson 5 **Sounds and letters**

1 5.7 Listen and say. Complete.

jump r_n s_n

2 5.8 Listen and say the chant.

Fun! Fun! Fun!
Let's have fun with Mum!
We can jump and run
In the sun with Mum.
Fun! Fun! Fun!

3 5.9 Match the words with *u*. Listen, check and say. Be a star!

1 run 2 jump 3 pen 4 frog **u** 5 sun 6 cat 7 rubber 8 mum

Learning to learn

If you can't read a word, here are some ideas to help.
Say the first sounds in the word. Try to guess the word.

t-h-r ... throw

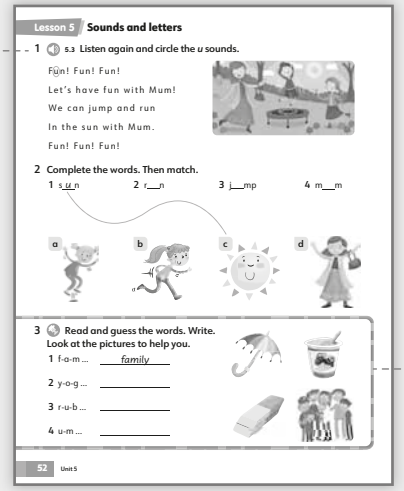
62 **Unit 5** Sounds and letters: identify short *u* sound Learning to learn: read difficult words
WB: page 52

A sound is presented via a word which contains it.

A receptive activity checks children can identify the target sound.

A **Learning to learn** or **Learning about language** box develops learner autonomy.

The new sounds are contextualised in a short and fun chant to provide further practice.



Lesson 5 **Sounds and letters**

1 5.3 Listen again and circle the *u* sounds.

Fun! Fun! Fun!
Let's have fun with Mum!
We can jump and run
In the sun with Mum.
Fun! Fun! Fun!

2 Complete the words. Then match.

1 s_u_n 2 r__n 3 j__mp 4 m__m

a b c d

3 Read and guess the words. Write. Look at the pictures to help you.

1 f-a-m ... *family*
2 y-o-g ...
3 r-u-b ...
4 u-m ...

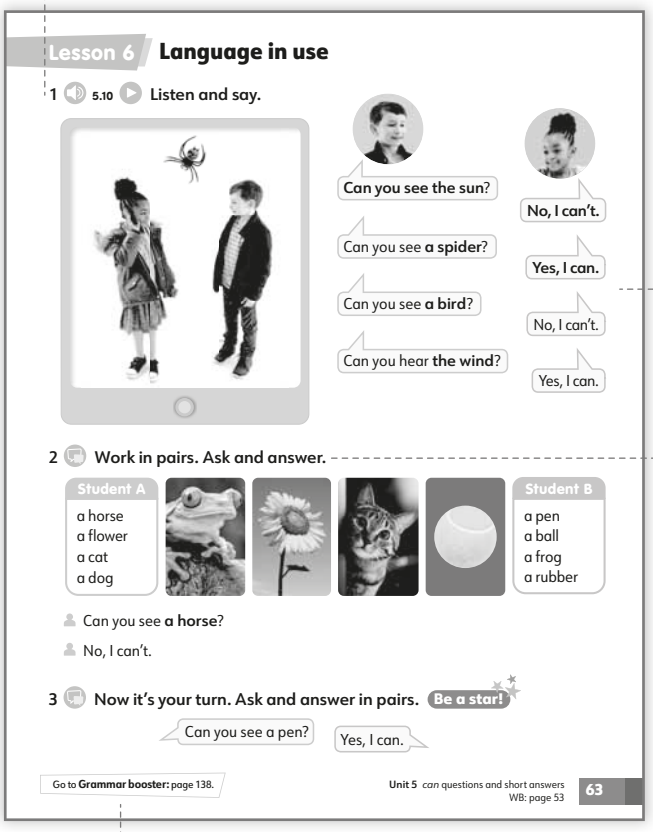
52 Unit 5

Activities provide further receptive and productive practice of key sounds.

An activity encourages children to apply the skills and strategies from **Learning to learn** or **Learning about language**.

Lesson 6: Language in use

A supporting, **real-world video** brings the dialogue to life and supports understanding (available in the **Presentation Kit** and on the **Pupil's Resource Centre**).



Lesson 6 **Language in use**

1 5.10 Listen and say.

Can you see the sun? No, I can't.
Can you see a spider? Yes, I can.
Can you see a bird? No, I can't.
Can you hear the wind? Yes, I can.

2 Work in pairs. Ask and answer.

Student A: a horse, a flower, a cat, a dog
Student B: a pen, a ball, a frog, a rubber

Can you see a horse?
No, I can't.

3 Now it's your turn. Ask and answer in pairs. Be a star!

Can you see a pen? Yes, I can.

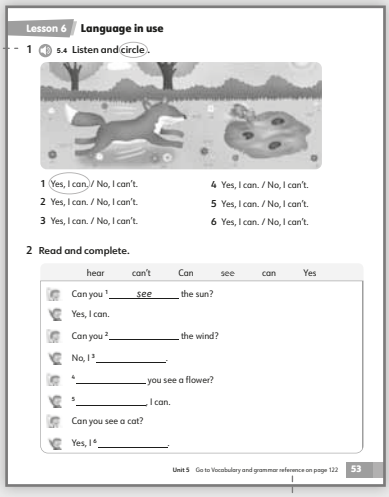
Go to **Grammar booster:** page 138.

Unit 5 *can* questions and short answers
WB: page 53 63

A new grammar structure is presented via a short dialogue.

Children produce their own scaffolded dialogue, followed by a freer dialogue.

Children are directed to the **Grammar booster** for further practice.



Lesson 6 **Language in use**

1 5.4 Listen and circle.

1 Yes, I can. / No, I can't.
2 Yes, I can. / No, I can't.
3 Yes, I can. / No, I can't.
4 Yes, I can. / No, I can't.
5 Yes, I can. / No, I can't.
6 Yes, I can. / No, I can't.

2 Read and complete.

hear can't Can see can Yes

Can you [1] *see* the sun?
Yes, I can.
Can you [2] _____ the wind?
No, I [3] _____.
[4] _____ you see a flower?
[5] _____ I can.
Can you see a cat?
Yes, I [6] _____.

Unit 5 Go to Vocabulary and grammar reference on page 122 53

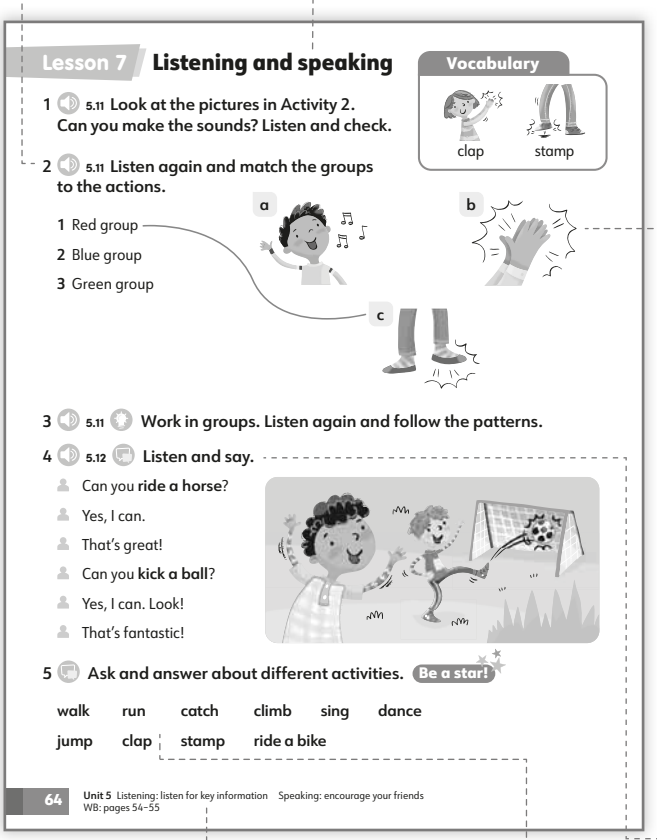
Carefully staged activities provide further practice of the new grammar.

Children are directed to the **Vocabulary and grammar reference** for further support.

Lesson 7: Listening and speaking

While-listening and after-listening activities check comprehension.

Challenging and engaging listening activities recycle target language.



Lesson 7 **Listening and speaking**

Vocabulary

clap stamp

1 5.11 **Look at the pictures in Activity 2. Can you make the sounds? Listen and check.**

2 5.11 **Listen again and match the groups to the actions.**

1 Red group
2 Blue group
3 Green group

a b c

3 5.11 **Work in groups. Listen again and follow the patterns.**

4 5.12 **Listen and say.**

Can you **ride a horse**?
Yes, I can.
That's great!
Can you **kick a ball**?
Yes, I can. Look!
That's fantastic!

5 **Ask and answer about different activities.** Be a star!

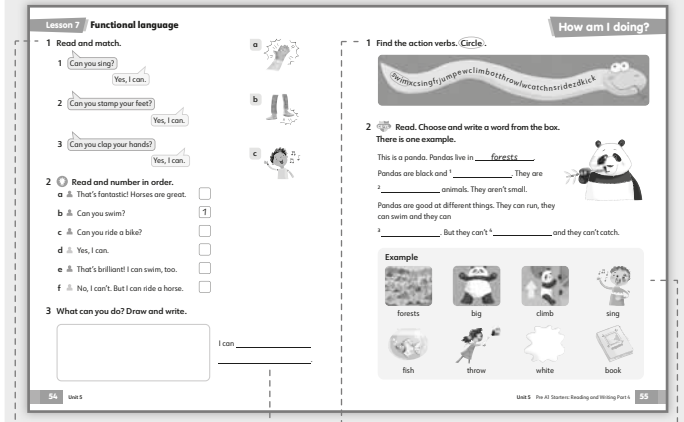
walk run catch climb sing dance
jump clap stamp ride a bike

64 **Unit 5** Listening: listen for key information Speaking: encourage your friends
WB: pages 54–55

A pre-listening activity activates prior knowledge.

A focus on a strategy in each unit develops a key listening skill.

A final speaking activity encourages children to produce the new language.



Lesson 7 **Functional language** How am I doing?

1 Read and match.
1 Can you sing? Yes, I can.
2 Can you stamp your feet? Yes, I can.
3 Can you clap your hands? Yes, I can.

2 Read and number in order.
a That's fantastic! Horses are great.
b Can you swim? 1
c Can you ride a bike?
d Yes, I can.
e That's brilliant! I can swim, too.
f No, I can't. But I can ride a horse.

3 What can you do? Draw and write.
I can _____

1 Find the action verbs. Circle.
2 Read. Choose and write a word from the box. There is one example.
This is a panda. Pandas live in forests.
Pandas are black and [1] _____. They are [2] _____ animals. They aren't small.
Pandas are good at different things. They can run, they can swim and they can [3] _____. But they can't [4] _____ and they can't catch.
Example
forests big climb sing fish throw white book

54 Unit 5 Unit 5 Pre A1 Starters: Reading and Writing Part 4 55

Further activities check understanding of the functional language.

A review activity checks the key vocabulary.

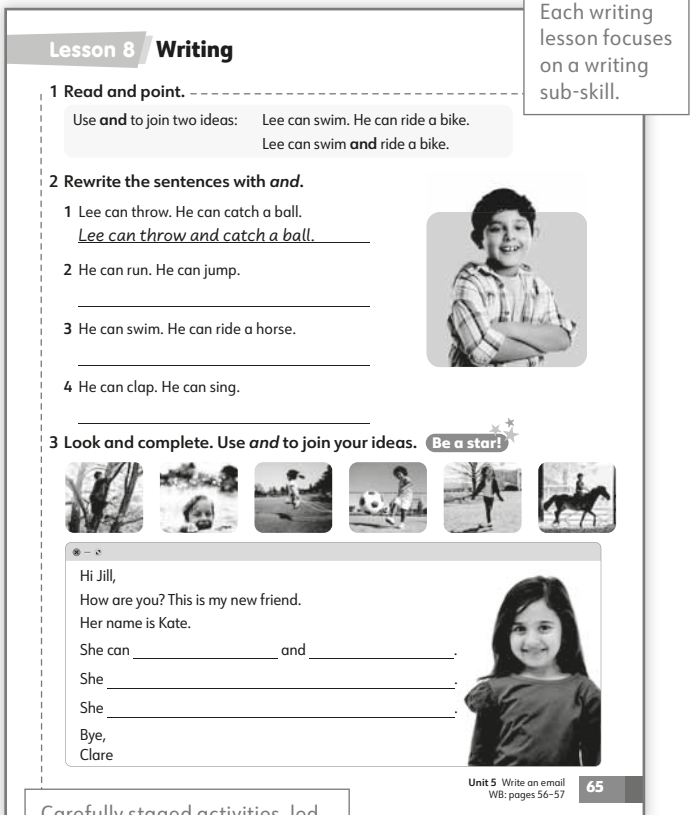
A personalisation activity enables children to relate the new language to their own lives.

Test-style activities practise reading and writing tasks from the **Cambridge English Pre A1 Starters** tests.

Functional language is presented in a social situation.

Lesson 8: Writing

Each writing lesson focuses on a writing sub-skill.



Lesson 8 **Writing**

1 **Read and point.**

Use **and** to join two ideas: Lee can swim. He can ride a bike.
Lee can swim **and** ride a bike.

2 **Rewrite the sentences with *and*.**

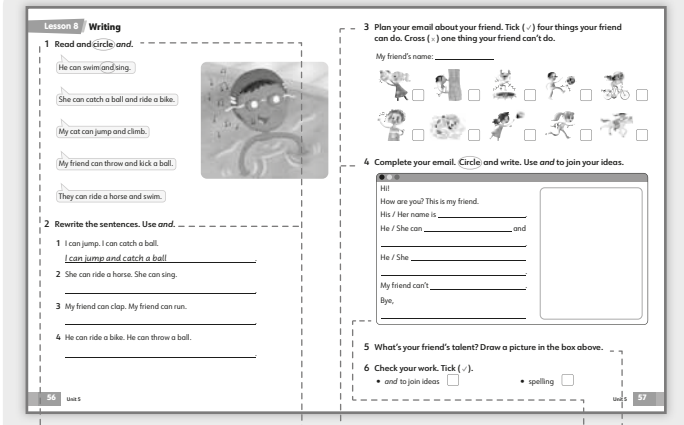
1 Lee can throw. He can catch a ball.
Lee can throw and catch a ball.
2 He can run. He can jump.
_____
3 He can swim. He can ride a horse.
_____
4 He can clap. He can sing.
_____

3 **Look and complete. Use *and* to join your ideas.** Be a star!

Hi Jill,
How are you? This is my new friend.
Her name is Kate.
She can _____ and _____.
She _____.
She _____.
Bye,
Clare

Unit 5 Write an email
WB: pages 56–57 65

Carefully staged activities, led by the teacher, support children in building up a written text.



Lesson 8 **Writing**

1 Read and circle *and*.
He can swim and sing.
She can catch a ball and ride a bike.
My cat can jump and climb.
My friend can throw and kick a ball.
They can ride a horse and swim.

2 Rewrite the sentences. Use *and*.
1 I can jump. I can catch a ball.
I can jump and catch a ball
2 She can ride a horse. She can sing.
3 My friend can clap. My friend can run.
4 He can ride a bike. He can throw a ball.

3 Plan your email about your friend. Tick (✓) four things your friend can do. Cross (✗) one thing your friend can't do.
My friend's name: _____

4 Complete your email. Circle and write. Use *and* to join your ideas.
Hi!
How are you? This is my friend.
His / Her name is _____
He / She can _____ and _____
He / She _____
My friend can't _____
Bye,

5 What's your friend's talent? Draw a picture in the box above.
6 Check your work. Tick (✓).
• *and* to join ideas • spelling

56 Unit 5 Unit 5 57

Carefully staged activities give children the support and scaffolding they need to produce a text independently.

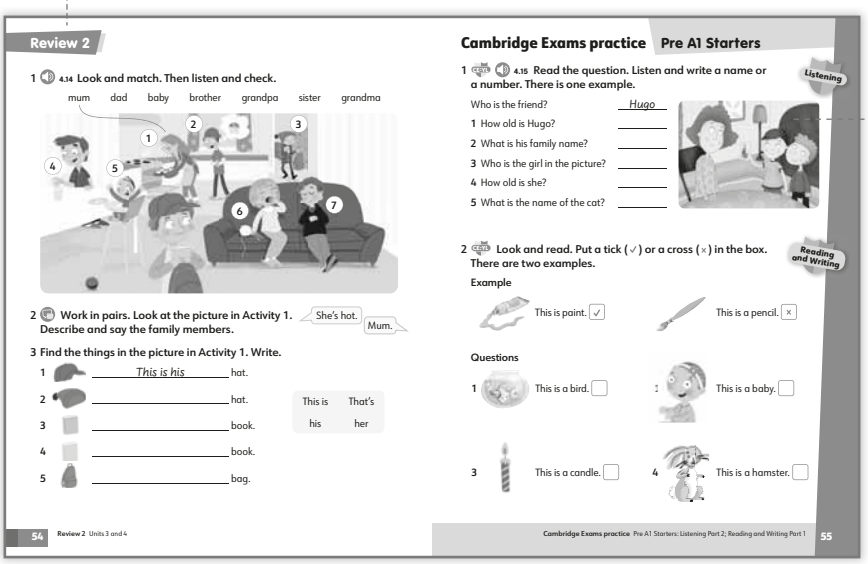
Children then plan and organise their piece of writing.

Children use their plan to write their task independently.

Activities check children's understanding of the writing sub-skill to ensure to prepare them for the writing task.

Children are encouraged to check their final piece of work, as good practice.

Review and Cambridge Exams practice

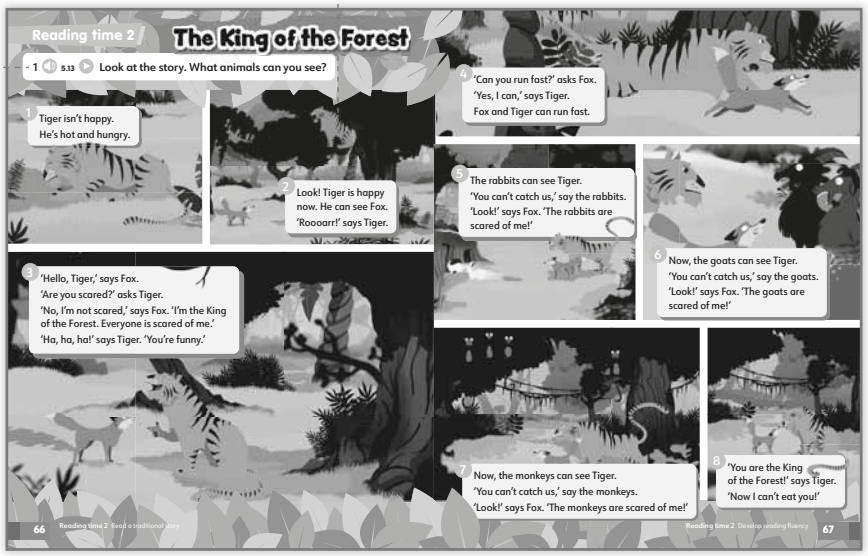


The **Review** lessons in the Pupil's Books provide further practice and consolidation of the language and topics from the previous two units

Every **Cambridge Exams practice** lesson includes test-style activities. These help prepare for the Listening, Reading and Writing, and Speaking papers.

Additional mid-year and end-of-year review sections are provided in the Workbook.

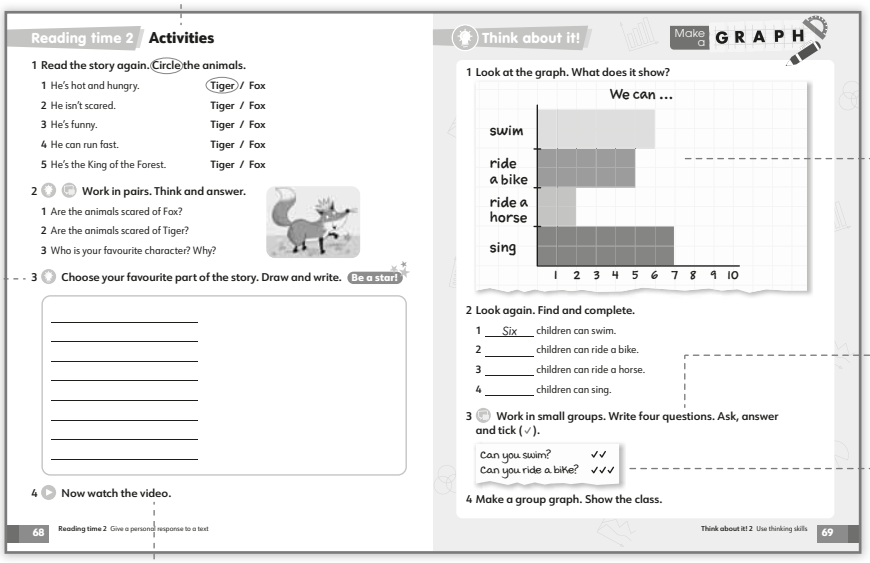
Reading time



A beautifully illustrated reading text develops a love of reading and builds confidence in reading longer texts. Key vocabulary and structures are consolidated to give examples of natural language use.

A pre-reading task gets children thinking about the content of the story before reading, to develop **visual literacy**.

Reading time activities and Think about it!



The Reading time lessons develop children's **literacy skills** and encourage them to give a personal response to the text.

A practical lesson that focuses on **critical thinking** skills. Tasks prepare children to make decisions, solve problems and take control of their learning.

Activities that encourage collaborative learning.

Activities to consolidate learning and give children the opportunity to present their work.

The **Be a star!** activity gives children an opportunity to consolidate their knowledge and learning in a variety of creative ways.

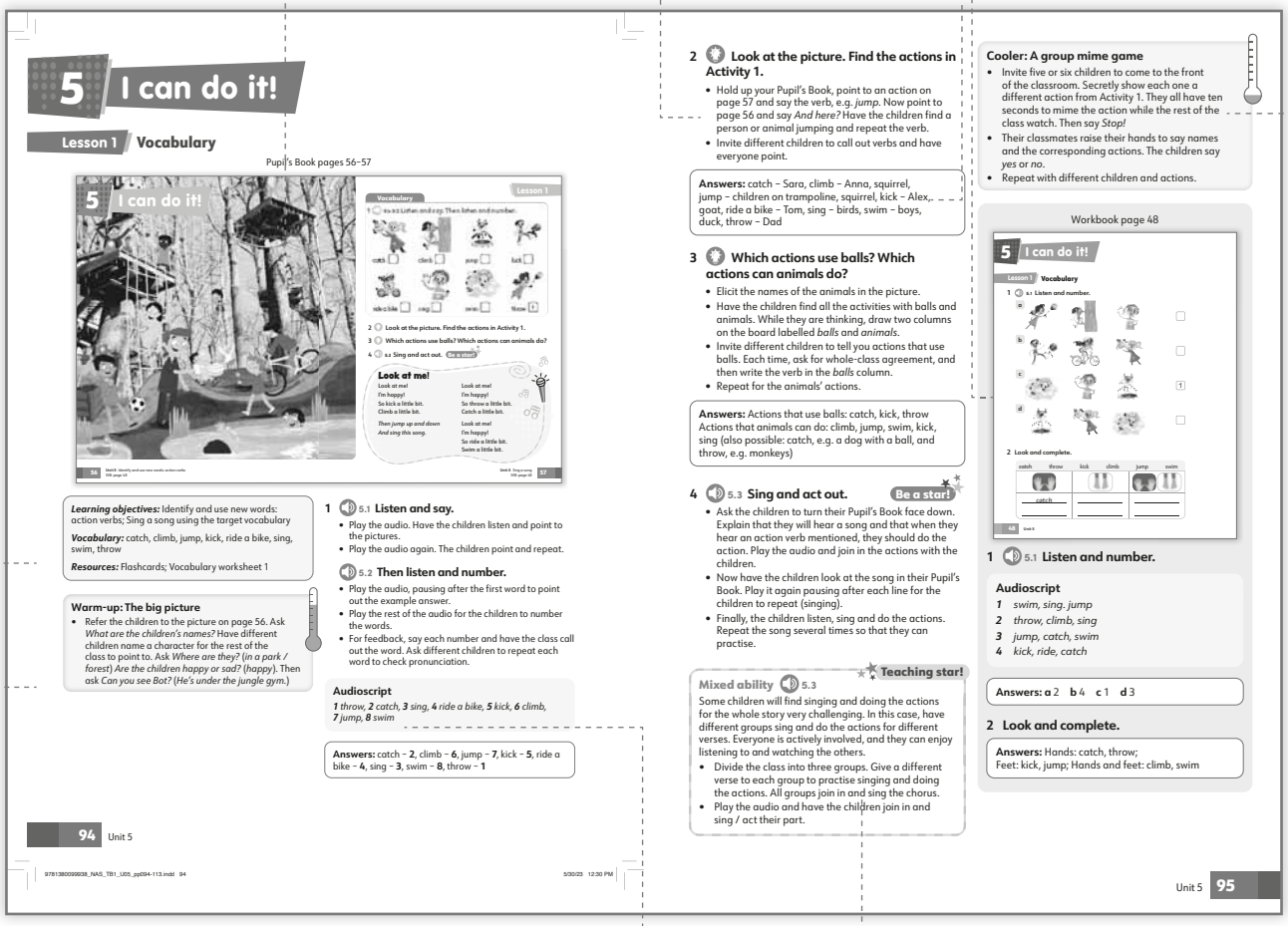
The animated videos bring the stories to life (available in the **Presentation Kit** and on the **Pupil's Resource Centre**).

Understanding the Teacher's Book

Reduced pages of the **Pupil's Book and Workbook** give easy reference to the main components.

Teacher's notes give carefully structured step-by-step guidance.

Answers are given with activities, for ease of reference.



5 I can do it!

Lesson 1 **Vocabulary**

Pupil's Book pages 56–57

Learning objectives: Identify and use new words: action verbs; Sing a song using the target vocabulary

Vocabulary: catch, climb, jump, kick, ride a bike, sing, swim, throw

Resources: Flashcards; Vocabulary worksheet 1

Warm-up: The big picture

- Refer the children to the picture on page 56. Ask *What are the children's names?* Have different children name a character for the rest of the class to point to. Ask *Where are they? (in a park / forest) Are the children happy or sad? (happy).* Then ask *Can you see Bot? (He's under the jungle gym.)*

1 5.1 **Listen and say.**

- Play the audio. Have the children listen and point to the pictures.
- Play the audio again. The children point and repeat.

5.2 **Then listen and number.**

- Play the audio, pausing after the first word to point out the example answer.
- Play the rest of the audio for the children to number the words.
- For feedback, say each number and have the class call out the word. Ask different children to repeat each word to check pronunciation.

Audioscript

***1** throw, **2** catch, **3** sing, **4** ride a bike, **5** kick, **6** climb, **7** jump, **8** swim*

Answers: catch – **2**, climb – **6**, jump – **7**, kick – **5**, ride a bike – **4**, sing – **3**, swim – **8**, throw – **1**

2 **Look at the picture. Find the actions in Activity 1.**

- Hold up your Pupil's Book, point to an action on page 57 and say the verb, e.g. *jump.* Now point to page 56 and say *And here?* Have the children find a person or animal jumping and repeat the verb.
- Invite different children to call out verbs and have everyone point.

Answers: catch – Sara, climb – Anna, squirrel, jump – children on trampoline, squirrel, kick – Alex,. goat, ride a bike – Tom, sing – birds, swim – boys, duck, throw – Dad

3 **Which actions use balls? Which actions can animals do?**

- Elicit the names of the animals in the picture.
- Have the children find all the activities with balls and animals. While they are thinking, draw two columns on the board labelled *balls* and *animals*.
- Invite different children to tell you actions that use balls. Each time, ask for whole-class agreement, and then write the verb in the *balls* column.
- Repeat for the animals' actions.

Answers: Actions that use balls: catch, kick, throw
Actions that animals can do: climb, jump, swim, kick, sing (also possible: catch, e.g. a dog with a ball, and throw, e.g. monkeys)

4 5.3 **Sing and act out.** Be a star!

- Ask the children to turn their Pupil's Book face down. Explain that they will hear a song and that when they hear an action verb mentioned, they should do the action. Play the audio and join in the actions with the children.
- Now have the children look at the song in their Pupil's Book. Play it again pausing after each line for the children to repeat (singing).
- Finally, the children listen, sing and do the actions. Repeat the song several times so that they can practise.

Teaching star!

Mixed ability 5.3

Some children will find singing and doing the actions for the whole story very challenging. In this case, have different groups sing and do the actions for different verses. Everyone is actively involved, and they can enjoy listening to and watching the others.

- Divide the class into three groups. Give a different verse to each group to practise singing and doing the actions. All groups join in and sing the chorus.
- Play the audio and have the children join in and sing / act their part.

Cooler: A group mime game

- Invite five or six children to come to the front of the classroom. Secretly show each one a different action from Activity 1. They all have ten seconds to mime the action while the rest of the class watch. Then say *Stop!*
- Their classmates raise their hands to say names and the corresponding actions. The children say *yes* or *no*.
- Repeat with different children and actions.

Workbook page 48

1 5.1 **Listen and number.**

Audioscript

***1** swim, sing. jump*
***2** throw, climb, sing*
***3** jump, catch, swim*
***4** kick, ride, catch*

Answers: **a** 2 **b** 4 **c** 1 **d** 3

2 **Look and complete.**

Answers: Hands: catch, throw;
Feet: kick, jump; Hands and feet: climb, swim

9781380099938_NAS_TB1_U05_pp094-113.indd 94 5/30/23 12:30 PM

Each lesson opens with the learning objectives, key language, digital resources available and any materials required.

Audioscripts appear at point of use (unless they appear in the Pupil's Book).

A **Cooler** activity allows children to review language learned in a fun context.

A **Warm-up** activity introduces children to the lesson topic, activating prior knowledge and getting the children energised.

Teaching star! provides activities with tips to develop teaching skills, such as classroom management, group work and dealing with mixed-ability classes.

The **Games bank** (pages 14–15) gives details of popular and easy-to-use games that can be played in different lessons to engage, stimulate and motivate children.

The Games bank gives details of popular and easy-to-use games that can be played in different lessons to engage, stimulate and motivate children.

Team sentences

A fun way to focus on sentence structure and get children to remember chunks of language.

1 Divide the class into groups of four or five children. Each group needs a piece of paper and a pen or pencil.
2 Read out the sentence from the day's lesson (or the previous lesson) – read it twice.
3 The first child in the group writes the first word only on the paper and then passes the paper and pen / pencil to the next child to continue.
4 When the sentence is finished, they hold it up for you to check.
5 This can be played as a game for points (for the first team to finish correctly) or just for fun.

Ready, set, draw!

Good for students who need to visually relate images to words.

1 Divide the class into groups of four. Each group needs several pieces of paper and a pen or pencil. Number the children in each group 1–4. Invite all the number (1s) to come to the front of the classroom.
2 Show these children the same picture in the book or a flashcard.
3 They go back to their group and draw that item on their paper. When the group guesses the object correctly, they stand up. When all the groups are standing up, have them call out the word.

Simon says

This popular mime game is good for children who need to relate actions to language.

1 Have the children stand up. Explain that when you say, for example, *Simon says ride a bike* they should all (quietly!) mime riding a bike. If, however, you say *Ride a bike* without saying *Simon* says first, they should do nothing.
2 Any child who does an action when they shouldn't or does a wrong action isn't out of the game – they just get an *Oops!* and everyone carries on.

Team spelling

This is played like Team Sentences, but with individual words. The children write one letter each and pass the paper on.

The shark game

A great way to revise vocabulary and the alphabet.

1 Before the game starts, draw on the board a simple series of 10 steps leading down to water. On the top step, draw a stick figure. In the water, draw a shark waiting with its mouth open.
2 Use a word from the lesson / unit and draw a series of blanks on the board, one for each letter. Have the children raise their hands to guess the letters. For each correct guess, fill in the relevant blank(s). For each incorrect guess, erase the stick figure and draw it again one step nearer to the shark. Write the wrong letters on the board so they are not repeated.
3 The children win if the word is completed before the stick figure reaches the shark – but they must continue saying letters, not shout out the word!

Disappearing words

This is a fun game to help children remember new vocabulary.

1 Elicit from the children a group of words from a story, dialogue or other text (you can also choose your own group of words). Write them on the board in random order.
2 Allow the children 20 seconds to look at the board and then ask them to turn away or cover their eyes.
3 Erase one word (or two when they get better at the game) from the board and have the children turn back. The children identify what's missing. Continue until the board is empty.
4 Keep the children attentive – sometimes only pretend to erase something. Ask *What's missing? (Nothing!)*

Disappearing Sentences / Text / Dialogue

This game is a great way to get the children to produce extended utterances.

1. Write a short dialogue or text on the board (30–35 words). Have all the children read the text aloud.
2. Start erasing words from the board. For example, the sentence *This is my family. I have got two brothers and a sister.* becomes: *This* _____ *family. I* _____ *brothers* _____ *sister.* Have the children read the sentences again including the erased words.
3. Erase more words and have the children read the text again.
4. Finally erase everything (or maybe leave in a word or two for longer sentences) and have the children "read" the text from a (nearly) empty board!

What's the next / last word?

This game provides a good opportunity to revise a listening text.

1. Explain to the children that they will hear something they have heard before (tell them which listening text it is).
2. Divide the class into groups. Each group needs a piece of paper and a pen or a pencil.
3. Tell the children that you will stop the audio at some points and they have to:
   Version A – write on their paper the last word they heard, or Version B – write on their paper what they think is the next word (for this version, they must be very familiar with the text).
4. They hold up the paper for you to check. Continue the audio until the next important word. Each time a different child should write the word.
5. Note: Always have the audioscript in front of you when you play this game. It is difficult to do this without it!

Put the letters back

This activity helps children recognise word shapes and also practise spelling and sentence structure.

1. Choose 3–4 sentences from a recent lesson or activity.
2. Write the words or sentences on the board with all the vowels replaced by spaces. So, *He's got a big bed* is written as is written as
3. H _ 's g _ t _ b _ g b _ d.
4. Tell the children the vowels – a, e ,i, o, u – are missing. Give them a little time to think how to put the vowels back to form complete words or sentences.
5. Invite different children to come to the board to write a letter or two in the right place.

Physical spelling

This game really helps children focus on spelling and involves them physically, making it fun!

1. Explain the rules of physical spelling: for every (lower case) letter with a stalk going up (e.g. b, d, h, etc.), the children raise their arms; for every letter with no stalk going up or down (e.g. a, c, e, etc.), they fold their arms; for every letter that has a stalk going down (e.g. g, j, p, etc.), they put their arms down by their sides.
2. Show the children a word (or write it on the board – with a picture if possible) and have everyone spell out the word together, calling out the letters and doing the actions.
3. The faster they do it, the more fun they have!

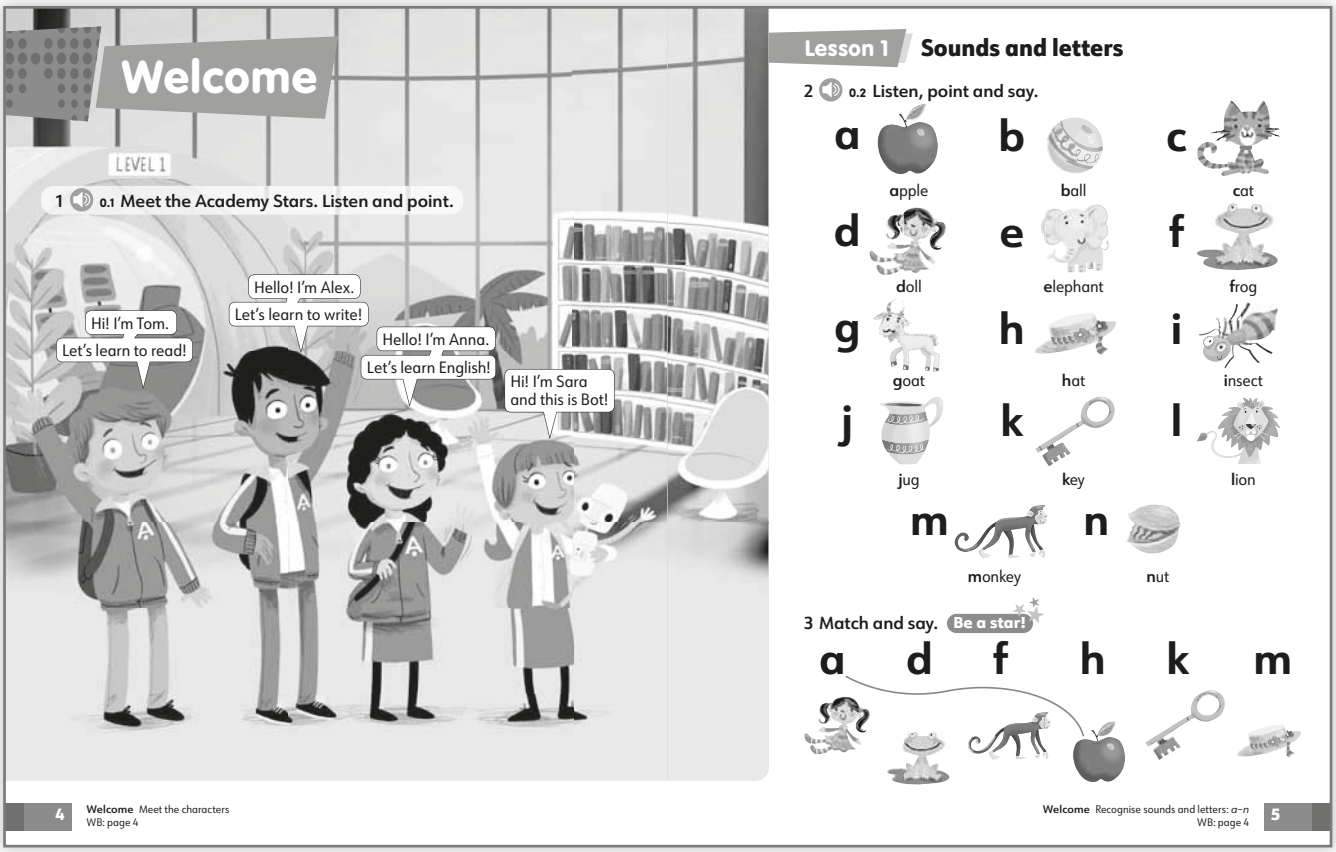
Team vocabulary race

1. Divide the class into groups of three or four children. Each group needs a piece of paper and a pen or pencil.
2. Tell the groups that the topic is (animals). Give them (three) minutes to write as many names of (animals) as they can remember. Explain that each child writes only one and then hands the paper and pen / pencil to the next child.
3. Have them call out the (animals), and write them on the board for the children to check their spelling. Who had the most correct?

Welcome

Lesson 1 Sounds and letters

Pupil's Book pages 4–5



Learning objectives: Meet the characters; Recognise sounds and letters: *a–n*

Vocabulary: apple, ball, cat, doll, elephant, frog, goat, hat, insect, jug, key, lion, monkey, nut

Resources: Flashcards

Materials: pieces of paper, pens or pencils

Warm-up: The big picture

- Refer the children to the picture on page 4. Ask them where these children are and who they think they are (They're at their school – the Academy, and they're the characters who we'll meet all the way through the book). Ask the children if they like the school and the uniforms in the picture.
- Then ask them if they can see another character who isn't a child. Let's find out his name!

1 0.1 Meet the Academy Stars. Listen and point.

- Play the audio and have the children point to each character (left to right) as they speak. Hold up your book and point too, so the children can follow.
- Ask the children if they hear or can see their names. Elicit the names and write them on the board. Have the children repeat each name and point to the characters. Do this first in order and then in random order.
- Then point to each character and have the children call out their names.

2 0.2 Listen, point and say.

- Refer the children to the pictures. Ask if they know how to say any of these words in English.
- Play the audio and have the children point to each word as they hear it.
- Play the audio again and have them repeat the sound and the word.
- Now have the children say just the sounds of the letters in order, and then the words.
- Now call out the words in random order and have the children point to the corresponding picture in their books.

3 Match and say.

Be a star!

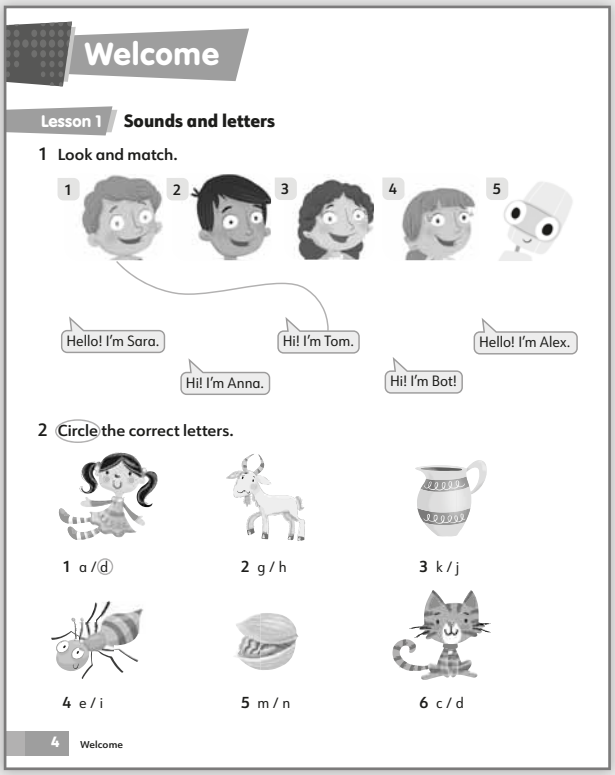
- Ask the children to name the items in the pictures. Say the words again and have the whole class repeat.
- Now hold your book up to show the children. Point to and say the sound /æ/ and then point to and say the word *apple*. Show them the example line matching them.
- Now have the children draw lines from the letters to the pictures. Encourage them to refer to the pictures in Activity 2.
- For feedback, hold up your book, point to a picture and have the children say the sound and the name.

Answers: a – apple, d – doll, f – frog, h – hat, k – key, m – monkey

Cooler: Ready, set, draw!

- Divide the class into groups of four or five. Each group needs a piece of paper and a pen or pencil.
- Play a game of *Ready, set, draw!* (see the Games bank, pages 14–15) with the new vocabulary from this lesson.

Workbook page 4


Welcome

Lesson 1 Sounds and letters

1 Look and match.

1 2 3 4 5

Hello! I'm Sara. Hi! I'm Tom. Hello! I'm Alex. Hi! I'm Anna. Hi! I'm Bot!

2 Circle the correct letters.

1 a / d 2 g / h 3 k / j 4 e / i 5 m / n 6 c / d

4 Welcome

1 Look and match.

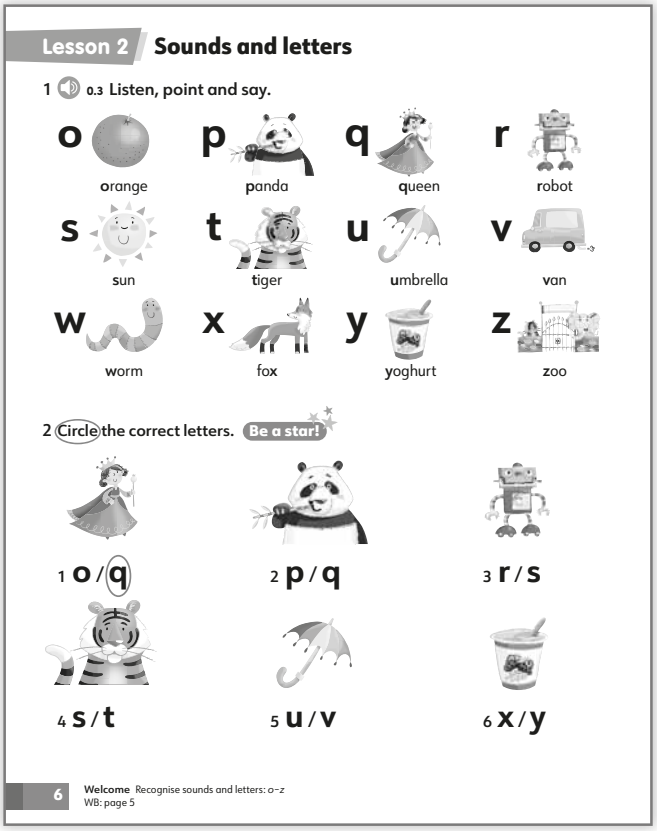
Answers: 1 Hi! I'm Tom. **2** Hello! I'm Alex. **3** Hi! I'm Anna. **4** Hello! I'm Sara. **5** Hi! I'm Bot!

2 Circle the correct letters.

Answers: 1 d **2** g **3** j **4** i **5** n **6** c

Lesson 2 Sounds and letters

Pupil's Book page 6



Learning objectives: Recognise sounds and letters *o–z*

Vocabulary: orange, panda, queen, robot, sun, tiger, umbrella, van, worm, fox, yoghurt, zoo

Resources: Flashcards

Warm-up: Who's this?

- Write a big *Yes* on one side of the board and a big *No* on the other side. Clarify the meaning with the class.
- Hold up your book open at page 4. Point to the characters and say *This is … [name]*. The children point to the *Yes* or *No* side of the board to say if the name is correct or not. Say a mixture of true and false statements and repeat several times, faster and faster.

1 0.3 Listen, point and say.

- Refer the children to the pictures. Ask if they know how to say any of these words in English.
- Play the audio and have the children point to each word as they hear it.
- Play the audio again and have them repeat the sound and the word.
- Now have the children say just the sounds of the letters in order, and then the words.

Teaching star!

Pairwork

The children can be involved in pairwork at this early stage.

- Divide the class into pairs. Demonstrate the activity with a confident child: say the name of an object and have the child point to the correct picture. Repeat several times. Then say a sound and have the child find the picture and say the name.
- Have the children continue in pairs.

2 Circle the correct letters. Be a star!

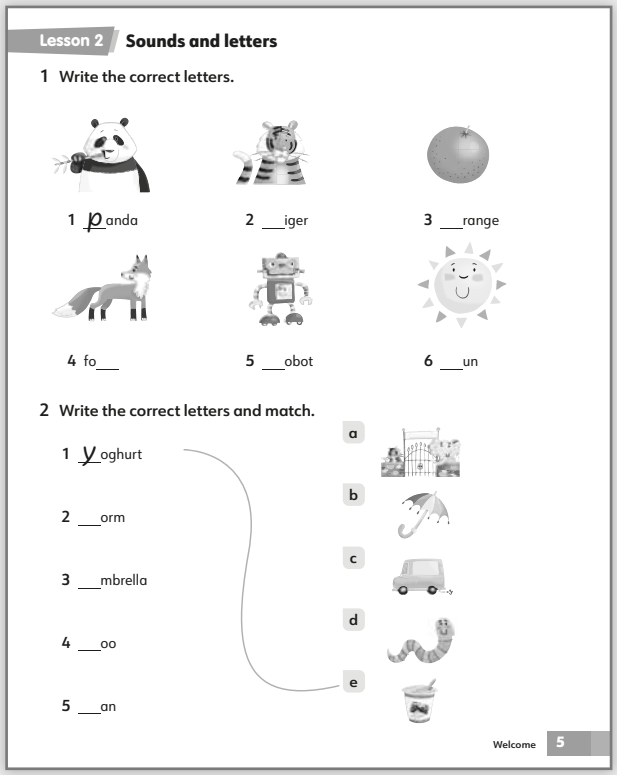
- Ask the children to name the items in the pictures.
- Say *queen – q – queen* and point out the circled *q* example answer. Repeat the sound *q*.
- Have the children continue the activity individually. Point out they can refer to the pictures and letters in Activity 1.

Answers: 1 q **2** p **3** r **4** t **5** u **6** y

Cooler: Play a mime game

- Do a mime for some of the items in Activity 1 and encourage the children to join you, e.g.
  orange – mime peeling and eating an orange
  panda – mime eating bamboo
  queen – mime putting on a crown
  robot – walk like a robot.
  tiger – make a scary roar
  umbrella – mime opening an umbrella
  van – mime driving a van
  yoghurt – mime eating yoghurt with a spoon
- Call out the words in random order and have the children join you in the mime.
- Then call out the words and have the children do the mimes on their own.
- Finally, do the mimes and have the children say the words.

Workbook page 5



Lesson 2 **Sounds and letters**

1 Write the correct letters.

1 p anda

2 ___iger

3 ___range

4 fo___

5 ___obot

6 ___un

2 Write the correct letters and match.

1 y oghurt

2 ___orm

3 ___mbrella

4 ___oo

5 ___an

a

b

c

d

e

Welcome 5

1 Write the correct letters.

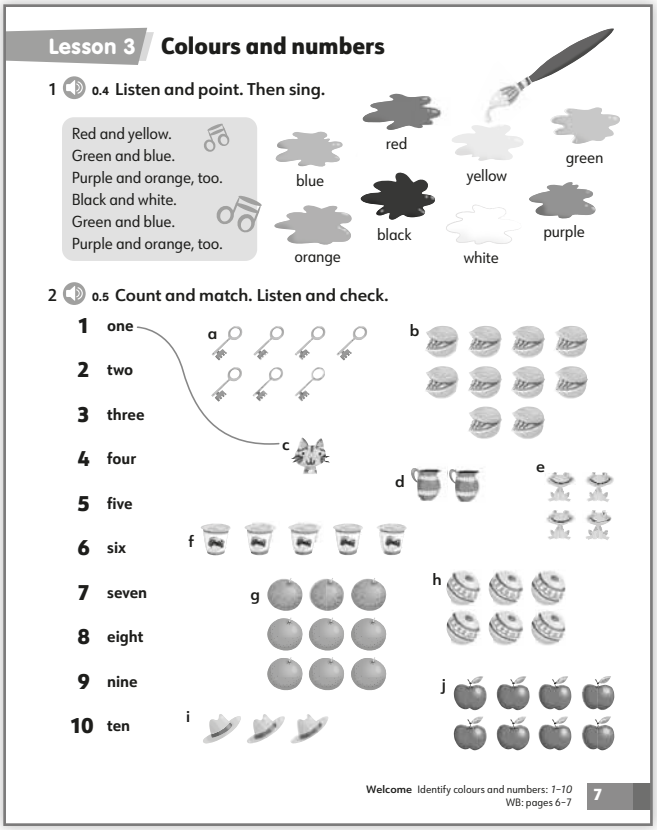
Answers: 1 p **2** t **3** o **4** x **5** r **6** s

2 Write the correct letters and match.

Answers: 1 y – e **2** w – d **3** u – b **4** z – a **5** v – c

Lesson 3 Colours and numbers

Pupil's Book page 7



Learning objectives: Identify colours and identify numbers *1–10*

Vocabulary: black, blue, green, orange, purple, red, white, yellow; Numbers one to ten

Resources: Flashcards

Materials: coloured board pens, coloured pencils

Warm-up: Physical spelling

- Write the alphabet on the board in lower-case letters. Say each sound and have the children repeat.
- Play *Physical spelling* (see the Games bank, pages 14–15) with the alphabet letters presented in the last two lessons.

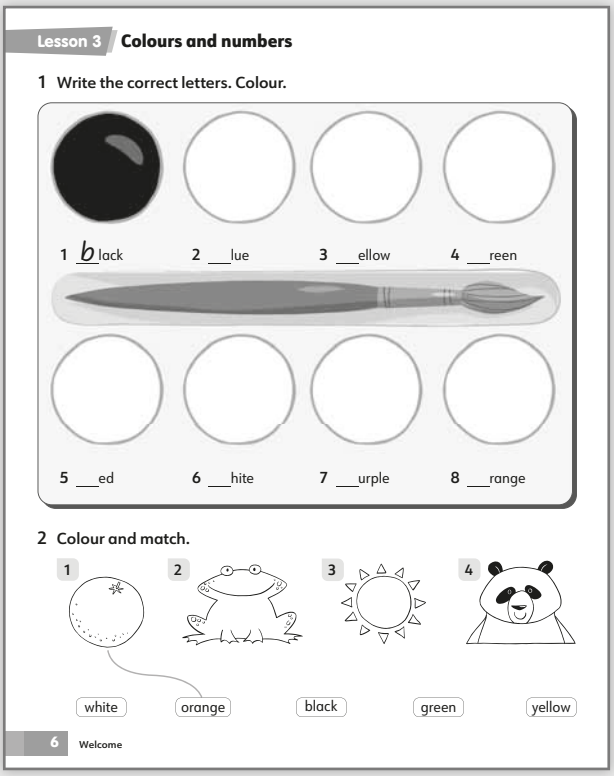
1 0.4 Listen and point. Then sing.

- Refer the children to the colours. Ask if they know how to say any of them in English.
- Play the audio and have the children listen and point to the colours as they hear them in the song.
- Play the song again, pausing after each line for the children to repeat. Pay attention to the pronunciation of the colours.
- Play the song one more time and invite the children to join in as much as they can.

0.4 Cooler: Sing the song and point

- Play *The colours* song again. Have the children point to something of each colour as they sing.

Workbook page 6



1 Write the correct letters. Colour.

Answers: 1 b **2** b **3** y **4** g **5** r **6** w **7** p **8** o

2 Colour and match.

Answers: 1 orange **2** green **3** yellow **4** black, white

2 0.5 Count and match. Listen and check.

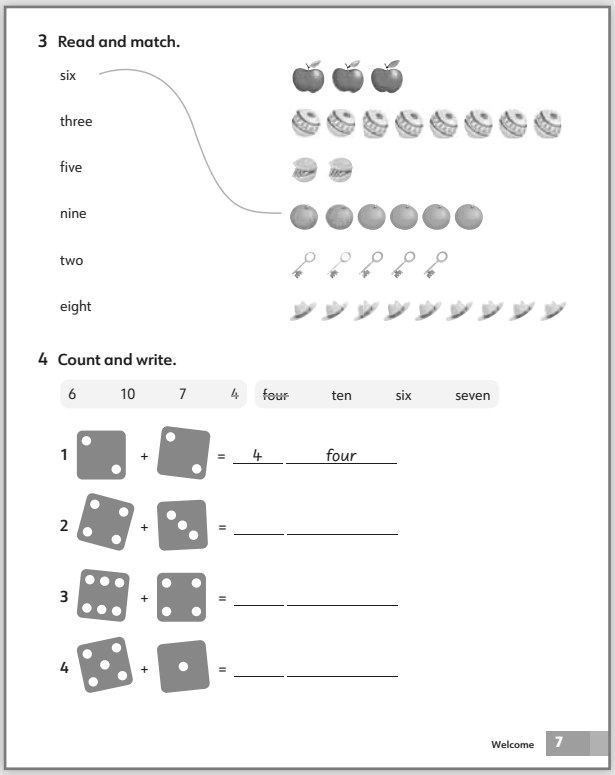
- Ask the children to name the things they can see on the page. Have the class repeat the words.
- Close your hands, put up your fingers one by one and count slowly from 1 to 10. Have the children repeat.
- Hold up your book. Point out the example line from *1 one* to *c – cat*. Have the children find the item for *2 two*. Elicit *jug* and have the children draw a line.
- The children continue the activity individually.
- Elicit the answers for *3–10*. Each time, count the items on the page. Encourage the children to join in.
- Play the audio, pausing for the children to point.
- Play the audio again and have them join in with the names of the items. Play it again and have the children repeat number + item, e.g. *one cat*.

Answers: 1 c **2** d **3** i **4** e **5** f **6** h **7** a **8** j **9** g **10** b

Cooler: Air numbers

- Say *What's this?* Draw an 8 in the air with your finger. Have the children call out the number when they think they know. Repeat with more numbers.

Workbook page 7



3 Read and match.

Answers: six – oranges, three – apples, five – keys, nine – hats, two – nuts, eight – balls

4 Count and write.

Answers: 1 4 four **2** 7 seven **3** 10 ten **4** 6 six

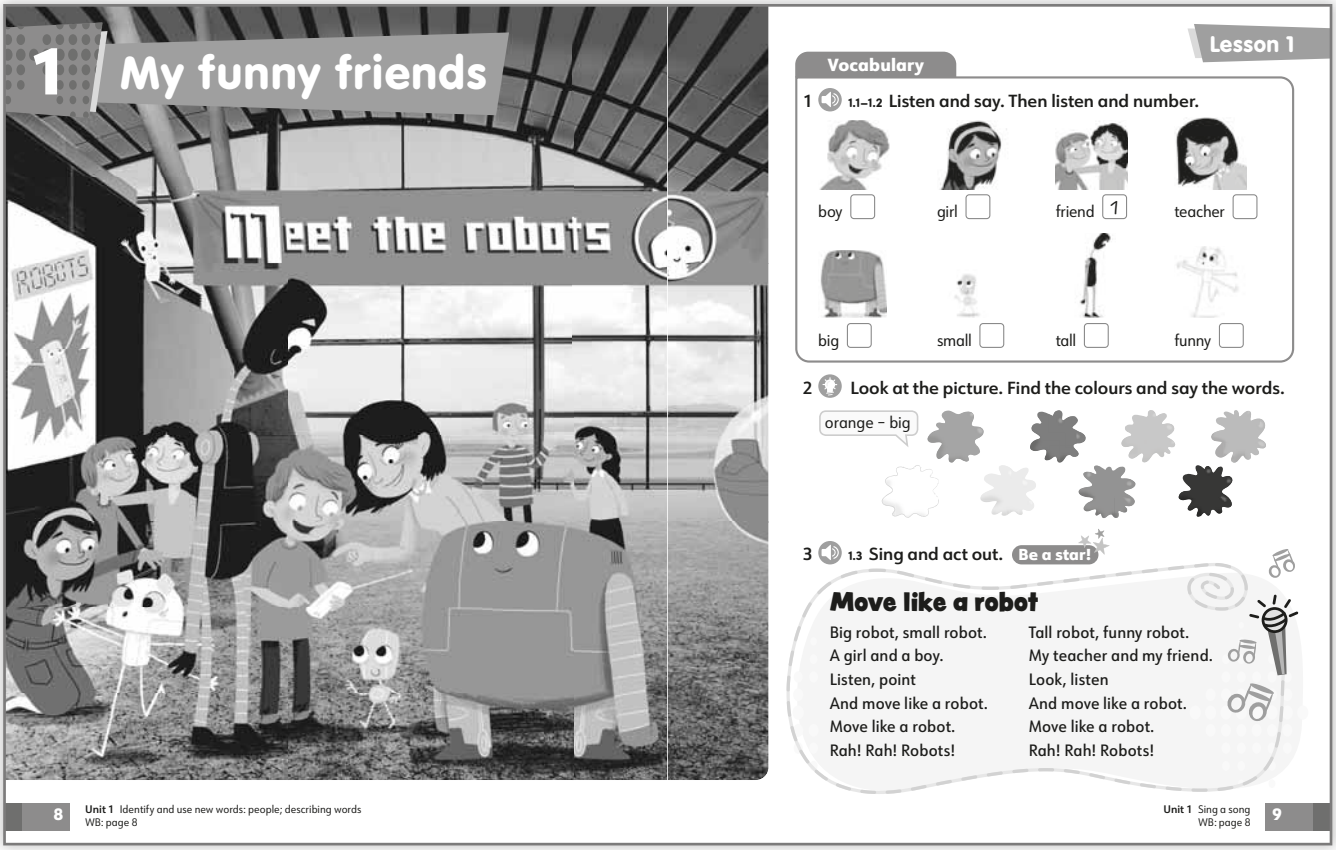
My progress: (Workbook page 116)

- Tell the children how pleased you are with the effort they've made on the Welcome unit. The idea of effort and achievement is key to successful learning.
- Clarify the meaning of each *I can* ...statement. Elicit examples to help them remember the content.
- Hold up the correct stickers for the Welcome unit. Let them decide if they're ready to give themselves a sticker. Encourage them if necessary.
- Have all the children hold up their books and show all their stickers to the class. Encourage them to give themselves a round of applause for their effort and achievement!

1 My funny friends

Lesson 1 Vocabulary

Pupil's Book pages 8–9



Learning objectives: Identify and use new words: people, describing words; Sing a song using the target vocabulary

Vocabulary: big, boy, friend, funny, girl, small, tall, teacher

Resources: Flashcards; Vocabulary worksheet 1

Materials: coloured pencils

Warm-up: The big picture

- Refer the children to the picture on page 8. Ask *What can you see? What are the children's names? What colour are the robots?* Point and have the children count the robots.
- Call out the names of the characters in the picture (Tom, Anna, Sara and Bot) and have the children point to them. Do it faster, changing the order.

1 1.1 Listen and say.

- Play the audio. Have the children listen and point to the pictures.
- Play the audio again. The children point and repeat. Check the meaning of *funny*. Ask *Is 'funny' this?* (mime a serious face) or *is 'funny' this?* (mime laughing at something).
- Point to children or items in the room and have the children call out the appropriate word (use the mime again for funny rather than a child!).

1.2 Then listen and number.

- Play the audio, pausing after the first word to point out the example answer.
- Play the rest of the audio for the children to number the words.
- For feedback, say each number and have the class call out the word.
- Now, if you have downloaded the flashcards, show them one by one and elicit the words chorally and then individually to check pronunciation. Alternatively, call out the numbers and do the same.

Audioscript

1 *friend,* ***2*** *teacher,* ***3*** *tall,* ***4*** *funny,* ***5*** *big,* ***6*** *boy,* ***7*** *girl,* ***8*** *small*

Answers: boy – 6, girl – 7, friend – 1, teacher – 2, big – 5, small – 8, tall – 3, funny – 4

2 Look at the picture. Find the colours and say the words.

- Point to the orange shape and say *orange*. Point to the big robot in the big picture and say *Ah! Orange! Big!* Have the children repeat.
- Call out more colours from the activity and have the children answer with the corresponding word.

Answers: orange – big, red – girl, green – teacher, blue – boy, white – funny, yellow – small, purple – friends, black – tall

Teaching star!

Extension

It helps their learning if children can relate new vocabulary to what's around them. To continue Activity 2:

- Say to the class *Point to something big* and have the children point to a big object in the classroom, e.g. a desk. Then say *Point to something …* and have a child finish theinstruction and the other children point.
- Continue with more key words, e.g. *Point to a girl / friend*.

3 1.3 Sing and act out.

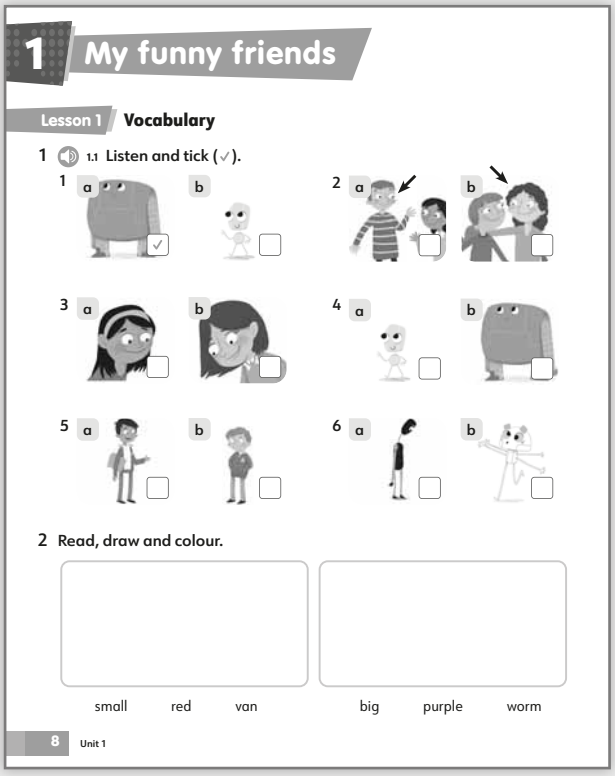
Be a star!

- Ask the children to turn their Pupil's Book face down. Explain that they will hear a song and that they should raise their hands every time they hear one of the words from Activity 1. Play the song and join in the actions with the children.
- Now have the children look at the song in their Pupil's Book. Play it again, pausing after each line for them to repeat (singing).
- Teach the children a mime for the key words in the song:
  big robot – arms by your sides
  small robot – crouch down
  girl and boy – point to children in the class
  listen – hand cupped around your ear
  point – point!
  move like a robot – stiff robot movements with your arms
  Rah! Rah! Robots! – arms in the air like a robot!
  tall robot – reach up high
  funny robot – pull a funny face
  my teacher and my friend – point to children in the class
  look – hand above your eyes.
- Play the song and have the children mime. Then play it again and have them mime and sing. (This is very challenging, but they can all join in with the key words, if not the whole song.)

Cooler: A memory test

- Write a big *YES* on one side of the board and a big *NO* on the other.
- Have the children close their books and ask them to remember the pictures.
- Say *Orange – big. Yes or no?* (*Yes*), etc. The children call out their answers.

Workbook page 8


1 My funny friends

Lesson 1 Vocabulary

1 1.1 Listen and tick (✓).

2 Read, draw and colour.

small red van big purple worm

8 Unit 1

1 1.1 Listen and tick (✓).

Audioscript

1 *A big robot.*
2 *A tall girl.*
3 *My teacher.*
4 *A small robot.*
5 *A small boy.*
6 *A funny robot.*

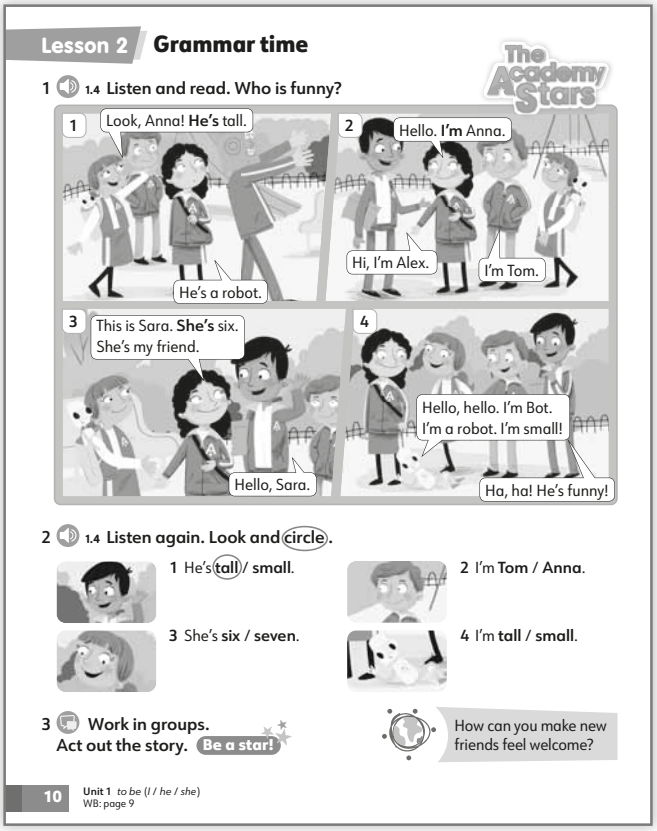
Answers: 1 a **2** b **3** b **4** a **5** b **6** b

2 Read, draw and colour.

Answers: Children's own answers.

Lesson 2 Grammar time

Pupil's Book page 10



Learning objectives: Understand and use *to be* (*I /he / she*); Read and act out a story using the target grammar

Grammar: to be (*I / he / she*) affirmative

Review vocabulary: adjectives

1.3 Warm-up: Sing the song!

- Play the song *Move like a robot* and have the children join in and do the actions.
- Before playing the song, you may wish to remind the children of the mimes they learnt in the previous lesson:
  big robot – arms by your sides
  small robot – crouch down
  girl and boy – point to children in the class
  listen – hand cupped around your ear
  point – point!
  move like a robot – stiff robot movements with your arms
  Rah! Rah! Robots! – arms in the air like a robot!
  tall robot – reach up high
  funny robot – pull a funny face
  my teacher and my friend – point to children in the class
  look – hand above your eyes.
- You could also teach the children any new mimes or ask them if they know any others, for variety.

1 1.4 Listen and read. Who is funny?

- Refer the children to the pictures and ask *What are the children's names?* (*Tom, Alex, Anna, Sara*) *Where are they?* (*at school*). *Where's Bot? Point.*
- Play the audio and have the children follow the story. Stop after one or two frames and ask the children *What number? One, two, three or four?* to check they are following.
- At the end, ask *Who's funny?* to elicit *Bot is funny.*
- Play the audio one more time, stopping after each line for the children to repeat.
- Ask the children what the difference is between *he's* and *she's* (*he's* for boys, *she's* for girls).

Answer: Bot is funny.

2 1.4 Listen again. Look and circle.

- Refer the children to the pictures and sentences. Read out the sentences and ask if they can remember the correct answers.
- Go through the example with the class. Ask where they can find the answer (Frame 1). Then have the children answer the remaining questions. Fast finishers can compare their answers in pairs.
- While they are doing this, write the sentences 1–4 on the board.
- Play the audio again for the children to check their answers. Invite children to come to the board and circle the correct word. Each time, ask for whole-class agreement.

Answers: 1 tall **2** Tom **3** six **4** small

3 Work in groups. Act out the story.

Be a star!

- Play the audio again for the class to repeat each line chorally. Check their pronunciation of the */h/* sound in *he's* and the long */i:/* sound in *he's* and *she's*.
- Count the characters in the story with the children (*five – Anna, Sara, Tom, Alex* and *Bot*).
- Divide the class into groups of five and have them decide who will be each character. Alternatively, designate roles: give each child a number 1–5 and tell them that all number 1s are Anna, number 2s are Sara, number 3s are Tom, number 4s are Alex and number 5s are Bot.
- Allow them a few minutes to practise acting out the story. (The person playing Alex can mime robot movements rather than have a robot mask!) You may wish to play the audio again to remind them of the intonation, etc.
- Encourage some of the groups to act out the story for the rest of the class.
- If you wish, you could ask the children to change roles and act out the story again.

ESDC

How can you make new friends feel welcome?

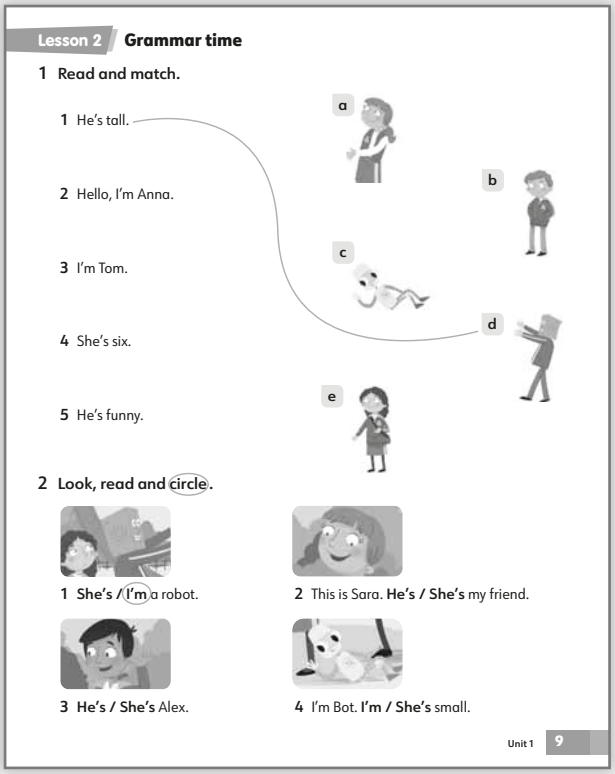
- Read out the question and ask if anyone can translate it into L1. This question helps the children explore the concepts of friendship and community and how their own behaviour can have a positive impact on others.
- Elicit ideas on how to make friends, and why children might be nervous about starting at a new school or moving to a new town. Encourage the children to share their experiences of being new to a country, town or school and what made them feel welcome and part of their community.

  Possible answers: include new children in games and other activities, ask them what they like and don't like, share toys and books.

Cooler: Disappearing words

- Play *Disappearing words* (see the Games bank, pages 14–15), asking the children to recall all the key words they can from the story.
- Have them raise their hands each time they identify the word that is missing in order to give all the children enough time to work it out. Ask for whole-class agreement each time and have them all repeat the word.

Workbook page 9


Lesson 2 Grammar time

1 Read and match.

1 He's tall.
2 Hello, I'm Anna.
3 I'm Tom.
4 She's six.
5 He's funny.

a b c d e

2 Look, read and circle.

1 She's / I'm a robot.
2 This is Sara. He's / She's my friend.
3 He's / She's Alex.
4 I'm Bot. I'm / She's small.

Unit 1 9

1 Read and match.

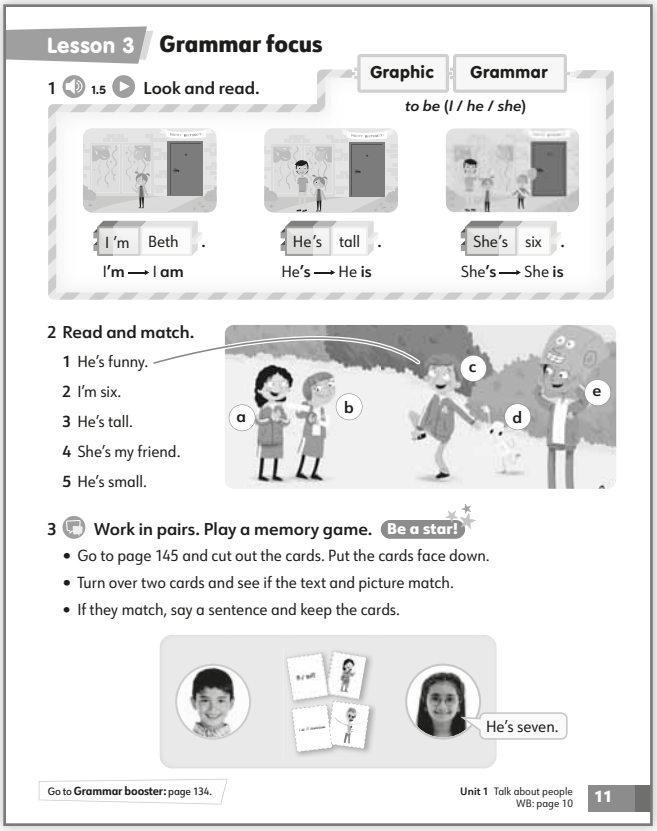
Answers: 1 d **2** e **3** b **4** a **5** c

2 Look, read and circle.

Answers: 1 I'm **2** She's **3** He's **4** I'm

Lesson 3 Grammar focus

Pupil's Book page 11



Learning objectives: Talk about people

Grammar: to be (*I / he / she*) affirmative: *I'm Beth. He's tall. She's six.*

Review vocabulary: adjectives

Resources: Graphic Grammar video; Grammar worksheet 1

Materials: scissors, a sheet of paper for each child, coloured pencils

1.4 Warm-up: Stand up for ...

- Divide the class into two groups. Tell them that they will hear the story from Lesson 2 again. Explain that group 1 should stand up and sit down quickly every time they hear a name (*Anna, Sara, Alex, Tom, Bot*); group 2 should do the same every time they hear one of the words from Lesson 1 (*tall, robot, friend, small, funny*).
- You may wish to write these words on the board under the corresponding group number as a reminder.
- Play the audio and have the children follow the instructions. They may not be completely synchronised, but they'll be focusing carefully on the dialogue in a fun way!

1 1.5 Look and read.

- Play the audio. Demonstrate and have the children point to themselves for *I'm* and to a boy or girl for *He's* and *She's*.
- Play the audio again for the children to repeat chorally. Highlight the contraction of *I am* to *I'm* by counting out the sentence *I am Beth:* put *I am* on two fingers. Push those fingers together to show the contraction *I'm*. Repeat for *He's* and *She's*.

- If using the video, tell the children they will see a video of children at a party. Play the video and let the children watch and enjoy.
- Play the video again and have the children repeat each sentence.

2 Read and match.

- Point to the picture and elicit the names of the children. Ask the children to point to Tom and follow the line back to the sentence. Invite a child to read out the sentence for Tom.
- Have the children draw lines to connect the other characters to their sentences. Point out that they can look back at the story in Lesson 2 if they need to.
- For feedback, say a letter from the picture and ask a child to say the character's name and read the sentence. Ask for whole-class agreement.

Answers: 1c **2**b **3**e **4**a **5**d

3 Work in pairs. Play a memory game.

Be a star!

- Organise the children in pairs and have them open their books to page 145.
- Make sure the children all have scissors with which to cut out the cards. While they cut out the cards, confirm understanding of what they see and read on the cards.
- Explain that in this game, the players turn over two cards and see if the text and pictures match. If they match, the children say a sentence using the words (*He's seven. It's funny.*) and keep the cards. If they don't match, the children put the cards face down again. They take turns until all cards are matched. The winner of the game is the player with the most cards at the end.
- Work through the example with the children.
- Allow time for the children to complete the game.

Grammar booster

For additional practice, ask the children to turn to page 134 of their Pupil's Book to complete Activity 1. If the children need more grammar practice before the communicative Activity 3, have them complete this activity first. Alternatively, you may wish to have the children complete this activity at home.

Answers: 1 He's **2** She's **3** She's **4** She's **5** He's **6** I'm

Teaching star!

Extension

Give the children further practice in talking about people using what they have learnt.

- Quickly draw a picture of you and a friend on the board and talk about it briefly: *This is me. I'm Mary. I'm tall. She's my friend Lisa. She's funny and she's tall!*
- Offer the children sheets of paper to draw on and coloured pencils.
- Give the children time to draw themselves and a friend. While they do this, circulate and ask them about their pictures.
- Encourage some of the children to show their picture to the class and talk about it, using the target grammar.

Teaching star!

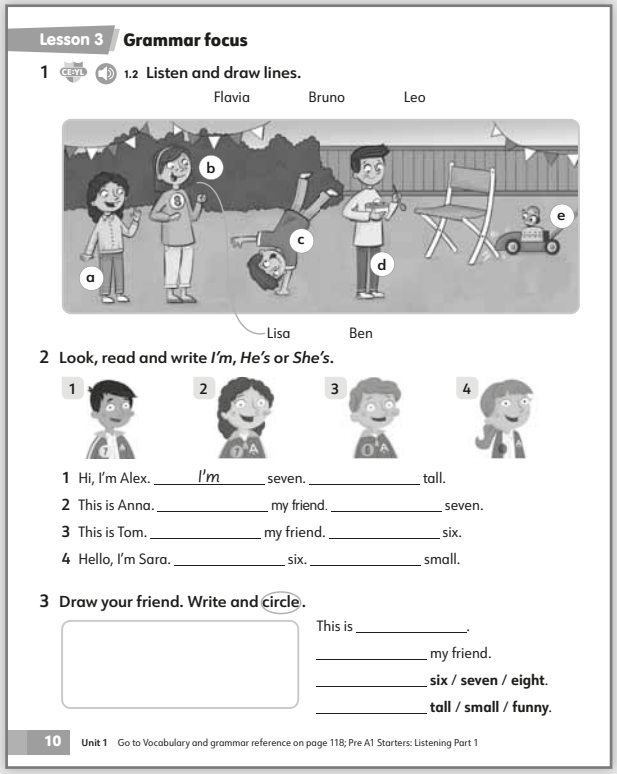
Pairwork

- Some children will find talking to the whole class too challenging. Most children are happy talking in pairs or a small group. For the previous activity:
- Read out the directions and confirm the children's understanding.
- Divide the class into pairs. At this point the children may have not established friend groups, so use this opportunity to support shy children by encouraging pairwork with more extroverted children.
- Encourage the children to help each other if there are difficulties.

Cooler: Work with more friends

- Have the children play the game with new partners or in small groups. You may also wish to elicit new sentences from pairs or small groups to challenge the rest of the class.
- Ask the children to repeat the activity using the characters in the picture on Pupil's Book page 8.

Workbook page 10



Lesson 3 **Grammar focus**

1 CE:YL 1.2 Listen and draw lines.

Flavia Bruno Leo

Lisa Ben

2 Look, read and write *I'm, He's* or *She's*.

1 Hi, I'm Alex. *I'm* seven. _____ tall.
2 This is Anna. _____ my friend. _____ seven.
3 This is Tom. _____ my friend. _____ six.
4 Hello, I'm Sara. _____ six. _____ small.

3 Draw your friend. Write and circle.

This is _____.
_____ my friend.
_____ **six / seven / eight**.
_____ **tall / small / funny**.

10 Unit 1 Go to Vocabulary and grammar reference on page 118; Pre A1 Starters: Listening Part 1

Grammar reference:

Remind the children that they can refer to the grammar reference on page 118 to help them when completing these activities.

1 CE:YL 1.2 Listen and draw lines.

- This activity helps the children prepare for Part 1 of the Listening paper of the Cambridge English: Pre A1 Starters test. The children listen, look and draw lines.
- Go through the example first. Point to Lisa and trace the line with your finger. Give the children time to look at the picture, then listen and draw lines for the rest of the activity.
- Invite different children to offer their responses and have the rest of the class call out *yes* or *no*.
- (To help prepare for this part of the test, the children need plenty of practice in recognising numbers and the item vocabulary.)

Audioscript

1 *Hello! I'm Lisa. I'm eight years old. I'm tall.*
2 *This is Bruno. He's tall too.*
3 *This is my friend Ben. He's eight too. He's funny!*
4 *This is Flavia. She's six. She's small.*
5 *... and this is Leo. He's a robot. He's small and funny!*

Answers: 1 Lisa, b **2** Bruno, d **3** Ben, c **4** Flavia, a **5** Leo, e

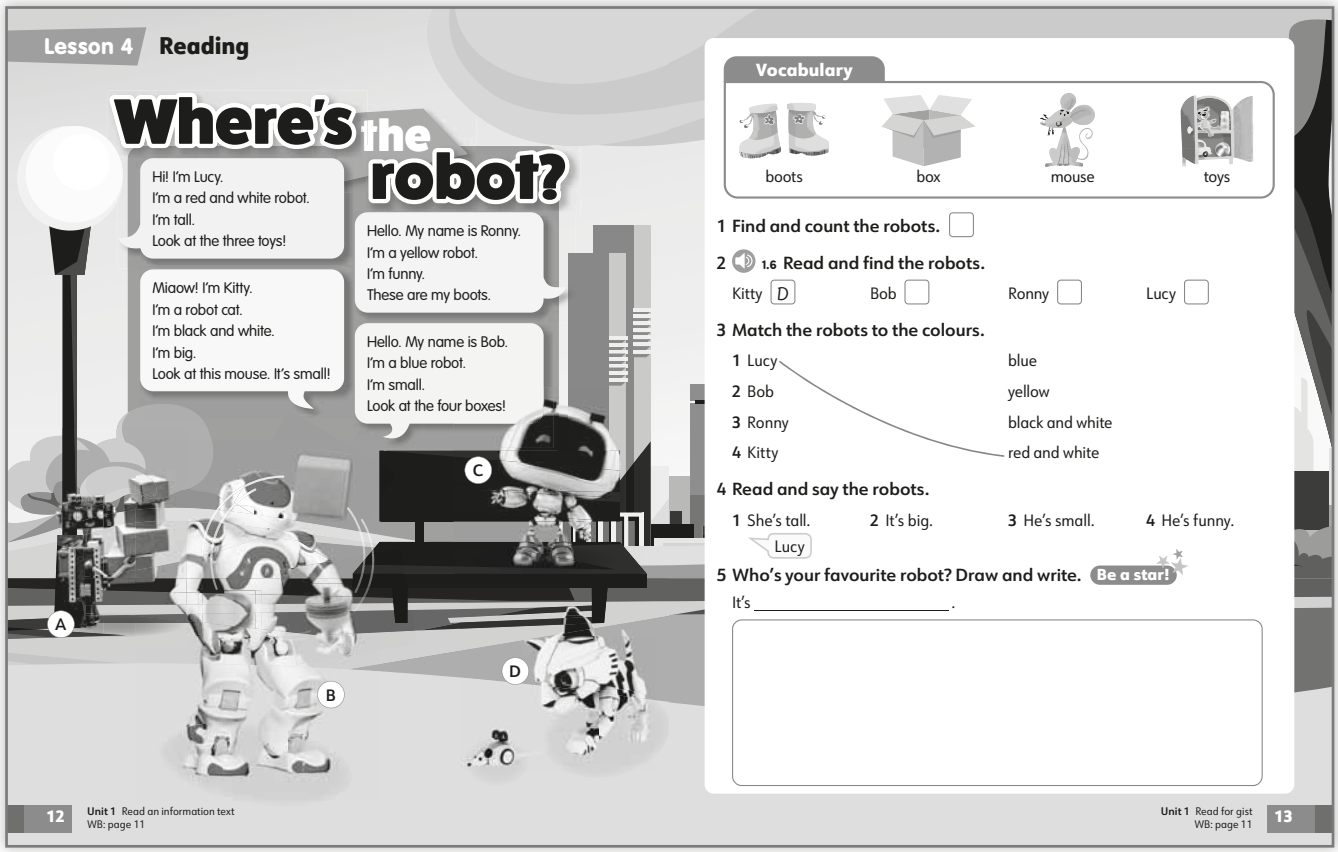
2 Look, read and write *I'm, He's* or *She's*.

Answers: 1 I'm, I'm **2** She's, She's **3** He's, He's **4** I'm, I'm

3 Draw your friend. Write and circle.

Answers: Children's own answers.

Pupil's Book 12–13



Learning objectives: Read an information text; Read for gist

Vocabulary: boots, box, mouse, toys

Review vocabulary: adjectives; big, blue, funny, robot, small, tall

Resources: Flashcards; Vocabulary worksheet 2

Materials: a photocopied page with the words *I'm, He's, She's, small, tall, funny, my friend, a teacher, six, a boy, a girl* on it in random order (one copy per group of three children)

Warm-up: Finger stepping stones

- Using your photocopied sheet (see Materials above), enlarged if possible, show the children how to 'walk' their fingers around the page, making sentences, e.g. *I'm tall. She's my friend. He's funny. Have them repeat the sentences you make.*
- Divide the class into groups of three and give a photocopy to each group.
- The children take turns to walk their fingers around the page and make sentences for their partners to say.

Vocabulary

- Refer the children to the vocabulary panel on the top of page 13. Read out the words for the class to repeat. Elicit that these are names for objects that are described in the text.
- If a child in your class if wearing boots, you may wish to point the items out to the class. Similarly, you may wish to point out a box or a selection of toys you may have in your classroom.

1 Find and count the robots.

- Refer the children to the robots on page 12 and ask *How many robots?* Hold up your book and count them as a class.

Answer: 5 robots (robots A, B, C and D and the robot mouse)

2 1.6 Read and find the robots.

- Have the children look at the pictures again. For each one, call out the names of the four robots, Ronny, Lucy, Kitty and Bob, and have the children raise their hands for the robot they think is shown in the picture.
- Now have the children scan the texts to find the names of the robots.
- Play the audio while the children follow in their books. When they see / hear the name of the robot, they raise their hands.
- Now allow the children a minute or two to quietly read the texts individually.

Answers: Kitty D **Bob** A **Ronny** C **Lucy** B

Teaching star!

Reading

For children who are learning to read (especially in a new alphabet), relating the sounds of words to spelling is a help. For an alternative approach to Activity 2:

- Say the names of the robots for the children to repeat.
- Play the audio for each part of the text while the children follow in their books. Have them say *Stop!* when they hear a robot's name. Then have them point to the word on the page and repeat the name of the robot.

3 Match the robots to the colours.

- Refer the children to the example. Show them the name *Lucy* in the text along with the words *red* and *white*.
- Have the children follow the same procedure to complete the activity.
- For feedback, call out the colours and elicit the robot.

Answers: 1 red and white **2** blue **3** yellow **4** black and white

4 Read and say the robots.

- Ask the children to look at the pictures and think about what each robot looks like.
- Give them a few minutes to think and then call out *Lucy*, *Bob*, *Ronny*, *Kitty*, in turn. Have the children raise their hands for the robot they choose for each description.
- Invite some children to say why (they may need to use L1 to explain their ideas).

Answers: 1 Lucy **2** Kitty **3** Bob **4** Ronny

5 Who's your favourite robot? Draw and write.

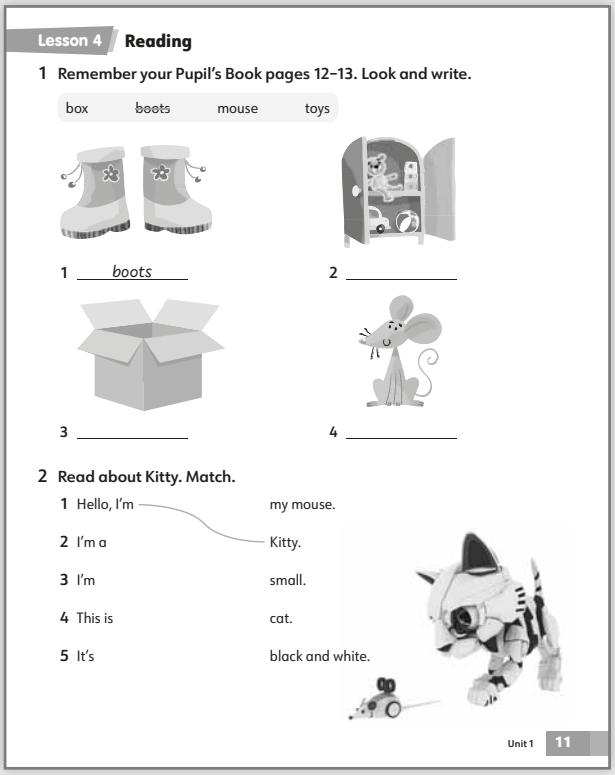
Be a star!

- Ask the children to write down the name of their favourite robot and draw a picture of it.

Cooler: Join in!

- Read out the text for each picture, and encourage the children to join in saying the key words. Indicate the key words by raising a hand as if conducting the class. (Key words: *Bob – blue, small, box; Lucy – red, white, tall, toys; Ronny – yellow, funny, boots: Kitty – black, white, big, mouse, small.*)
- Repeat so that the children become more confident joining in.

Workbook page 11


Lesson 4 Reading

1 Remember your Pupil's Book pages 12–13. Look and write.

box ~~boots~~ mouse toys

1 boots 2 _____

3 _____ 4 _____

2 Read about Kitty. Match.

1 Hello, I'm — Kitty.
2 I'm a — cat.
3 I'm — small.
4 This is — my mouse.
5 It's — black and white.

Unit 1 11

1 Remember your Pupil's Book pages 12–13. Look and write.

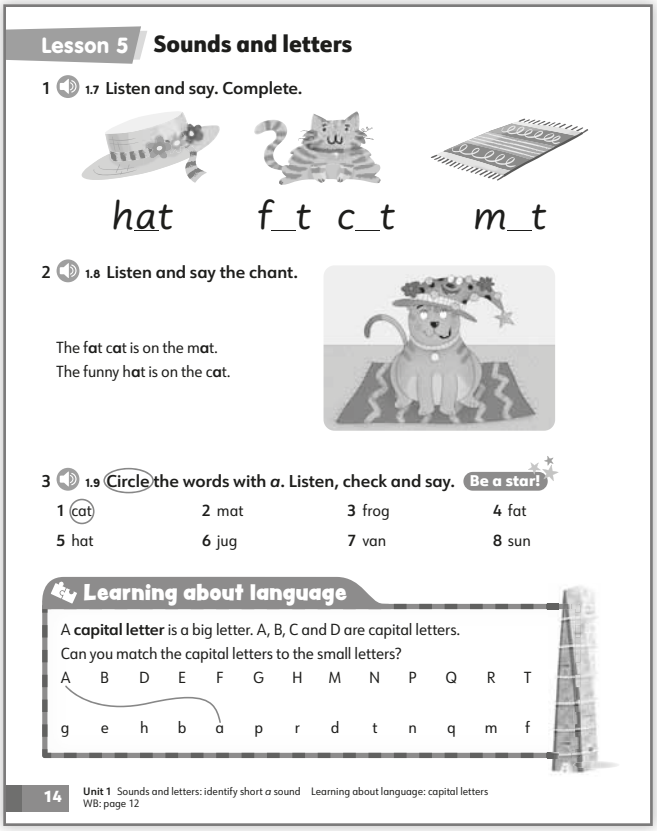
Answers: 1 boots **2** toys **3** box **4** mouse

2 Read about Kitty. Match.

Answers: 1 Kitty. **2** cat. **3** black and white. **4** my mouse. **5** small.

Lesson 5 Sounds and letters

Pupil's Book page 14


Lesson 5 Sounds and letters

1 1.7 Listen and say. Complete.

h<u>a</u>t f_t c_t m_t

2 1.8 Listen and say the chant.

The f**a**t c**a**t is on the m**a**t.
The funny h**a**t is on the c**a**t.

3 1.9 Circle the words with *a*. Listen, check and say. Be a star!

1 cat 2 mat 3 frog 4 fat
5 hat 6 jug 7 van 8 sun

Learning about language

A **capital letter** is a big letter. A, B, C and D are capital letters.
Can you match the capital letters to the small letters?

A B D E F G H M N P Q R T
g e h b a p r d t n q m f

14 Unit 1 Sounds and letters: identify short *a* sound Learning about language: capital letters
WB: page 12

Learning objectives: Sounds and letters: identify short *a* sound; Learning about language: capital letters

Sounds and letters words: cat, fat, hat, mat

Resources: Sounds and letters worksheet

Warm-up: The shark game

- Play *The shark game* (see the Games bank, pages 14–15) with key words from Lesson 4, e.g. *boots, box toys, mouse, funny, tall, small.*

1 1.7 Listen and say. Complete.

- Refer the children to the pictures. Ask if they know the names of any of these things.
- Play the audio for the children to repeat the words chorally. Do this twice.
- Point to the a in the word hat in your book. Ask *What's this letter?* (*a*) *What's the sound?* (/æ/)
- Write a big, clear *a* on the board as a model for the children. Have them complete the four words.

Audioscript

/æ/ /æ/ /æ/ hat
/æ/ /æ/ /æ/ fat cat
/æ/ /æ/ /æ/ mat

Answers: hat, fat cat, mat

2 1.8 Listen and say the chant.

- Play the chant and have the children follow in their books. Have them raise their hands every time they see / hear a word with *a*. Show them how this works with the first line of the chant. Then go back and start again from the beginning.
- Play the chant again, pausing after each line for the children to repeat. Pay particular attention to the *a* sound.
- Play the chant once more and have the children join in as much as they can.
- Have the children say the chant round the class, one word each. See how fast they can say it!

3 1.9 Circle the words with *a*. Listen, check and say. Be a star!

- Ask the children how many words they can see with the letter *a* (there are five).
- Have them circle the words with *a*.
- Ask the children which words they circled and play the audio to confirm.
- Play the audio again for the children to repeat the words chorally and then individually to check pronunciation.

Audioscript

cat, cat, mat, mat, fat, fat, hat, hat, van, van

Answers: cat, mat, fat, hat, van

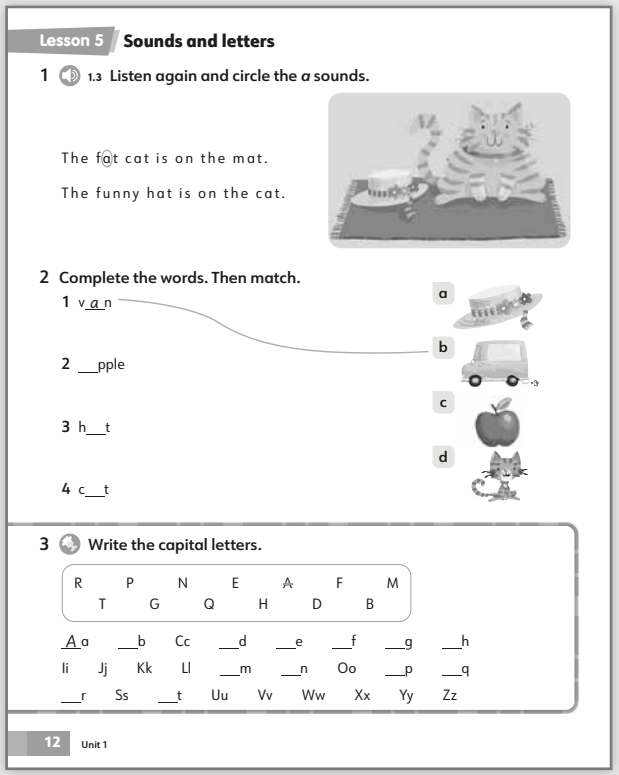
Learning about language

- Write a big capital *A* and a smaller lower case *a* on the board. Ask the children what the difference is.
- If the children use a different alphabet in their own language which also distinguishes between capital and small letters, this can help reinforce the concept.
- Write the two lines of letters from the Learning about language box on the board and link *A* and *a*. Now point to *B* and move your pen along the bottom line until you reach *b*. Ask *Yes* or *no*? for each letter you pass. Repeat for D–d.
- Have the children match the letters in their books. Then invite individual children to come to the board and join pairs of letters. Ask for whole-class agreement each time.

Cooler: Physical spelling

- Play *Physical spelling* (see the Games bank, pages 14–15) with the key words from this lesson: *fat, cat, hat, mat, funny, frog, capital.*

Workbook page 12



Lesson 5 **Sounds and letters**

1 1.3 **Listen again and circle the *a* sounds.**

The f@t cat is on the mat.

The funny hat is on the cat.

2 **Complete the words. Then match.**

1 v_a_n

2 __pple

3 h__t

4 c__t

a

b

c

d

3 **Write the capital letters.**

R P N E A F M
T G Q H D B

_A_a __b Cc __d __e __f __g __h
Ii Jj Kk Ll __m __n Oo __p __q
__r Ss __t Uu Vv Ww Xx Yy Zz

12 Unit 1

1 1.3 Listen again and circle the *a* sounds.

Answers: The f@t c@t is on the m@t. The funny h@t is on the c@t.

2 Complete the words. Then match.

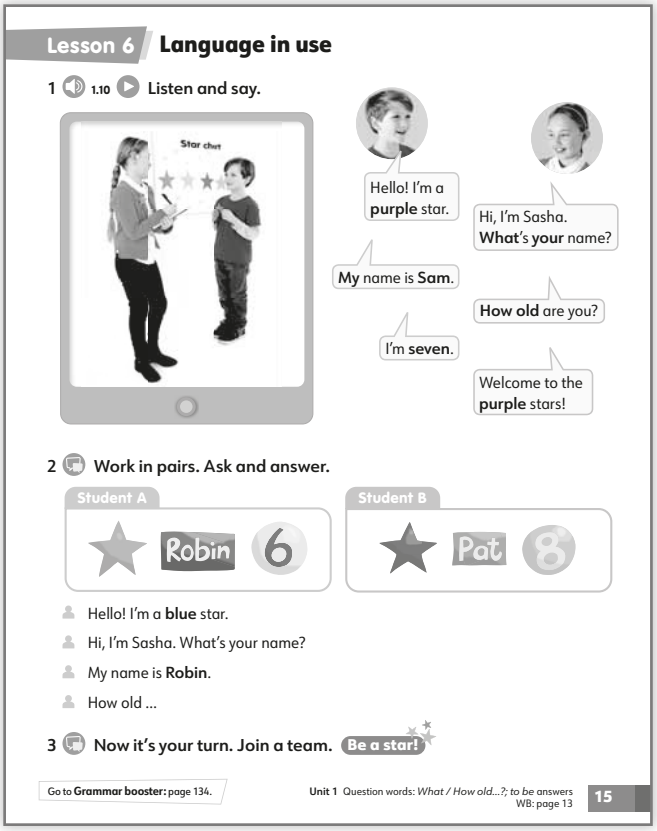
Answers: 1 van – b **2** apple – c **3** hat – a **4** cat – d

3 Write the capital letters.

Answers: A, B, D, E, F, G, H, M, N, P, Q, R, T

Lesson 6 Language in use

Pupil's Book page 15



Learning objectives: Question words: *What / How old ...?; to be* answers

Review vocabulary: colours, numbers

Resources: Language in use video; Grammar worksheet 2

Materials: sheets of paper, coloured pencils (including purple, blue, red and green), scissors

1.8 Warm-up: Say the chant again

- Using mime if necessary to prompt them, ask the children to recall the chant from Lesson 5. Then play the audio to see how well they remembered. Write it on the board.
- Have the whole class say the chant together.

1 1.10 Listen and say.

- Play the audio and have the children follow in their books.
- Play the audio again and have the children repeat each question and answer. Have them imitate the intonation as closely as possible. Pay particular attention to the pronunciation of *How old are you?* as this is difficult for some children.
- If using the video, play it and let the children watch and enjoy it.
- Play the video again and stop after each question. Elicit the answer from the children. Play the video to confirm and have them all repeat.
- Now play the video one more time and have the children repeat the questions and answers. Encourage them to imitate the intonation and body language as closely as possible.

2 Work in pairs. Ask and answer.

- Ask *What can you see in the boxes?* Explain that this is information about two children – Students A and B.
- Refer the children to the example beginning of the dialogue. Point out that it is the same dialogue as in Activity 1, but the blue words are changed for the items in the boxes.
- Roleplay the dialogue with a confident child for the class to see how it works.
- Divide the class into pairs to make new dialogues with the pictures in the boxes.
- Invite any volunteer pairs to perform their dialogue for the class.

3 1.10 Now it's your turn. Join a team.

Be a star!

- Have each child draw a star on a separate piece of paper. Ask them to choose a colour from purple, blue, red and green (but not to tell their friends), colour the star, and then cut it out.
- Play the audio one more time for the children to repeat chorally.
- The children stand up, take their star with them and use the dialogue to form into their 'teams'. Teach them how to say *Sorry, I'm a (red) star* at the end of the dialogue if their classmate has a different colour. Check that the children are using the questions and not just grouping by colour!
- When they have all found a team, count the number of children in each team. Which is the most popular team / star colour?

Grammar booster

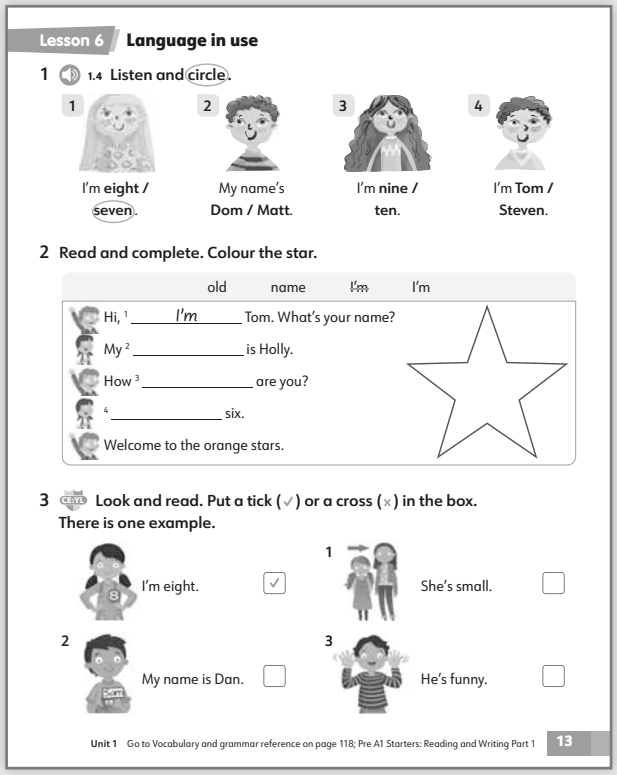
For additional practice, ask the children to turn to page 134 of their Pupil's Book to complete Activity 2. You may also wish to have the children complete this activity at home.

Answers: 1 b **2** c **3** a

Cooler: Disappearing dialogue

- Write on the board:
  Hi, I'm Sasha. What's your name?
  My name is Sam.
  How old are you?
  I'm seven.
- Have the children read out the dialogue. Now delete several words from the dialogue and have the children read it out again, remembering the complete version.
- Delete some more words and then finally all the words. The children recite the dialogue from an empty board. This is challenging for the children but very satisfying!

Workbook page 13


Lesson 6 Language in use

1 1.4 Listen and circle.

1 I'm **eight** / seven. 2 My name's **Dom** / **Matt**. 3 I'm **nine** / **ten**. 4 I'm **Tom** / **Steven**.

2 Read and complete. Colour the star.

old name ~~I'm~~ I'm

Hi, 1 I'm Tom. What's your name?
My 2 _____ is Holly.
How 3 _____ are you?
4 _____ six.
Welcome to the orange stars.

3 CE:YL Look and read. Put a tick (✓) or a cross (×) in the box. There is one example.

I'm eight. ✓
1 She's small.
2 My name is Dan.
3 He's funny.

Unit 1 Go to Vocabulary and grammar reference on page 118; Pre A1 Starters: Reading and Writing Part 1 13

Grammar reference:

Remind the children that they can refer to the grammar reference on page 118 to help them when completing these activities.

1 1.4 Listen and circle.

Audioscript

1 *My name is Annie. I'm seven.*

2 *What's your name?*
My name's Dom.

3 *How old are you?*
I'm nine.

4 *Hi, I'm Greta. What's your name?*
I'm Tom.

Answers: 1 seven **2** Dom **3** nine **4** Tom

2 Read and complete. Colour the star.

Answers: 1 I'm **2** name **3** old **4** I'm

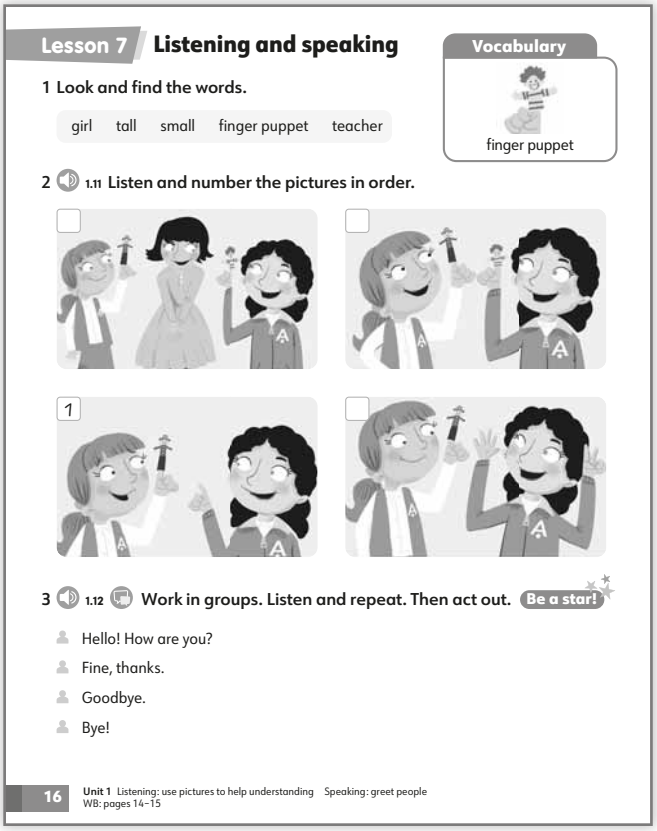
3 CE:YL Look and read. Put a tick (✓) or a cross (✗) in the box. There is one example.

- This activity helps the children prepare for Part 1 of the Reading and Writing paper of the Cambridge English: Pre A1 Starters test. The children look, read and tick or cross the boxes.
- If done in class, go through the example first, pointing to the tick for *yes*.
- Point to the other pictures and read out the sentences. Have the children answer *yes* or *no*. Then give them some quiet time to read and tick or cross the boxes accordingly.
- Invite different children to read out the sentences and have the rest of the class call out *yes* or *no*. Write the ticks and crosses on the board next to the corresponding number.
- To help prepare for this part of the test, the children need plenty of practice in recognising and naming items.)

Answers: 1 ✗ **2** ✗ **3** ✓

Lesson 7 Listening and speaking

Pupil's Book page 16


Lesson 7 Listening and speaking

1 Look and find the words.

girl tall small finger puppet teacher

Vocabulary

finger puppet

2 1.11 Listen and number the pictures in order.

3 1.12 Work in groups. Listen and repeat. Then act out. Be a star!

Hello! How are you?

Fine, thanks.

Goodbye.

Bye!

16 Unit 1 Listening: use pictures to help understanding Speaking: greet people
WB: pages 14–15

Learning objectives: Listening: use pictures to help understanding; Speaking: greet people

Vocabulary: finger puppet, girl, small, tall, teacher

Resources: Vocabulary worksheet 2

Materials: sheets of paper; pencils

1.10 Warm-up: What's the next word?

- Play *What's the next word?* (see the Games Bank, pages 14–15) using the dialogue from Lesson 6. (Suggested key words: *I'm, star, your, name, is, old, stars*).

1 Look and find the words.

- Read out the first word in the word box, *girl*, and have the children find and point to the girls they can see in the pictures.
- Now have the children work in pairs to read and find the other words in the pictures.
- Finish by having them all point as you call out the words.

2 1.11 Listen and number the pictures in order.

- Play the first part of the audio and elicit or tell the children that this corresponds to the third picture, and point to the example number 1.
- Now play the remaining sections, pausing after each one for the children to find the correct picture. Play again if necessary.
- Point to the pictures and ask *What number is this?* The children call out the numbers.

Audioscript

1	***Sara:***	*Let's play with the puppets. Hello. I'm Tina. I'm tall.*
	Anna:	*Hi, Tina. I'm Anna.*
2	***Sara:***	*How old are you, Anna?*
	Anna:	*I'm seven.*
3	***Anna:***	*I'm Frank.*
	Sara:	*You're small.*
4	***Sara and Anna:***	*Hello, Teacher!*
	Teacher:	*Hello, puppets. How are you?*
	Sara and Anna:	*Fine, thanks.*
	Teacher:	*Goodbye!*

Answers: (clockwise from top left) 4, 3, 2, 1

Teaching star!

1.11 Mixed ability classes

Adapt Activity 2 if some children need more support.

- Play the audio and have the class decide on the correct order. Write the numbers on the board in the same pattern and have the children number the boxes.
- Now play the audio again, and have all the children do the actions for each part. This way all children can be successfully involved in listening and reacting to the audio.

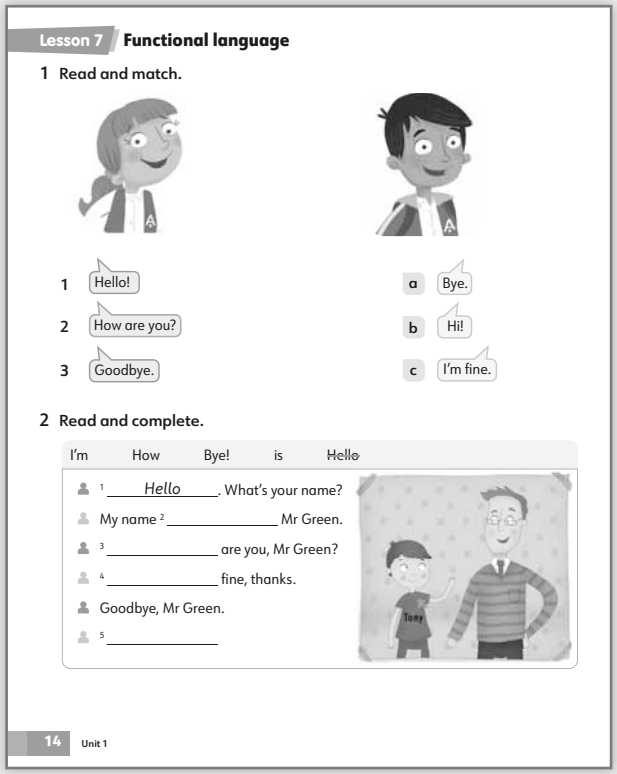
3 1.12 Work in groups. Listen and repeat. Then act out. Be a star!

- Play the audio, pausing for the children to repeat each line quietly to themselves. Play it again for the children to repeat chorally. Practise the pronunciation of *How are you?* if necessary.
- The children practise the dialogue with a partner. Now ask them to turn around and do the same with a different person. Then have them remain seated and change partners again. They will need to speak more loudly and enunciate clearly to make themselves heard if their new partner is further away!

Cooler: Finger puppets

- Have the children make a 'finger puppet' on a small piece of paper.
- Elicit and practise the questions *What's your name? How are you? How old are you?*.
- The children talk to a friend with their finger puppets.

Workbook page 14



Lesson 7 **Functional language**

1 Read and match.

1 Hello! — a Bye.
2 How are you? — b Hi!
3 Goodbye. — c I'm fine.

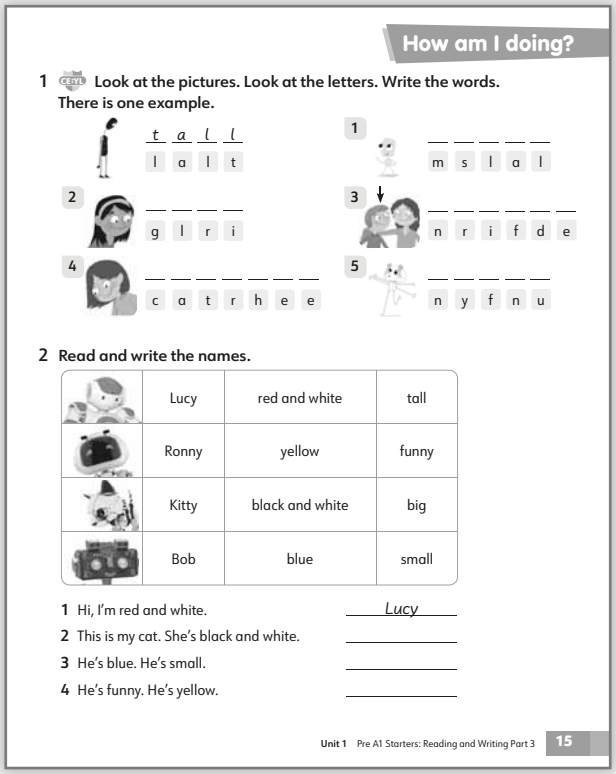
2 Read and complete.

I'm How Bye! is ~~Hello~~

1 *Hello*. What's your name?
My name 2 _____ Mr Green.
3 _____ are you, Mr Green?
4 _____ fine, thanks.
Goodbye, Mr Green.
5 _____

14 Unit 1

Workbook page 15



How am I doing?

1 CE:YL Look at the pictures. Look at the letters. Write the words. There is one example.

t a l l
l a l t

1 m s l a l
2 g l r i
3 n r i f d e
4 c a t r h e e
5 n y f n u

2 Read and write the names.

	Lucy	red and white	tall
	Ronny	yellow	funny
	Kitty	black and white	big
	Bob	blue	small

1 Hi, I'm red and white. *Lucy*
2 This is my cat. She's black and white. _____
3 He's blue. He's small. _____
4 He's funny. He's yellow. _____

Unit 1 Pre A1 Starters: Reading and Writing Part 3 15

1 Read and match.

Answers: 1 b **2** c **3** a

2 Read and complete.

Answers: 1 Hello **2** is **3** How **4** I'm **5** Bye!

1 CE:YL Look at the pictures. Look at the letters. Write the words. There is one example.

- This activity helps the children prepare for Part 3 of the Reading and Writing paper of the Cambridge English: Pre A1 Starters test. The children use the letters to make the words illustrated in the pictures.
- Elicit the names of the objects chorally.
- Go through the example. Then elicit the correct spelling of number 1. Write it on the board.
- The children continue individually and then check with a friend.
- Invite different children to write the words on the board, asking for whole-class agreement each time.
- (To help prepare for this part of the test, the children need plenty of practice in spelling.)

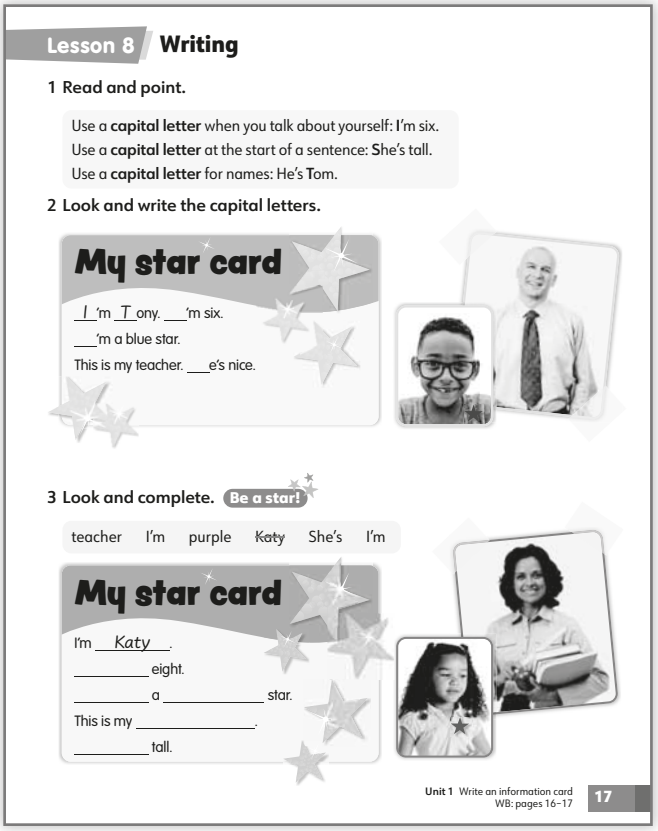
Answers: 1 small **2** girl **3** friend **4** teacher **5** funny

2 Read and write the names.

Answers: 1 Lucy **2** Kitty **3** Bob **4** Ronny

Lesson 8 Writing

Pupil's Book page 17



Lesson 8 Writing

1 Read and point.

Use a **capital letter** when you talk about yourself: I'm six.
Use a **capital letter** at the start of a sentence: She's tall.
Use a **capital letter** for names: He's Tom.

2 Look and write the capital letters.

My star card

_I_'m _T_ony. ___'m six.
___'m a blue star.
This is my teacher. ___e's nice.

3 Look and complete. Be a star!

teacher I'm purple ~~Katy~~ She's I'm

My star card

I'm __Katy__.
_____ eight.
_____ a _____ star.
This is my _____.
_____ tall.

Unit 1 Write an information card
WB: pages 16–17 17

Learning objectives: Use capital letters; Write an information card

Resources: Unit 1 test

Warm-up: Simon says

- Play *Simon says* (see the Games bank, pages 14–15) with recent words and phrases: *tall, small, funny, hello, goodbye, I'm fine, thanks*. Agree on suitable mimes with the class before starting, e.g. *tall* – reach up high, *small* – crouch down close to the ground, *funny* – make a funny face, *hello* – wave hello (moving forward), *goodbye* – wave goodbye (turning away), *I'm fine, thanks* – a positive gesture (e.g. smiling whilst speaking).

1 Read and point.

- Invite volunteers to read out the sentences in the box. While they are doing this, write the example sentences on the board with the capital letters in a different colour (blue, if possible, like the book).
- Read out the sentences and point to the capital letters.
- Ask the children to find the other capital letters in this activity (the capital U at the beginning of each sentence).

2 Look and write the capital letters.

- Refer the children to the picture next to the first star card. Ask *What's the boy's name? (Tony) What colour is his star?* (*blue*) Ask the children who they think the man is (*the teacher*).
- Elicit the complete sentences and write them on the board. As you come to the capital letters, ask *Capital or small letter?* Do the same with some of the small letters so that the children think carefully.
- The children copy the finished text into their books.

Answers: My star card
I'm Tony.
I'm six.
I'm a blue star.
This is my teacher. He's nice.

3 Look and complete.

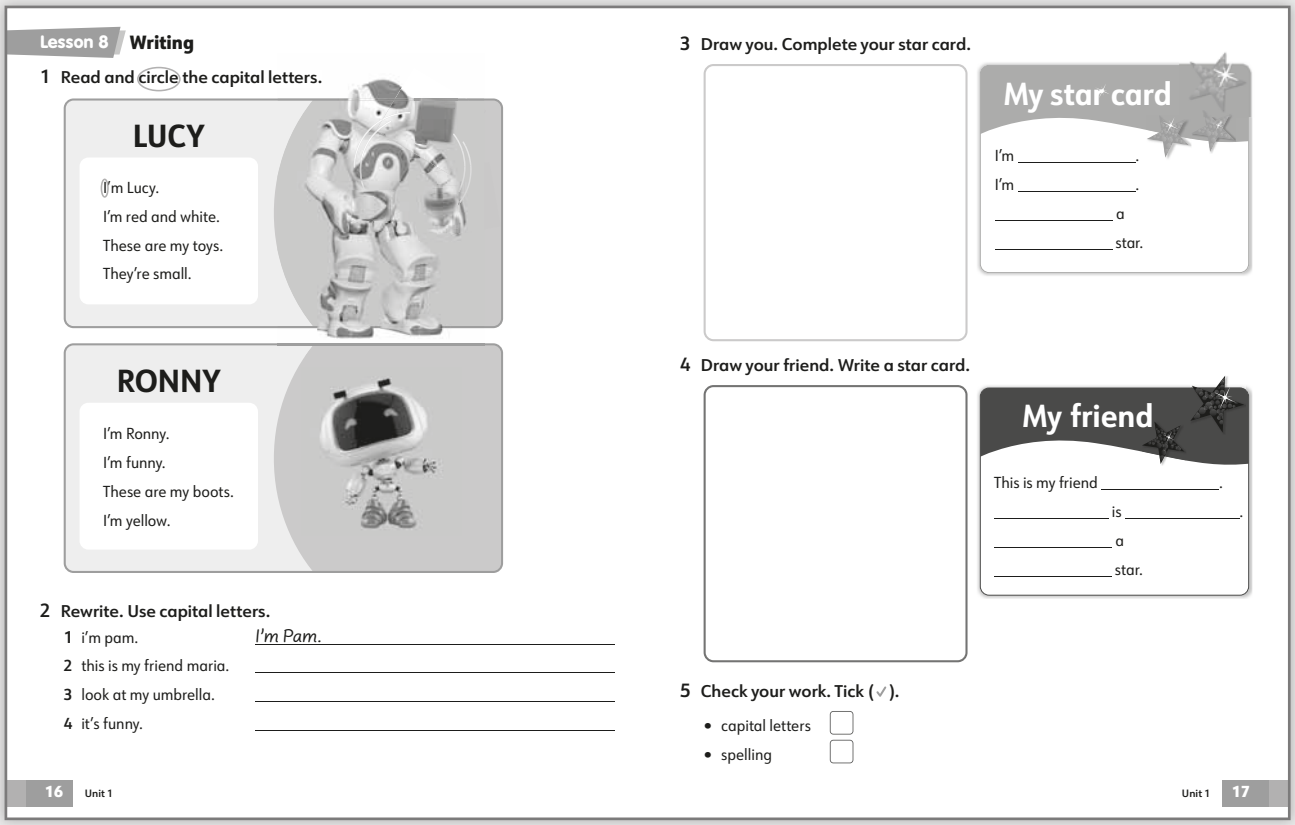
Be a star!

- Refer the children to the picture next to the star card. Ask *What's the girl's name?* (*Katy*) *What colour is her star?* (*purple*) Ask the children who they think the woman is (*the teacher*).
- Give the children time to look at the text of the star card and think about their answers for the gaps. At this point, ask them not to write.
- Now elicit answers for the gaps and write the text on the board. As above, ask *Capital or small letter?* for the capitals and some of the other letters.
- Have the children copy the completed text into their books.

Answers: My star card
I'm Katy.
I'm eight.
I'm a purple star.
This is my teacher.
She's tall.

Cooler: Stand up, sit down

- Tell the children you will say some sentences. If the sentence is true for them, they stand up. If it is false for them, they sit down. They can stand up again for the next true sentence. (Possible sentences to use: *I'm five. I'm six. I'm seven. I'm tall. I'm small. I'm funny. I'm a boy. I'm a girl. I'm a robot! I'm a teacher.*)



Lesson 8 **Writing**

1 Read and circle the capital letters.

LUCY

I'm Lucy.
I'm red and white.
These are my toys.
They're small.

RONNY

I'm Ronny.
I'm funny.
These are my boots.
I'm yellow.

2 Rewrite. Use capital letters.

1 i'm pam. *I'm Pam.*
2 this is my friend maria. _____
3 look at my umbrella. _____
4 it's funny. _____

3 Draw you. Complete your star card.

My star card

I'm _____.
I'm _____.
_____ a
_____ star.

4 Draw your friend. Write a star card.

My friend

This is my friend _____.
_____ is _____.
_____ a
_____ star.

5 Check your work. Tick (✓).

- capital letters ☐
- spelling ☐

16 Unit 1

Unit 1 17

1 Read and circle the capital letters.

- The children read the texts and find and circle all the capital letters.

Answers:
Ⓘ'm Ⓛucy. Ⓘ'm Ⓡonny.
Ⓘ'm red and white. Ⓘ'm funny.
Ⓣhese are my toys. Ⓣhese are my boots.
Ⓣhey're small. Ⓘ'm yellow.

2 Rewrite. Use capital letters.

- The children rewrite the sentences using capital letters where appropriate.

Answers: 1 I'm Pam. **2** This is my friend Maria. **3** Look at my umbrella. **4** It's funny.

3 Draw you. Complete your star card.

- The children complete their star card with their own information.

Answers: Children's own answers.

4 Draw your friend. Write a star card.

- The children draw a picture of a friend. They then write a star card for their friend.

Answers: Children's own answers.

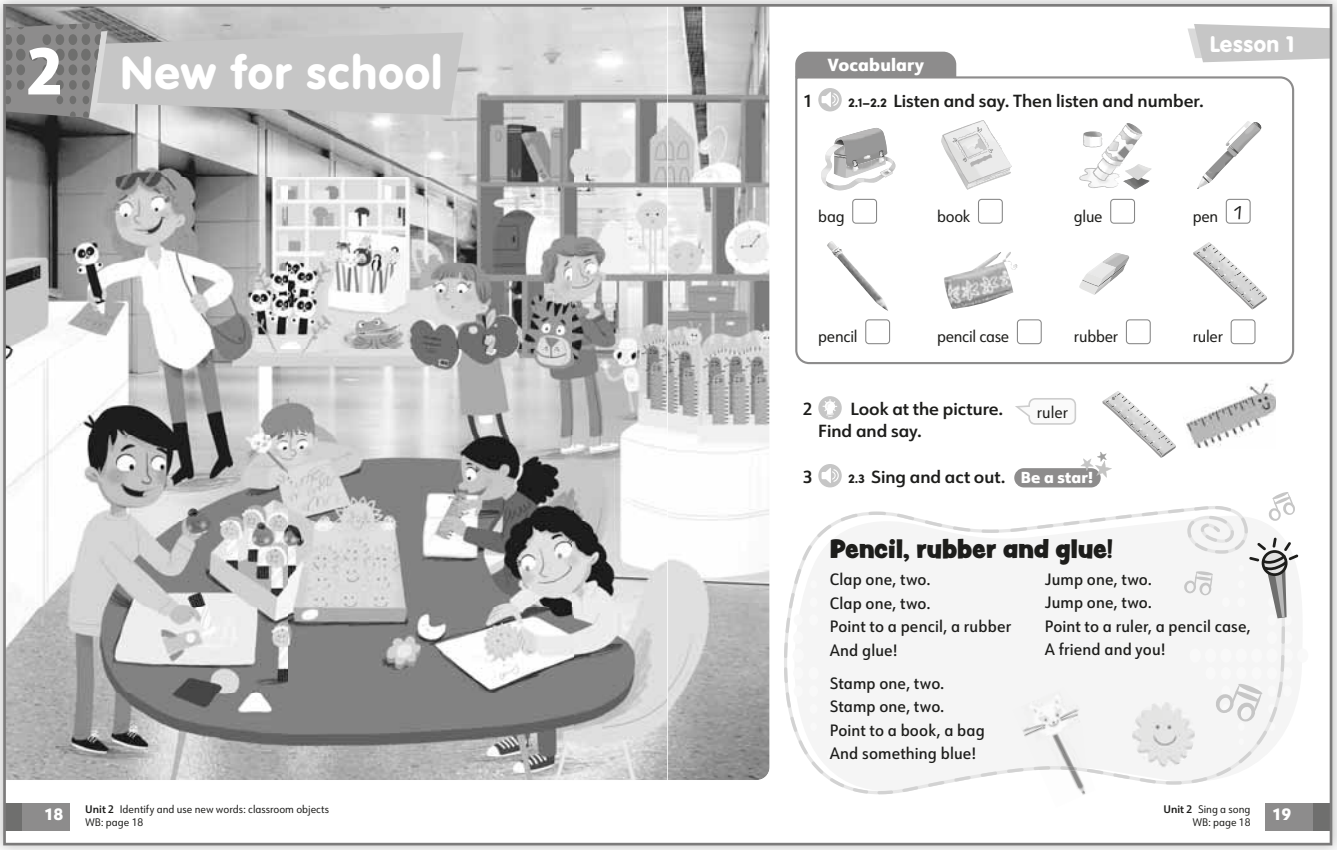
5 Check your work. Tick (✓).

- The children use the check list to make sure their work is complete and correct.

2 New for school

Lesson 1 Vocabulary

Pupil's Book pages 18–19



Learning objectives: Identify and use new words: classroom objects; Sing a song using the target vocabulary

Vocabulary: bag, book, glue, pen, pencil, pencil case, rubber, ruler

Resources: Flashcards; Vocabulary worksheet 1

Materials: a selection of classroom objects

Warm-up: The big picture

- Refer the class to the picture on page 18 and elicit the children's names. Ask what they can see in the picture. (They should be able to name and count the *frogs, tigers, pandas, suns*.)
- Ask the children where they think this is (a classroom supplies / stationery shop) – the children may need to share some ideas in L1 at this stage. Ask the children to find Bot (he's next to Tom).

1 2.1 Listen and say.

- Play the audio. Have the children listen and point to the pictures.
- Play the audio again. The children point and repeat.

2.2 Then listen and number.

- Play the audio, pausing after the first word to point out the example answer.
- Play the rest of the audio for the children to number the words.
- For feedback, say each number and have the class call out the word.
- Now, if you have downloaded the flashcards, show them one by one and elicit the words chorally and then individually to check pronunciation. Alternatively, call out the numbers and do the same.

Audioscript

1 *pen,* ***2*** *book,* ***3*** *bag,* ***4*** *pencil case,* ***5*** *pencil,* ***6*** *ruler,* ***7*** *rubber,* ***8*** *glue*

Answers: bag – 3, book – 2, glue – 8, pen – 1, pencil – 5, pencil case – 4, rubber – 7, ruler – 6

2 Look at the picture. Find and say.

- Hold up your book and point to the ruler in Activity 1 and say *ruler*. Now look for the ruler in the big picture (the girl in the purple shirt is using one). When you find it, say *Look! Ruler.*
- Name another object, e.g. *book*, and have the children find and point to the book that Sara is holding. Prompt them to say *Look! Book*.
- Ask the children to find the other objects in the same way. While they do this, circulate and help them as necessary.
- Then say the names of the objects one by one and have the children point and say, e.g. *Look!* (*Pen.*) Point to the head of the pen and ask *What is it?* to elicit (*Panda*) from the class. Continue with the other objects, eliciting the names of the animals they saw in the Welcome Unit. If you wish, you could teach them *baby* (glue) and *caterpillar* (ruler), too.

Teaching star!

Extra activity

Some children learn better when they carry out physical activities, so it is useful to vary techniques for practising vocabulary.

- Mime taking a pencil case out of your bag, unzip it, take something out and zip it closed again. Hold up the imaginary object and have the children guess what it is.
- Divide the class into pairs to continue the mime game.

3 2.3 Sing and act out.

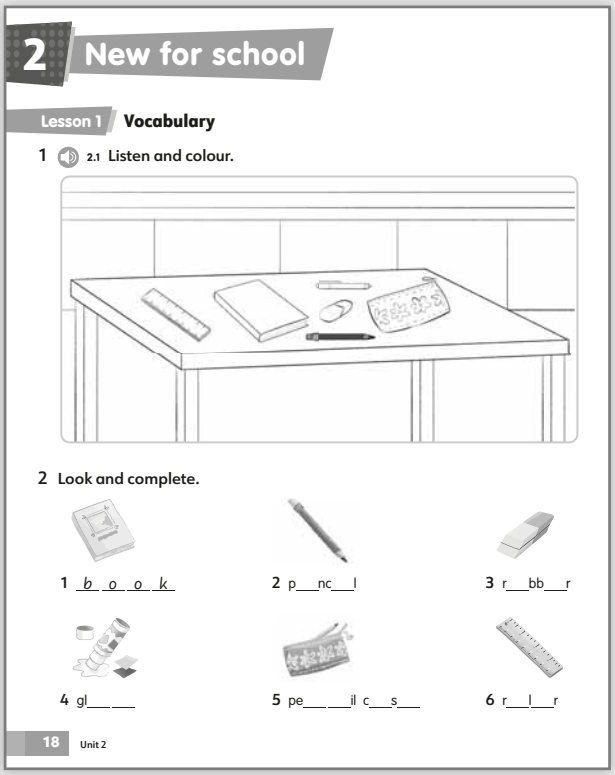
Be a star!

- Ask the children to turn their Pupil's Book face down. Explain that they will hear a song and that they should raise their hands every time they hear one of the words from Activity 1.
- Play the song while the children follow in their books. Encourage them to join in with the actions *clap, stamp* and *jump*.
- Play the song again. Explain that when the classroom objects are mentioned, the children should point to the objects they can see in the classroom.
- Finally, play the song and have the children do the actions, point and sing. (This is very challenging, but all the children can join in with the key words, if not the whole song!).

Cooler: What's different?

- Put five classroom objects on your table. Tell the children you will change the position of two objects while they turn away. They have to say the names of the objects that have changed.
- Continue with different selections of objects.

Workbook page 18


2 New for school

Lesson 1 Vocabulary

1 2.1 Listen and colour.

2 Look and complete.

1 b o o k

2 p___nc___l

3 r___bb___r

4 gl___ ___

5 pe___ ___il c___s___

6 r___l___r

18 Unit 2

1 2.1 Listen and colour.

Audioscript

1 *Look, a pencil. Colour the pencil black.*

2 *Can you see a book?*
Yes, I can.
Colour the book red.

3 *Look, a pen. Colour the pen yellow.*

4 *Can you see a rubber?*
Yes, I can.
Colour the rubber orange.

5 *Can you see a pencil case?*
Yes, I can.
Colour the pencil case purple.

6 *Look, a ruler. Colour the ruler green.*

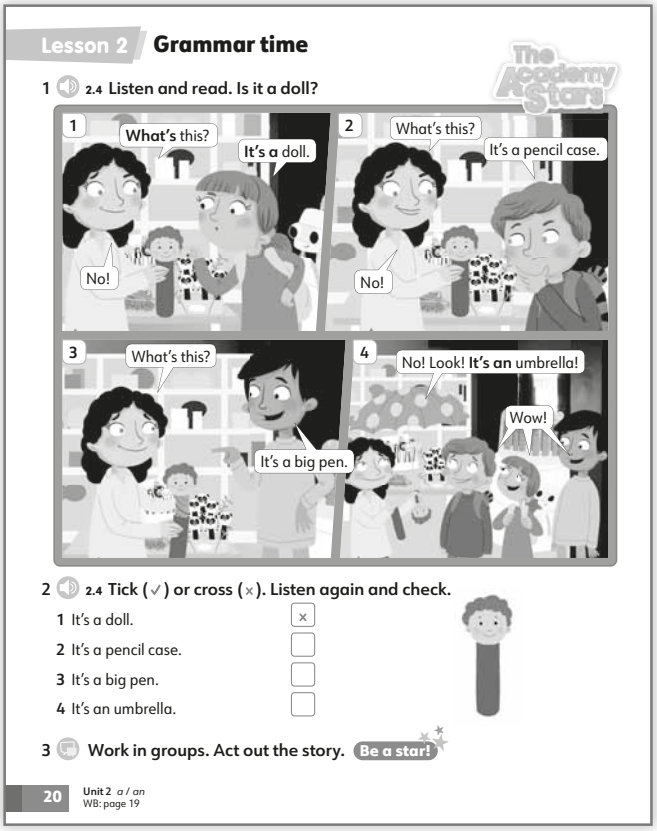
Answers: 1 a black pencil **2** a red book **3** a yellow pen **4** an orange rubber **5** a purple pencil case **6** a green ruler

2 Look and complete.

Answers: 1 book **2** pencil **3** rubber **4** glue **5** pencil case **6** ruler

Lesson 2 Grammar time

Pupil's Book page 20



Learning objectives: Understand and use *a* and *an*; Read and act out a story using the target grammar

Grammar: *a / an*

Review vocabulary: classroom objects

Materials: umbrellas (optional) or rulers

2.3 Warm-up: Sing the song!

- Play the song, *Pencil, rubber and glue!* and have the children join in and do the actions.
- Before playing the song, you may wish to remind the children of the mimes they learned in the previous lesson: *raise their hands, clap, stamp* or *jump* when they hear one of the key words from the previous lesson.
- You could also teach the children any new mimes or ask them if they know any others, for variety.

1 2.4 Listen and read. Is it a doll?

- Refer the children to the pictures and ask *Can you see any classroom objects? Who are the children?* (*Anna, Sara, Tom and Alex*) *Where's Bot?* (*in Sara's bag*) Have the children point and answer.
- Read out the question *Is it a doll?* Then play the audio. Have the children follow the story and find the answer to the question.
- Play the audio again for the children to repeat chorally.

Answers: No, it's an umbrella.

2 2.4 Tick (✓) or cross (✗). Listen again and check.

- Refer the children to the picture. *Ask Is it a doll?* (*No*). Point out the example cross for *no* as well as the tick for *yes*.
- Give the children time to look and tick or cross the items.
- Play the story again. Stop after each of the *It's a ...* sentences and ask *Yes or no?* to elicit the children's answers.

Answers: 1 ✗ **2** ✗ **3** ✗ **4** ✓

Teaching star!

Extension

Give the children further practice in making, hearing and responding to the language in the story.

- Divide the class into pairs. Have them turn to page 18 in the Pupil's Book.
- Demonstrate with a confident child. Point to an object in the picture (e.g. a ruler) and say *It's a pen.* and have the child answer *No.* Then say *It's a ruler.* The child should answer *Yes!*
- Have the children continue the activity in pairs.

3 Work in groups. Act out the story.

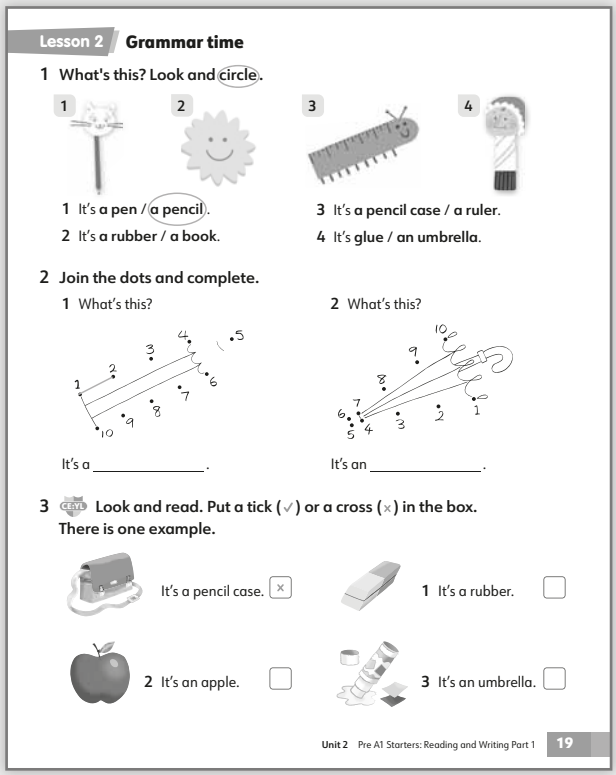
Be a star!

- Play the audio again for the class to repeat each line chorally. Check their pronunciation of the weak sound of *a* and *an*.
- Count the characters in the story with the children (four). Divide the class into groups of four and have them decide who will be each character. Alternatively, designate roles: give each child a number 1–4 and tell them that all number 1s are Anna, number 2s are Sara, number 3s are Tom and number 4s are Alex.
- Allow them a few minutes to practise acting out the story. (If one child has an umbrella, they can use that to act it out. If not, a ruler can be used with a little imagination!) You may wish to play the audio again to remind them of the intonation, etc.
- Encourage some of the groups to act out the story for the rest of the class.
- If you wish, you could ask the children to change roles and act out the story again.

Cooler: What's the last word?

- Play *What's the last word?* (see the Games bank, pages 14–15). Pause the audio after some of the key words in the story, e.g. *this, doll, pencil case, What's, pen, umbrella*.
- Have the children raise their hands to say what they think the last word they heard was. Ask for whole-class agreement each time and have them all repeat the word.

Workbook page 19


Lesson 2 Grammar time

1 What's this? Look and circle.

1 It's a pen / a pencil.
2 It's a rubber / a book.
3 It's a pencil case / a ruler.
4 It's glue / an umbrella.

2 Join the dots and complete.

1 What's this?
It's a _____.

2 What's this?
It's an _____.

3 Look and read. Put a tick (✓) or a cross (×) in the box. There is one example.

It's a pencil case. ×
1 It's a rubber.
2 It's an apple.
3 It's an umbrella.

Unit 2 Pre A1 Starters: Reading and Writing Part 1 19

1 What's this? Look and circle.

Answers: 1 a pencil **2** a rubber **3** a ruler **4** glue

2 Join the dots and complete.

Answers: 1 pencil **2** umbrella

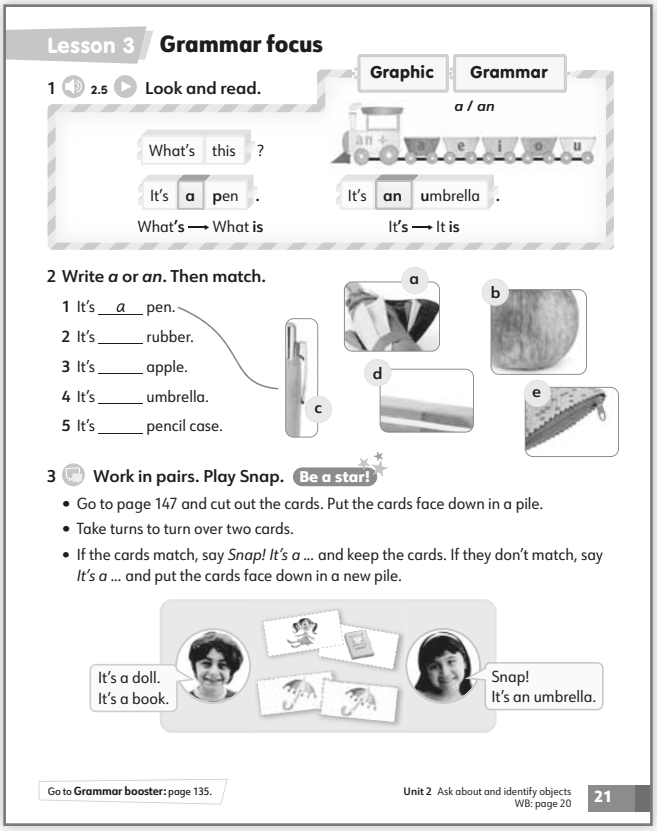
3 CE:YL Look and read. Put a tick (✓) or a cross (✕) in the box. There is one example.

- This activity helps the children prepare for Part 1 of the Reading and Writing paper of the Cambridge English: Pre A1 Starters test. The children look, read and tick or cross the boxes.
- If done in class, go through the example first: read out the sentence and point to the picture of the bag. Elicit that the sentence is incorrect and indicate the cross.
- Point to the other pictures and read out the sentences. Then give the children some quiet time to read and tick or cross the boxes accordingly.
- Invite different children to read out the sentences and have the rest of the class call out *yes* or *no*. Write the ticks and crosses on the board next to the corresponding number.
- (To help prepare for this part of the test, the children need plenty of practice in recognising and naming items.)

Answers: 1 ✓ **2** ✓ **3** ✕

Lesson 3 Grammar focus

Pupil's Book page 21



Learning objectives: Ask about and identify objects

Grammar: *What's this? It's a pen. It's an umbrella.*

Review vocabulary: classroom objects

Resources: Graphic Grammar video; Grammar worksheet 1

Materials: paper, pens or pencils, and scissors

Warm-up: Ready, set, draw!

- Play *Ready, set, draw!* (see the Games bank, pages 14–15). Give each group several pieces of paper and a pen or pencil. Number the children in each group 1–4. Invite all the number 1s to come to the front of the classroom to start the game. Use pictures of the objects in Lesson 1, Activity 1.
- When the groups guess the object correctly, they stand up. When all the groups are standing up, have them call out the word.

1 2.5 Look and read.

- Play the audio and have the children follow in their books.
- Play the audio again for the children to repeat chorally.
- Write *an +* on the board and elicit the letters that follow *an*, pointing to the train in the Graphic Grammar box.
- Highlight the contractions by counting out the words in the question and answer on your fingers, and then pushing the *What is* and *It is* fingers together to show the contractions.

- If using the video, tell the children they will see a video of children playing with their toys. Play the video and let the children watch and enjoy.
- Play the video again and have the children repeat the questions and answers.

2 Write *a* or *an*. Then match.

- Refer the children to the example. Point out that it is just a part of the pen.
- Ask the children why it is *a* not *an* (because it doesn't start with *a, e, i, o* or *u*).
- Say *Look at number four.* Have them find and point to the umbrella. Ask the class if it is *a* or *an* and why (*an* because it starts with *u*).
- Have the children continue the activity individually and then compare with a friend. Write a big *a* on one side of the board and a big *an* on the other.
- First say the numbers in turn, and have the children point to *a* or *an* on the board.
- Then call out each number again, and have the children tell you the letter of the picture.
- Finally, have the children repeat the completed sentences chorally.

Answers: 1 a – c **2** a – d **3** an – b **4** an – a **5** a – e

Teaching star!

Mixed ability

Some children will still be getting used to the letters and will benefit from seeing and hearing examples before writing. For the above activity:

- Allow the children time to match the sentences and the pictures. Don't ask them to complete yet. Write the sentences on the board while the children are doing this.
- Ask for volunteer children to come to the board and complete with *a* or *an*.
- Ask for whole-class agreement and have them copy the answers into their books.

3 Work in pairs. Play Snap. Be a star!

- Organise the children in pairs and have them open their books to page 147.
- Make sure the children all have scissors to cut out the cards. Give the children time to cut out and shuffle the cards. While they do this, confirm understanding of what they see on the cards. Tell the children that they will use both sets of cards for the game.
- Explain that in this game, players shuffle the cards, then take turns to choose two cards from the pile and put them face up on the table. The player names the objects on the cards: *It's a ....* If the cards match, the player says *Snap! It's a ...* and keeps the cards. If the

cards don't match, the player identifies the objects (*It's a ...* and *It's a ...*) and then turns the cards face down again and places them in a new pile. Players then shuffle the cards in the first pile before they take the next turn. They continue to take turns in the game until all cards are matched. Then players shuffle the cards in the pile of unmatched cards and play another round of the game. The winner of the game is the player with the most cards at the end.

- Work through the example with the children. Point to the doll and book cards in the example and say *It's a doll. It's a book.* Then point to the two umbrella cards in the example. Have a volunteer respond with *Snap! It's an umbrella.*
- Allow time for the children to complete the game.

Teaching star!

Extension

Give the children further practice in asking about and identifying objects using *a* and *an*.

- Divide the class into pairs. Have them turn to page 21 in the Pupil's Book.
- Demonstrate with a confident child. Point to an object in Activity 2 (e.g. the apple) and say *What's this?* Write on the board *It's a apple*. and *It's an apple*. Have the child come to the board and circle the correct answer *It's an apple*.
- Repeat the activity with other objects from Activity 2 or with objects in your classroom whose names the children have already learnt.

Grammar booster

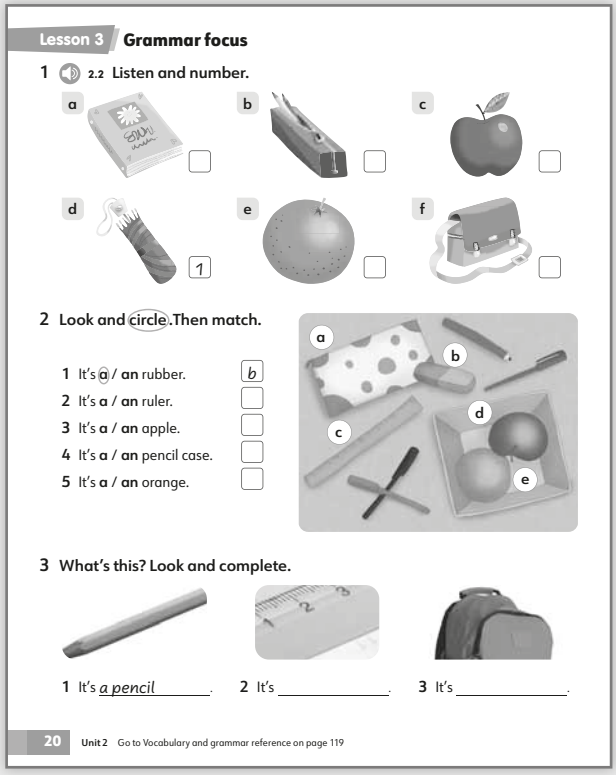
For additional practice, ask the children to turn to page 135 of their Pupil's Book to complete Activity 1.
If the children need more grammar practice before the communicative Activity 3, have them complete this activity first. Alternatively, you may wish to have the children complete this activity at home.

Answers: 1 an – b **2** a – a **3** a – c **4** an – f **5** a – d **6** a – e

Cooler: The shark game

- Play *The shark game* (see the Games bank, pages 14–15) with vocabulary from today's lesson.

Workbook page 20


Lesson 3 Grammar focus

1 2.2 Listen and number.

a b c d 1 e f

2 Look and circle. Then match.

1 It's a / an rubber. b
2 It's a / an ruler.
3 It's a / an apple.
4 It's a / an pencil case.
5 It's a / an orange.

a b c d e

3 What's this? Look and complete.

1 It's a pencil. 2 It's _____. 3 It's _____.

20 Unit 2 Go to Vocabulary and grammar reference on page 119

Grammar reference:

Remind the children that they can refer to the grammar reference on page 119 to help them when completing these activities.

1 2.2 Listen and number.

Audioscript

1 *What's this?*
It's an umbrella.
2 *What's this?*
It's a book.
3 *What's this?*
It's a bag.
4 *What's this?*
It's a pencil case.
5 *What's this?*
It's an apple.
6 *What's this?*
It's an orange.

Answers: a 2 **b** 4 **c** 5 **d** 1 **e** 6 **f** 3

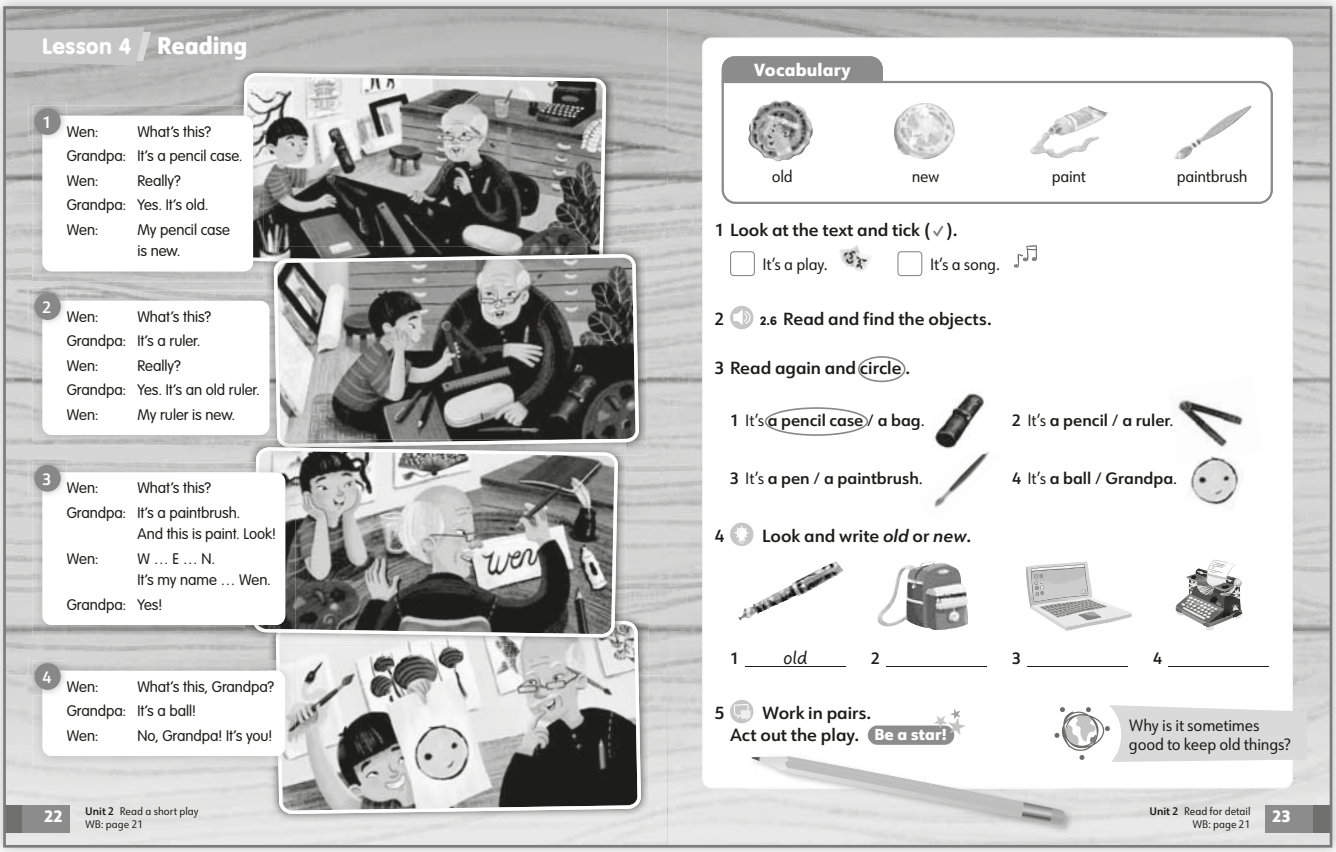
2 Look and circle. Then match.

Answers: 1 a rubber – b **2** a ruler – c **3** an apple – d **4** a pencil case – a **5** an orange – e

3 What's this? Look and complete.

Answers: 1 a pencil **2** a ruler **3** a bag

Pupil's Book pages 22–23



Learning objectives: Read a short play; Read for detail

Vocabulary: new, old, paint, paintbrush

Review vocabulary: classroom objects

Resources: Flashcards; Vocabulary worksheet 2

Materials: sheets of paper, pens or pencils

Warm-up: Team drawing

- Divide the class into groups of four or five children. Each group needs a piece of paper and a pen or pencil.
- Call out the name of an object from Lesson 3. One child in each group starts drawing the object. After a short while, say *Stop!* and have the first child pass the paper and pen to the next child to draw more. Continue until the drawing is complete and the groups hold up their drawings for you to check.
- Repeat several times.

Vocabulary

- Refer the children to the vocabulary panel at the top of page 23. Read out the words for the class to repeat.
- Ask how the first and second coins are different (they can use L1 to explain the concept). Ask them if they can see something old and new in the classroom. Ask if they can see any paint or a paintbrush.

1 Look at the text and tick (✓).

- Give the children a minute to look at the text and pictures. Ask who and what they can see.
- Refer them to the question, and say *It's a play. Yes or no?* Repeat the question with *song*.

Answer: It's a play. ✓

2 2.6 Read and find the objects.

- Have the children read or look through the story individually. When they see the name of an object, have them find it in the pictures.
- Play the audio while they follow in their books. When the children see / hear the name of an object, they raise their hands. Elicit the object and have them point to it in the pictures. When there are two of the same object (pencil cases and rulers), ask *What's the difference?* to elicit *old* and *new*.

3 Read again and circle.

- Go through the example with the class.
- The children find the remaining objects in the pictures and look for the words in the corresponding section. They circle the correct words.
- For feedback, read out the beginning of each sentence and have the children complete it.

Answers: 1 a pencil case **2** a ruler **3** a paintbrush **4** Grandpa

Teaching star!

Reading

At this level, some children may still find it difficult to identify information in the text. Audio can act as a useful support. For Activity 3:

- Play each part of the audio in turn. Have the children say *Stop!* when they hear the name of the object. Write it on the board.
- Have the children point to it in the text and then circle it in the activity.

4 Look and write *old* or *new*.

- Refer the children to the example. Ask how we know it's old (new pens have a different shape).
- Have the children complete the activity and compare their answers with a partner.
- Call out each number in turn. The children call out *old* or *new*.

Answers: 1 old **2** new **3** new **4** old

5 Work in pairs. Act out the play.

Be a star!

- Divide the class into pairs and ask them to decide who is Wen and who is Grandpa. Give them a few minutes to practise their lines. If the children are not confident reading their lines, they can listen to the audio and mime.
- Ask if any pairs would like to act out the play for the class.

ESDC

Why is it sometimes good to keep old things?

Introduce the children to Sustainable Development Goal 12: *Responsible consumption and production.*

- Ask: *Why is it sometimes good to keep old things?* Elicit ideas in L1, providing useful language in L2 during the discussion.
- Draw attention to Grandpa's pencil case in the story. Ask the children why they think Grandpa keeps his old pencil case (e.g. he likes how it looks and feels, it holds everything he needs, he may have good memories of using it when he was younger).
- Encourage the children to share examples of some favourite old things they have and to tell what they can about the items' histories. Ask what old things they have in their homes that they would like to keep. If you have an older item you would like to share with the class, bring it from home and tell the children about its history and why you have kept it.
- Elicit reasons why it's important for people to keep old things for as long as possible and what the advantages of doing so are both for us personally and for the environment.

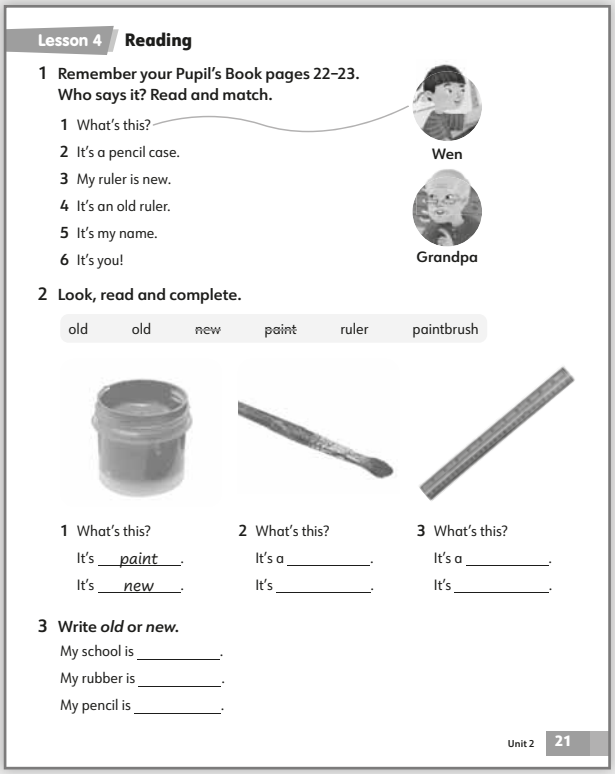
ESDC *continued*

Possible answers: we save money, we get to enjoy favourite or special things for a long time, we learn about the history of the items and their connection to ourselves and our families, we avoid using too many resources and we reduce waste.

Cooler: Who says it?

- Write *Wen* on one side of the board and *Grandpa* on the other.
- Read out different phrases from the play, e.g. *What's this?* and have the children point and call out the name of the person who says it.

Workbook page 21



Lesson 4 **Reading**

1 Remember your Pupil's Book pages 22–23. Who says it? Read and match.

1 What's this?
2 It's a pencil case.
3 My ruler is new.
4 It's an old ruler.
5 It's my name.
6 It's you!

Wen

Grandpa

2 Look, read and complete.

old old ~~new~~ ~~paint~~ ruler paintbrush

1 What's this?
It's paint.
It's new.

2 What's this?
It's a _____.
It's _____.

3 What's this?
It's a _____.
It's _____.

3 Write *old* or *new*.

My school is _____.
My rubber is _____.
My pencil is _____.

Unit 2 21

1 Remember your Pupil's Book pages 22–23. Who says it? Read and match.

Answers: Wen: 1, 3, 5, 6 Grandpa: 2, 4

2 Look, read and complete.

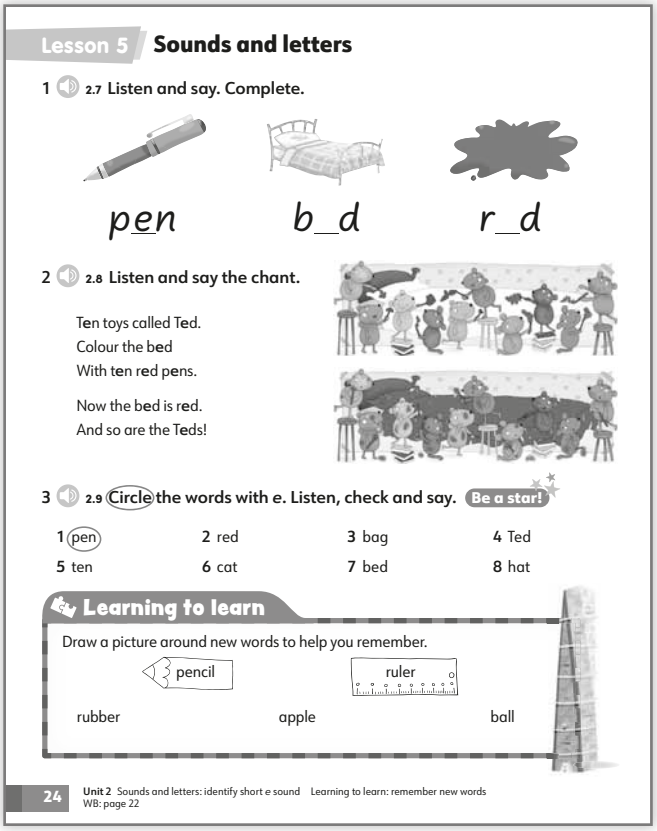
Answers: 1 paint, new **2** paintbrush, old **3** ruler, old

3 Write *old* or *new*.

Answers: Children's own answers.

Lesson 5 Sounds and letters

Pupil's Book page 24


Lesson 5 Sounds and letters

1 2.7 Listen and say. Complete.

p_n b_d r_d

2 2.8 Listen and say the chant.

Ten toys called Ted.
Colour the bed
With ten red pens.

Now the bed is red.
And so are the Teds!

3 2.9 Circle the words with e. Listen, check and say. Be a star!

1 pen 2 red 3 bag 4 Ted
5 ten 6 cat 7 bed 8 hat

Learning to learn

Draw a picture around new words to help you remember.

pencil ruler

rubber apple ball

24 Unit 2 Sounds and letters: identify short e sound Learning to learn: remember new words
WB: page 22

Learning objectives: Sounds and letters: identify short *e* sound; Learning to learn: remember new words

Sounds and letters words: bed, pen, red

Resources: Sounds and letters worksheet

Warm-up: How many words?

- Read out some phrases from the play in Lesson 4. Have the children count the words in each phrase and raise their hands to tell you.
  Suggested phrases: *My pencil case is new.* (5); *And this is paint.* (4); *It's a ball!* (3); *It's a paintbrush.* (3); *My ruler is new.* (4)
- This can be played as a team game if you divide the class into small groups. Have the groups write the number of words on a piece of paper and hold it up for you to see.

1 2.7 Listen and say. Complete.

- Refer the children to the pictures. Ask if they know the names of any of these things.
- Play the audio for the children to repeat the words chorally. Do this twice.
- Point to the *e* in the word *pen* in your book. Ask *What's this letter?* (e) *What's the sound?* (/e/)
- Write a big, clear *e* on the board as a model for the children. Have them complete the three words.

Audioscript

/e/ /e/ /e/ pen
/e/ /e/ /e/ bed
/e/ /e/ /e/ red

Answers: pen, bed, red

2 2.8 Listen and say the chant.

- Play the chant and have the children follow in their books. Have them raise their hands every time they see / hear a word with *e*.
- Play the chant again, pausing after each line for the children to repeat. Pay particular attention to the *e* sound.
- Play the chant once more and have the children join in as much as they can.
- Divide the class into two groups. Have each half of the class say alternate lines and then change.

3 2.9 Circle the words with *e*. Listen, check and say. Be a star!

- Ask the children how many words they can see with the letter *e* (there are five).
- Have them circle the words with *e*.
- Ask the children which numbers they circled and play the audio to confirm.
- Play the audio again for the children to repeat the words chorally and then individually to check pronunciation.

Audioscript

pen, pen, red, red, Ted, Ted, ten, ten, bed, bed

Answers: pen, red, Ted, ten, bed

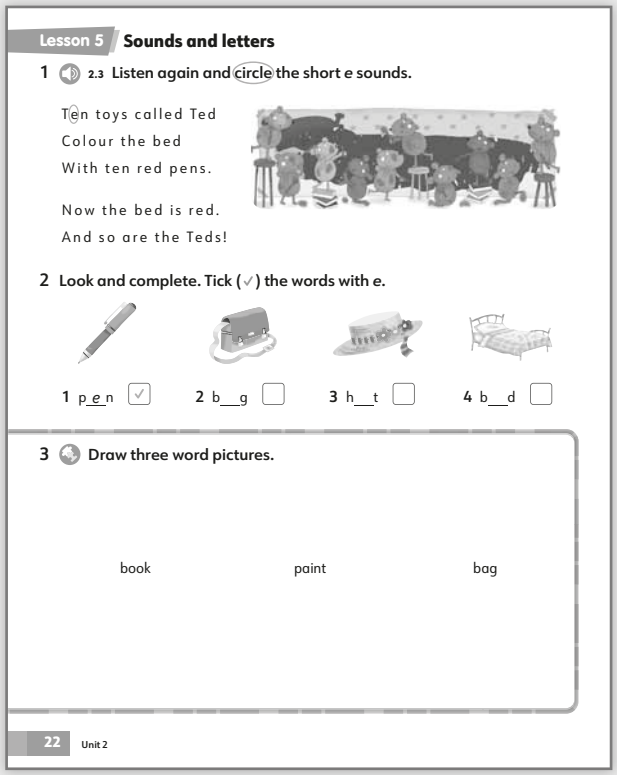
Learning to learn

- Explain to the children that pictures are a good way to help us remember things, especially if the word is in the picture. Point to the examples of *pencil* and *ruler*.
- Write *rubber* on the board and draw your own picture of a rubber around it. Don't worry if it isn't perfect – it's good for the children to know that their pictures don't need to be!
- Have the children draw their own pictures for *rubber, apple* and *ball*. When they've finished, have them work in pairs to compare their drawings, point and say.

Cooler: Physical spelling

- Play *Physical spelling* (see the Games bank, pages 14–15) with the key words from this lesson: *pen, bed, red, bag, ten, toys, hat, colour.*

Workbook page 22



Lesson 5 **Sounds and letters**

1 2.3 Listen again and circle the short e sounds.

Ten toys called Ted
Colour the bed
With ten red pens.

Now the bed is red.
And so are the Teds!

2 Look and complete. Tick (✓) the words with e.

1 p_e_n ✓ 2 b__g 3 h__t 4 b__d

3 Draw three word pictures.

book paint bag

22 Unit 2

1 2.3 Listen again and circle the short e sounds.

Answers: T(e)n toys called T(e)d
Colour the b(e)d.
With t(e)n r(e)d p(e)ns.
Now the b(e)d is r(e)d!
And so are the T(e)ds!

2 Look and complete. Tick (✓) the words with e.

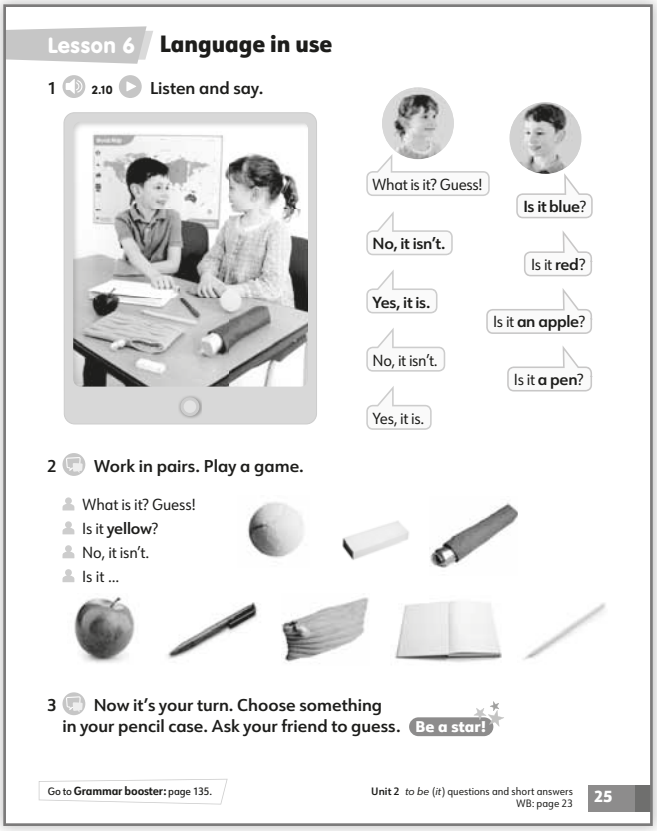
Answers: 1 pen ✓ **2** bag **3** hat **4** bed ✓

3 Draw three word pictures.

Answers: Children's own answers.

Lesson 6 Language in use

Pupil's Book page 25



Learning objectives: *to be* (it) questions and short answers

Review vocabulary: apple, blue, pen, red, yellow

Resources: Language in use video; Grammar worksheet 2

Materials: pencil case, classroom objects; coloured pencils

2.8 Warm-up: Say the chant again

- Using mime if necessary to prompt them, ask the children to recall the chant from Lesson 5. Then play the audio to see how well they remembered. Write it on the board.
- Have the whole class say the chant together.
- Then divide the class into two, with each half saying alternate lines.

1 2.10 Listen and say.

- Play the audio and have the children follow in their books.
- Play the audio again and have the children repeat each question and answer. Check their understanding of *guess*.
- Play the audio one more time, and have the children repeat, nodding their heads for affirmative sentences and shaking their heads for negative sentences (or the most appropriate gesture in the children's culture).
- If using the video, play it and let the children watch and enjoy it.
- Play the video again and stop after each question. Elicit the answer from the children. Play the video to confirm and have them all repeat.
- Now play the video one more time and have the children repeat the questions and answers. Encourage them to imitate the intonation and body language as closely as possible.

2 Work in pairs. Play a game.

- Demonstrate the game for the children. Start by choosing one of the objects, e.g. the umbrella, without telling the class.
- Take the role of Student A (blue person) and read out the first part of the exchange. Prompt the whole class to ask you the first Student B (green person) question.
- Point out that it is the same dialogue as in Activity 1, but with the blue words changed. Also point out the rules of the game, asking them to first guess the colour, then guess the object.
- Prompt the class to ask questions to try to guess your object, following the pattern of the dialogue. Highlight the use of *a* or *an* when the question is about an object.
- Divide the class into pairs to play the game, changing roles each time.
- Finish by inviting a confident child to choose an object and having the others ask some open class questions in order to guess.

Teaching star!

Pairwork

While the children are working in pairs, try to be prepared with another activity to give to fast finishers in order to avoid any possible disruption to the class.

- Ask fast finishers to look at pages 5–6 of their Pupil's Book. One child chooses an object and the other asks up to eight questions with *Is it (a /an) ...?* to guess.

3 Now it's your turn. Choose something in your pencil case. Ask your friend to guess. Be a star!

- Demonstrate the game by looking in your pencil case, choosing something from it and hiding it behind your back.
- Have the class ask you questions to guess what it is, starting with the colour and then guessing the object.
- Then divide the class into pairs and have them take turns playing the game.
- Finish with the class asking questions to some individual children.

Grammar booster

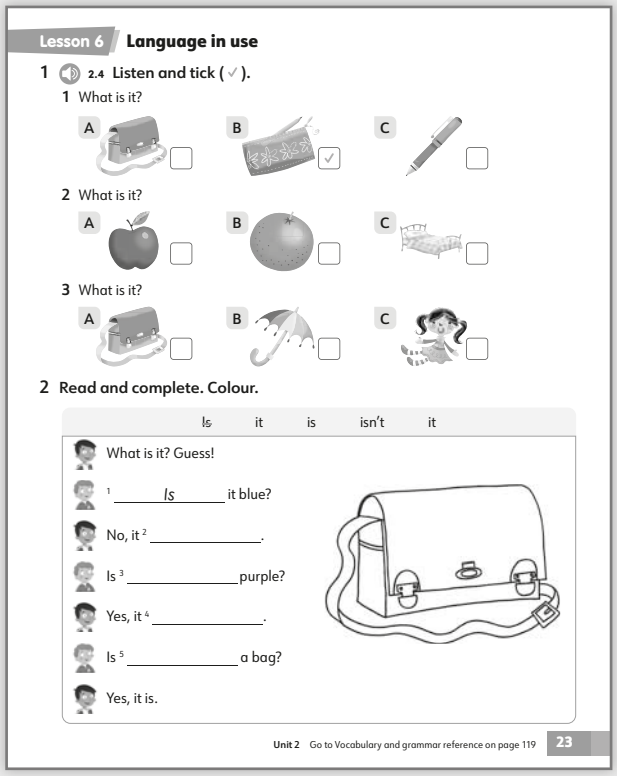
Ask the children to turn to page 135 of their Pupil's Book to complete Activity 2. You may also wish to have the children complete this activity at home.

Answers: 1 No, it isn't. **2** Yes, it is. **3** No, it isn't. **4** No, it isn't. **5** No, it isn't. **6** Yes, it is.

Cooler: Air drawings

- Use a finger to draw a classroom object, e.g. a ruler, in front of you so the children can see. Invite them to guess what it is.
- Now divide the class into pairs to draw classroom objects in the air for each other and guess.

Workbook page 23



Lesson 6 **Language in use**

1 2.4 **Listen and tick (✓).**

1 What is it?

A B C

2 What is it?

A B C

3 What is it?

A B C

2 **Read and complete. Colour.**

Is it is isn't it

What is it? Guess!

1 Is it blue?

No, it 2 .

Is 3 purple?

Yes, it 4 .

Is 5 a bag?

Yes, it is.

Unit 2 Go to Vocabulary and grammar reference on page 119 23

Grammar reference:

Remind the children that they can refer to the grammar reference on page 119 to help them when completing these activities.

1 2.4 Listen and tick (✓).

Audioscript

1 *What is it? Guess!*
Is it big?
No, it isn't.
Is it old?
No, it isn't.
Is it a pencil case?
Yes, it is.

2 *What is it? Guess!*
Is it small?
Yes, it is.
Is it red?
Yes, it is.
Is it an apple?
Yes, it is.

3 *What is it? Guess!*
Is it new?
No, it isn't. It's old.
Is it big?
No, it isn't.
Is it a doll?
Yes, it is.

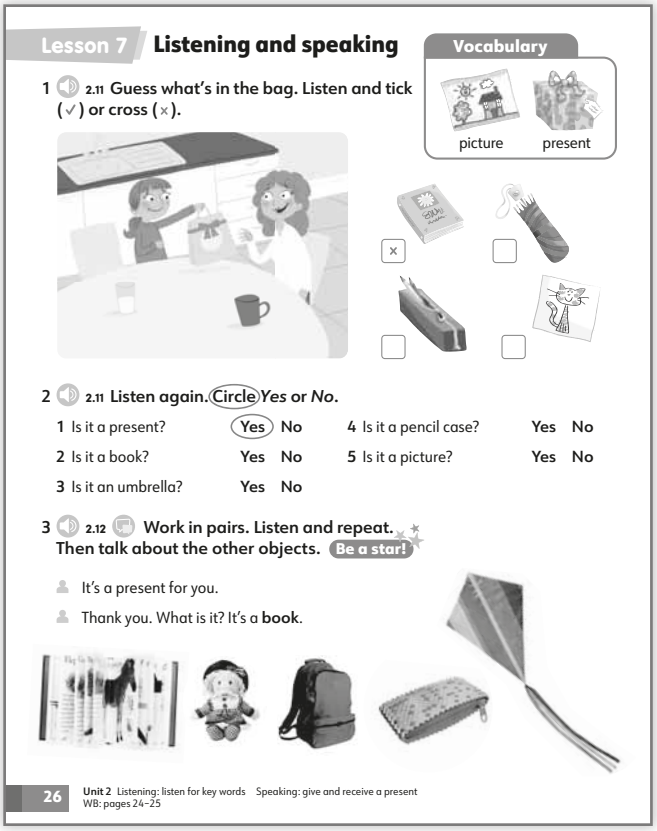
Answers: 1 B **2** A **3** C

2 Read and complete. Colour.

Answers: 1 Is **2** isn't **3** it **4** is **5** it

Lesson 7 Listening and speaking

Pupil's Book page 26


Lesson 7 Listening and speaking

Vocabulary

picture present

1 2.11 Guess what's in the bag. Listen and tick (✓) or cross (×).

2 2.11 Listen again. Circle *Yes* or *No*.

1 Is it a present? Yes No
2 Is it a book? Yes No
3 Is it an umbrella? Yes No
4 Is it a pencil case? Yes No
5 Is it a picture? Yes No

3 2.12 Work in pairs. Listen and repeat. Then talk about the other objects. Be a star!

It's a present for you.
Thank you. What is it? It's a **book**.

26 Unit 2 Listening: listen for key words Speaking: give and receive a present
WB: pages 24–25

Learning objectives: Listening: listen for key words; Speaking: give and receive a present

Vocabulary: picture, present

Review vocabulary: classroom objects

Resources: Vocabulary worksheet 2

Materials: a selection of objects (from vocabulary seen up to now)

Warm-up: Play a guessing game

- Choose three or four classroom objects from your bag and have the children raise their hands to guess the colour and the object using *Is it (a / an) ...?* questions.

Vocabulary

- Refer the children to the pictures in the vocabulary panel. Say the words and have the children repeat.
- Have the children do a mime of drawing a picture, and a mime of wrapping and giving a present to someone.
- Say the words quickly at random for the children to repeat and do the mime.

1 2.11 Guess what's in the bag. Listen and tick (✓) or cross (✗).

- Point to Sara in the picture and ask *Who's this? What's in the bag?* Have them look at the objects on the right and guess what's in the bag.
- Play the audio, pausing after *Is it a book? No, it isn't.* Point to the book and then to the example cross.
- Play the rest of the audio for the children to complete the activity.
- For feedback, play the dialogue again, pausing after the questions for the children to call out *Yes, it is* or *No, it isn't.*

Audioscript

Mum: *What's this?*
Sara: *It's a present. It's for you.*
Mum: *Thank you! What is it?*
Sara: *Guess!*
Mum: *OK. Is it a book?*
Sara: *No, it isn't.*
Mum: *Is it an umbrella?*
Sara: *No, it isn't.*
Mum: *Is it a pencil case?*
Sara: *No, it isn't.*
Mum: *Hmmmm. I know! Is it a picture?*
Sara: *Yes, it is! It's a picture.*
Mum: *Thank you!*

2 2.11 Listen again. Circle *Yes* or *No*.

- Play the audio again. The children circle the correct answers.
- Read out the questions and have the whole class call out *Yes* or *No*.

Answers: 1 Yes **2** No **3** No **4** No **5** Yes

3 2.12 Work in pairs. Listen and repeat. Then talk about the other objects.

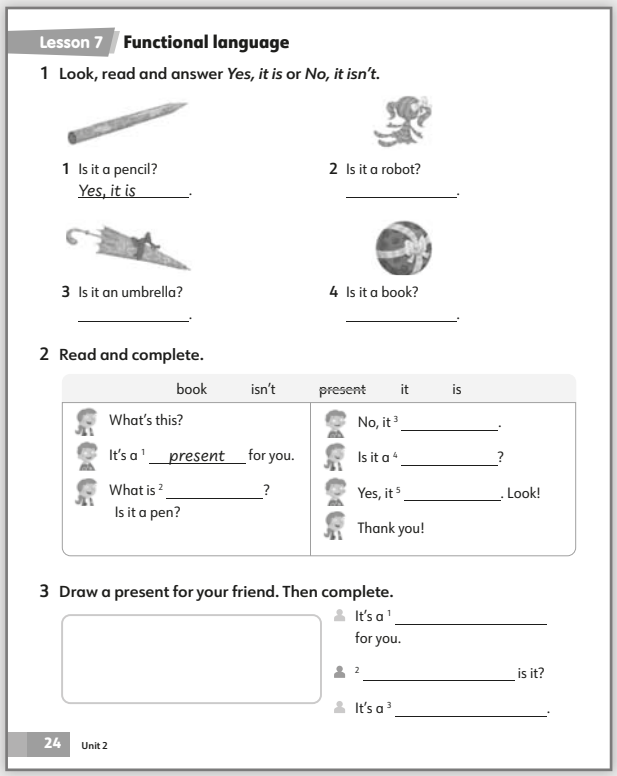
Be a star!

- Elicit the objects in the pictures. Then play the audio while the children follow and point to the object (*a book*).
- Play the audio again for the children to repeat chorally.
- Divide the class into pairs to use the dialogue and talk about the other objects.

Cooler: Incomplete drawings

- Start drawing a classroom object on the board. After every line or two, stop and ask *What's this?* Even if they guess correctly, just say *Good idea!*
- Continue drawing and inviting the children to guess. Then confirm the answer.
- Repeat several times.

Workbook page 24



Lesson 7 **Functional language**

1 **Look, read and answer *Yes, it is* or *No, it isn't*.**

1 Is it a pencil?
Yes, it is .

2 Is it a robot?
_____.

3 Is it an umbrella?
_____.

4 Is it a book?
_____.

2 **Read and complete.**

book isn't ~~present~~ it is

What's this?
It's a [1] *present* for you.
What is [2] _____?
Is it a pen?

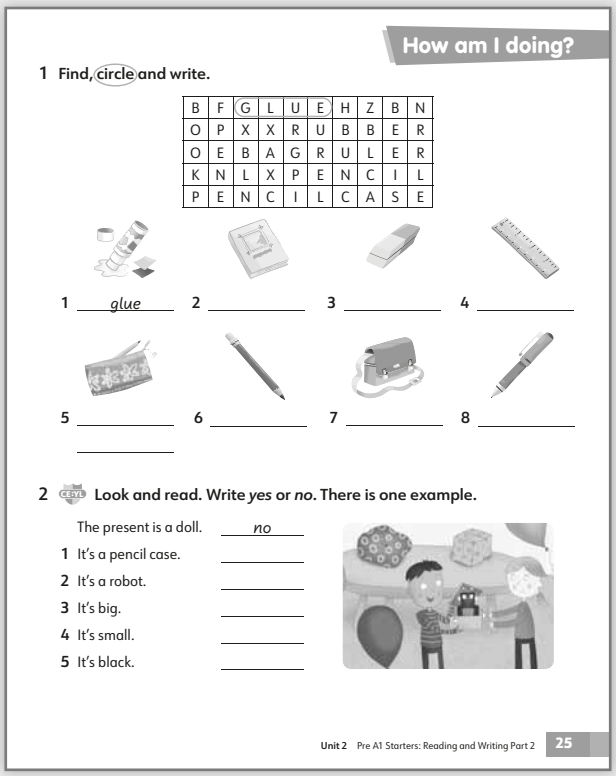
No, it [3] _____.
Is it a [4] _____?
Yes, it [5] _____. Look!
Thank you!

3 **Draw a present for your friend. Then complete.**

It's a [1] _____ for you.
[2] _____ is it?
It's a [3] _____.

24 Unit 2

Workbook page 25



How am I doing?

1 **Find, circle and write.**

B	F	G	L	U	E	H	Z	B	N
O	P	X	X	R	U	B	B	E	R
O	E	B	A	G	R	U	L	E	R
K	N	L	X	P	E	N	C	I	L
P	E	N	C	I	L	C	A	S	E

1 *glue* 2 _____ 3 _____ 4 _____

5 _____ 6 _____ 7 _____ 8 _____

2 CE:YL **Look and read. Write *yes* or *no*. There is one example.**

The present is a doll. *no*
1 It's a pencil case. _____
2 It's a robot. _____
3 It's big. _____
4 It's small. _____
5 It's black. _____

Unit 2 Pre A1 Starters: Reading and Writing Part 2 25

1 Look, read and answer *Yes, it is* or *No, it isn't*.

Answers: 1 Yes, it is. **2** No, it isn't. **3** Yes, it is. **4** No, it isn't.

2 Read and complete.

Answers: 1 present **2** it **3** isn't **4** book **5** is

3 Draw a present for your friend. Then complete.

Answers: 1 present **2** What **3** Children's own answer.

1 Find, circle and write.

Answers: 1 glue **2** book **3** rubber **4** ruler **5** pencil case **6** pencil **7** bag **8** pen

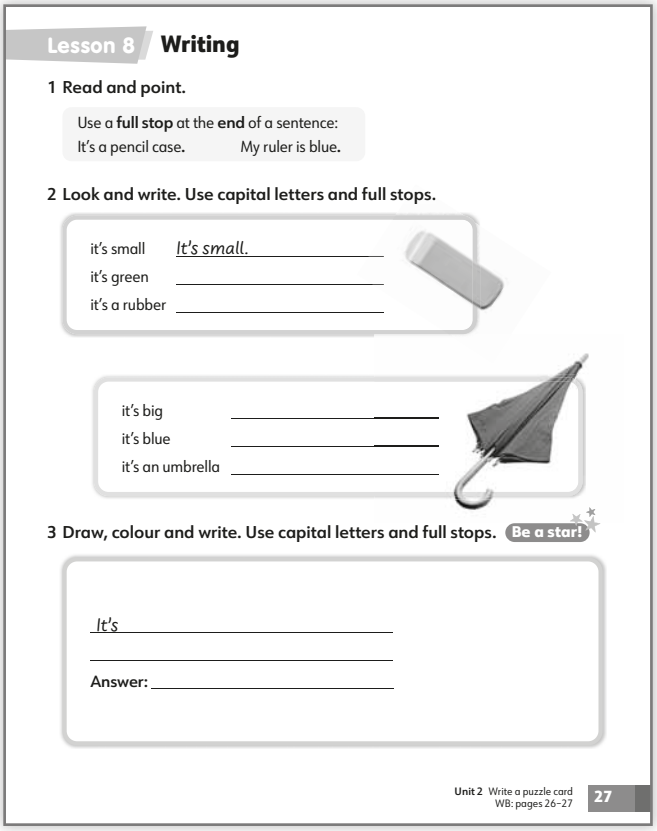
2 CE:YL Look and read. Write *yes* or *no*. There is one example.

- This activity helps the children prepare for Part 2 of the Reading and Writing paper of the Cambridge English: Pre A1 Starters test. The children read the sentences, look at the picture, and write *yes* if the sentence is true or *no* if the sentence is false.
- If done in class, go through the example first, asking the children to find and identify the present.
- The children continue individually and then check with a friend.
- Ask individual children to read out the sentences and the class calls out *yes* or *no*.
- (To help prepare for this part of the test, the children need plenty of practice matching sentences to pictures.)

Answers: 1 no **2** yes **3** no **4** yes **5** yes

Lesson 8 Writing

Pupil's Book page 27


Lesson 8 Writing

1 Read and point.

Use a **full stop** at the **end** of a sentence:
It's a pencil case. My ruler is blue.

2 Look and write. Use capital letters and full stops.

it's small *It's small.*
it's green
it's a rubber

it's big
it's blue
it's an umbrella

3 Draw, colour and write. Use capital letters and full stops. Be a star!

It's

Answer:

Unit 2 Write a puzzle card
WB: pages 26–27 27

Learning objectives: Use full stops; Write a puzzle card

Resources: Unit 2 test

Materials: coloured pencils

Warm-up: I can see ...

- Say *I can see something beginning with ...* and say the first letter of an object you can see in the classroom.
- The children look around and raise their hands to guess the specific object you're thinking of. Prompt them to ask questions for clues, e.g. *Is it a / an ...? Is it (colour)? Is it big / small?*
- Repeat with several different objects or have the children play in pairs.

1 Read and point.

- Invite volunteers to read out the sentences in the box. While they are doing this, write the example sentences on the board with the full stops in a different colour (blue, if possible, like the book).
- Read out the sentence and point to the full stops. Elicit or explain that we use full stops at the end of a sentence.
- Ask the children to find the other full stops in this activity (at the end of the instructions after *point* and at the end of the explanation after sentence). When they find one, ask the child to hold up their book and point.

2 Look and write. Use capital letters and full stops.

- Refer the children to the photo in the first card. Ask *What's this? What colour is it? Is it big or small?*
- Refer the children to the example and ask them why there's a full stop (end of the sentence).
- Elicit the complete sentences and write the text on the board. Don't write the full stops, but stop, point and ask *What's here?*
- The children copy the finished text into their books.
- Repeat the procedure for the second card. Alternatively, have the children complete the second card individually and then compare their answers in pairs before you check them with the class.

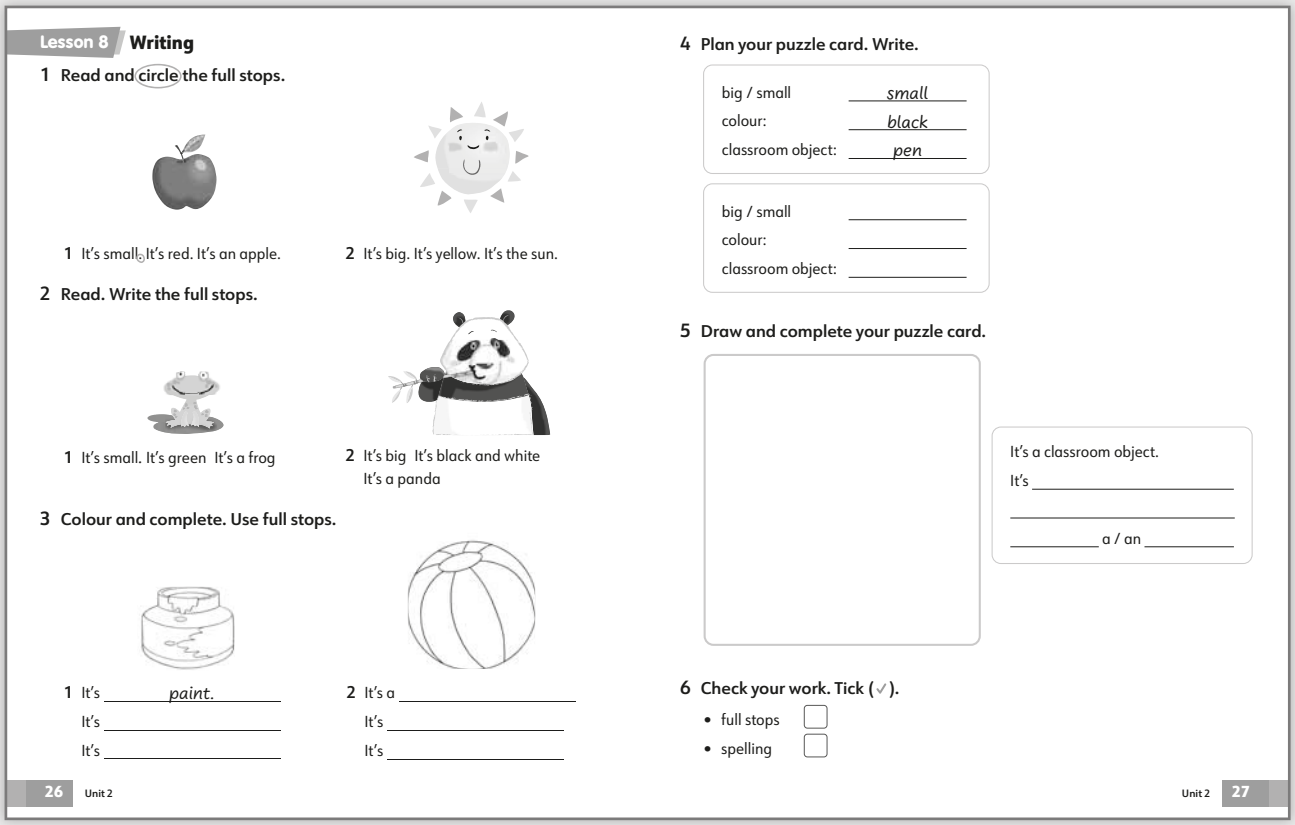
Answers: It's small. It's green. It's a rubber. It's big. It's blue. It's an umbrella.

3 Draw, colour and write. Use capital letters and full stops. Be a star!

- Invite the children to suggest an object and colour for the last card. Get class consensus on the favourite choice.
- Elicit sentences about the size, colour and the object. If the children need more support, you may wish to write these on the board.
- Have the children write the sentences and draw a picture of the object described.

Cooler: Get it wrong

- Walk around the classroom, holding up or pointing to objects and saying the name, e.g. *It's a pencil. It's a bag.* Encourage everyone to answer *Very good!*
- Now say *Oh no!* and start saying incorrect sentences, e.g. *It's an elephant! It's a robot!* The children still answer *Very good!*
- Invite different children to point to items and say the (correct) names. Have everyone reply *Very good!*
- Then say *Oh no!* and encourage the children to say incorrect sentences and everyone to say *Very good!* (The children find this very funny and make great efforts to remember lots of vocabulary and use their imagination.)



Lesson 8 **Writing**

1 Read and circle the full stops.

1 It's small. It's red. It's an apple.

2 It's big. It's yellow. It's the sun.

2 Read. Write the full stops.

1 It's small. It's green It's a frog

2 It's big It's black and white
It's a panda

3 Colour and complete. Use full stops.

1 It's paint.
It's _____
It's _____

2 It's a _____
It's _____
It's _____

4 Plan your puzzle card. Write.

big / small small
colour: black
classroom object: pen

big / small _____
colour: _____
classroom object: _____

5 Draw and complete your puzzle card.

It's a classroom object.
It's _____
_____
_____ a / an _____

6 Check your work. Tick (✓).

- full stops ☐
- spelling ☐

26 Unit 2

Unit 2 27

1 Read and circle the full stops.

- The children read the text and circle all the full stops.

Answers: 1 It's small. It's red. It's an apple. **2** It's big. It's yellow. It's the sun.

2 Read. Write the full stops.

- The children complete the sentences by adding full stops.

Answers: 1 It's small. It's green. It's a frog. **2** It's big. It's black and white. It's a panda.

3 Colour and complete. Use full stops.

- The children colour the items and then complete the sentences.

Answers: 1 paint; old; (Children's own answers.) **2** ball; big; (Children's own answers.)

4 Plan your puzzle card. Write.

- The children complete the information about a classroom object.

Answers: Children's own answers.

5 Draw and complete your puzzle card.

- The children draw their chosen object and complete the information.

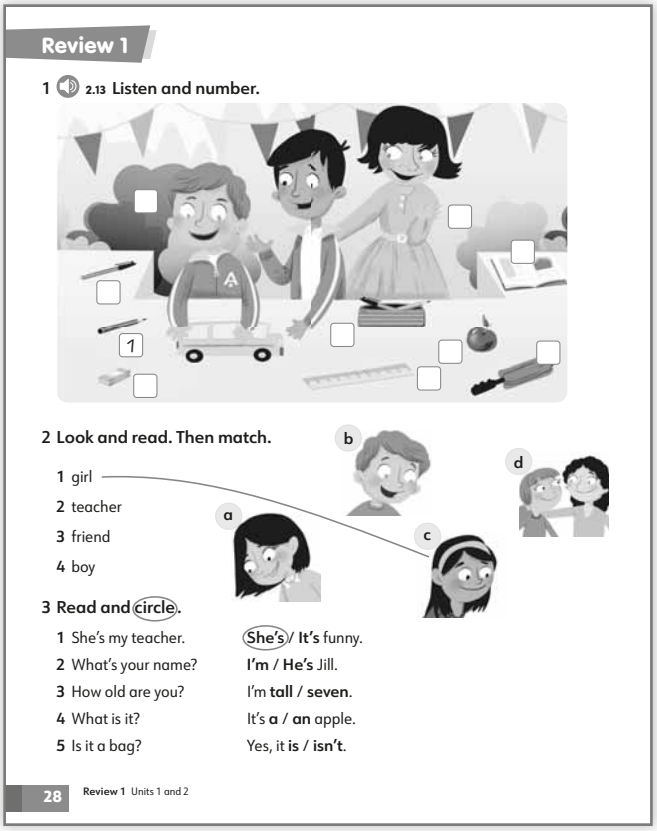
Answers: Children's own answers.

6 Check your work. Tick (✓).

- The children use the check list to make sure their work is complete and correct.

Review 1

Pupil's Book page 28


Review 1

1 2.13 Listen and number.

2 Look and read. Then match.

1 girl
2 teacher
3 friend
4 boy

3 Read and circle.

1 She's my teacher. — She's / It's funny.
2 What's your name? — I'm / He's Jill.
3 How old are you? — I'm tall / seven.
4 What is it? — It's a / an apple.
5 Is it a bag? — Yes, it is / isn't.

28 Review 1 Units 1 and 2

Learning objectives: Review vocabulary, grammar, and sounds and letters from Units 1 and 2; Pre A1 Starters, Reading and Writing Part 3; Speaking, Part 2

Grammar: *to be (I / he / she)* affirmative and *(it)* negative

Vocabulary: adjectives, classroom objects, people

Resources: Flashcards; Speaking exam practice video

Materials: paper, pens or pencils

Warm-up: Ready, set, draw!

- Play *Ready, set, draw!* (see the Games bank, pages 14–15). Use pictures of the key items in Unit 1 or 2.

1 2.13 Listen and number.

- Refer the children to the picture and ask *What are the children's names? What can you see?*
- Play the audio. Have the children listen and point to the pictures.
- Play the audio again, pausing after the first word to point out the example answer.
- Play the rest of the audio for the children to number the words.
- For feedback, say each number and have the class call out the word.

Audioscript

1 *It's a pencil.*
2 *It's a rubber.*
3 *It's a ruler.*
4 *It's an apple.*
5 *It's a book.*
6 *It's an umbrella.*
7 *It's a pencil case*
8 *It's a pen.*
9 *She's my teacher.*
10 *He's my friend.*

Answers: 1 pencil **2** rubber **3** ruler **4** apple **5** book **6** umbrella **7** pencil case **8** pen **9** teacher **10** friend

2 Look and read. Then match.

- Read the words in the left column. Have the children repeat each word chorally after you.
- Work through the example with the children. Point to the word *girl* in the left column. Then point to each picture, eliciting a *Yes* or *No* from the children. Use your finger to draw the example match line from the word *girl* to the picture of the girl (c).
- Have the children complete the activity. Then ask volunteers to share their answers for each word. Elicit class agreement on the matches.

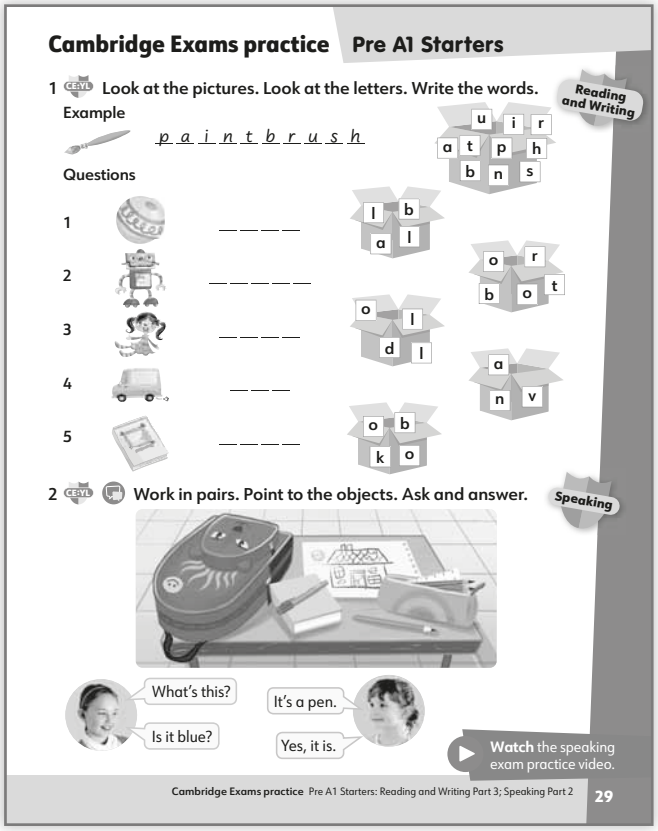
Answers: 1 c **2** a **3** d **4** b

3 Read and circle.

- Ask different children a question *What's your name? How old are you? What's this? Is it a ...?* and encourage them to give complete answers.
- The children read and circle the correct words.
- Invite pairs of children to read out the questions and answers. Ask for whole-class agreement.

Answers: 1 She's **2** I'm **3** seven **4** an **5** is

Pupil's Book page 29



1 Look at the pictures. Look at the letters. Write the words.

- This activity helps the children prepare for Part 3 of the Reading and Writing paper of the Cambridge English: Pre A1 Starters test. The children look, unscramble the letters and write the words.
- If done in class, go through the example first: point to the picture of the box. Guide students to unscramble the letters on the box so they make the word *paintbrush*.
- Give the children some quiet time to complete the activity.
- Invite different children to share their answers and have the rest of the class call out *yes* or *no*. Write the words on the board next to the corresponding number.
- (To help prepare for this part of the test, the children need plenty of practice in recognising and naming items, and unscrambling letters to form words.)

Answers: 1 ball **2** robot **3** doll **4** van **5** book

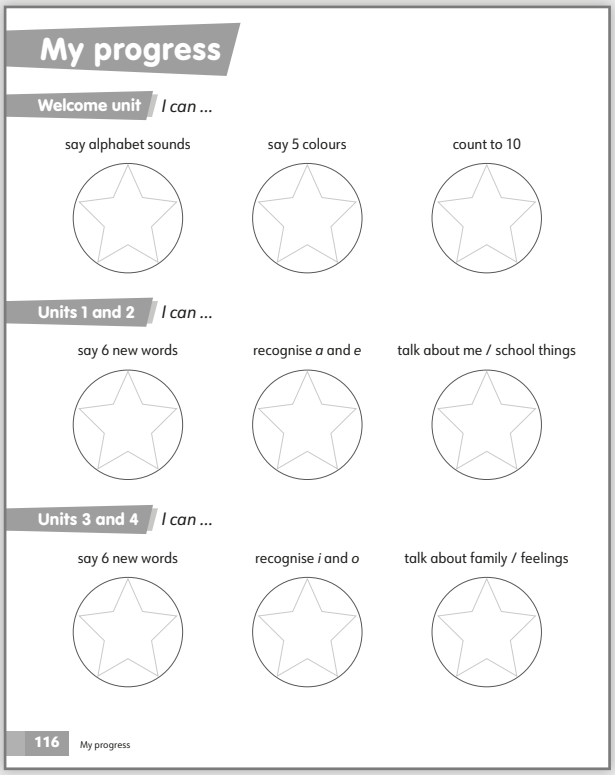
2 Work in pairs. Point to the objects. Ask and answer.

- This activity helps the children prepare for Part 2 of the Speaking paper of the Cambridge English: Pre A1 Starters test. The children look at the picture, point to an object, and answer questions about it, such as the object's colour or where it is in the picture.
- Read out the example dialogue and have the children repeat.
- Choose an object from the picture and have the children ask you questions (colour first then name of object) to discover what it is. Then the children continue in pairs.
- Finish with some open pairs asking and answering across the class.

Cooler: Disappearing words

- Play *Disappearing words* (see the Games bank, pages 14–15), recalling all the key words from this Review lesson.

Workbook page 116



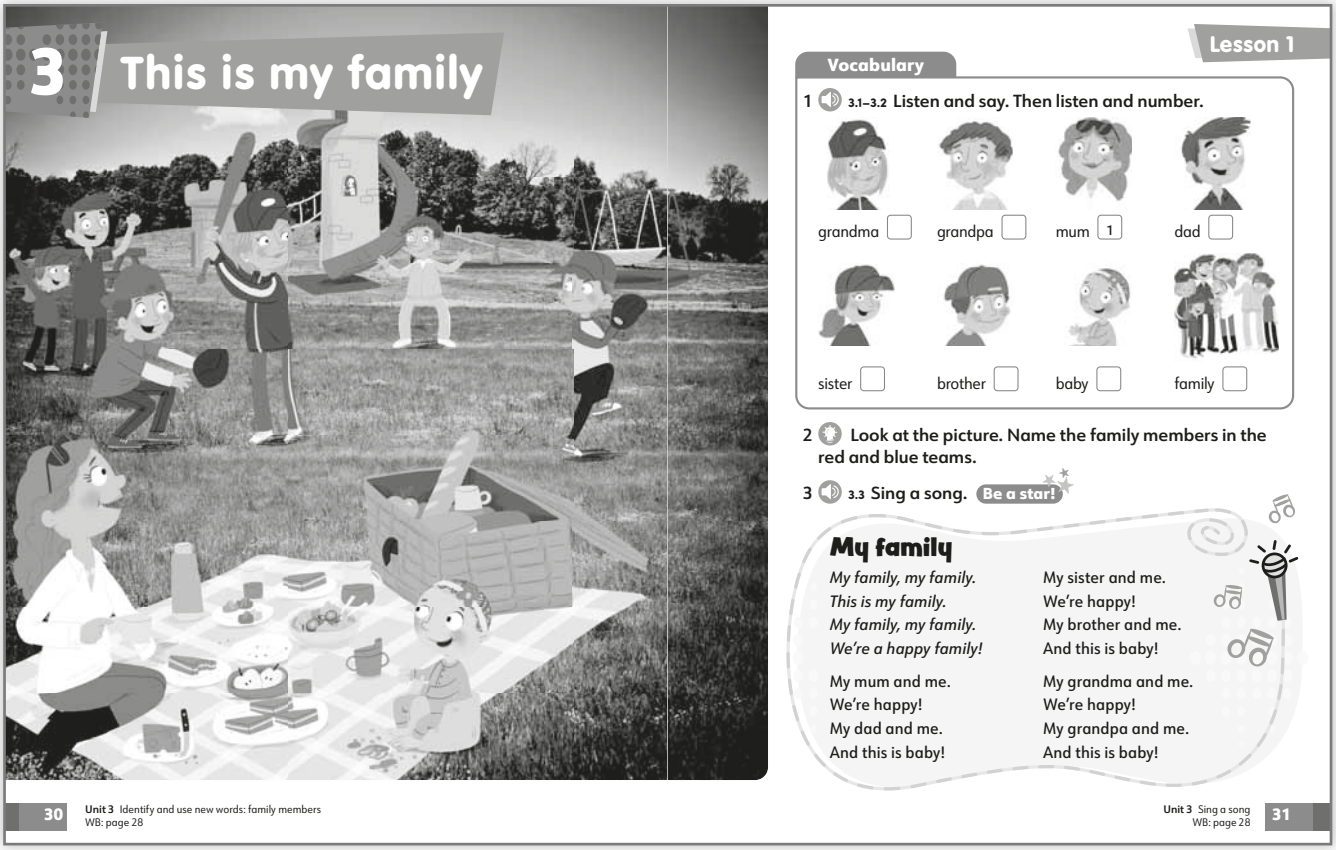
My progress: Units 1 and 2

- Clarify the meaning of each *I can* ... statement. Elicit examples to help the children remember the content.
- Show the children the correct stickers for the *My progress* check. Let them decide if they are ready to give themselves a sticker. Provide encouragement if necessary.
- Have all the children hold up their books and show all their stickers to the class. Encourage them to give themselves a round of applause for their effort and achievement!

3 This is my family

Lesson 1 Vocabulary

Pupil's Book pages 30–31



Learning objectives: Identify and use new words: family members; Sing a song using the target vocabulary

Vocabulary: baby, brother, dad, family, grandma, grandpa, mum, sister

Resources: Flashcards; Vocabulary worksheet 1

Warm-up: The big picture

- Refer the children to the picture on page 30. Ask *Where are they? What are the children's names? What's this?* (point to any objects that the children have already seen, e.g. jug, apple). Ask what they can see happening in the picture. *Ask Where's Bot? (He's in the blue tower behind the family.)*
- Say *Point to something blue / red / green /* etc. and have the children find items of that colour in the picture.

1 3.1 Listen and say.

- Play the audio. Have the children listen and point to the pictures.
- Play the audio again. The children point and repeat.

3.2 Then listen and number.

- Play the audio, pausing after the first word to point out the example answer.
- Play the rest of the audio for the children to number the words.
- For feedback, say each number and have the class call out the word. Ask different children to repeat each word to check pronunciation.

Audioscript

***1** mum, **2** brother, **3** family, **4** grandpa, **5** baby, **6** dad, **7** grandma, **8** sister*

Answers: grandma – **7**, grandpa – **4**, mum – **1**, dad – **6**, sister – **8**, brother – **2**, baby – **5**, family – **3**

2 Look at the picture. Name the family members in the red and blue teams.

- Hold up your book to the class and ask *Who's in the red team?* Point to each of the family members dressed in red and elicit the family names. Repeat with the blue team.
- Ask the children to turn their Pupil's Book face down. Say *Grandma – red or blue?* and have the class try to remember the colour of the team of the family members.

Answers: Red team: grandma, dad, sister / Sara
Blue team: grandpa, brother / Tom

Teaching star!

Pairwork

Memory games are motivating for young children and provide enjoyable extra practice. They are easy to play in pairs as the answers are always clear.

- Divide the class into pairs. Demonstrate with a confident child. Say *Dad – red or blue?* and have the child answer without looking at the book. Then have the child ask you a question and you answer from memory.
- Have the children continue in their pairs.

3 3.3 Sing a song.

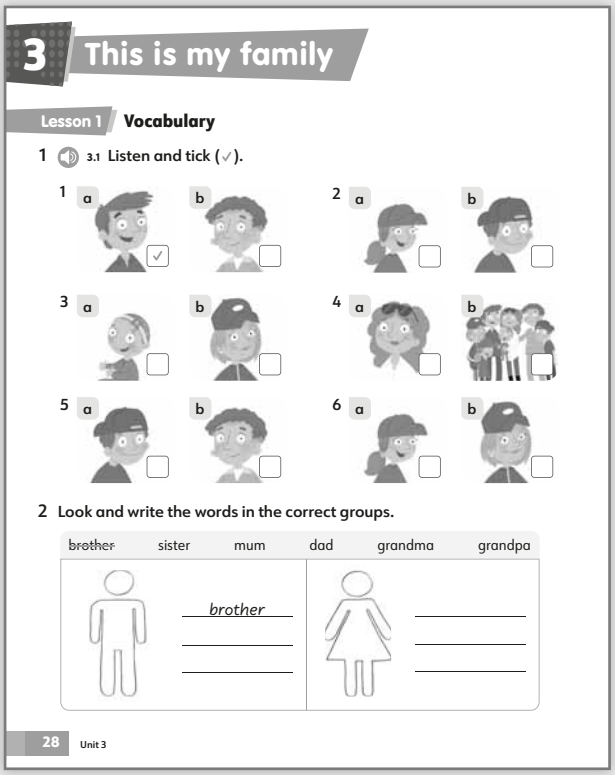
Be a star!

- Ask the children to turn their Pupil's Book face down. Explain that they will hear a song and that they should raise their hands every time they hear one of the words from Activity 1. Play the song and join in the actions with the children.
- Now play the song again and have the children follow in their books.
- Show the children they can 'mime' the family members by indicating with a hand going up from the floor how old the members are – baby at the bottom, grandpa at the top.
- Play the song and have the children 'mime' first. Then play again and have the children mime and sing. (This is quite challenging, but all the children can join in with the key words, if not the whole song.)

Cooler: The shark game

- Play *The shark game* (see the Games bank, pages 14–15) with the family vocabulary from this lesson.

Workbook page 28


3 This is my family

Lesson 1 Vocabulary

1 3.1 Listen and tick (✓).

1 a ✓ b 2 a b

3 a b 4 a b

5 a b 6 a b

2 Look and write the words in the correct groups.

brother sister mum dad grandma grandpa

brother

28 Unit 3

1 Listen and tick (✓).

Audioscript

1 *This is my dad.*
2 *This is my brother.*
3 *This is my grandma.*
4 *This is my mum.*
5 *This is my grandpa.*
6 *This is my sister.*

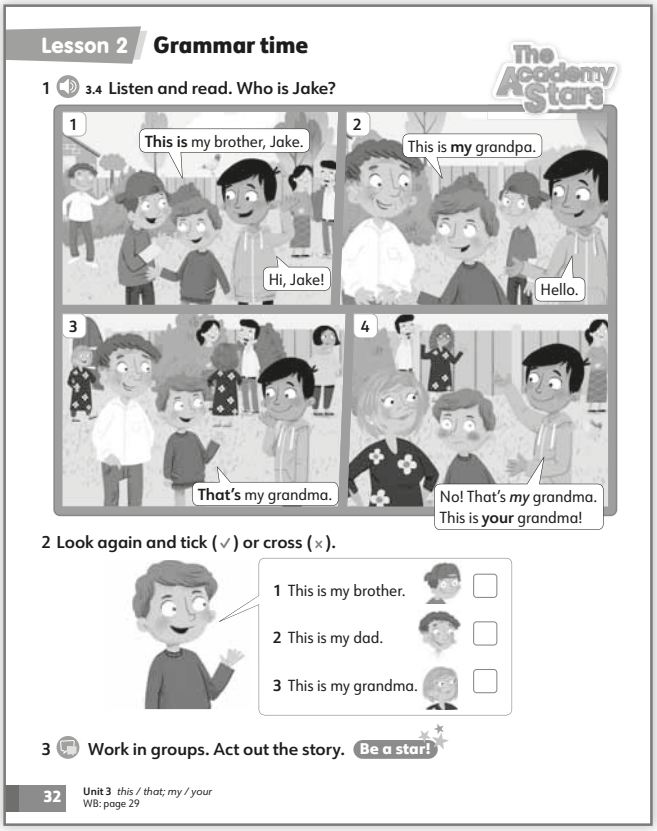
Answers: 1 a **2** b **3** b **4** a **5** b **6** a

2 Look and write the words in the correct groups.

Answers: (male) brother, dad, grandpa; (female) sister, mum, grandma

Lesson 2 Grammar time

Pupil's Book page 32



Learning objectives: Understand and use *this / that, my / your*; Read and act out a story using the target grammar

Grammar: *this / that, my / your*

Review vocabulary: family members

3.3 Warm-up: Sing the song!

- Play the song *My family* and have the children join in and do the actions.
- Before playing the song, you may wish to remind the children of the mimes they learnt in the previous lesson. Show the children they can 'mime' the family members by indicating with a hand going up from the floor how old the members are – baby at the bottom, grandpa at the top.
- You could also teach the children any new mimes or ask them if they know any others, for variety.

1 3.4 Listen and read. Who is Jake?

- Refer the children to the pictures and ask *Who can you see? Do you know their names? Where are they? (at home, in the garden)*
- Play the audio. Have the children follow in their books and find the answer to the question *Who is Jake?* Elicit the answer and then ask what other family members are in the story.
- Play the audio again for the children to repeat chorally.
- Play the audio one more time. Have them mime introducing someone next to them for *This is* and pointing to someone further away for *That's*. Place a hand on your chest for *my* and indicate a friend for *your*.

Answer: Jake is Tom's brother

2 Look again and tick (✓) or cross (✗).

- Refer the children to the pictures and sentences. Invite three confident children to read out the sentences. Say (and demonstrate) *Hands up for yes ... Hands up for no* and see if there is class consensus. Have the children tick and cross the boxes.
- Check the answers with hands up one more time.

Answers: 1 ✓ **2** ✗ **3** ✓

Teaching star!

Extension

Give the children further practice using the language in the story.

- Invite a confident child to come to the front of the class. Introduce the child to two people in the class: indicate a child very near to you and say *This is (Omar)*. Then indicate a child further away from you and say *That's (Jana)*. Have the child with you introduce two people in the same way.
- Drill the phrases *This is ...* and *That's ...* one more time.
- Divide the class into pairs to introduce friends to each other – one near and one further away. Repeat several times with different friends.

3 Work in groups. Act out the story.

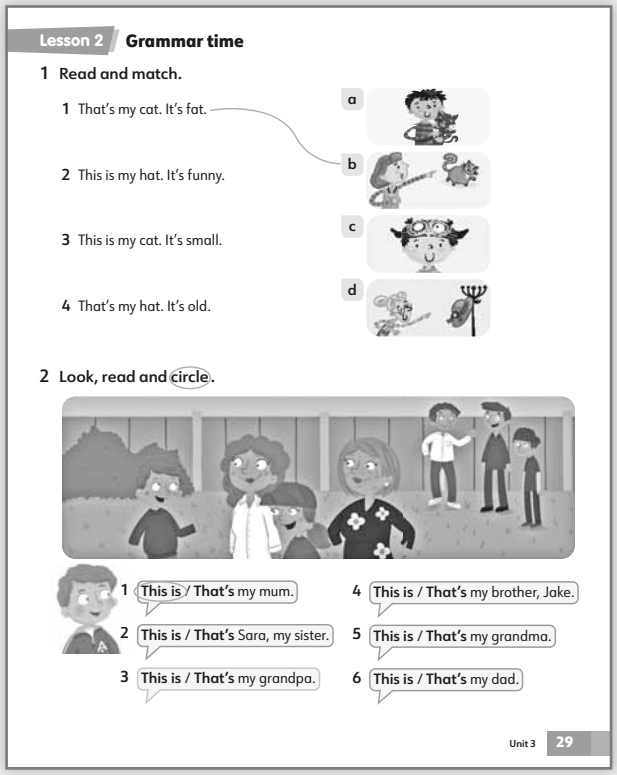
Be a star!

- Play the audio again for the class to repeat each line chorally. Pay attention to the pronunciation of the *th* sound in *This* and *That's*.
- Divide the class into pairs and have them decide who will be Tom and who will be Jake. Alternatively, designate the roles by giving each child a number, and then giving each number a role.
- Allow them a few minutes to practise acting out the story. You may wish to play the audio again to remind them of the intonation, etc.
- Encourage some of the pairs to act out the story for the rest of the class.
- If you wish, you could ask the children to change roles and act out the story again.

Cooler: What's the last word?

- Play *What's the last word?* (see the Games Bank, pages 14–15). Stop the audio after some of the key words in the story (e.g. *brother, grandpa, hello, that's, my, your*).
- Have the children raise their hands to say what they think the last word they heard was. Ask for whole-class agreement each time and have them all repeat the word.

Workbook page 29



Lesson 2 **Grammar time**

1 Read and match.

1 That's my cat. It's fat.
2 This is my hat. It's funny.
3 This is my cat. It's small.
4 That's my hat. It's old.

a b c d

2 Look, read and circle.

1 **This is / That's** my mum.
2 **This is / That's** Sara, my sister.
3 **This is / That's** my grandpa.
4 **This is / That's** my brother, Jake.
5 **This is / That's** my grandma.
6 **This is / That's** my dad.

Unit 3 29

1 Read and match.

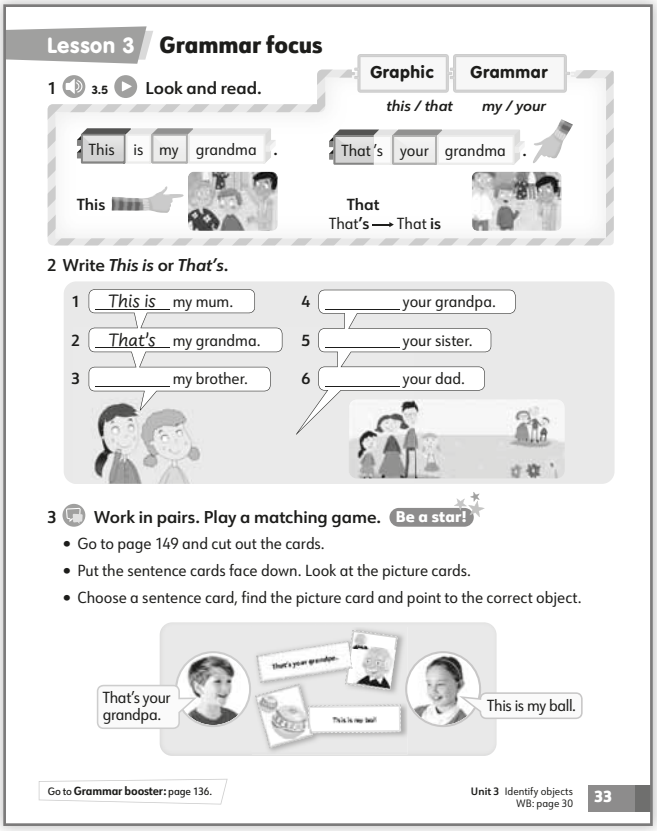
Answers: 1 b **2** c **3** a **4** d

2 Look, read and circle.

Answers: 1 This is **2** This is **3** That's
4 That's **5** This is **6** That's

Lesson 3 Grammar focus

Pupil's Book page 33



Learning objectives: Identify objects

Grammar: *this / that, my / your; This is my grandma. That's your grandma.*

Review vocabulary: family members

Resources: Graphic Grammar video; Grammar worksheet 1

Materials: scissors

Warm-up: Put the letters back

- Play *Put the letters back* (see the Games bank, pages 14–15). Write on the board the following incomplete sentences:
  Th_ s _s my br_ th_ r.;
  Th_ t's my gr_ ndp_.;
  Th_ s _s y_ _ r gr_ ndm_.
  (Solution: *This is my brother. That's my grandpa. This is your grandma.*)

1 3.5 Look and read.

- Play the audio and have the children follow in their books. Encourage them to make gestures to reinforce meaning: pointing close to themselves for *this* and pointing further away for *that*; placing a hand on their chest for *my* and indicating a friend for *your*.
- Play the audio again for the children to repeat chorally.
- Highlight the contraction *That's* by counting out *That is your grandma* on your fingers, and then pushing the *That is fingers* together to show the contraction.

- If using the video, tell the children they will see a video of people meeting in a café. Play the video and let the children watch and enjoy.
- Play the video again and have the children repeat each sentence. Encourage them to do actions for *this, that, my* and *your* as described above.

2 Write *This is* or *That's*.

- Refer the children to the example answers and elicit why these are correct (1 mum is near, 2 grandma is further away).
- Have the children complete the activity and check their answers in pairs.
- Invite different children to read out the sentences. Ask for whole-class agreement each time.

Answers: 1 This is **2** That's **3** That's **4** That's **5** This is **6** This is

3 Work in pairs. Play a matching game.

Be a star!

- Divide the class into pairs and have them open their books to page 149.
- Make sure the children all have scissors with which to cut out the cards.
- Give the children time to cut out the cards. While they do this, confirm understanding of what they see in the pictures on the cards. For this activity, they will use one set of cards.
- Invite two children to read out the example exchange. To reinforce the difference between the use of *This is ... / That's ...*, point out that the bigger pictures on the two cards represent people or items that are near (*This is ...*), and the smaller pictures represent people or items that are further away (*That's ...*). Use gestures and examples of items in the classroom if necessary for further reinforcement. Then have all the children do the activity in pairs.
- Circulate round the class, making sure that the children are using *This is* or *That's* to describe the picture.

Grammar booster

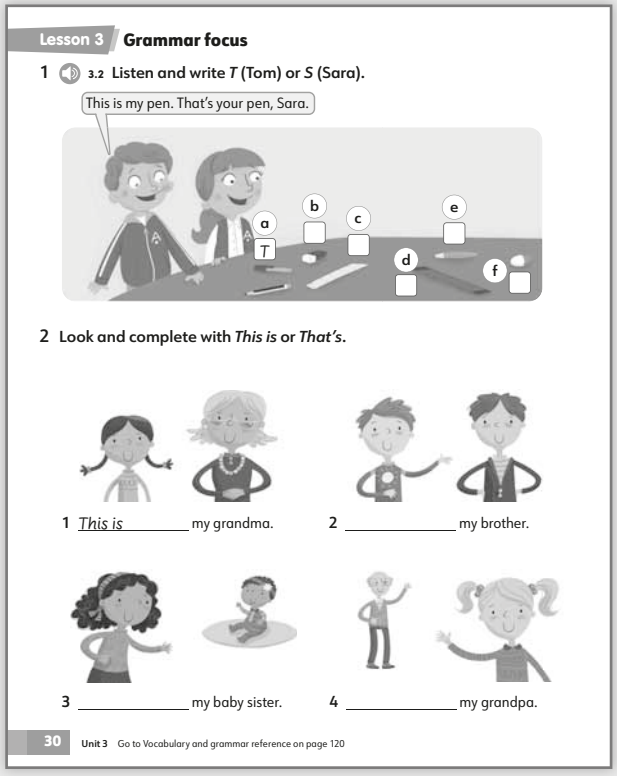
Ask the children to turn to page 136 of their Pupil's Book to complete Activity 1. If the children need more grammar practice before the communicative Activity 3, have them complete this activity first. Alternatively, you may wish to have the children complete this activity at home.

Answers: 1 This is **2** This is **3** That's **4** This is **5** That's **6** This is

Cooler: A memory game

- Divide the class into groups of six to eight children. Each child in the group should place one card of his / hers in the middle (cards can be repeated).
- Join one group to demonstrate. Place a card, e.g. a crayon, in the middle. Pick it up and say *This is a crayon* and put it back with the other cards. Encourage the next child to pick up a card and say *This is a book. That's a crayon.* (pointing to your crayon card).
- The next child in each group picks up and speaks about their own card and has to remember the cards that belong to the people before them.

Workbook page 30


Lesson 3 Grammar focus

1 3.2 Listen and write *T* (Tom) or *S* (Sara).

This is my pen. That's your pen, Sara.

a T b c d e f

2 Look and complete with *This is* or *That's*.

1 *This is* my grandma. 2 _____ my brother.

3 _____ my baby sister. 4 _____ my grandpa.

30 Unit 3 Go to Vocabulary and grammar reference on page 120

Grammar reference:

Remind the children that they can refer to the grammar reference on page 120 to help them when completing these activities.

1 3.2 Listen and write *T* (Tom) or *S* (Sara).

Audioscript

1 *This is my pen. That's your pen, Sara.*

2 *That's your ruler, Tom. This is my ruler.*

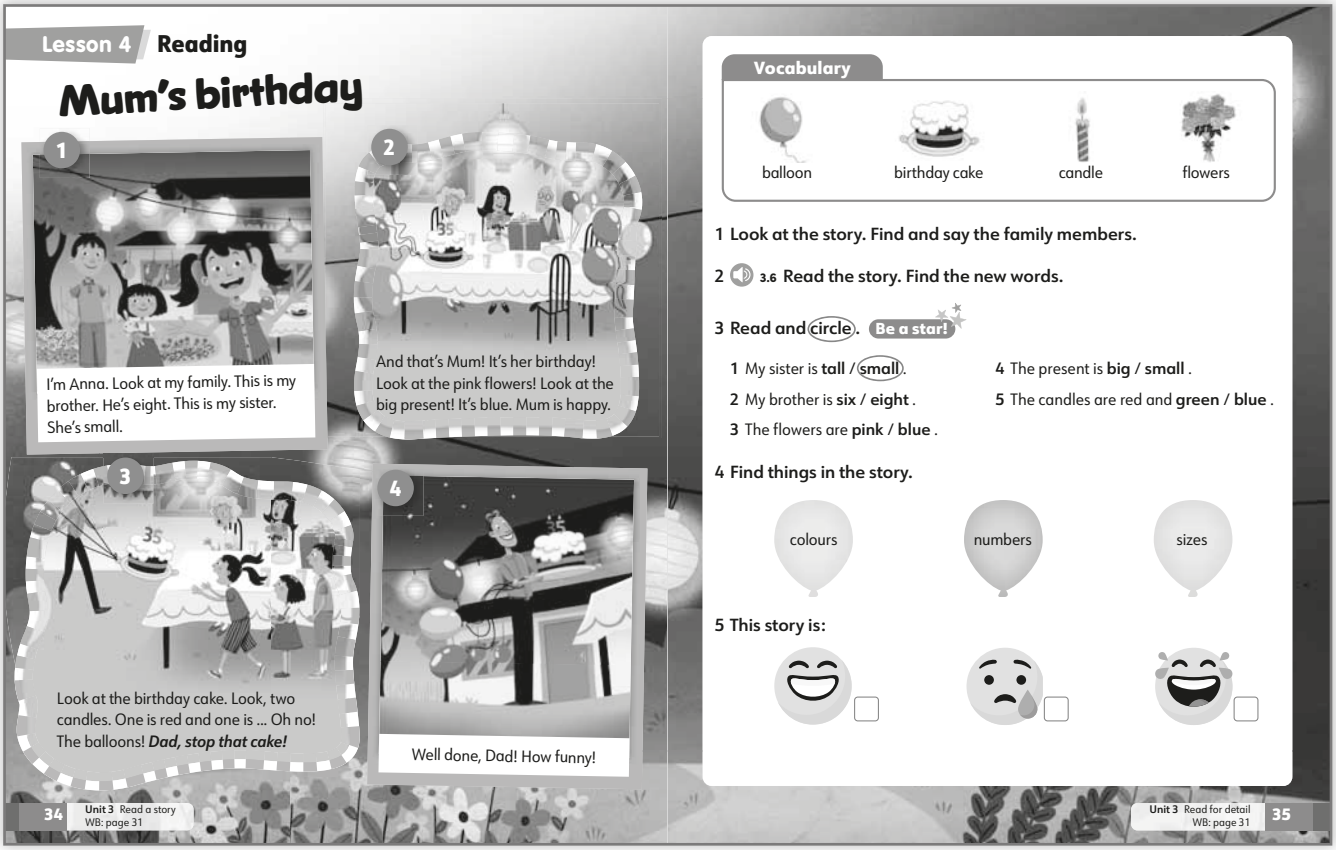
3 *This is my rubber, Sara. That's your rubber.*

Answers: a T **b** T **c** S **d** T **e** S **f** S

2 Look and complete with *This is* or *That's*.

Answers: 1 This is **2** This is **3** That's **4** That's

Pupil's Book pages 34–35



Learning objectives: Read a story; Read for detail

Vocabulary: balloon, birthday cake, candle, flowers

Additional vocabulary: beautiful, birthday, pink, present, purple

Review vocabulary: big, blue, funny, happy, small, tall

Resources: Flashcards; Vocabulary worksheet 2

Warm-up: Speed drawing

- Tell the children they have 20 seconds to draw a picture of their family in their notebooks. Demonstrate by having the children count down from ten while you do a very fast picture of your family on the board – this shows the children that it doesn't need to be a good drawing, or even recognisable!
- Tell the children about your family – *This is my ...*
- The children do their own super-fast drawings of their family and tell a friend about them. (The terrible drawings are part of the fun!)

Vocabulary

- Refer the children to the vocabulary panel on page 35 and read out the words for the class to repeat.
- Ask *Where can you see flowers? Can you find the birthday cake? Where are the candles? Do you see any balloons?*

1 Look at the story. Find and say the family members.

- Give the children a minute to look at the text and pictures. Ask them to guess what the title word *birthday* means.
- Tell the children that the people in the picture are all from the same family. Point to the characters and have the children suggest who they are.
- Have the children read or look through the story individually and find the family names. When they see the name of a family member in the text, have them find the person in the pictures. (While Grandma and Grandpa are not named in the text, they can be seen in the picture; affirm responses if the children are able to name them.)

Answers: brother, sister, Mum, Dad, Grandma, Grandpa

2 3.6 Read the story. Find the new words.

- Play the audio and have the children follow in their books.

3 Read and circle.

Be a star!

- Go through the example with the class. Ask them to find the word *small* in the story (part 1: *This is my sister. She's small.*) Check the meaning of the word *small*.
- The children work individually to answer the remaining questions. Encourage them to find the part of the story, check the information and circle the correct word.
- For feedback, read out the beginning of each sentence and have the class call out the ending.

Answers: 1 small **2** eight **3** pink **4** big **5** green

Teaching star!

Reading

When children are learning to deal with texts, a whole class approach is good to demonstrate technique. Follow this approach for Activity 3 to help children develop good reading skills.

- Write the sentences on the board.
- Point out the word *sister* in number 1, and ask the children which part of the story is about the sister. (They can use the pictures and text to find it: part 1.)
- Point out the words *small* and *big*. Read part 1 with the children and ask which word they can see. Circle it on the board.
- Do the same with the other sentences.

4 Find things in the story.

- Ask the children to find colours, numbers and sizes mentioned in the story.

Answers: colours: pink, blue, red; numbers: eight, one; sizes: small, big

5 This story is:

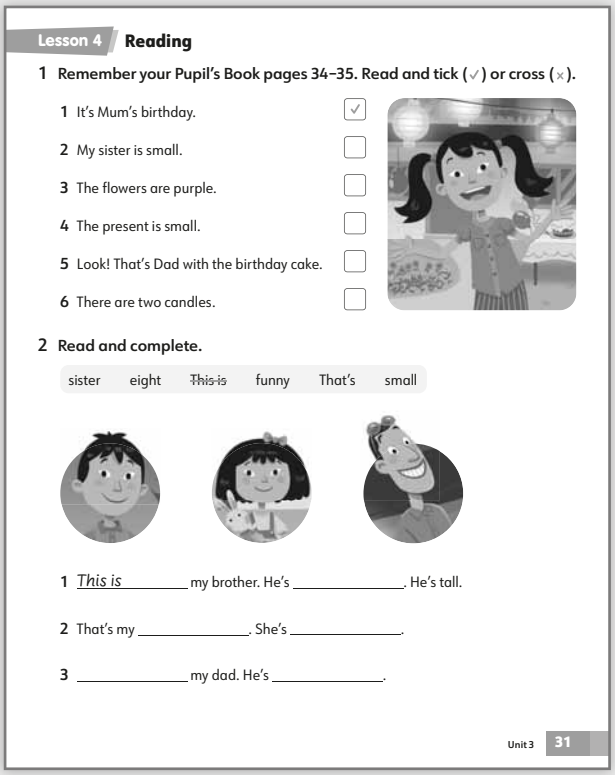
- Ask the children to decide which of the three pictures fits the mood of the story.

Answers: Children should tick the laughing emoji.

Cooler: Disappearing words

- Play *Disappearing words* (see the Games bank, pages 14–15) with the key words from the story.

Workbook page 31



Lesson 4 Reading

1 Remember your Pupil's Book pages 34–35. Read and tick (✓) or cross (×).

1 It's Mum's birthday. ✓
2 My sister is small.
3 The flowers are purple.
4 The present is small.
5 Look! That's Dad with the birthday cake.
6 There are two candles.

2 Read and complete.

sister eight ~~This is~~ funny That's small

1 *This is* my brother. He's _____. He's tall.
2 That's my _____. She's _____.
3 _____ my dad. He's _____.

Unit 3 31

1 Remember your Pupil's Book pages 34–35. Read and tick (✓) or cross (✗).

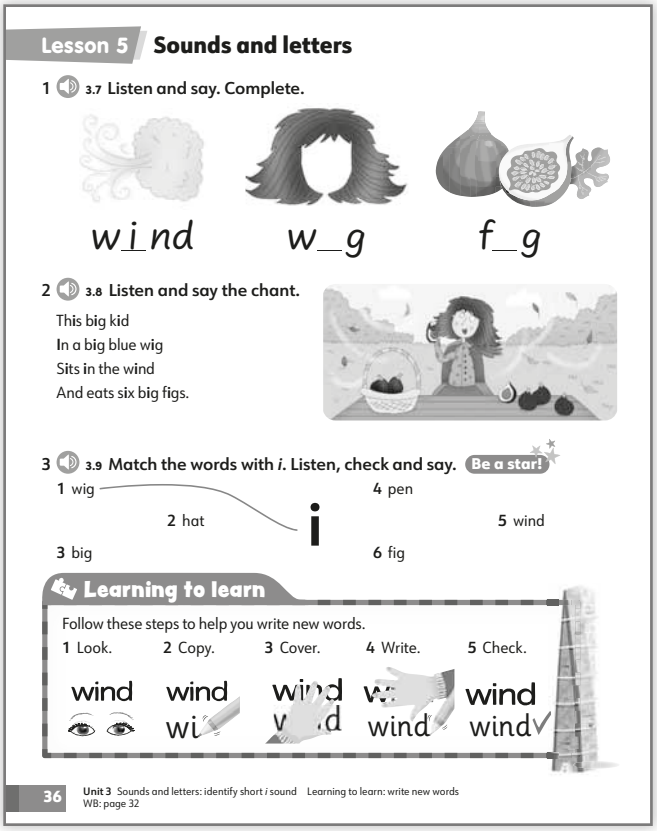
Answers: 1 ✓ **2** ✓ **3** ✗ **4** ✗ **5** ✓ **6** ✓

2 Read and complete.

Answers: 1 This is, eight **2** sister, small **3** That's, funny

Lesson 5 Sounds and letters

Pupil's Book page 36



Learning objectives: Sounds and letters: identify short *i* sound; Learning to learn: write new words

Sounds and letters words: fig, wig, wind

Resources: Sounds and letters worksheet

Warm-up: That's wrong!

- Read a changed version of the beginning of the story from Lesson 4 to the children. Make some funny changes to keywords (see suggested version below).
- Have the children say *Stop*! every time they hear something different from the original. Ask what the original was.
- (Suggested version: *I'm Anna. Look at my robots. This is my brother. She's old. This is my sister. He's big. And that's Mum! It's her birthday! Look at the blue flowers! Look at the big present! It's pink! Mum is sad.*)

1 3.7 Listen and say. Complete.

- Refer the children to the pictures. Ask if they know the names of any of these things. If necessary, clarify *wig*, by miming putting a wig on your head.
- Play the audio for the children to repeat the words chorally. Do this twice.
- Point to the *i* in the word wind in your book. Ask *What's this letter?* (*i*) *What's the sound?* (/ɪ/)
- Write a big, clear *i* on the board as a model for the children. Have them complete the three words.

Audioscript

/ɪ/ /ɪ/ /ɪ/ wind
/ɪ/ /ɪ/ /ɪ/ wig
/ɪ/ /ɪ/ /ɪ/ fig

Answers: wind, wig, fig

2 3.8 Listen and say the chant.

- Play the chant and have the children follow in their books. Have them raise their hands every time they see / hear a word with *i*.
- Play the chant again, pausing after each line for the children to repeat. Pay particular attention to the *i* sound.
- Play the chant once more and have the children join in as much as they can.
- Have the children say the chant round the class, one word each. See how fast they can say it!

3 3.9 Match the words with *i*. Listen, check and say.

Be a star!

- Ask the children how many words they can see with the letter *i* (there are four).
- Point out the example and have the children draw lines to join the remaining words with *i* to the big letter *i* in the middle.
- Ask the children which numbers they circled, and play the audio to confirm.
- Play the audio again for the children to repeat the words chorally and then individually to check pronunciation.

Audioscript

wig, wig, big, big, wind, wind, fig, fig

Answers: 1 wig, **3** big, **5** wind, **6** fig

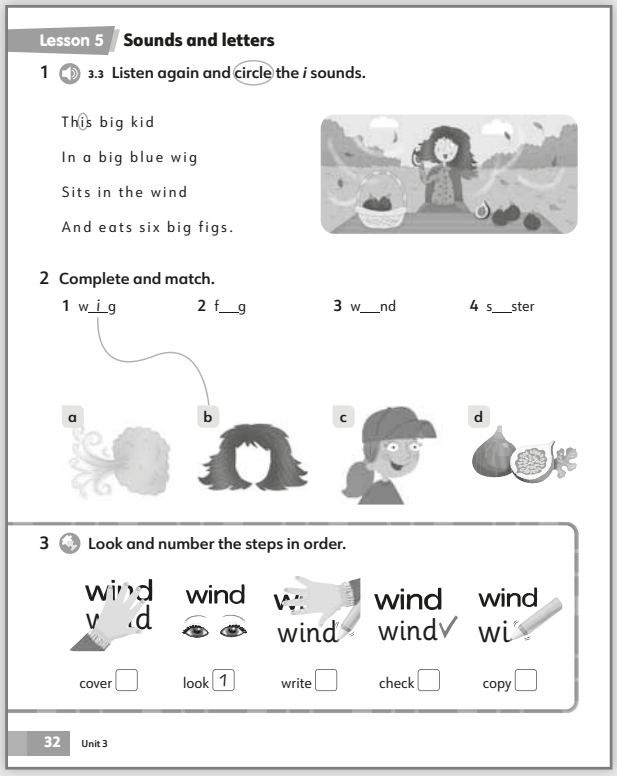
Learning to learn

- Explain to the children that when they learn new words, it's important to learn how to write them correctly.
- Refer the children to the words and images in the *Learning to learn* box.
- Do an example on the board following the same procedure, and saying the words for the five stages.
- Have all the children choose one word from the page and practise the steps. (There is more practice in the Workbook.)

Cooler: Physical spelling

- Play *Physical spelling* (see the Games bank, pages 14–15) with the key words from this lesson: *wind, wig, fig, big, listen, copy*.

Workbook page 32



Lesson 5 **Sounds and letters**

1 3.3 Listen again and circle the *i* sounds.

Th(i)s big kid
In a big blue wig
Sits in the wind
And eats six big figs.

2 Complete and match.

1 w_i_g 2 f__g 3 w__nd 4 s__ster

a b c d

3 Look and number the steps in order.

cover ☐ look 1 write ☐ check ☐ copy ☐

32 Unit 3

1 3.3 Listen again and circle the *i* sounds.

Answers: Th(i)s b(i)g k(i)d
(I)n a b(i)g blue w(i)g
S(i)ts (i)n the w(i)nd
And eats s(i)x b(i)g f(i)gs.

2 Complete and match.

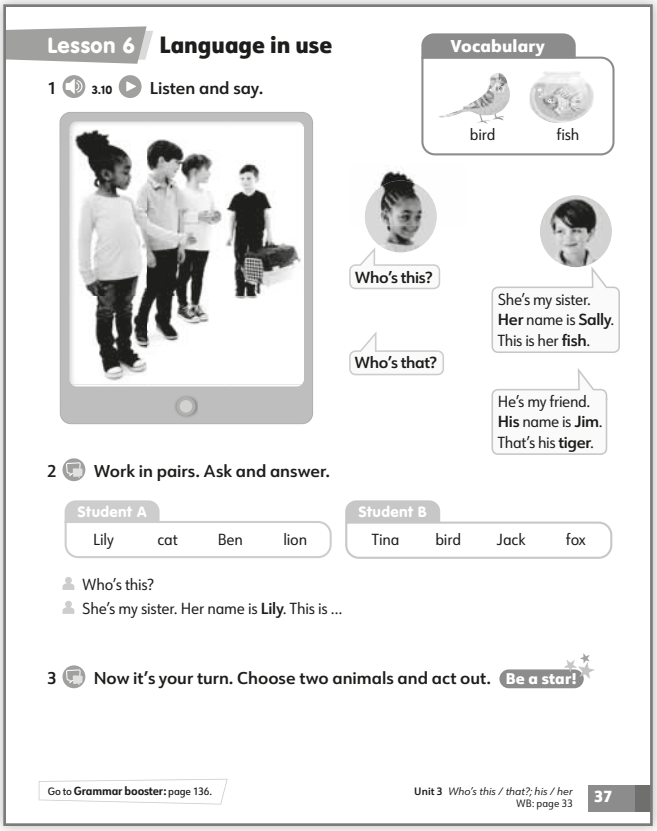
Answers: 1 i – b **2** i – d **3** i – a **4** i – c

3 Look and number the steps in order.

Answers: 1 look **2** copy **3** cover **4** write **5** check

Lesson 6 Language in use

Pupil's Book page 37



Learning objectives: *Who's this / that?*; *his / her*

Review vocabulary: animals

Resources: Language in use video; Grammar worksheet 2

3.8 Warm-up: Say the chant again

- Using mime if necessary to prompt them, ask the children to recall the chant from Lesson 5. Then play the audio to see how well they remembered. Write it on the board.
- Have the whole class say the chant together.
- Then divide the class into two, with each half saying alternate lines.

Vocabulary

- Refer the children to the pictures in the vocabulary box at the top of the page. Say the words and have the children repeat.
- Have them do a mime for a bird, e.g. flapping their arms, and for a fish, e.g. opening and closing their mouth.
- Say the words quickly at random for the children to repeat and do the mime.

1 3.10 Listen and say.

- Play the audio and have the children follow in their books.
- Play the audio again and have the children repeat each part.
- Ask when we use *his* and *her* (*his for boys, her for girls*). Elicit the question to ask about a person (*Who's this?*).
- Play the audio one more time, and have the children repeat.

- If using the video, play it and let the children watch and enjoy it.
- Play the video again and stop after each question. Elicit the answer from the children, one sentence at a time. Play the video to confirm and have them all repeat.
- Now play the video one more time and have the children repeat the questions and answers. Encourage them to imitate the intonation and body language as closely as possible.

2 Work in pairs. Ask and answer.

- Refer the children to the information about Students A and B in the boxes. Ask them to find four names and four animals.
- Refer them to the beginning of the dialogue. Point out that it is the same dialogue as in Activity 1, but the blue words are changed for the items in the boxes.
- Roleplay the complete dialogue with a confident child for the class to see how it works.
- Divide the class into pairs to make new dialogues with the words in the boxes.
- Invite any volunteer pairs to perform their dialogue for the class.

3 Now it's your turn. Choose two animals and act out. Be a star!

- The children are now ready to do their own versions of the dialogue in pairs. Ask them to think of two animals each and make new dialogues.
- While they do this, circulate and monitor. Offer support as necessary and praise the children for any good work.

Grammar booster

Ask the children to turn to page 136 of their Pupil's Book to complete Activity 2. You may also wish to have the children complete this activity at home.

Answers: 1 her **2** cat **3** Who **4** His **5** That **6** bird

Cooler: Read around the class

- Have the children read out the dialogue in Activity 1 round the class – each child says one word. See how fast they can complete it!

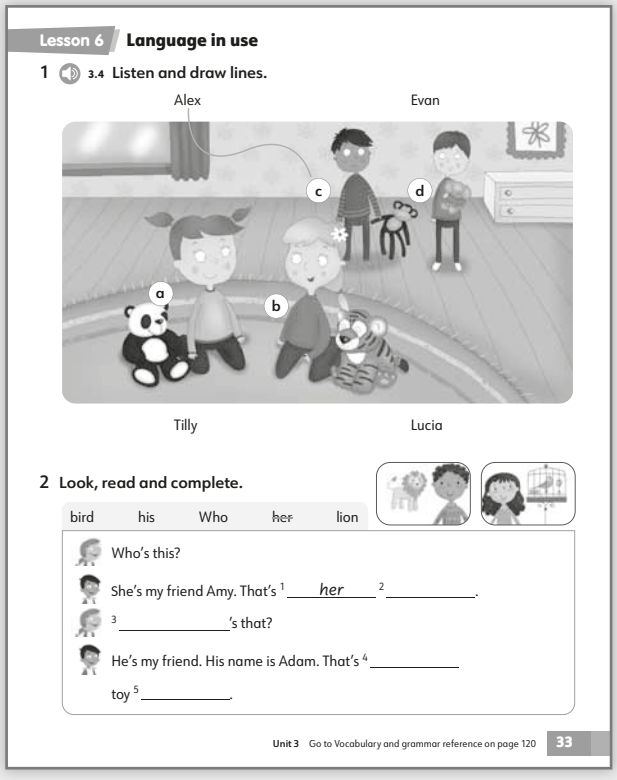
Teaching star!

Mixed ability

Some children find adapting the dialogue challenging. Building a new dialogue as a class with plenty of repetition gives more confidence.

- Draw two heads at the top of the board. Build a dialogue like the one in Activity 1 on the board under the heads, but change the names and animals. Using little pictures can help fix the language for each new part.
- Each time you add in a new question and answer, go back and repeat the dialogue from the beginning.
- By the time they come to the end, everyone will be confident and ready to speak.

Workbook page 33



Lesson 6 **Language in use**

1 3.4 Listen and draw lines.

Alex Evan

c d a b

Tilly Lucia

2 Look, read and complete.

bird his Who ~~her~~ lion

Who's this?

She's my friend Amy. That's 1 *her* 2 _____.

3 _____'s that?

He's my friend. His name is Adam. That's 4 _____

toy 5 _____.

Unit 3 Go to Vocabulary and grammar reference on page 120 33

Grammar reference:

Remind the children that they can refer to the grammar reference on page 120 to help them when completing these activities.

1 3.4 Listen and draw lines.

Audioscript

1 *Who's that?*
He's my brother. That's his toy monkey. His name is Alex.

2 *Who's that?*
He's my friend Evan. That's his toy elephant.

3 *Who's this?*
She's my sister. This is her toy panda. Her name is Lucia.

4 *Who's this?*
She's my friend Tilly. This is her toy tiger.

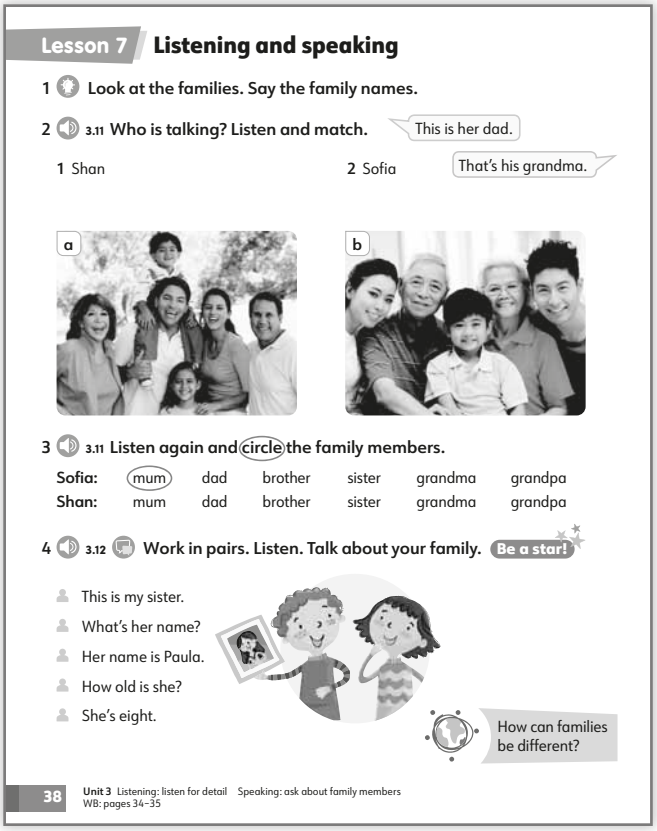
Answers: 1 Alex, c **2** Evan, d **3** Lucia, a **4** Tilly, b

2 Look, read and complete.

Answers: 1 her **2** bird **3** Who **4** his **5** lion

Lesson 7 Listening and speaking

Pupil's Book page 38



Lesson 7 Listening and speaking

1 Look at the families. Say the family names.

2 3.11 Who is talking? Listen and match.

This is her dad.

1 Shan

2 Sofia

That's his grandma.

a

b

3 3.11 Listen again and circle the family members.

Sofia:	mum	dad	brother	sister	grandma	grandpa
Shan:	mum	dad	brother	sister	grandma	grandpa

4 3.12 Work in pairs. Listen. Talk about your family. Be a star!

This is my sister.
What's her name?
Her name is Paula.
How old is she?
She's eight.

How can families be different?

38 Unit 3 Listening: listen for detail Speaking: ask about family members
WB: pages 34–35

Learning objectives: Listening: listen for detail; Speaking: ask about family members

Review vocabulary: family members, adjectives

Resources: Vocabulary worksheet 2

Materials: paper, pens or pencils

3.10 Warm-up: What's the last word?

- Play *What's the last word?* (see the Games bank, pages 14–15). Pause the audio after some of the key words in the dialogue (e.g. *sister, fish, that, friend, tiger*).

1 Look at the families. Say the family names.

- The children look at the photos in Activity 2 and the family names.

2 3.11 Who is talking? Listen and match.

- Play part 1 of the audio for the children to listen and look at the first photo.
- Play it again and point to the family members as they are mentioned.
- Now play part 2 of the audio and have the children point to the family members. Play it again to check.

Audioscript

1 *Hello. I'm Sofia and I'm from Mexico. I'm seven. This is my family. This is my mum. This is my dad. The small boy is my brother. This is my grandma and this is my grandpa.*

2 *I'm Shan. I'm from China. I'm six. This is my family. This is my mum and this is my dad. My grandma and grandpa are in the photo too.*

Answers: 1 a **2** b

3 3.11 Listen again and circle the family members.

- Write on the board Sofia: *mum dad brother sister grandma grandpa*.
- Play part 1 of the audio. When the children hear a family name, they say *Stop!* and tell you which word to circle. Play the rest of the audio and have the children circle the words.
- For feedback, play the audio again, pausing for different children to circle the word on the board.
- Repeat for part 2 of the audio.

Answers: Sofia: mum, dad, brother, grandma, grandpa; Shan: mum, dad, grandma, grandpa

4 3.12 Work in pairs. Listen. Talk about your family. Be a star!

- Play the audio. Have the children repeat each line quietly to themselves. Play it again and have them repeat chorally and then individually to check pronunciation.
- Have the children draw a picture of a family member very quickly. Draw one of your own as an example. Introduce the person in your picture and encourage the children to ask questions.
- Now divide the class into pairs to continue the activity.

ESDC

How can families be different?

- Read out the question and ask if anyone can translate it into L1. This question helps the children identify connections between our community and the outside world and identify distinguishing features of a variety of global cultures.
- Elicit ideas on what the children think makes a family. Ask whether the children know some families that are very different to their own. You may wish to discuss your own immediate and extended family to elicit comparisons.
- Guide the children to explore the concept of same and different in relation to families. Discuss how not all families are equally rich, happy or fortunate. Talk about how different cultures can define family to include friends, community elders or others.

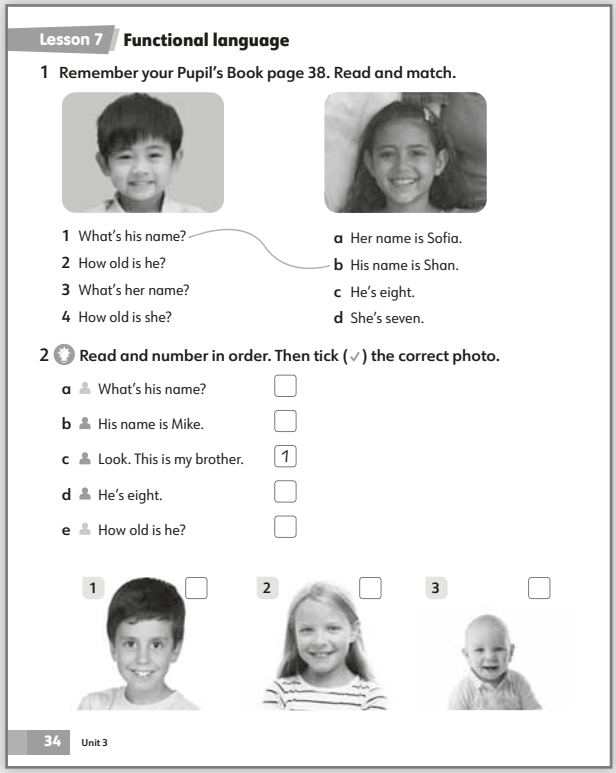
ESDC *continued*

Possible answers: some families can be small, with just one parent and one child; some can be large, with grandparents or other extended family members. Some families are rich, while others may struggle with money or housing. Families should be respected however they are defined.

3.3 Cooler: Sing the song!

- Play the song *My family* as a reminder. Then divide the class into two and have them sing alternate lines of the verses, and then sing all together for the chorus.

Workbook page 34



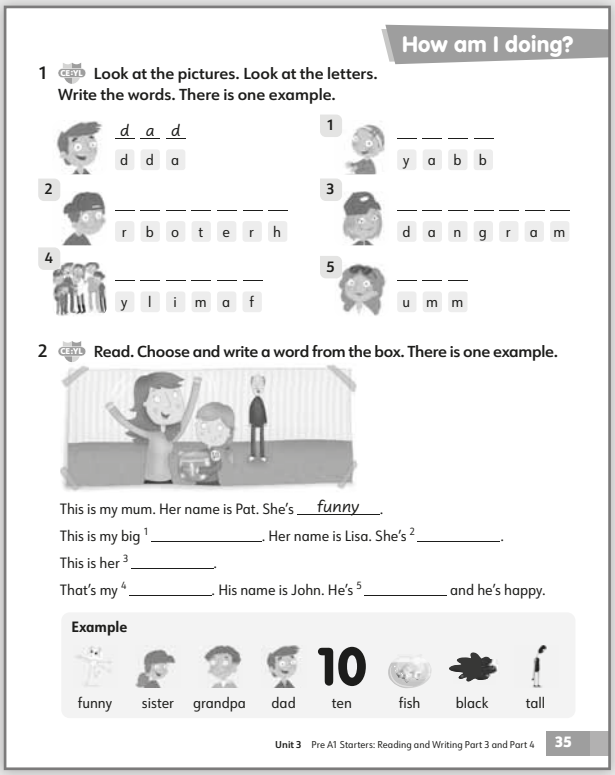
1 Remember your Pupil's Book page 38. Read and match.

Answers: 1 b **2** c **3** a **4** d

2 Read and number in order. Then tick (✓) the correct photo.

Answers: a 2 **b** 3 **c** 1 **d** 5 **e** 4
Correct picture: 1

Workbook page 35



1 Look at the pictures. Look at the letters. Write the words. There is one example.

- This activity prepares children for Part 3 of the Reading and Writing paper of the Cambridge English: Pre A1 Starters test. They use the letters to make the words illustrated in the pictures.
- Elicit the names of the objects chorally.
- Go through the example. Then elicit the correct spelling of number 1. Write it on the board.
- The children continue individually and then check with a friend. (To prepare, the children need practice in spelling.)

Answers: 1 baby **2** brother **3** grandma **4** family **5** mum

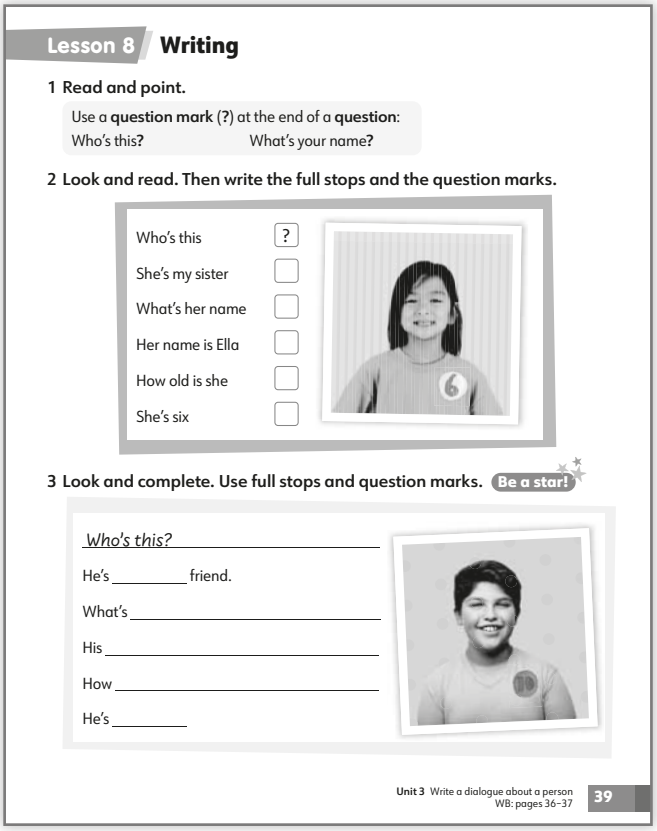
2 Read. Choose and write a word from the box. There is one example.

- This activity helps the children prepare for Part 4 of the Reading and Writing paper of the Cambridge English: Pre A1 Starters test. The children complete the text choosing words from the box.
- Review the example. Then have the children work in pairs. Ask them to read each sentence and guess the word before they look at the word box.
- Check the answers with the class.
- (To prepare, the children should practise reading a text quickly for general meaning.)

Answers: 1 sister **2** ten **3** fish **4** grandpa **5** tall

Lesson 8 Writing

Pupil's Book page 39


Lesson 8 Writing

1 Read and point.

Use a **question mark** (?) at the end of a **question**:
Who's this? What's your name?

2 Look and read. Then write the full stops and the question marks.

Who's this ?
She's my sister
What's her name
Her name is Ella
How old is she
She's six

3 Look and complete. Use full stops and question marks. Be a star!

Who's this?
He's _____ friend.
What's _____
His _____
How _____
He's _____

Unit 3 Write a dialogue about a person
WB: pages 36–37
39

Learning objectives: Use question marks; Write a dialogue about a person

Resources: Unit 3 test

Warm-up: Simon says

- Play *Simon says* (see the Games bank pages 14–15) with sentences (see suggestions below). Explain that when you say a sentence, they should indicate a suitable person, but only if you say *Simon says* first. Do an example: say *Simon says 'He's tall'*. and have the children indicate any boy who is tall.
- Suggested sentences: *His name is (child's name). Her name is (child's name). He's my friend. She's my friend. He / She's the teacher. She's six. He's seven.*

1 Read and point.

- Invite volunteers to read out the questions in the box. While they are doing this, write them on the board with the question marks in a different colour (blue if possible, like the book).
- Read out the questions and have the children repeat them with the correct intonation.
- Read them out again and when you reach the question marks, encourage the children to draw the question mark in the air.
- Elicit when we use a question mark (at the end of a question).

2 Look and read. Then write the full stops and the question marks.

- Refer the children to the photo. Ask *Is this a girl or a boy? (girl) How old is she? (six)*
- Write the first question on the board and ask *Question mark or full stop?* Do the same for the answer.
- Write the second question and answer on the board and invite two children to add the correct punctuation mark. Ask for whole-class agreement.
- Then the children complete the activity in their books.
- For feedback, have different children read out a line and all the children draw a question mark or a full stop in the air.

Answers: Who's this? She's my sister. What's her name? Her name is Ella. How old is she? She's six.

3 Look and complete. Use full stops and question marks.

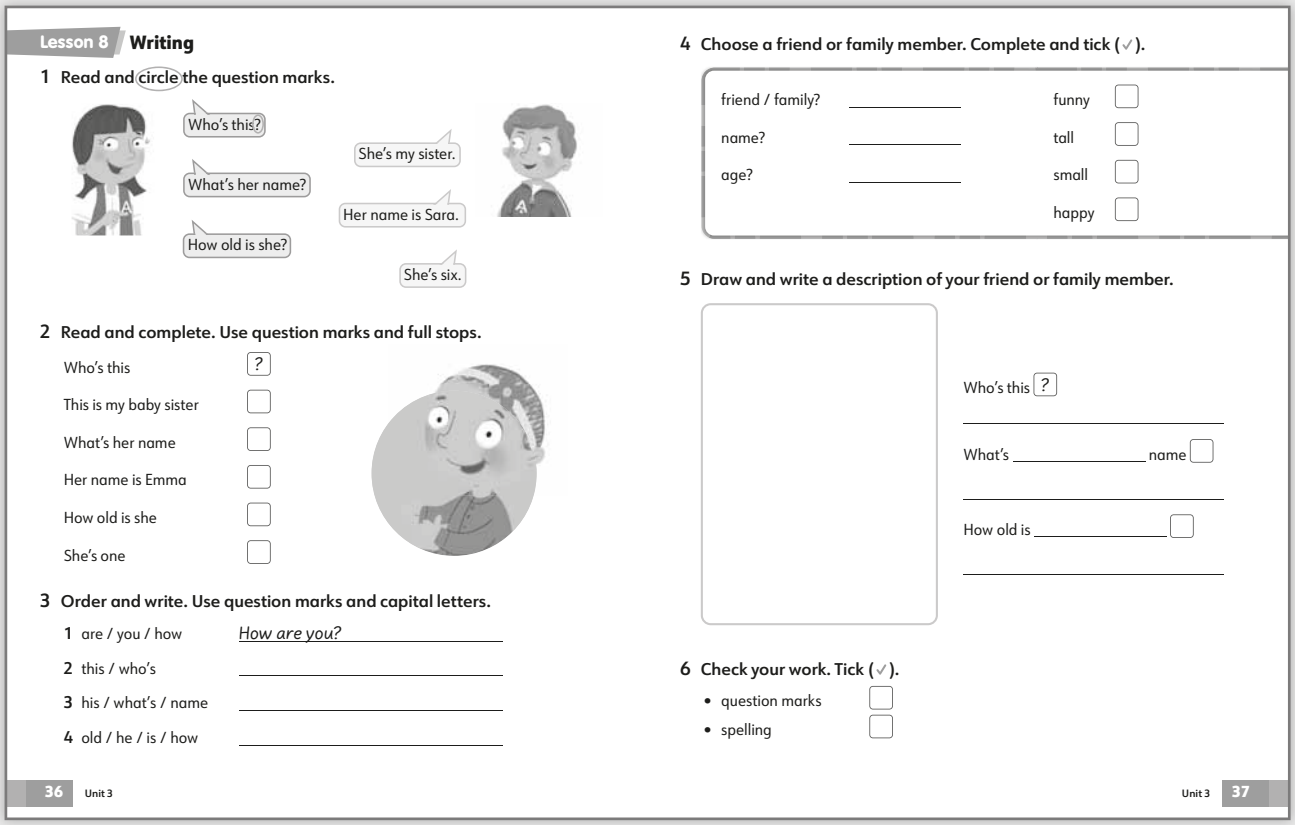
Be a star!

- Refer the children to the picture. Tell the children the boy's name is Mark. Ask *What's his name? (Mark) How old is he? (ten)*
- Give the children time to look at the text of the description and think about their answers for the gaps. Ask them not to write at this point.
- Now elicit complete sentences from the class and write the text on the board. As above ask *Question mark or full stop?* at the end of each line.
- Have the children copy the completed text into their books.

Answers: Who's this? He's my friend. What's his name? His name is Mark. How old is he? He's ten.

Cooler: Team Sentences

- Divide the class into groups of five or six children. Read out some of the questions and answer exchanges from Activities 2 and 3. The children practise saying these around the group, one word each. When they are ready, they raise their hands and demonstrate for the class. Ask for whole-class agreement.
- Repeat several times.



Lesson 8 **Writing**

1 Read and circle the question marks.

Who's this? She's my sister. What's her name? Her name is Sara. How old is she? She's six.

2 Read and complete. Use question marks and full stops.

Who's this ?
This is my baby sister
What's her name
Her name is Emma
How old is she
She's one

3 Order and write. Use question marks and capital letters.

1 are / you / how *How are you?*
2 this / who's
3 his / what's / name
4 old / he / is / how

4 Choose a friend or family member. Complete and tick (✓).

friend / family? _____ funny
name? _____ tall
age? _____ small
happy

5 Draw and write a description of your friend or family member.

Who's this ?
What's _____ name
How old is _____

6 Check your work. Tick (✓).

- question marks
- spelling

36 Unit 3

Unit 3 37

1 Read and circle the question marks.

- The children read the text and circle all the question marks.

Answers: Who's this ? What's her name ? How old is she ?

2 Read and complete. Use question marks and full stops.

- The children read the dialogue and complete the punctuation.

Answers: Who's this? This is my baby sister. What's her name? Her name is Emma. How old is she? She's one.

3 Order and write. Use question marks and capital letters.

- The children put the words in order. They start with a capital letter and finish with a question mark.

Answers: 1 How are you? **2** Who's this? **3** What's his name? **4** How old is he?

4 Choose a friend or family member. Complete and tick (✓).

- The children think of someone they know, and complete and tick the information for that person.

Answers: Children's own answers.

5 Draw and write a description of your friend or family member.

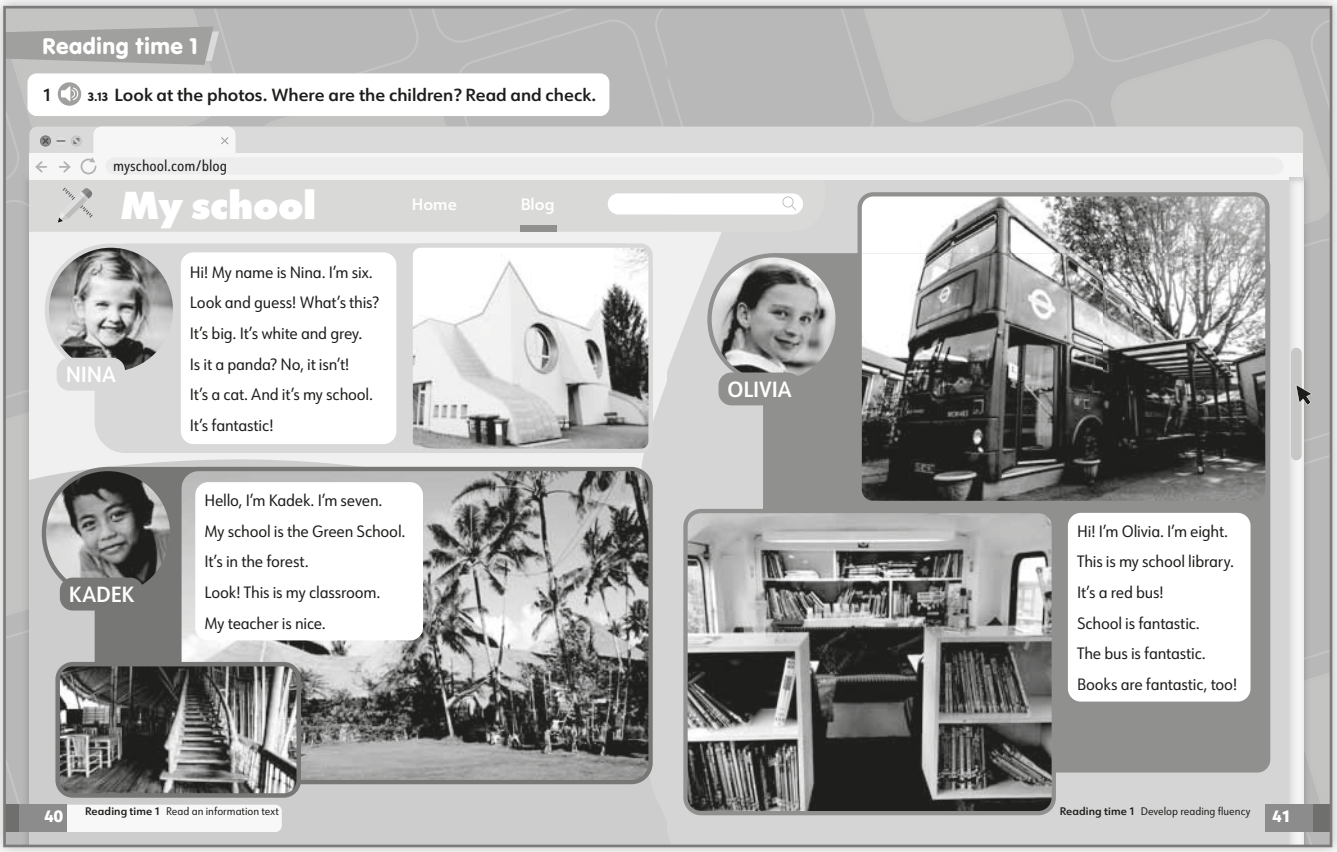
- The children complete the questions and write the answers about their chosen person.

Answers: Children's own answers.

6 Check your work. Tick (✓).

- The children use the check list to make sure their work is complete and correct.

Pupil's Book page 40–41



Learning objectives: Read an information text; Develop reading fluency

Additional vocabulary: bus, cat, fantastic, forest, grey, library, nice, panda, white

Resources: Reading time 1 video

Warm-up: Vocabulary ping pong

- Divide the class into two teams. Explain that the first theme is *animals* and have the teams take turns to give the name of an animal. This 'sends the ball' to the other team who have five seconds to reply with a different animal. As each team says an animal, quickly write a list on one side of the board. The game stops when a team cannot find a new word in five seconds.
- This game can be repeated a few times – the children get better each time and enjoy the improvement!
- Repeat with the second theme: colours.
- Alternatively, as the topic of the reading spread is on school, you may wish to play this game with classroom objects, for example.

1 3.13 Look at the photos. Where are the children? Read and check.

- Refer the children to the pictures on pages 40 and 41. Ask them the following pre-reading questions:
  What can you see? (Possible answers: a school / schools, a bus, a cat, a forest, trees, books, a boy, two girls)
  How old are the children? (Nina is six. Kadek is seven. Olivia is eight.)
  Where are they – at home, in a park, at school? (At school)
- Have the children quickly read the texts looking for the answer of where the children are.
- Ask the children to raise their hands to give a suggestion, but do not confirm anything at this point.
- Then play the audio and let the children listen and follow in their books. This will help consolidate what they read.

Check the text.

- Ask some questions to check the children's understanding of the text:
  What colour is Nina's school? (Nina's school is white and grey).
  What animal is it? (Nina's school is a cat.)
  How old is Kadek? (Kadek is seven.)
  Where is his school? (Kadek's school is in the forest.)
  How old is Olivia? (Olivia is eight.) What's in the bus? (Olivia's school library is in a red bus.)
- You could ask the children about the type of text, e.g. run your finger around the outline of the webpage realia and ask *Where is this text? Is it in a book? (It's a blog / website / webpage.)* Check that the children all understand what a blog is before continuing. Encourage the children to point out any features they recognise. (They may need to use L1 to explain their ideas.)
- As an extension, you may wish to ask the children if your own school has got a blog / website / webpage (if this is relevant).

Answer: At school.

Rate the text.

- Ask the children if they liked the reading text. (They will be doing more critical thinking about it in the next lesson, but after the first encounter with the text, it is good to get some feedback and set a positive attitude for the follow-up.)
- You may wish to discuss with the children language they can use to talk about whether they liked the reading text. You may wish to write a list of adjectives on the board. Some examples could be:
  fun
  good
  interesting
  exciting
  fantastic
  boring
- Explain or demonstrate the meaning of these with the children.
- If any of the children didn't like the reading text, you may wish to encourage them to consider any positive aspects.
- Finally, you may wish to remind children that everybody has got their own opinion which may be different to their classmates, and that's OK. Encourage children to respect their classmate's opinions.

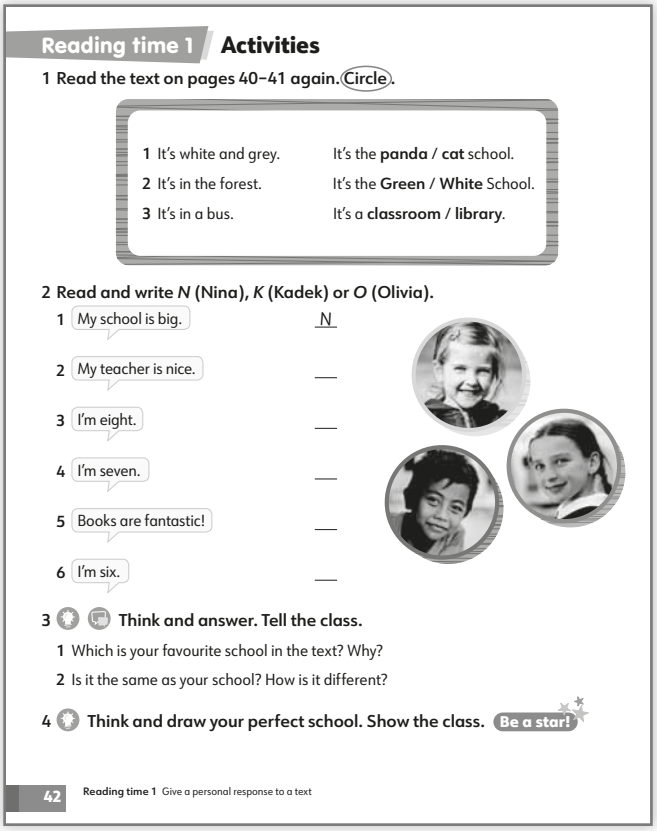
Cooler: The shark game



- Play *The shark game* (see the Games bank, pages 14–15) with key vocabulary from the reading text, e.g. *grey, panda, school, fantastic, forest, bus, library.*

Reading time 1 / Activities

Pupil's Book page 42


Reading time 1 Activities

1 Read the text on pages 40–41 again. Circle.

1 It's white and grey. It's the **panda / cat** school.
2 It's in the forest. It's the **Green / White** School.
3 It's in a bus. It's a **classroom / library**.

2 Read and write *N* (Nina), *K* (Kadek) or *O* (Olivia).

1 My school is big. N
2 My teacher is nice. ___
3 I'm eight. ___
4 I'm seven. ___
5 Books are fantastic! ___
6 I'm six. ___

3 Think and answer. Tell the class.

1 Which is your favourite school in the text? Why?
2 Is it the same as your school? How is it different?

4 Think and draw your perfect school. Show the class. Be a star!

42 Reading time 1 Give a personal response to a text

Learning objectives: Give a personal response to a text

Additional vocabulary: bus, different, fantastic, favourite, forest, grey, panda, white

Resources: Reading time 1 video

Materials: paper and pencils

Warm-up: How many words?

- Read out some sentences from the text *My school* and have the children tell you how many words there are in each one. Suggested sentences: *My name is Nina* (4)*; Is it a panda?* (4)*; My school is the Green School.* (6)*; This is my classroom.* (4)*; I'm eight.* (2)*; This is my school library.* (5)
- Then have the children repeat the sentences chorally.

1 Read the text on pages 40–41 again. Circle.

- Recap the text quickly by asking some questions about the children and their schools.
- Read out the sentence *It's white and grey*. Have the children look back at page 40 and find the phrase. Ask *What is white and grey? What animal is it?* Refer them to their books and ask which word they will circle.
- The children continue the activity in the same way.
- For feedback, invite pairs of children to read out the two sentences. Ask for whole-class agreement.

Answers: 1 cat **2** Green **3** library

2 Read and write *N* (Nina), *K* (Kadek) or *O* (Olivia).

- Refer the children to the example. Ask them to find the word *big* in Nina's text.
- Have them continue the activity individually and then compare with a friend.
- Read out the sentences and have the children call out the name.

Answers: 1 N **2** K **3** O **4** K **5** O **6** N

3 Think and answer. Tell the class.

- Check that the children understand the questions. Then give them time to look, think and decide.
- Ask the children to vote (by a show of hands) for their favourite school.
- Elicit how it is the same as their school. Then ask how it is different.

4 Think and draw your perfect school. Show the class. Be a star!

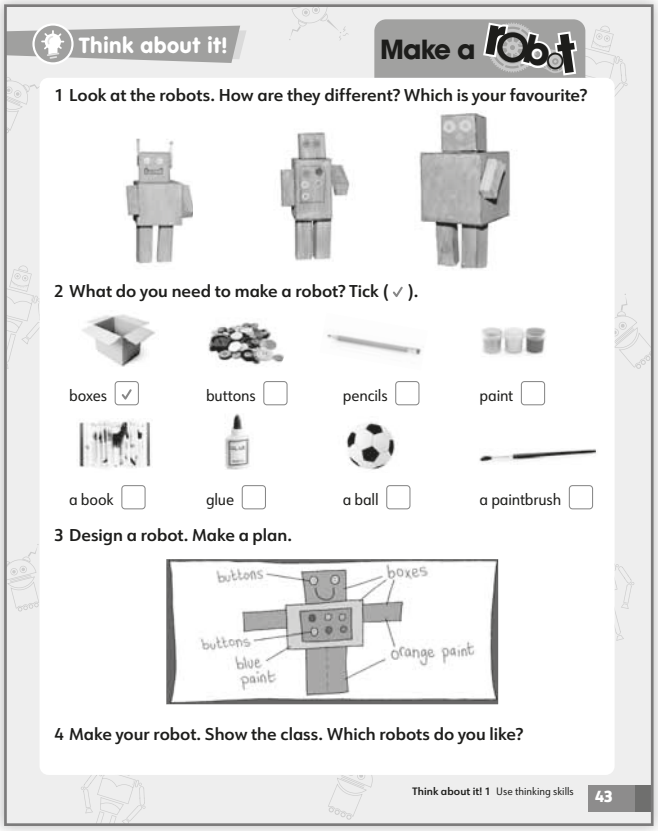
- Ask the children for some ideas of what a perfect school has. All suggestions are valid at this point!
- Give the children time to think about and draw their school. Demonstrate on the board that they can draw a side view or a plan to show the different rooms.
- In a small class, each child can show their drawing and mention some key features. In a larger class, they can do this in groups. Encourage the other children to ask questions, e.g. *What's this?* (The children may need to use L1 to answer.)

Cooler: Visualisation

- Ask the children to close their eyes and imagine they are in their perfect school.
- Ask *Where are you? What can you see? What colour is your school? Is it big? Is it fantastic? Why?*
- Have the children open their eyes. Recall the questions and encourage the children to share some of their ideas with the class, or in groups.

Think about it!

Pupil's Book page 43



Learning objectives: Use thinking skills; Make a robot

Materials: a selection of the items from Activity 2 that the children will need to make their robots, a robot plan of your own – as in Activity 3 (optional)

1.3 Warm-up: Sing the song!

- Play the song *Move like a robot* (from Unit 1, Lesson 1) and encourage the children to do the actions and join in.

1 Look at the robots. How are they different? Which is your favourite?

- Refer the children to the pictures of the robots. Elicit the differences – point to the big robot and say *This robot is big*. Point to another and say *This robot is purple*. Ask the children to point and add more information: *This robot is …*
- Ask the children to vote for their favourite. Point to each robot in turn and have them raise their hands for their favourite.
- Ask three confident children to count a set of votes each. Write the numbers on the board and elicit or say which is the class favourite.

2 What do you need to make a robot? Tick (✓).

- Refer the children to the robots again to see what materials they need to make them. Point to the example and say *Can you see boxes? (yes)*
- Give them a minute or two to tick the materials and compare with a friend.
- For feedback, call out the items and have the children call out *yes* or *no*.

Answers: boxes ✓ buttons ✓ pencils ✓ paint ✓ glue ✓ a paintbrush ✓

3 Design a robot. Make a plan.

- If possible, show the children your own labelled robot plan (see optional *Materials*) and tell them about it, e.g. *These are boxes. These are buttons. This is green paint and this is yellow paint.* (If your plan is simple but bright and colourful, the children will have a good model to follow.)
- Give the children enough time for them to draw a plan and label their robot on a clean page in their notebook. When they finish, have them share their plan with a friend.
- (In a large class, have the children pick one design to make in a group, so the amount of materials is realistic!)

4 Make your robot. Show the class. Which robots do you like?

- Allow time for the children to make their robots. Circulate and give help as needed.
- Encourage the children to show each other their robots in small groups and explain, e.g. *This is a box. This is blue paint.* etc.
- Invite volunteers to show their robot to the rest of the class and say something about it.

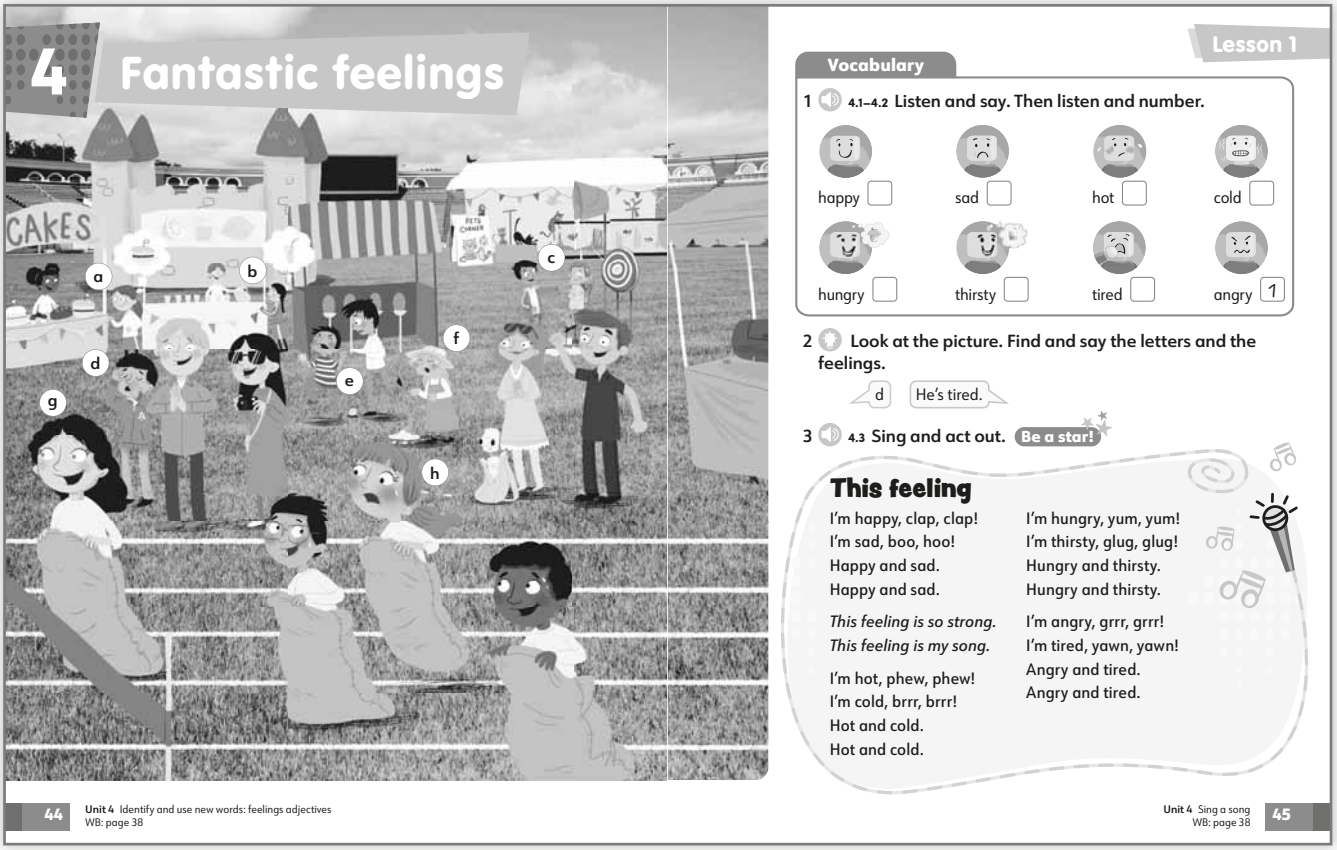
Cooler: Ready, set, draw!

- Play *Ready, set, draw!* (see the Games bank, pages 14–15) with the materials vocabulary from this lesson.

4 Fantastic feelings

Lesson 1 Vocabulary

Pupil's Book pages 44–45



Learning objectives: Identify and use new words: feelings adjectives; Sing a song using the target vocabulary

Vocabulary: angry, cold, happy, hot, hungry, sad, thirsty, tired

Resources: Flashcards; Vocabulary worksheet 1

Warm-up: The big picture

- Refer the children to the picture on page 44. Ask *Where are they? What are the children's names? Who's this?* (point to the other people in the picture). Ask what they are doing and what else the children can see. Ask *Can you find Bot? (He's in Mum's bag).*
- Ask what their favourite part of the picture is.

1 4.1 Listen and say.

- Play the audio. Have the children listen and point to the pictures.
- Play the audio again. The children point and repeat.
- Play the audio one more time and have the children point and repeat in the manner of the adjective, i.e. say *happy, happily* and say *angry, angrily*, etc.

4.2 Then listen and number.

- Play the audio, pausing after the first word to point out the example answer.
- Play the rest of the audio for the children to number the words.
- For feedback, say each number and have the class call out the word. Ask different children to repeat each word to check pronunciation.

Audioscript

***1** angry, **2** cold, **3** tired, **4** hot, **5** thirsty, **6** hungry, **7** sad, **8** happy*

Answers: happy – **8**, sad – **7**, hot – **4**, cold – **2**, hungry – **6**, thirsty – **5**, tired – **3**, angry – **1**

2 Look at the picture. Find and say the letters and the feelings.

- Have the children count how many letters there are (there are eight – *a* to *h*).
- Say *a* and have the children tell you how the person is feeling – encourage them to use short sentences with *He's / She's …* Repeat for a few more letters.

Answers: a She's hungry. **b** She's thirsty. **c** He's cold. **d** He's tired. **e** He's angry. **f** She's sad. **g** She's happy. **h** She's hot.

Teaching star!

Extension

Once the children have the idea of Activity 2, they can continue it as a pairwork activity. This approach means that more children are actively involved in producing language.

- Divide the class into pairs and demonstrate with a confident child: you say the letter and the child says the feeling. Then change roles.
- Have all the pairs continue in the same way.

Alternatively, for an extra challenge, or fast finishers, the children can try Activity 2 from memory – ask them to turn their books face down and try to remember.

3 4.3 Sing and act out.

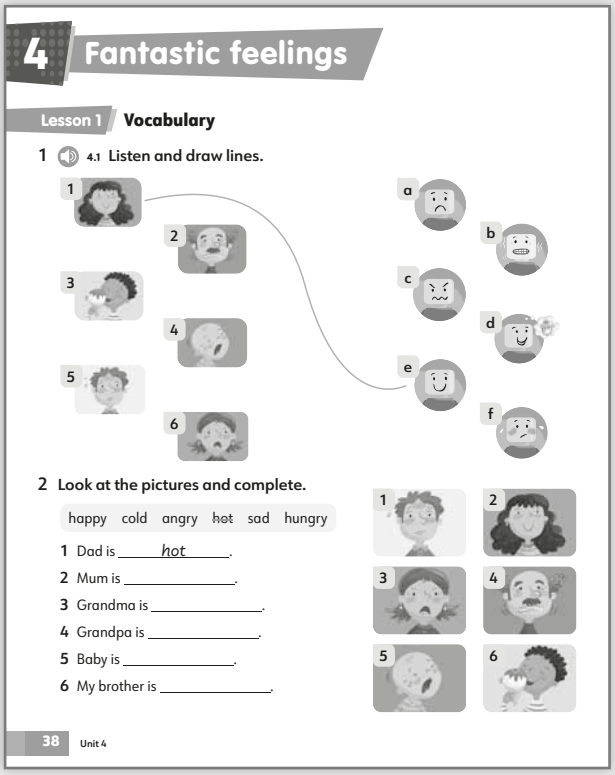
Be a star!

- Ask the children to turn their Pupil's Book face down. Explain that they will hear a song and that they should raise their hands every time they hear one of the words from Activity 1. Play the song and join in the actions with the children.
- Now have the children look at the song in their Pupil's Book. Play it again, pausing after each line for them to repeat (singing).
- Teach the children a mime for the key words in the song:
  happy – a big smile and clap hands
  sad – a sad face and rub eyes as if crying
  hot – fan face with hands
  cold – hug yourself
  hungry – rub your tummy
  thirsty – drink something
  angry – angry face and stamp a foot
  tired – pretend to fall asleep
- Play the song and have the children mime. Then play it again and have the children mime and sing. (This is quite challenging, but they can all join in with the key words, if not the whole song.)

Cooler: A group mime game

- Invite five or six children to come to the front of the class. Show each of them a different adjective from Activity 1.
- They all have 10 seconds to mime that adjective while the rest of the class watch. Then say *Stop!*
- The other children have to guess the adjective for each child, e.g. *Maria is angry. José is thirsty.*
- Repeat with another group of children and change the adjectives.

Workbook page 38


4 Fantastic feelings

Lesson 1 Vocabulary

1 4.1 Listen and draw lines.

2 Look at the pictures and complete.

happy cold angry ~~hot~~ sad hungry

1 Dad is hot.
2 Mum is _____.
3 Grandma is _____.
4 Grandpa is _____.
5 Baby is _____.
6 My brother is _____.

38 Unit 4

1 4.1 Listen and draw lines.

Audioscript

1 *I'm happy!*
2 *Brrr. I'm cold.*
3 *Ice cream! Mmm, I'm hungry.*
4 *Ah, Baby George is sad.*
5 *Phew! I'm hot.*
6 *Arrgghh! I'm angry!*

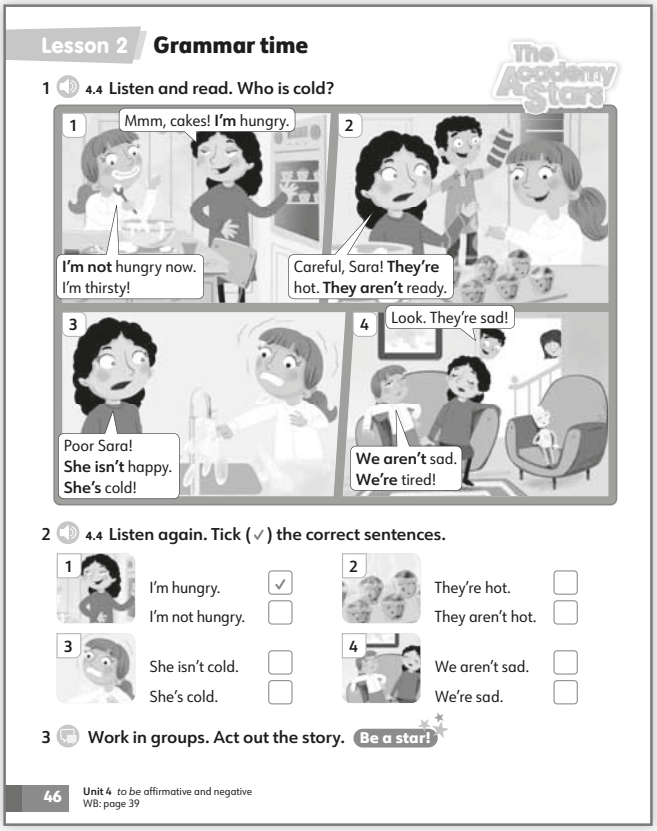
Answers: 1 e **2** b **3** d **4** a **5** f **6** c

2 Look at the pictures and complete.

Answers: 1 hot **2** happy **3** angry **4** cold **5** sad **6** hungry

Lesson 2 Grammar time

Pupil's Book page 46



Learning objectives: Understand and use *to be* affirmative and negative; Read and act out a story using the target grammar

Grammar: *to be* affirmative and negative

Review vocabulary: adjectives

Materials: paper, pens or pencils

4.3 Warm-up: Sing the song!

- Play the song *This feeling* and have the children join in and do the actions.
- Before playing the song, you may wish to remind the children of the mimes they learnt in the previous lesson:
  happy – a big smile and clap hands
  sad – a sad face and rub eyes as if crying
  hot – fan face with hands
  cold – hug yourself
  hungry – rub your tummy
  thirsty – drink something
  angry – angry face and stamp a foot
  tired – pretend to fall asleep
- You could also teach the children any new mimes or ask them if they know any others, for variety.

1 4.4 Listen and read. Who is cold?

- Refer the children to the pictures and ask *Who can you see? What are their names? Where are they? (at home, in the kitchen) What are they doing? (making cakes)*
- Play the audio. Have the children follow in their books and find the answer to the question *Who is cold?* Elicit the answer and then ask questions about other parts of the story: *In 1, who is hungry, Sara or Anna? In 2, are the cakes hot or cold? In 3, why isn't Sara happy? In 4, are the girls sad?*
- Play the audio again for the children to repeat chorally. Pay attention to the pronunciation of the negatives.
- Play the audio one more time. Have them add actions – for each affirmative, they nod their head; for each negative – they shake their head (or the movements that are most easily recognised as *yes* and *no* in the children's culture).

Answers: Sara is cold.

2 4.4 Listen again. Tick (✓) the correct sentences.

- Refer the children to the pictures and sentences. Ask two children to read out the first two sentences. After each one, say *Hands up for yes ... Hands up for no* to see if all the children agree. Point out the example answer.
- Repeat for the other sentences and have the children tick and cross the boxes.
- Then play the audio, pausing after each section to check the answers.

Answers: 1 I'm hungry. **2** They're hot. ✓
3 She's cold. ✓ **4** We aren't sad. ✓

Teaching star!

Extension

Often, less confident children simply need to see or hear the language more times. A mime game is a good opportunity for this. The children can hear and react to the language, and the meaning is reinforced at the same time.

- Have all the children mime making a cake (mixing things in a bowl).
- Say *Make a cake – you're happy!* and have the children mime with a big smile. Then say *Make a cake – you're angry!* and have the children mime mixing angrily. Continue with the other feelings.

3 Work in groups. Act out the story.

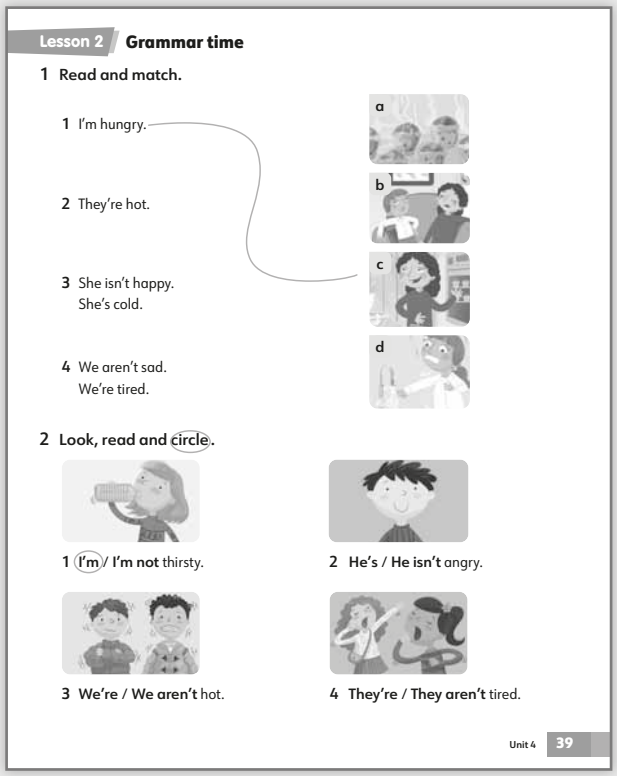
Be a star!

- Count the speaking characters in the story with the children (*three – Sara, Anna and Dad*).
- Divide the class into groups of three and either have them decide who will be each character, or designate the roles.
- Allow them a few minutes to practise acting out the story. No props are really needed, although they could use a ruler for the wooden spoon in frame 1 if they wish!
- Encourage some of the groups to act out their version of the story for the rest of the class. Alternatively, they could take turns to act it out for another group.

Cooler: Team sentences

- Play *Team sentences* (see the Games bank, pages 14–15) using sentences from the story in Activity 1, e.g. *I'm not hungry now.; They're hot.; They aren't ready.; She isn't happy.; She's cold.; We aren't sad.; We're tired.*

Workbook page 39



Lesson 2 **Grammar time**

1 **Read and match.**

1 I'm hungry.
2 They're hot.
3 She isn't happy. She's cold.
4 We aren't sad. We're tired.

a b c d

2 **Look, read and circle.**

1 **I'm** / **I'm not** thirsty.
2 **He's** / **He isn't** angry.
3 **We're** / **We aren't** hot.
4 **They're** / **They aren't** tired.

Unit 4 39

1 Read and match.

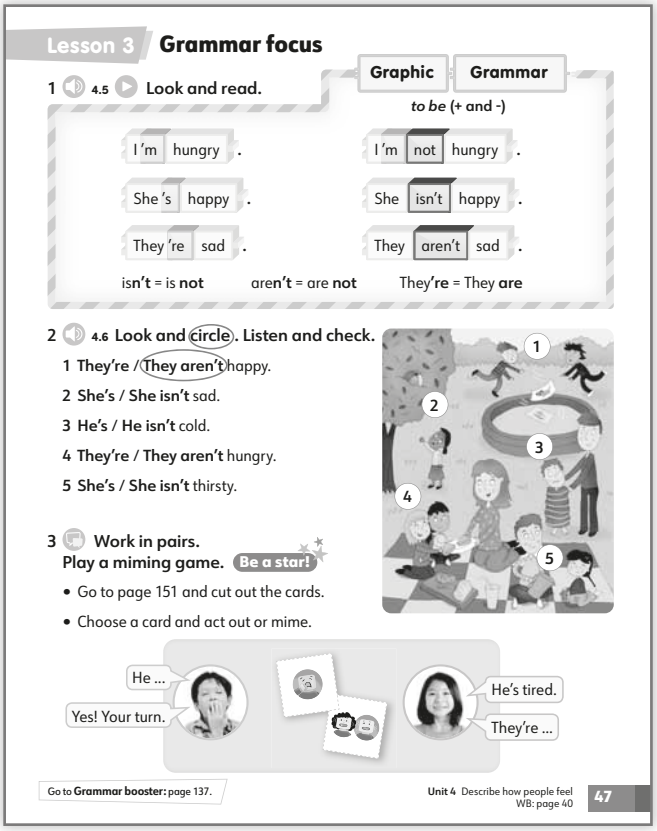
Answers: 1 c **2** a **3** d **4** b

2 Look, read and circle.

Answers: 1 I'm **2** He isn't **3** We aren't **4** They're

Lesson 3 Grammar focus

Pupil's Book page 47



Learning objectives: Describe how people feel

Grammar: *to be* affirmative and negative: *I'm hungry. I'm not hungry. She's happy. She isn't happy. They're sad. They aren't sad.*

Review vocabulary: adjectives

Resources: Graphic Grammar video; Grammar worksheet 1

Materials: scissors

Warm-up: Put the letters back

- Play *Put the letters back* (see the Games bank, pages 14–15). Write on the board the following incomplete sentences:
  _ 'm n_ t h_ ngry n_ w.
  Th_ y _ r_ n't r_ _ dy.;
  Sh_ _ sn't h_ ppy.;
  W_ _ r_ n't s_ d.
  (Solution: *I'm not hungry now. They aren't ready. She isn't happy. We aren't sad.*)

1 4.5 Look and read.

- Play the audio and have the children follow in their books. Draw the children's attention to the use of colours – blue for *yes* (affirmative) and red for *no* (negative).
- Play the audio again and have the children stand up for affirmative sentences and sit down for negatives.
- Reinforce the contractions of *isn't, aren't* and *They're* by counting out the separate words on your fingers and then pushing the fingers together to show the contractions.
- Play the audio one more time for the children to repeat chorally.

- If using the video, tell the children they will see a video of children at home and at school. Play the video and let the children watch and enjoy.
- Play the video again and have the children repeat each question and answer.
- Have the children do appropriate actions for the affirmative, e.g. nod their head, and negative, e.g. shake their head.

2 4.6 Look and circle. Listen and check.

- Refer the children to the picture. Point to different people and ask *Who's this / that?* Accept any logical answers about family members or friends.
- Point to number 1 on the picture and ask *Are they happy?* Point and read out the sentence options – say *They're happy* (nod your head) and then *They aren't happy* (shake your head). (*They aren't happy* – the children shake heads.) Point out the example answer.
- Elicit the answer for number 2 in the same way and then have the children complete the activity individually.
- For feedback, ask individual children to read out sentences. Ask for whole-class agreement each time. Have them repeat the sentence chorally.

Answers: 1 They aren't **2** She's **3** He's **4** They're **5** She isn't

3 Work in pairs. Play a miming game. Be a star!

- Organise the children in pairs and have them open their books to page 151.
- Make sure the children all have scissors with which to cut out the cards.
- Give the children time to cut out the cards. While they do this, confirm understanding of what they see in the pictures on the cards. For this activity, they will use two sets of cards.
- Work through the example activity with the children. Point out the card showing the person yawning. Ask a volunteer to mime the action. Have a different child describe the action. (*He's / She's tired.*). If necessary, work through the second part of the example to elicit the answer *They're cold*. Then quickly review the different adjectives for describing feelings with a round of mime or other gestures before the children begin the game.
- Then ask the children to take turns to choose a card, hide the card from their friend and then mime or act out the action for their friend. Their friend then says what the character is feeling, using *is, isn't, are* or *aren't*.
- Allow time for the children to complete the activity.

Grammar booster

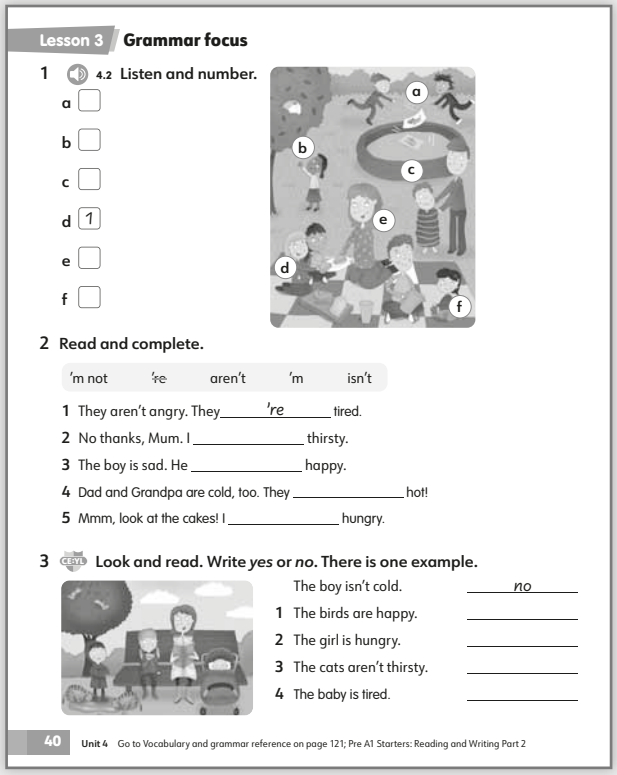
Ask the children to turn to page 137 of their Pupil's Book to complete Activity 1. If the children need more grammar practice before the communicative Activity 3, have them complete this activity first. Alternatively, you may wish to have the children complete this activity at home.

Answers: 1 She's **2** He isn't **3** I'm not **4** He's **5** He's **6** They are

Cooler: Everybody happy!

- Cover your face with your hands and say *Everybody happy!* Open your hands to show your happy face. Cover your face again and say *Everybody sad!* Open your hands and show your sad face. Repeat and encourage the children to do the mimes with you.
- Ask for volunteer children to call out the adjectives for everyone to mime – they can use the same mimes as they did for the song in Lesson 1.

Workbook page 40



Lesson 3 **Grammar focus**

1 4.2 **Listen and number.**

a ☐ b ☐ c ☐ d 1 e ☐ f ☐

2 **Read and complete.**

'm not | 're | aren't | 'm | isn't

1 They aren't angry. They *'re* tired.
2 No thanks, Mum. I _____ thirsty.
3 The boy is sad. He _____ happy.
4 Dad and Grandpa are cold, too. They _____ hot!
5 Mmm, look at the cakes! I _____ hungry.

3 CE:YL **Look and read. Write *yes* or *no*. There is one example.**

The boy isn't cold. *no*
1 The birds are happy. _____
2 The girl is hungry. _____
3 The cats aren't thirsty. _____
4 The baby is tired. _____

40 Unit 4 Go to Vocabulary and grammar reference on page 121; Pre A1 Starters: Reading and Writing Part 2

Grammar reference:

Remind the children that they can refer to the grammar reference on page 121 to help them when completing these activities.

1 4.2 Listen and number.

Audioscript

1 *They're hungry.*
2 *She isn't thirsty.*
3 *She's sad.*
4 *They aren't happy.*
5 *He isn't hot.*
6 *She's happy.*

Answers: a 4 **b** 3 **c** 5 **d** 1 **e** 6 **f** 2

2 Read and complete.

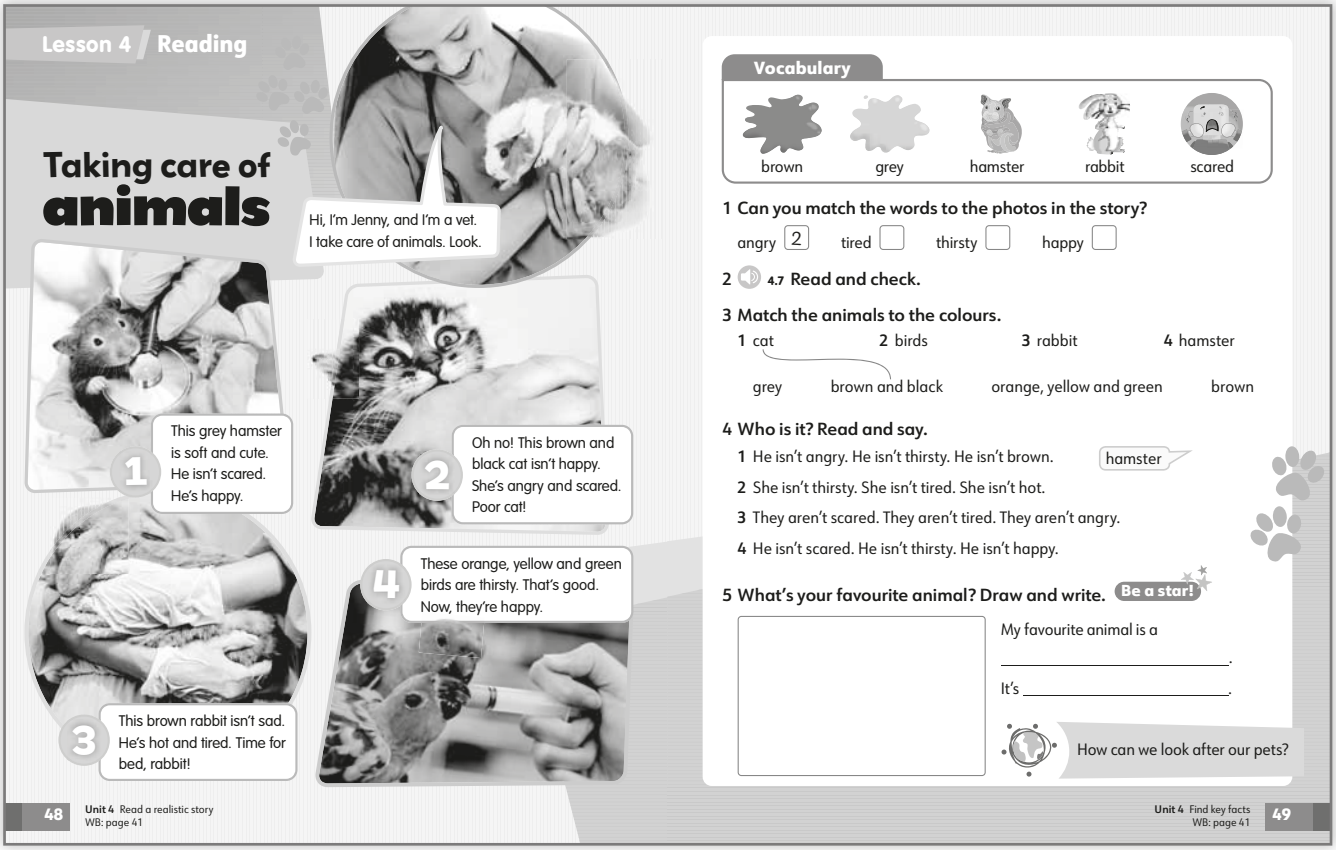
Answers: 1 're **2** 'm not **3** isn't **4** aren't **5** 'm

3 CE:YL Look and read. Write *yes* or *no*. There is one example.

- This activity helps the children prepare for Part 2 of the Reading and Writing paper of the Cambridge English: Pre A1 Starters test. The children read the sentences, look at the picture, and write *yes* if the sentence is true or *no* if the sentence is false.
- If done in class, ask the children what they can see in the picture and how the people are feeling.
- Go through the example first, and then have the children complete the activity individually.
- Ask individual children to read out the sentences and the class calls out *yes* or *no*.
- (To help prepare for this part of the test, the children need plenty of practice matching sentences to pictures.)

Answers: 1 yes **2** yes **3** no **4** yes

Pupil's Book pages 48–49



Learning objectives: Read a realistic story; Find key facts

Vocabulary: brown, grey, hamster, rabbit, scared

Additional vocabulary: cute

Review vocabulary: colours, adjectives

Resources: Flashcards; Vocabulary worksheet 2

Materials: paper, pens or pencils, coloured pencils

Warm-up: Team vocabulary race

- Play *Team vocabulary race* (see the Games bank, pages 14–15) with the colours from the story.

Vocabulary

- Refer the children to the vocabulary panel on page 49 and read out the words for the class to repeat.
- Say *Point to something brown*. Then repeat for grey. Ask *How is a hamster different to a cat? Are hamsters big or small?* Ask the children to mime scared, and join in with them. Ask *Are you scared of any animals?*

1 Can you match the words to the photos in the story?

- Refer the children to the photos on page 48.
- Read out the list of adjectives and ask the children to repeat and do mimes for each of them.
- Ask *Is the cat in number 2 happy?* Have the children look at the photo and read the text to find the answer (*No, it's angry*). Point out the example answer.
- Then have the children continue the activity, writing the numbers in the boxes. Do not confirm any answers at this point.

Answers: angry – **2**, tired – **3**, thirsty – **4**, happy – **1**

2 4.7 Read and check.

- Play the audio for the children to listen and check their answers.

3 Match the animals to the colours.

- Have the children match the animals to the colours found in the story.
- Point out the example answer in their book.

Answers: 1 cat: brown and black **2** birds: orange, yellow and green **3** rabbit: brown **4** hamster: grey

4 Who is it? Read and say.

- Refer the children to the pictures and sentences. Go through the example sentence and answer with the children.
- Have the children elicit the animal based on the description given in sentences 1–4 and the details in the story.

Answers: 1 hamster **2** cat **3** birds **4** rabbit

5 What's your favourite animal? Draw and write.

Be a star!

- Have the children draw a picture of their favourite animal. They can refer to the story for some ideas.
- Then have them write about their animal using colours, sizes and feelings.
- Remind them not to worry if their picture isn't perfect – it's good for the children to know that their pictures don't need to be!

Cooler: Disappearing words

- Play *Disappearing words* (see the Games bank, pages 14–15), asking the children to recall all the key words they can from the story.

ESDC

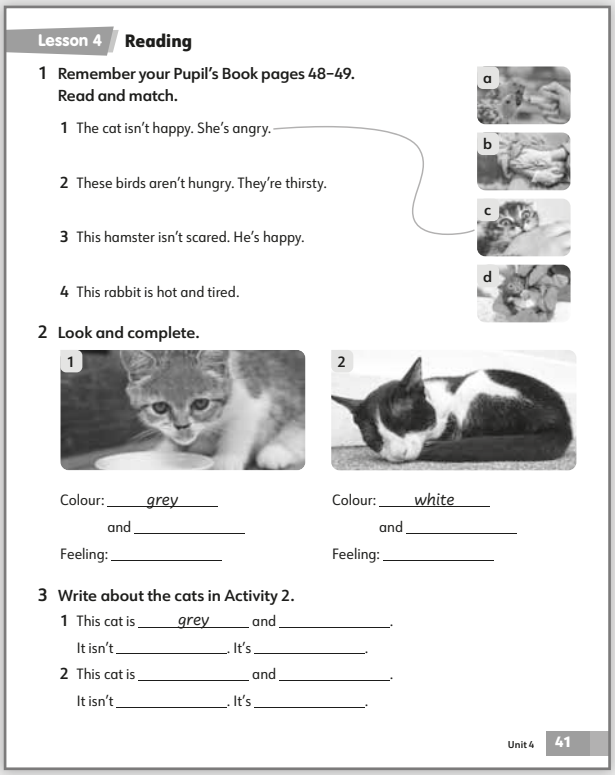
How can we look after our pets?

Introduce the children to Sustainable Development Goal 15: *Life on land.*

- Draw the children's attention to pages 48–49. Explain that *take care* is another way to say *look after.* Jenny takes care of animals because the owners of those animals know it's important to look after their pets. Ask if any of the children have pets, and draw up a list.
- Discuss the importance of looking after pets well, and elicit ideas on how we should do this (feed them, give them water, play with them and give them exercise, make sure they aren't too hot or cold, brush them). Discuss what might happen if we don't do these things. If any of the children have unusual pets, allow time for them to discuss any special treatment these pets need and receive. Elicit how looking after their pets or other animals makes the children feel (helpful, happy, smart, important).

Possible answers: we can feed our pets well, give them exercise and play with them, and make sure they stay healthy.

Workbook page 41


Lesson 4 Reading

1 Remember your Pupil's Book pages 48–49. Read and match.

1 The cat isn't happy. She's angry.
2 These birds aren't hungry. They're thirsty.
3 This hamster isn't scared. He's happy.
4 This rabbit is hot and tired.

a b c d

2 Look and complete.

1 2

Colour: grey and _____ Feeling: _____

Colour: white and _____ Feeling: _____

3 Write about the cats in Activity 2.

1 This cat is grey and _____. It isn't _____. It's _____.
2 This cat is _____ and _____. It isn't _____. It's _____.

Unit 4 41

1 Remember your Pupil's Book pages 48–49. Read and match.

Answers: 1 c **2** a **3** d **4** b

2 Look and complete.

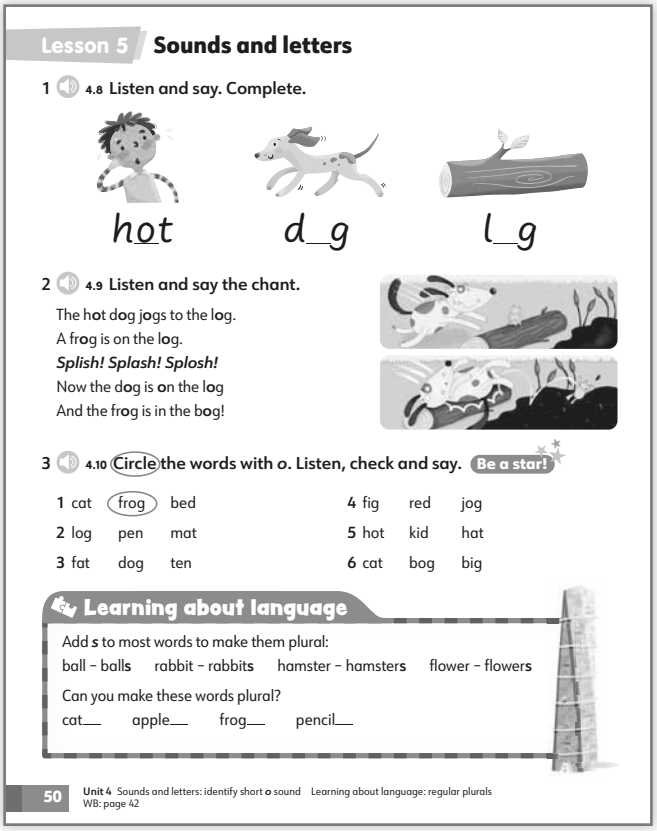
Answers: 1 white; hungry / thirsty / hot
2 black; happy, tired

3 Write about the cats in Activity 2.

Answers: 1 white; hungry; thirsty **2** black and white. It isn't hungry / thirsty / angry / scared. It's tired.

Lesson 5 Sounds and letters

Pupil's Book page 50


Lesson 5 Sounds and letters

1 4.8 Listen and say. Complete.

h_t d_g l_g

2 4.9 Listen and say the chant.

The hot dog jogs to the log.
A frog is on the log.
Splish! Splash! Splosh!
Now the dog is on the log
And the frog is in the bog!

3 4.10 Circle the words with *o*. Listen, check and say. Be a star!

1	cat	frog	bed	4	fig	red	jog
2	log	pen	mat	5	hot	kid	hat
3	fat	dog	ten	6	cat	bog	big

Learning about language

Add *s* to most words to make them plural:
ball – balls rabbit – rabbits hamster – hamsters flower – flowers

Can you make these words plural?
cat___ apple___ frog___ pencil___

50 Unit 4 Sounds and letters: identify short *o* sound Learning about language: regular plurals
WB: page 42

Learning objectives: Sounds and letters: identify short *o* sound; Learning about language: regular plurals

Sounds and letters words: *dog, hot, log*

Resources: Sounds and letters worksheet

Warm-up: Team spelling

- Play *Team spelling* (see the Games bank, pages 14–15) to practise key words from the last lesson, e.g. *brown, grey, hamster, rabbit, scared*

1 4.8 Listen and say. Complete.

- Refer the children to the pictures. Ask if they know the words for these things.
- Play the audio for the children to repeat the words chorally. Do this twice.
- Point to the *o* in the word *hot* in your book. *Ask What's this letter?* (*o*) *What's the sound?* (/ɒ/)
- Write a big, clear *o* on the board as a model for the children. Have them write the o in the three words.

Audioscript

/ɒ/ /ɒ/ /ɒ/ hot
/ɒ/ /ɒ/ /ɒ/ dog
/ɒ/ /ɒ/ /ɒ/ log

Answers: hot, dog, log

2 4.9 Listen and say the chant.

- Play the chant and have the children follow in their books. Have them raise their hands every time they see / hear a word with *o*.
- Play the chant again, pausing after each line for the children to repeat. Pay particular attention to the *o* sound.
- Play the chant once more and have the children join in as much as they can.
- Divide the class into two groups. Have each half of the class say alternate lines. They all say *Splish! Splash! Splosh!* together.

3 4.10 Circle the words with *o*. Listen, check and say.

Be a star!

- Ask the children how many words they can see with the letter *o* (six – one in each line).
- Have them circle the words with *o*.
- Ask the children which word they circled in each line and play the audio to confirm.
- Play the audio again for the children to repeat the words chorally and then individually to check pronunciation.

Audioscript

1 *frog, frog* ***2*** *log, log* ***3*** *dog, dog* ***4*** *jog, jog*
5 *hot, hot* ***6*** *bog, bog*

Answers: 1 frog **2** log **3** dog **4** jog **5** hot **6** bog

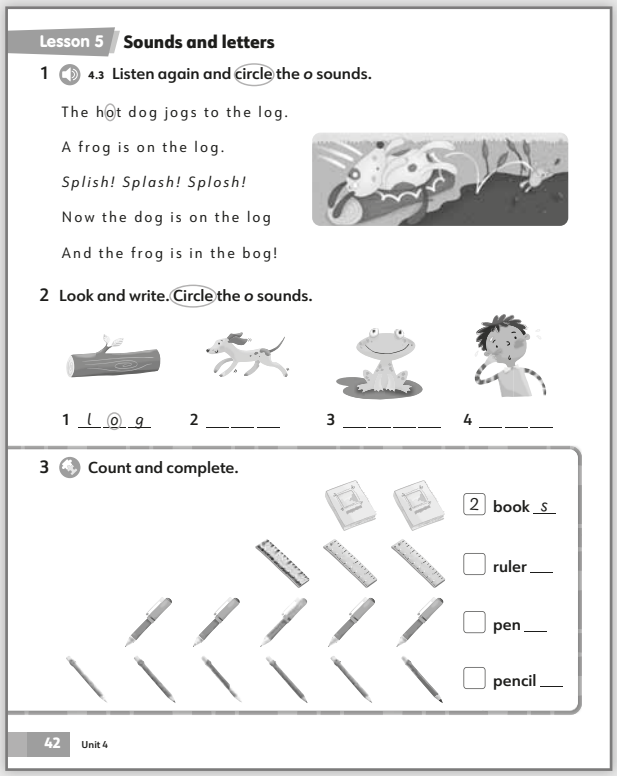
Learning about language

- Take a pen from your pencil case. Say *Look. A pen.* Write *a pen* on the board.
- Now take another pen and hold them up together and say *Look. Two …* to elicit the plural *pens*. Ask how to spell *pens* and write *two pens* on the board. Ask *What's the difference? Why? (plural).*
- Read out the example singular and plural words in the *Learning about language box* and have the children repeat chorally.
- The children make the plurals of the other words in the box and compare with a friend.
- Ask the children to find and show or point to plural things (or people) in the class.

Cooler: Physical spelling

- Play *Physical spelling* (see the Games bank pages 14–15) with key words from this lesson, e.g. *hot, dog, log, frog, balls, flowers, pencils*.

Workbook page 42



Lesson 5 Sounds and letters

1 4.3 Listen again and circle the *o* sounds.

The hot dog jogs to the log.
A frog is on the log.
Splish! Splash! Splosh!
Now the dog is on the log
And the frog is in the bog!

2 Look and write. Circle the *o* sounds.

1 l o g 2 ___ 3 ___ 4 ___

3 Count and complete.

2 book s
ruler
pen
pencil

42 Unit 4

1 4.3 Listen again and circle the *o* sounds.

Answers: The h(o)t d(o)g j(o)gs to the l(o)g.
A fr(o)g is(o)n the l(o)g.
Splish! Splash! Spl(o)sh!
N(o)w the d(o)g is(o)n the l(o)g
And the fr(o)g is in the b(o)g!

2 Look and write. Circle the *o* sounds.

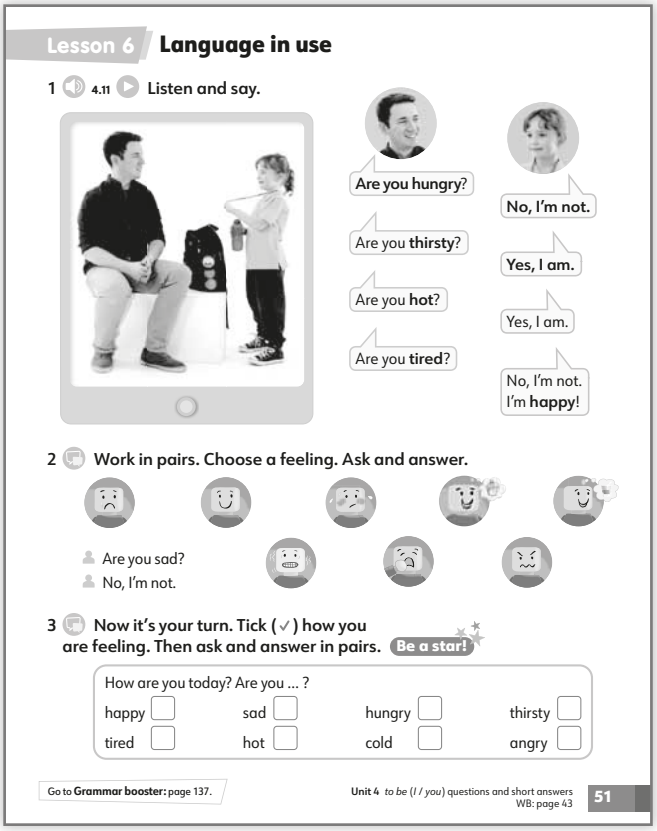
Answers: 1 l(o)g **2** d(o)g **3** fr(o)g **4** h(o)t

3 Count and complete.

Answers: 2 books, **3** rulers, **5** pens, **6** pencils

Lesson 6 Language in use

Pupil's Book page 51



Learning objectives: *to be* (*I / you*) questions and short answers

Review vocabulary: adjectives

Resources: Language in use video; Grammar worksheet 2

4.9 Warm-up: Say the chant again

- Using mime if necessary to prompt them, ask the children to recall the chant from Lesson 5. Then play the audio to see how well they remembered. Write it on the board.
- Have the whole class say the chant together.

1 4.11 Listen and say.

- Refer the children to the picture. Ask what they think the girl and the man are talking about.
- Play the audio and have the children follow in their books.
- Play the audio again and have the children repeat each line.
- Write *hungry?* on the board and elicit the question *Are you hungry?* Elicit the affirmative and negative answers.
- Divide the class into two groups and have one group ask the questions and the other give the answers. Then change roles.

- If using the video, play it and let the children watch and enjoy it.
- Play the video again and stop after each question to elicit the answer from the children. Play the video to confirm and have them all repeat.
- Now play the video one more time and have the children repeat the questions and answers. Encourage them to imitate the intonation and body language as closely as possible.

Teaching star!

Mixed ability

Give some extra guidance if some children need more support, as follows:

- Write on one side of the board, in random order, the following words together with their punctuation: *Are you sad? No, I'm not. Are you happy? Yes, I am.* On the other side of the board, draw a line for each word in the form of dialogue, i.e. four lines of three words each.
- Give a little thinking time. Then invite different children to come to the board and write a word in the correct place. Ask for whole-class agreement each time.
- When the dialogue is completed, have the children read it out chorally.
- Less confident children will be more prepared for the next activity, and stronger children will be challenged by the puzzle!

2 Work in pairs. Choose a feeling. Ask and answer.

- Have the children look at the pictures and elicit the feelings they show.
- Hold up your book so the page is facing away from the children and put your finger on one of the pictures. Have the children ask you questions *Are you ...?* and answer *No, I'm not. or Yes, I am*. When they guess correctly, turn the book around so they can see your finger on the picture.
- Divide the class into pairs and have them continue the activity with one child choosing a feeling without showing it, and the other asking questions to guess.
- Finish with a few volunteers answering questions from the class.

3 Now it's your turn. Tick (✓) how you are feeling. Then ask and answer in pairs.

Be a star!

- Model the question by asking a confident child *How are you today? Are you* (tired)? Prompt the child to answer *Yes, I am.* or *No, I'm not.*
- Point out the questions in the box and drill them with the class. Invite different children to ask you a question until one of them receives the answer *Yes, I am.*
- Divide the class into pairs to ask and answer about their feelings today. While they do this, circulate, monitor and give help or praise where appropriate.
- Finish with the class asking questions to a few volunteers.

Grammar booster

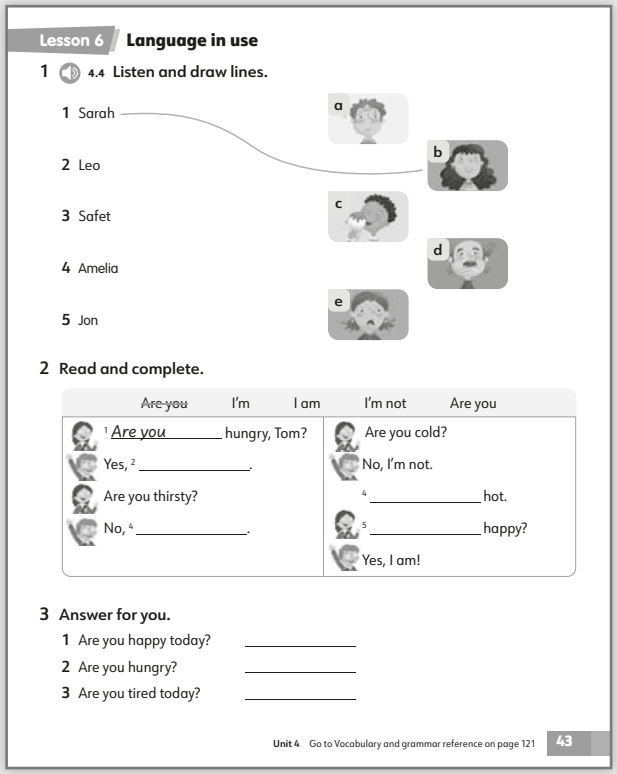
Ask the children to turn to page 137 of their Pupil's Book to complete Activity 2. You may also wish to have the children complete this activity at home.

Answers: 1 Yes, I am. **2** No, I'm not. **3** Yes, I am. **4** No, I'm not.

Cooler: Disappearing sentences

- Play *Disappearing sentences* (see the Games bank, pages 14–15) using the following dialogue on the board: *Are you hungry? No, I'm not. Are you thirsty? Yes, I am. Are you tired? No, I'm not. I'm happy!*
- Continue until all the words are gone and the children 'read' the dialogue from an empty board!

Workbook page 43



Lesson 6 Language in use

1 4.4 Listen and draw lines.

1 Sarah
2 Leo
3 Safet
4 Amelia
5 Jon

a b c d e

2 Read and complete.

Are you | I'm | I am | I'm not | Are you

1 Are you hungry, Tom?
Yes, 2 _____.
Are you thirsty?
No, 4 _____.

Are you cold?
No, I'm not.
4 _____ hot.
5 _____ happy?
Yes, I am!

3 Answer for you.

1 Are you happy today? _____
2 Are you hungry? _____
3 Are you tired today? _____

Unit 4 Go to Vocabulary and grammar reference on page 121 43

Grammar reference:

Remind the children that they can refer to the grammar reference on page 121 to help them when completing these activities.

1 4.4 Listen and draw lines.

Audioscript

1 *Are you happy, Sarah?*
Yes, I am.
2 *Are you thirsty, Leo?*
No, I'm not. I'm hungry.
3 *Are you hot, Safet?*
Yes, I am.
4 *Are you angry, Amelia?*
Yes, I am!
5 *Are you tired, Jon?*
No, I'm not. I'm cold.

Answers: 1 b **2** c **3** a **4** e **5** d

2 Read and complete.

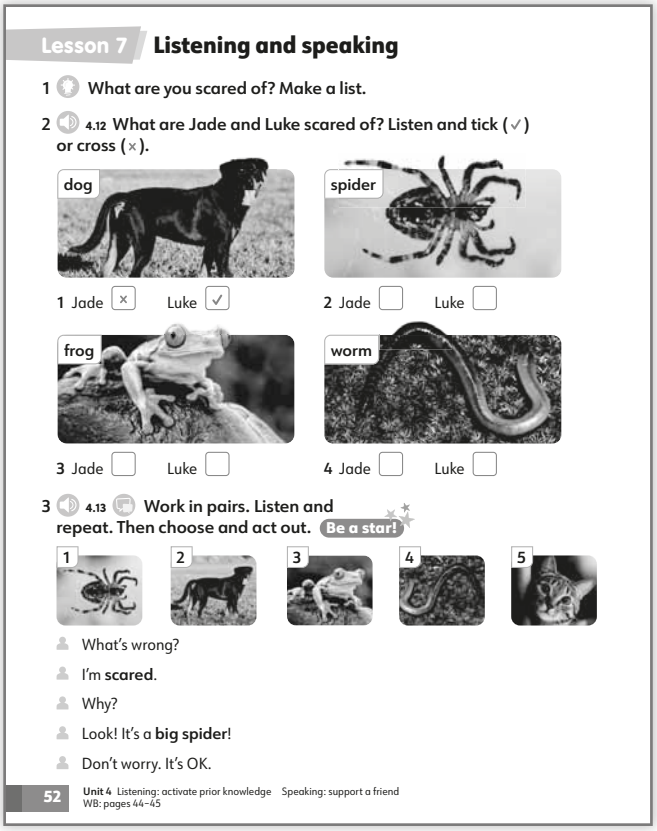
Answers: 1 Are you **2** I am **3** I'm not **4** I'm **5** Are you

3 Answer for you.

Answers: Children's own answers.

Lesson 7 Listening and speaking

Pupil's Book page 52


Lesson 7 Listening and speaking

1 What are you scared of? Make a list.

2 4.12 What are Jade and Luke scared of? Listen and tick (✓) or cross (×).

dog

1 Jade × Luke ✓

spider

2 Jade ☐ Luke ☐

frog

3 Jade ☐ Luke ☐

worm

4 Jade ☐ Luke ☐

3 4.13 Work in pairs. Listen and repeat. Then choose and act out. Be a star!

1 2 3 4 5

What's wrong?

I'm **scared**.

Why?

Look! It's a **big spider**!

Don't worry. It's OK.

52 Unit 4 Listening: activate prior knowledge Speaking: support a friend
WB: pages 44–45

Learning objectives: Listening: activate prior knowledge; Speaking: support a friend

Review vocabulary: dog, frog, scared, spider, worm

Resources: Vocabulary worksheet 2

Warm-up: Team vocabulary race

- Play *Team vocabulary race* (see the Games bank, pages 14–15) with the topic *animals*.

1 What are you scared of? Make a list.

- Mime the feeling *scared* and have the children guess the word. Write on the board *I'm scared of …* and write several examples: e.g. *spiders, elephants, lightning*. At this point, the idea is to open up the idea of scared so all ideas are valid.
- Have the children make a list for themselves and compare with a friend. If they don't know the word in English, they can write it in L1.
- Elicit some suggestions.

2 4.12 What are Jade and Luke scared of? Listen and tick (✓) or cross (✕).

- Refer the children to the pictures and ask what they can see. Play the first part of the audio, pausing after Jade and Luke's answers to point out the cross and the tick for *no* and *yes* respectively.
- Play the rest of the audio and have the children complete the activity.
- For feedback, elicit the answers and then play each part of the audio again to confirm.

Audioscript

Presenter: *Hello!*

Jade & Luke: *Hi!*

Presenter: *Look at the big dog. Are you scared, Jade?*

Jade: *No, I'm not.*

Presenter: *Are you scared, Luke?*

Luke: *Yes, I am.*

Presenter: *Look at the spider. Are you scared, Jade?*

Jade: *No, I'm not.*

Presenter: *What about you, Luke?*

Luke: *No, I'm not.*

Presenter: *Great. Look at the big frog. Are you scared, Jade?*

Jade: *No, I'm not.*

Presenter: *What about you, Luke?*

Luke: *No, I'm not.*

Presenter: *Good. Look at the worm. Are you scared, Jade?*

Jade: *YES, I AM! EEEK!*

Luke: *Me too!*

Presenter: *Don't worry. It's OK. It's only a picture!*

Answers: 1 Jade ✕, Luke ✓ **2** Jade ✕, Luke ✕
3 Jade ✕, Luke ✕ **4** Jade ✓, Luke ✓

3 4.13 Work in pairs. Listen and repeat. Then choose and act out.

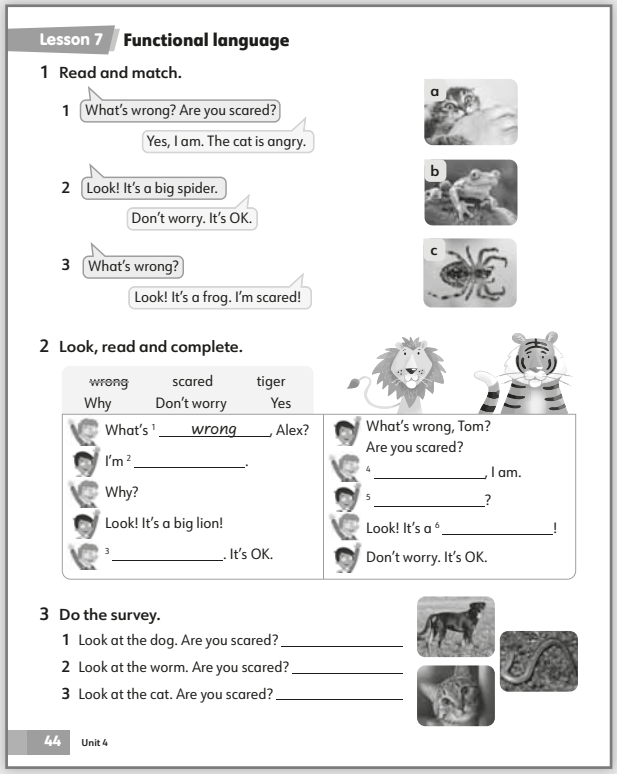
Be a star!

- Play the audio. Have the children repeat each line quietly to themselves. Play it again and have them repeat chorally and then individually to check pronunciation. Use calming gestures with *Don't worry. It's OK.*
- Choose a different animal from the photos and have the whole class do the dialogue with you.
- Then divide the class into pairs to make new dialogues with different animals.
- Finish with a few dialogues from volunteer children across the class.

Cooler: Simon says

- Play *Simon says* (see the Games bank, pages 14–15) with mimes of the feelings vocabulary from this unit, e.g. (*Simon says*) I'm sad.

Workbook page 44



Lesson 7 **Functional language**

1 Read and match.

1 What's wrong? Are you scared?
Yes, I am. The cat is angry.

2 Look! It's a big spider.
Don't worry. It's OK.

3 What's wrong?
Look! It's a frog. I'm scared!

a b c

2 Look, read and complete.

~~wrong~~ scared tiger
Why Don't worry Yes

What's [1] *wrong*, Alex?
I'm [2] _____.
Why?
Look! It's a big lion!
[3] _____. It's OK.

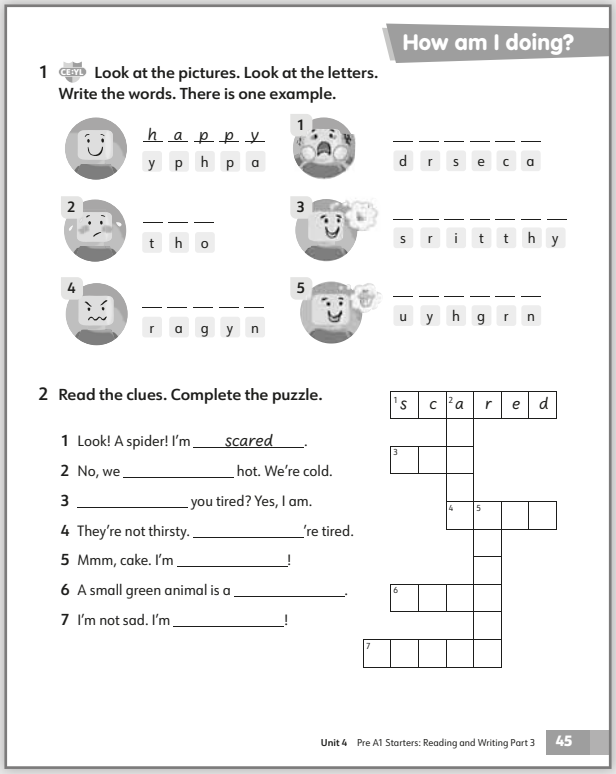
What's wrong, Tom? Are you scared?
[4] _____, I am.
[5] _____?
Look! It's a [6] _____!
Don't worry. It's OK.

3 Do the survey.

1 Look at the dog. Are you scared? _____
2 Look at the worm. Are you scared? _____
3 Look at the cat. Are you scared? _____

44 Unit 4

Workbook page 45



How am I doing?

1 CE:YL **Look at the pictures. Look at the letters. Write the words. There is one example.**

h a p p y
y p h p a

1 _ _ _ _ _ _
d r s e c a

2 _ _ _
t h o

3 _ _ _ _ _ _ _
s r i t t h y

4 _ _ _ _ _
r a g y n

5 _ _ _ _ _ _
u y h g r n

2 Read the clues. Complete the puzzle.

1 Look! A spider! I'm *scared*.
2 No, we _____ hot. We're cold.
3 _____ you tired? Yes, I am.
4 They're not thirsty. _____'re tired.
5 Mmm, cake. I'm _____!
6 A small green animal is a _____.
7 I'm not sad. I'm _____!

[1] s	c	[2] a	r	e	d

Unit 4 Pre A1 Starters: Reading and Writing Part 3 45

1 Read and match.

Answers: 1 a **2** c **3** b

2 Look, read and complete.

Answers: 1 wrong **2** scared **3** Don't worry **4** Yes **5** Why **6** tiger

3 Do the survey.

Answers: Children's own answers.

1 CE:YL Look at the pictures. Look at the letters. Write the words. There is one example.

- This activity helps the children prepare for Part 3 of the Reading and Writing paper of the Cambridge English: Pre A1 Starters test. The children use the letters to make the words illustrated in the pictures.
- Go through the example. Then elicit the correct spelling of number 1. Write it on the board.
- The children continue individually and then check with a friend.
- Invite different children to write the words on the board, asking for whole-class agreement each time.
- (To help prepare for this part of the test, the children need plenty of practice in spelling.)

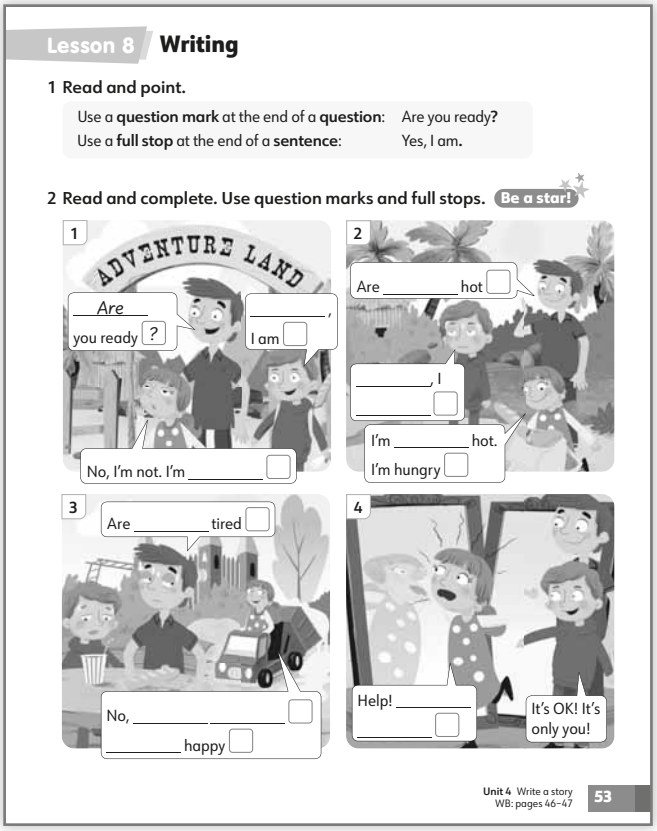
Answers: 1 scared **2** hot **3** thirsty **4** angry **5** hungry

2 Read the clues. Complete the puzzle.

Answers: 1 scared **2** aren't **3** Are **4** They **5** hungry **6** frog **7** happy

Lesson 8 Writing

Pupil's Book page 53



Learning objectives: Use question marks and full stops; Write a story

Resources: Unit 4 test

4.3 Warm-up: Sing the song!

- Play the song *This feeling* and have the children sing and act it out.

1 Read and point.

- Write the example sentences from the box on the board with the question mark and full stop missing. Point to and read out the information in the box.
- Then point to the examples on the board and read them out. Point to the place for the missing punctuation and prompt the children to draw the question mark or full stop in the air. Draw them in on the board.
- Divide the class into pairs. Have them look back at page 52 and find all the question marks they can (there are four). Then do the same with the full stops (there are eight).

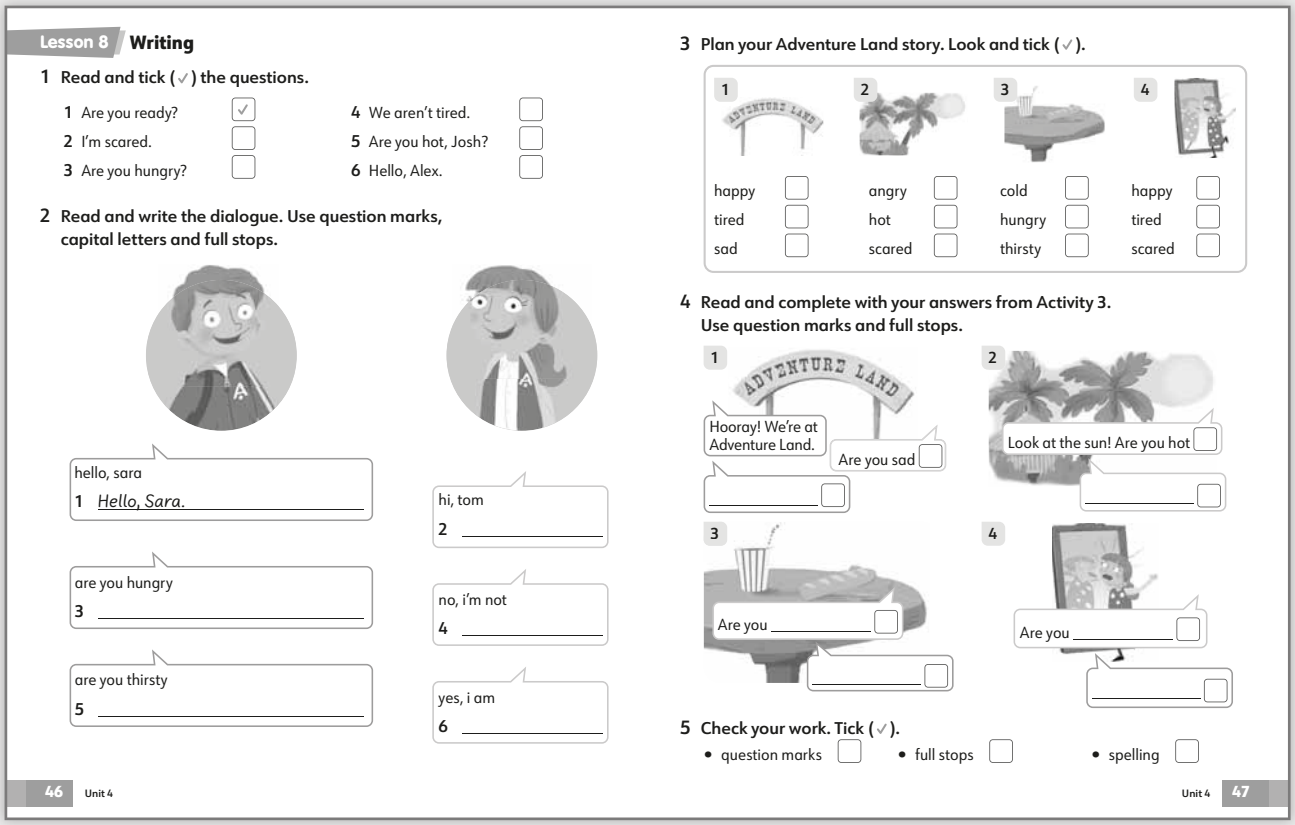
2 Read and complete. Use question marks and full stops. Be a star!

- Refer the children to the pictures in the story. Ask *Who's this? Where are they? Are they happy?*
- Read the example sentence and encourage the children to make a question mark in the air. Ask why we put a question mark here (end of a question).
- Elicit the rest of the complete sentences and write the correct text on the board. As you come to the punctuation each time, have the children draw a question mark or full stop in the air.
- The children copy the finished text into their books.

Answers: 1 Are you ready? Yes, I am. No, I'm not. I'm tired. **2** Are you hot? Yes, I am. I'm not hot. I'm hungry. **3** Are you tired? No, I'm not. I'm happy. **4** Help! I'm scared.

Cooler: Visualisation

- Ask the children to close their eyes and imagine the situation you describe to them: *You're in Adventure Land with Mum and Dad. It's very hot. How do you feel? You see a lot of big animals! How do you feel? Mum has a yoghurt for you! How do you feel? Now it's time to go home. How do you feel?*
- Have the children open their eyes. Recall the questions and encourage the children to share some of their ideas with the class, or in groups.



Lesson 8 Writing

1 Read and tick (✓) the questions.

1 Are you ready? ✓
2 I'm scared.
3 Are you hungry?
4 We aren't tired.
5 Are you hot, Josh?
6 Hello, Alex.

2 Read and write the dialogue. Use question marks, capital letters and full stops.

hello, sara
1 Hello, Sara.
are you hungry
3 _____
are you thirsty
5 _____
hi, tom
2 _____
no, i'm not
4 _____
yes, i am
6 _____

3 Plan your Adventure Land story. Look and tick (✓).

1 2 3 4

happy tired sad
angry hot scared
cold hungry thirsty
happy tired scared

4 Read and complete with your answers from Activity 3. Use question marks and full stops.

1 ADVENTURE LAND
Hooray! We're at Adventure Land.
Are you sad
2
Look at the sun! Are you hot
3
Are you _____
4
Are you _____

5 Check your work. Tick (✓).
• question marks • full stops • spelling

46 Unit 4

Unit 4 47

1 Read and tick (✓) the questions.

- The children read the phrases and decide if they are questions. They tick those that are.

Answers: 1, 3, 5

2 Read and write the dialogue. Use question marks, capital letters and full stops.

- The children rewrite the dialogue using the correct punctuation.

Answers: 1 Hello, Sara. **2** Hi, Tom.
3 Are you hungry? **4** No, I'm not.
5 Are you thirsty? **6** Yes, I am.

3 Plan your Adventure Land story. Look and tick (✓).

- The children look at the situations and decide how they feel in their story.

Answers: Children's own answers.

4 Read and complete with your answers from Activity 3. Use question marks and full stops.

- The children complete the story with the feelings from Activity 3 and the correct punctuation.

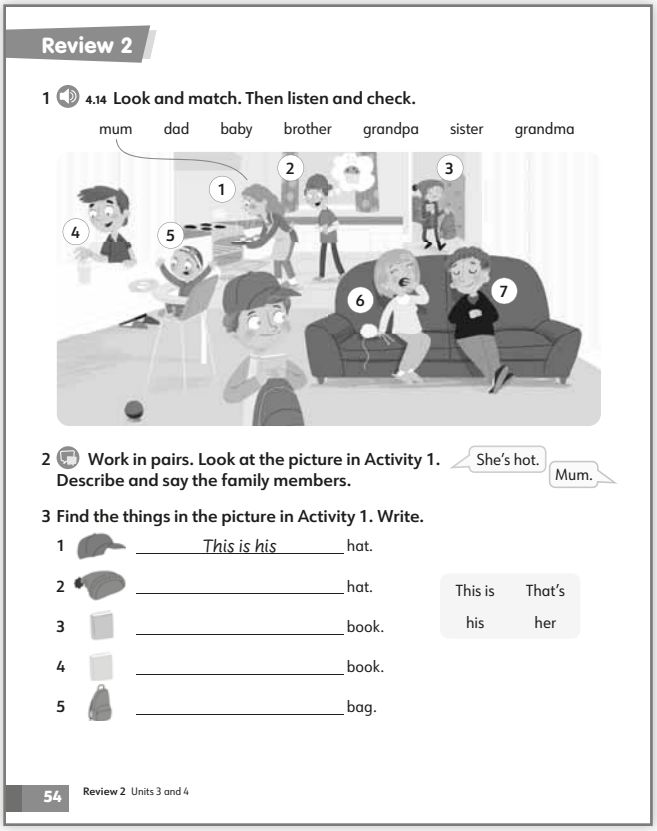
Answers: Children's own answers.

5 Check your work. Tick (✓).

- The children use the check list to make sure their work is complete and correct.

Review 2

Pupil's Book page 54


Review 2

1 4.14 Look and match. Then listen and check.

mum dad baby brother grandpa sister grandma

2 Work in pairs. Look at the picture in Activity 1. Describe and say the family members.

She's hot. Mum.

3 Find the things in the picture in Activity 1. Write.

1 This is his hat.
2 _____ hat.
3 _____ book.
4 _____ book.
5 _____ bag.

This is his / That's her

54 Review 2 Units 3 and 4

Learning objectives: Review vocabulary, grammar, and sounds and letters from Units 3 and 4; Pre A1 Starters: Listening Part 2; Reading and Writing Part 1

Grammar: *This is / That's, my / your, Who's this / that? his / her, to be* affirmative, negative, questions and short answers.

Resources: Flashcards

Vocabulary: family, feelings

Warm-up: Find and point

- Call out key words (*family, feelings*) from Units 3 and 4 and ask the children to find a picture of that word somewhere in their Pupil's Book.
- Have them hold up their book and point so they can see a variety of different illustrations. Have everyone repeat each word.

1 4.14 Look and match. Then listen and check.

- Refer the children to the picture. Elicit any names and family members that they can see.
- Play the first part of the audio. Stop and point out the example line from *mum* to the picture.
- Now play the rest of the audio, pausing after each part to give the children time to draw the lines.
- Play the audio again for them to check.
- For feedback, call out the numbers and elicit the family word.

Audioscript

This is my family.

1 *Look! That's my mum. She's very hot.*
2 *That's my brother. He's hungry.*
3 *Look at my sister. She's cold.*
4 *Look at my dad. He's thirsty.*
5 *This is the baby. She's angry.*
6 *This is my grandma. Look, she's tired.*
7 *And this is my grandpa. He's tired, too.*

Answers: 1 mum **2** brother **3** sister **4** dad **5** baby **6** grandma **7** grandpa

2 Work in pairs. Look at the picture in Activity 1. Describe and say the family members.

- Refer the children to the speech bubbles. Read out the first one and have the class respond. Give another example and elicit the family name, e.g. *She's tired. (Grandma).*
- Divide the class into pairs to continue the activity.

3 Find the things in the picture in Activity 1. Write.

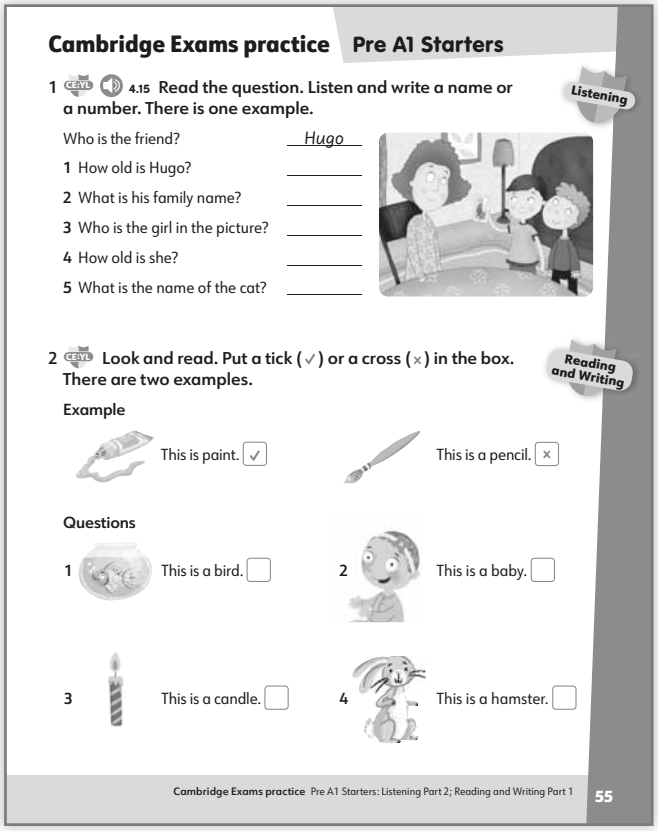
- Refer the children to the example. Have them find the hat in the picture (Tom's wearing it). Ask *Why 'this is'? (It's near.) Why 'his'? (his for a boy).*
- Elicit the answer to 2 *(That's her hat.)* Ask *Why 'That's'? (It's further away). Why 'her'? (her for a girl).*
- Have the children complete the activity and compare with a friend.
- Ask different children to read out the sentences. Ask for whole-class agreement each time and write the answers on the board.

Answers: 1 This is his hat. **2** That's her hat. **3** That's her book. **4** This is his book. **5** That's her bag.

Cooler: Disappearing words

- Play *Disappearing words* (see the Games bank, pages 14–15), recalling all the key words from this Review lesson.

Pupil's Book page 55



Cambridge Exams practice Pre A1 Starters

1 CE:YL 4.15 Read the question. Listen and write a name or a number. There is one example. Listening

Who is the friend? Hugo
1 How old is Hugo? _____
2 What is his family name? _____
3 Who is the girl in the picture? _____
4 How old is she? _____
5 What is the name of the cat? _____

2 CE:YL Look and read. Put a tick (✓) or a cross (×) in the box. There are two examples. Reading and Writing

Example
This is paint. ✓ This is a pencil. ×

Questions
1 This is a bird. ☐ 2 This is a baby. ☐
3 This is a candle. ☐ 4 This is a hamster. ☐

Cambridge Exams practice Pre A1 Starters: Listening Part 2; Reading and Writing Part 1 55

1 CE:YL 4.15 Read the question. Listen and write a name or a number. There is one example.

- This activity helps prepare the children for Part 2 of the Listening paper of the Cambridge English: Pre A1 Starters test.
- Refer the children to the picture and ask what they think the people are talking about.
- Have different children read out the questions. For each one, ask the class if they think the answer is a name or a number.
- Play the first part of the audio, pausing after the example. Point out that only one word is necessary.
- Play the rest of the audio and have the children complete the activity. Then check answers.
- (To help prepare for this part of the test, the children need to practise the alphabet. It is also useful if they are familiar with the simple names used in the Pre A1 Starters test. You can find a list of these in the Cambridge English Pre A1 Starters Handbook for Teachers.)

Audioscript

Mum: *Who's this?*
Boy 1: *He's my friend. His name is Hugo.*
Mum: *That's nice. Is that H-U-G-O?*
Boy 2: *Yes.*
Narrator: *Can you see the answer? Now you listen and write a name or number.*

1 Mum: *How old are you, Hugo?*
Boy 2: *I'm seven.*
2 Mum: *What's your family name?*
Boy 2: *It's Lewis. L-E-W-I-S.*
3 Boy 2: *Look at this picture. This is my sister.*
Mum: *What's her name?*
Mum: *Her name is Alice. A-L-I-C-E.*
4 Mum: *How old is Alice?*
Boy 2: *She's nine!*
5 Boy 2: *And that's her cat, Milo. M-I-L-O.*
Mum: *It's funny!*
Boy 2: *Yes!*

Answers: 1 7 / seven **2** Lewis **3** Alice **4** 9 / nine **5** Milo

2 CE:YL Look and read. Put a tick (✓) or cross (✗) in the box. There are two examples.

- This activity helps the children prepare for Part 1 of the Reading and Writing paper of the Cambridge English: Pre A1 Starters test. The children look, read and tick or cross the boxes.
- Go through the examples first: read out the first sentence and point to the picture. Elicit that the sentence is correct and indicate the tick. Do the same with second example and elicit why there is a cross in the box (the sentence is incorrect).
- Point to the other pictures and read out the sentences. Give the children time to complete the activity.
- Read out the sentences and have the class call out *yes* or *no*. Write the ticks and crosses on the board next to the corresponding number.
- (To help prepare for this part of the test, the children need practice in recognising and naming items.)

Answers: 1 ✗ **2** ✓ **3** ✓ **4** ✗

Workbook page 116

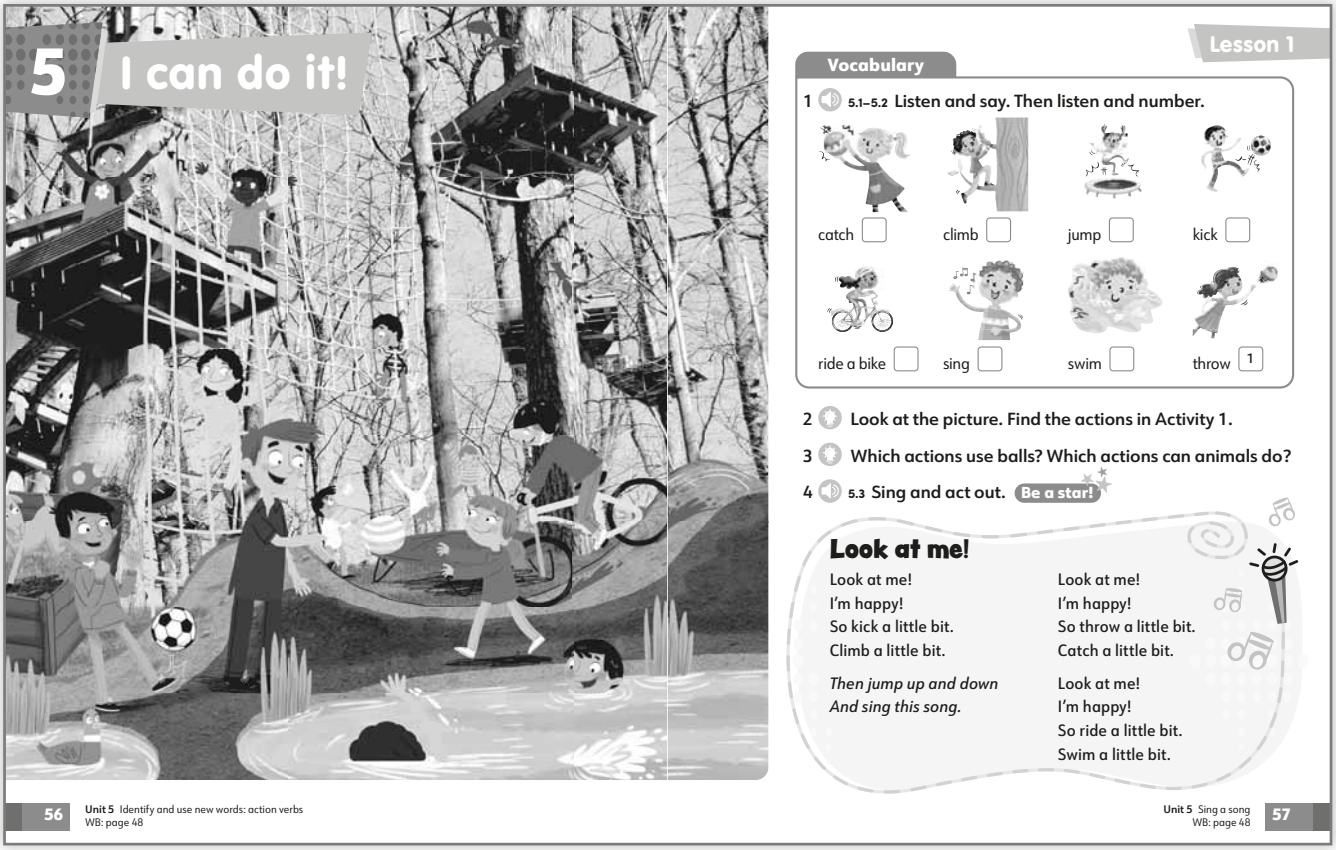
My progress: Units 3 and 4

- Clarify the meaning of each *I can …* statement. Elicit examples to help the children remember the content.
- Show the children the correct stickers for the *My progress check*. Give them time to decide if they are ready to give themselves a sticker. Provide encouragement if necessary. Help the children with sticking their stickers if they are having difficulty.
- Have all the children hold up their books and show all their stickers to the class. Encourage them to give themselves a round of applause for their effort and achievement!

5 I can do it!

Lesson 1 Vocabulary

Pupil's Book pages 56–57



Learning objectives: Identify and use new words: action verbs; Sing a song using the target vocabulary

Vocabulary: catch, climb, jump, kick, ride a bike, sing, swim, throw

Resources: Flashcards; Vocabulary worksheet 1

Warm-up: The big picture

- Refer the children to the picture on page 56. Ask *What are the children's names?* Have different children name a character for the rest of the class to point to. Ask *Where are they?* (*in a park / forest*) *Are the children happy or sad?* (*happy*). Then ask *Can you see Bot?* (*He's under the jungle gym.*)

1 5.1 Listen and say.

- Play the audio. Have the children listen and point to the pictures.
- Play the audio again. The children point and repeat.

5.2 Then listen and number.

- Play the audio, pausing after the first word to point out the example answer.
- Play the rest of the audio for the children to number the words.
- For feedback, say each number and have the class call out the word. Ask different children to repeat each word to check pronunciation.

Audioscript

1 *throw,* ***2*** *catch,* ***3*** *sing,* ***4*** *ride a bike,* ***5*** *kick,* ***6*** *climb,* ***7*** *jump,* ***8*** *swim*

Answers: catch – **2**, climb – **6**, jump – **7**, kick – **5**, ride a bike – **4**, sing – **3**, swim – **8**, throw – **1**

2 Look at the picture. Find the actions in Activity 1.

- Hold up your Pupil's Book, point to an action on page 57 and say the verb, e.g. *jump*. Now point to page 56 and say *And here?* Have the children find a person or animal jumping and repeat the verb.
- Invite different children to call out verbs and have everyone point.

Answers: catch – Sara, climb – Anna, squirrel, jump – children on trampoline, squirrel, kick – Alex, goat, ride a bike – Tom, sing – birds, swim – boys, duck, throw – Dad

3 Which actions use balls? Which actions can animals do?

- Elicit the names of the animals in the picture.
- Have the children find all the activities with balls and animals. While they are thinking, draw two columns on the board labelled *balls* and *animals*.
- Invite different children to tell you actions that use balls. Each time, ask for whole-class agreement, and then write the verb in the *balls* column.
- Repeat for the animals' actions.

Answers: Actions that use balls: catch, kick, throw
Actions that animals can do: climb, jump, swim, kick, sing (also possible: catch, e.g. a dog with a ball, and throw, e.g. monkeys)

4 5.3 Sing and act out.

Be a star!

- Ask the children to turn their Pupil's Book face down. Explain that they will hear a song and that when they hear an action verb mentioned, they should do the action. Play the audio and join in the actions with the children.
- Now have the children look at the song in their Pupil's Book. Play it again pausing after each line for the children to repeat (singing).
- Finally, the children listen, sing and do the actions. Repeat the song several times so that they can practise.

Teaching star!

Mixed ability 5.3

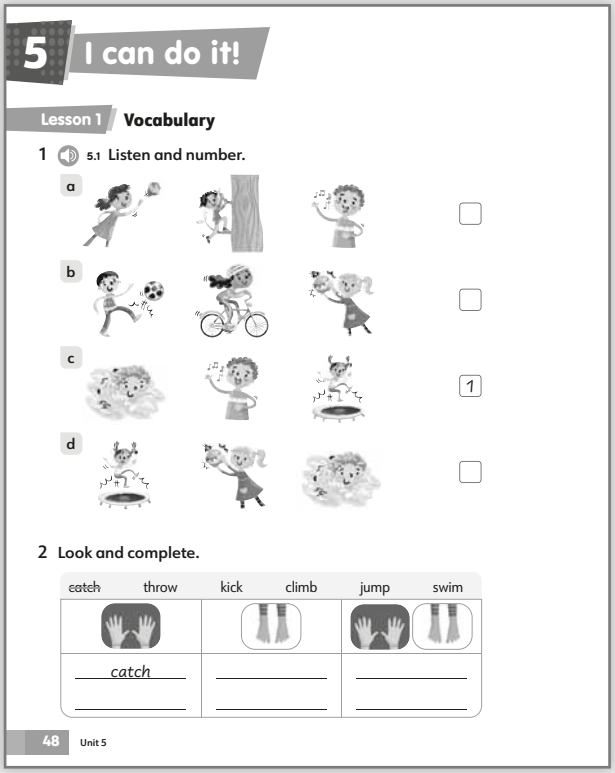
Some children will find singing and doing the actions for the whole story very challenging. In this case, have different groups sing and do the actions for different verses. Everyone is actively involved, and they can enjoy listening to and watching the others.

- Divide the class into three groups. Give a different verse to each group to practise singing and doing the actions. All groups join in and sing the chorus.
- Play the audio and have the children join in and sing / act their part.

Cooler: A group mime game

- Invite five or six children to come to the front of the classroom. Secretly show each one a different action from Activity 1. They all have ten seconds to mime the action while the rest of the class watch. Then say *Stop!*
- Their classmates raise their hands to say names and the corresponding actions. The children say *yes* or *no*.
- Repeat with different children and actions.

Workbook page 48


5 I can do it!

Lesson 1 Vocabulary

1 5.1 Listen and number.

a

b

c 1

d

2 Look and complete.

~~catch~~	throw	kick	climb	jump	swim
catch					

48 Unit 5

1 5.1 Listen and number.

Audioscript

1 swim, sing. jump
2 throw, climb, sing
3 jump, catch, swim
4 kick, ride, catch

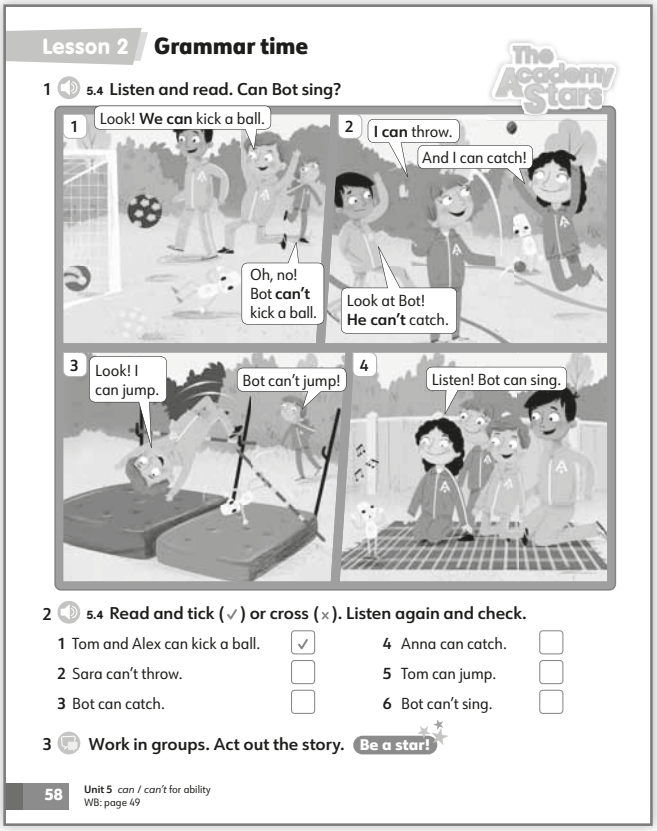
Answers: a 2 **b** 4 **c** 1 **d** 3

2 Look and complete.

Answers: Hands: catch, throw;
Feet: kick, jump; Hands and feet: climb, swim

Lesson 2 Grammar time

Pupil's Book page 58



Learning objectives: Understand and use *can* and *can't* for ability; Read and act out a story using the target grammar

Grammar: *can / can't* for ability – affirmative and negative

Review vocabulary: action verbs

5.3 Warm-up: Sing the song!

- Play the song *Look at me!* and have the children join in and do the actions.
- Before playing the song, you may wish to remind the children of the mimes from the previous lesson.

1 5.4 Listen and read. Can Bot sing?

- Refer the children to the pictures, and ask *What actions can you see?* (*kick, throw, catch, jump)* Ask *Are the children at home or at school?* (*at school*) *What are their names?* (*Tom, Alex, Anna, Sarah, Bot*) Ask the children if they also do these actions at school.
- Play the audio. Have the children follow in their books and find the answer to the question *Can Bot sing?* Elicit or prompt the answer *Yes, he can.*
- Play the audio again for the children to repeat chorally. Pay attention to the pronunciation of *can* and *can't*.
- Reinforce the meaning of *can / can't*: Say *Look at me – I can jump!* Jump in the air and then repeat: *I can jump!* and ask *Yes or no?* (*Yes!*) Repeat with *I can kick – yes or no?* This time, fail completely to kick a ball of paper and say *No, I can't kick.* Do the same for the remaining actions and then say, e.g. *I can jump. I can't kick. I can catch. I can't sing.*

Answer: Yes, he can.

2 5.4 Read and tick (✓) or cross (✗). Listen again and check.

- Point to Bot in the picture and say *This is Bot. True or false? Yes or no?* to elicit the answer *True*. If the children only respond with *yes*, say *Yes, it's true.* and write a tick on the board.
- Now point to Sara and say *This isn't Sara. True or false?* Elicit *false* and write a cross on the board.
- Ask several more questions about the classroom, including affirmative and negative sentences to elicit *true* or *false*. Each time, point to the tick or cross on the board.
- Read out the first sentence and ask *True or false?* Elicit the answer and point to the example tick. Ask where they can find the answer (Frame 1).
- Read out all the sentences and check understanding. Then have the children complete the activity individually. Fast finishers can compare their answers in pairs.
- Play the audio again for the children to check their answers.
- For feedback, read out the sentences and have the children stand up for *Yes* or sit down for *No*.

Answers: 1 ✓ 2 ✗ 3 ✗ 4 ✓ 5 ✓ 6 ✗

3 Work in groups. Act out the story.

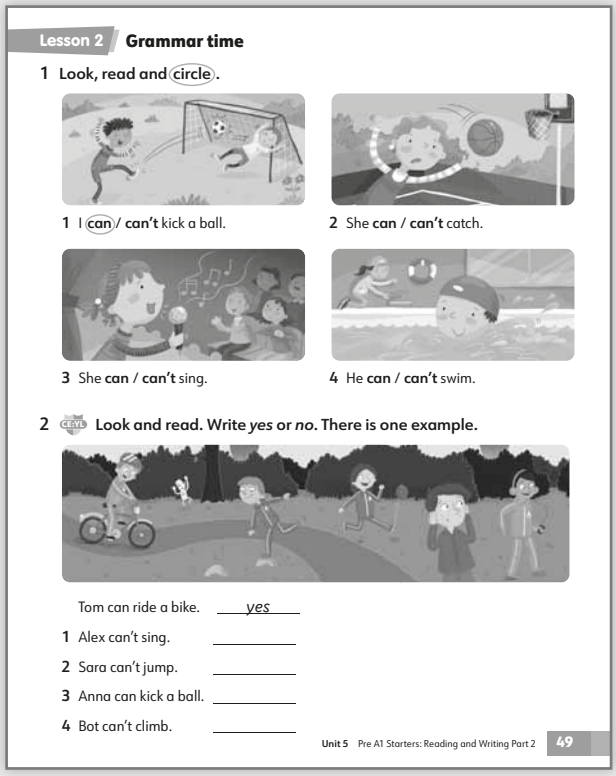
Be a star!

- Play the audio again for the class to repeat each line chorally. Check their pronunciation of *can* and *can't*.
- Ask *How many characters are in the story?* (*five*) Divide the class into groups of five and either have them decide who will be each character, or designate the roles.
- Allow the children a few minutes to practise acting out the story, without the 'props' at this point.
- Ask if any groups would like to act out the story for the class. They can use props now if they want (being careful when jumping – a ruler on the floor to jump over is probably safest!).
- If you wish, you could ask the children to change roles and act out the story again.

Cooler: Remember the story

- Write the names *Tom, Alex, Anna, Sara* and *Bot* spaced out on the board.
- Point to a name on the board and ask questions like *Can Tom kick a ball? Can Anna climb?* and have the children call out *Yes, No* or *Don't know!* according to the characters' abilities in the story, and in the picture on page 56.

Workbook page 49



Lesson 2 **Grammar time**

1 Look, read and circle.

1 I can / can't kick a ball.

2 She can / can't catch.

3 She can / can't sing.

4 He can / can't swim.

2 CE:YL Look and read. Write *yes* or *no*. There is one example.

Tom can ride a bike. *yes*

1 Alex can't sing. _____

2 Sara can't jump. _____

3 Anna can kick a ball. _____

4 Bot can't climb. _____

Unit 5 Pre A1 Starters: Reading and Writing Part 2 49

1 Look, read and circle.

Answers: 1 can **2** can't **3** can **4** can

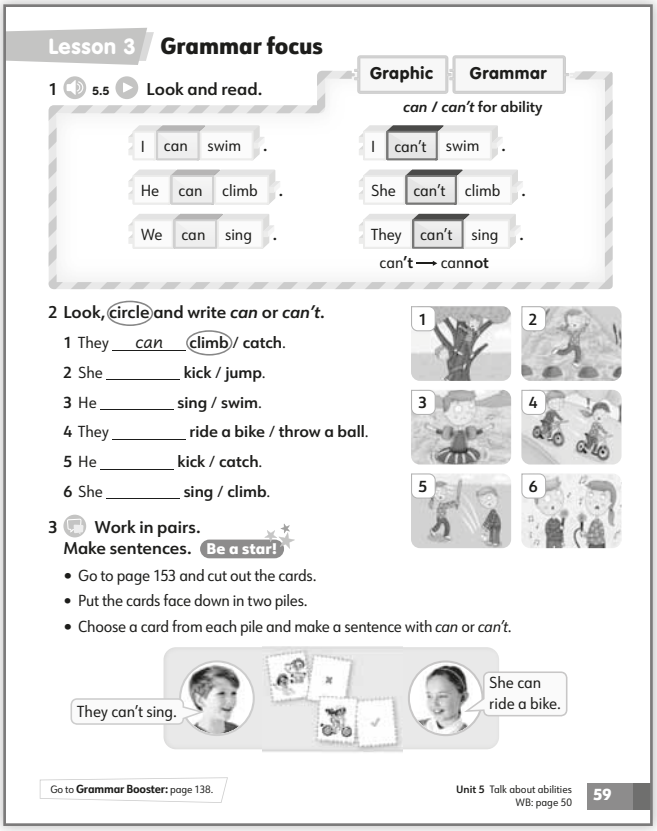
2 CE:YL Look and read. Write *yes* or *no*. There is one example.

- This activity helps the children prepare for Part 2 of the Reading and Writing paper of the Cambridge English: Pre A1 Starters test. The children read the sentences, look at the picture, and write *yes* or *no*.
- If done in class, ask the children what actions they can see in the picture and how the people are feeling.
- Go through the example first, and then have the children complete the activity individually.
- Ask individual children to read out the sentences and the class calls out *yes* or *no*.
- (To help prepare for this part of the test, the children need plenty of practice matching sentences to pictures.)

Answers: 1 yes **2** no **3** yes **4** yes

Lesson 3 Grammar focus

Pupil's Book page 59



Learning objectives: Talk about abilities

Grammar: *can / can't* affirmative and negative

Review vocabulary: action verbs

Resources: Graphic Grammar video; Grammar worksheet 1

Materials: scissors

Warm-up: Sit down for false!

- Tell the children that you will say some sentences with *can*, and that if a sentence is true for them, they should stand up. If it isn't true, they should sit down, until they hear another sentence that is true for them.
- Make a series of *can* statements using the action verbs from Lesson 1. Finish with one that all the children can probably do, e.g. *I can jump*, so that everyone is standing!

1 5.5 Look and read.

- Play the audio and have the children follow in their books. Have them stand up for affirmative sentences and sit down for negative sentences (continuing the concept from the Warm-up activity).
- Play the audio again, pausing after each sentence to ask *Is this yes or no?* Have the children point to *can* or *can't* in their Pupil's Book.
- Reinforce the contraction of *cannot* to *can't* by counting out the sentence *I cannot swim* on your fingers (put *cannot* on two fingers) and then push those two fingers together to show the contraction *can't*.
- Play the audio one more time for the children to repeat chorally.

- If using the video, tell the children they will see a video of children at the swimming pool. Play the video and let the children watch and enjoy.
- Play the video again and have the children repeat the key sentences.
- In part 2 (*We can sing. / They can't sing.*), stop the video before the sentences and elicit ideas from the children. Then check with the video.

2 Look, circle and write *can* or *can't*.

- Refer the children to the pictures and elicit the action verbs they can see. Go through the example sentence.
- Elicit the action verb for picture 2 (jump) and ask *Can the girl jump?* (*Yes, she can.*) Have them write *can* in the space and circle *jump*.
- Then the children complete the activity individually and compare their sentences in pairs.
- Ask volunteers to read out the complete sentences.

Answers: 1 can climb **2** can jump **3** can't swim **4** can ride a bike **5** can't catch **6** can't sing

3 Work in pairs. Make sentences.

Be a star!

- Organise the children in pairs and have them open their books to page 153.
- Make sure the children all have scissors with which to cut out the cards.
- Give the children time to cut out the cards and place them face down in two piles. While they do this, confirm understanding of what they see in the pictures on the cards. For this activity, they will use two sets of cards. One set should be the cards with pictures, and the other set should be the cards with ticks / crosses.
- Work through the example activity with the children. Explain that they will choose one card from each pile. They use the picture on one card and the tick or cross on the other card to make sentences using *can* or *can't*. If the sentences are correct, they keep their cards. The one with the most cards at the end of the game is the winner.

Grammar booster

For additional practice, ask the children to turn to page 138 of their Pupil's Book to complete Activity 1. If the children need more grammar practice before the communicative Activity 3, have them complete this activity first. Alternatively, you may wish to have the children complete this activity at home.

Answers: 1 can **2** can't **3** can **4** can **5** can't **6** can

ESDC

SDG Goal 3: Good health and well-being

Introduce the children to Sustainable Development Goal 3: *Good health and well-being.*

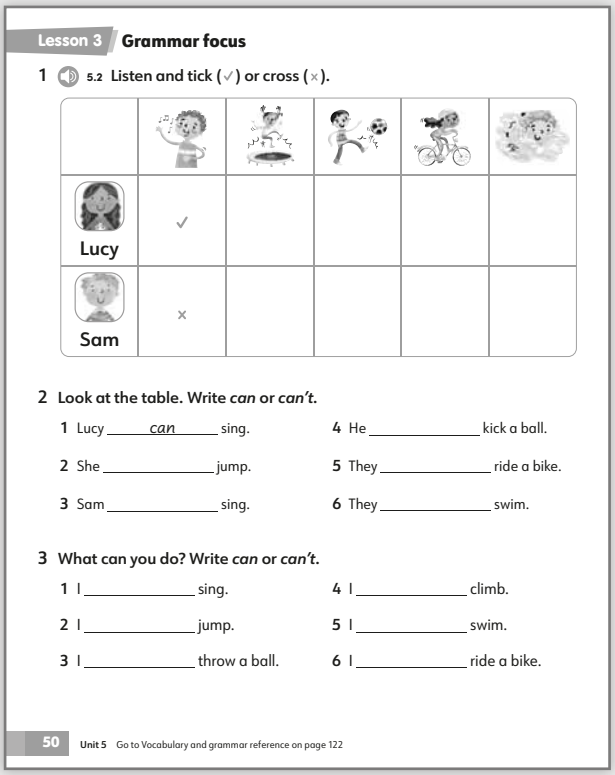
- Draw attention to the activities shown in Activity 2 on page 59. Ask the children if they enjoy doing these activities. At this point, do not discuss whether or not the children feel they are 'good at' the activities.
- Encourage the children to share examples of other activities or forms of exercise the children enjoy or can do, and to talk about why they enjoy them. If you have a favourite form of exercise or other physical activity or sport you enjoy, you may wish to share that information with the class. You may choose to refer to activities you enjoyed when you were a child as well. Talk about what you enjoy about the activity, how it makes you feel or any other benefits you receive from it. If you participate in team sport or attend group activities, emphasise the benefits of these relationships.
- Elicit reasons why it's important for people to do exercise, no matter how old we are.

Possible answers: we stay healthy, we have fun, we get to play or do sport with friends, we can meet new friends while doing exercise and we learn how to do new things.

Cooler: Mime game

- Write a sentence on a large piece of paper, e.g. *I can't swim*, but don't show it. Mime the action, and ask the children to guess what is written on the paper.
- Now divide the class into two halves. Ask one half of the class to turn away while you show the other half another *can / can't* sentence. (Suggestions: *I can jump. I can't ride a bike. I can't catch. I can throw a ball. I can't swim.*)
- Have them mime the action for their classmates to guess the sentence. After five seconds, the other children call out their ideas. Repeat with several sentences.

Workbook page 50



Lesson 3 **Grammar focus**

1 5.2 Listen and tick (✓) or cross (×).

Lucy	✓				
Sam	×				

2 Look at the table. Write *can* or *can't*.

1 Lucy *can* sing.
2 She _____ jump.
3 Sam _____ sing.
4 He _____ kick a ball.
5 They _____ ride a bike.
6 They _____ swim.

3 What can you do? Write *can* or *can't*.

1 I _____ sing.
2 I _____ jump.
3 I _____ throw a ball.
4 I _____ climb.
5 I _____ swim.
6 I _____ ride a bike.

50 Unit 5 Go to Vocabulary and grammar reference on page 122

Grammar reference:

Remind the children that they can refer to the grammar reference on page 122 to help them when completing these activities.

1 5.2 Listen and tick (✓) or cross (✗).

Audioscript

1 *Lucy can sing. Sam can't sing.*
2 *Lucy can't jump. Sam can jump.*
3 *Lucy can't kick a ball. Sam can kick a ball.*
4 *Lucy can ride a bike. Sam can ride a bike.*
5 *Lucy can't swim. Sam can't swim.*

Answers:
Lucy : sing ✓, jump ✗, kick a ball ✗, ride a bike ✓, swim ✗
Sam : sing ✗, jump ✓, kick a ball ✓, ride a bike ✓, swim ✗

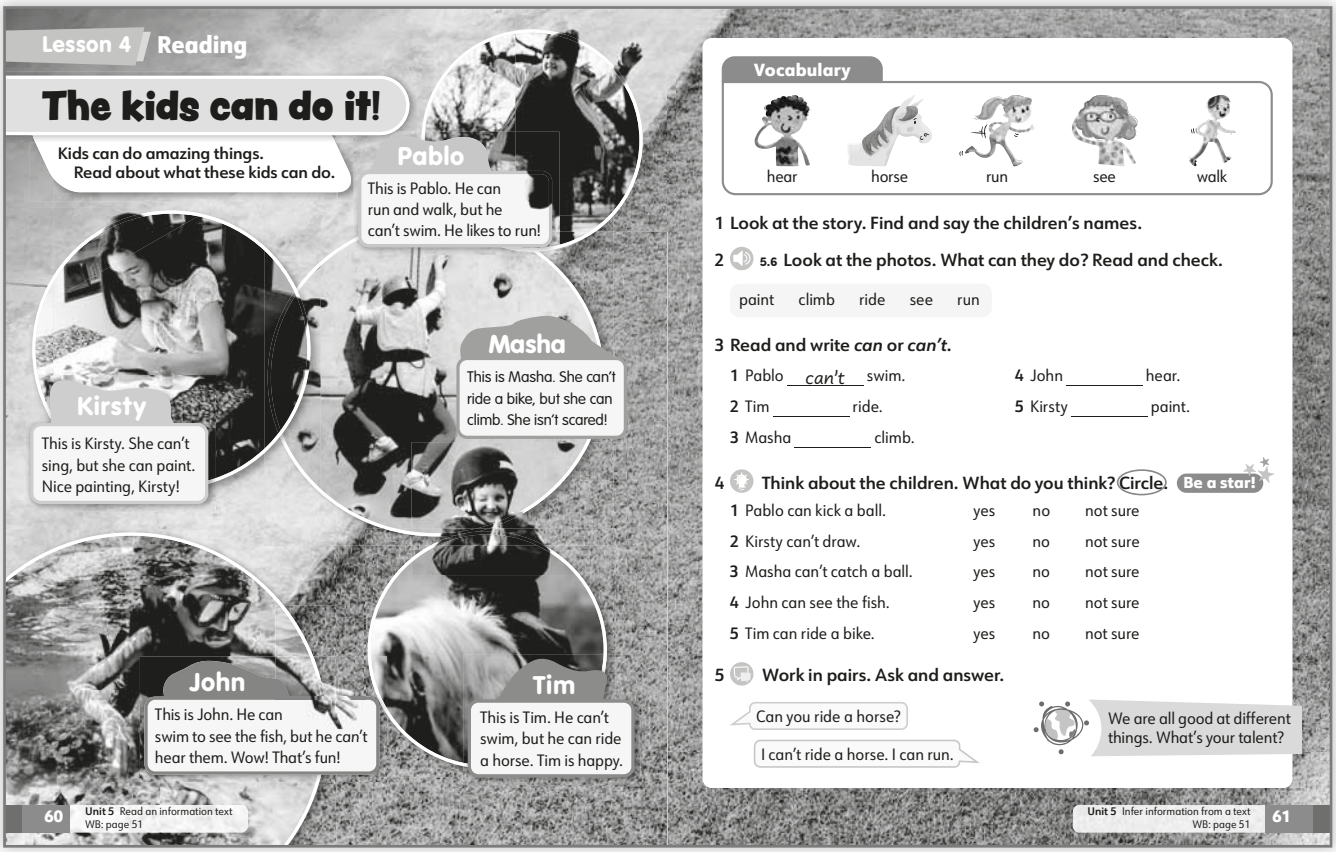
2 Look at the table. Write *can* or *can't*.

Answers: 1 can **2** can't **3** can't **4** can **5** can **6** can't

3 What can you do? Write *can* or *can't*.

Answers: Children's own answers.

Pupil's Book pages 60–61



Learning objectives: Read an information text; Infer information from a text

Vocabulary: hear, horse, run, see, walk

Review vocabulary: happy, nice, scared

Resources: Flashcards; Vocabulary worksheet 2

5.4 Warm-up: Stand up / sit down when you hear ...

- Divide the class into two groups. Tell one group that they must stand up and sit down quickly (or raise and lower their arms quickly) every time they hear *can*. The other group must do the same for *can't*.
- Play the audio of the story from Lesson 2 and have the children respond accordingly.

Vocabulary

- Refer the children to the vocabulary panel on page 61. Write the words on the board and number them 1–5. Then say the words at random and have the children call out the corresponding number.

1 Look at the story. Find and say the children's names.

- Refer the children to the photos on page 60 and ask them to find the children's names in the story as you point to a photo. Then have them say the child's name. Continue with the rest of the children in the story. Help with pronunciation as needed.

2 5.6 Look at the photos. What can they do? Read and check.

- Have the children look again at the photos on page 60 and ask them to point to different items. Say *Can you find ... a red hat? ... blue goggles? ... pink pants? ... a horse?*
- Read out the verbs in the box and elicit what they think the kids in the photos can do. Then have them read the text to confirm their ideas.
- Play the audio for the children to listen and follow. Ask them to say *Stop!* and point to the sentence when they hear one of the answers.

Answers: Pablo – run Kirsty – paint
Masha – climb John – see Tim – ride

3 Read and write *can* or *can't*.

- Refer the children to the first sentence. Say *Where's Pablo?* and have the children find the text about Pablo on page 60. Point to the photo and ask *Can Pablo swim, yes or no?* (*No*). Point to the example answer.
- Have the children complete the activity individually. While they do this, write the gapped sentences on the board.
- Invite volunteers to come and complete the sentences. Ask for whole-class agreement each time.

Answers: 1 can't **2** can **3** can **4** can't **5** can

4 Think about the children. What do you think? Circle.

Be a star!

- Tell the children that it's time to think because the answers to these questions are not in the book.
- Read out the first sentence, *Pablo can kick a ball*, and ask the children to look for the information in the text. (*It isn't in the text.*) Then ask what they think is probably true – elicit some opinions and help the children formulate a reason, if necessary. (You will probably need to use L1.)
- Give the children time to think about the other sentences before continuing the activity as a class. For each question, have the children raise their hands to vote for each answer. (Some children may want to voice an opinion on why, and may need to do this in L1. This is fine because talking through the reasons helps develop their critical thinking skills.)

Suggested answers: 1 no **2** not sure **3** not sure **4** yes **5** not sure

5 Work in pairs. Ask and answer.

- Have the children ask and answer questions using *can* or *can't* and the vocabulary from the lesson.

Teaching star!

Reading

One of the most motivating things about learning to read for young children is joining in. They learn to recognise key words or phrases and can be an active part of telling the story.

- Either play the audio, or read the story to the children yourself.
- When you come to the key phrases (using *can* or *can't*) encourage the children to join in. They will happily do this at least twice!

Cooler: Disappearing words

- Play *Disappearing words* (see the Games bank, pages 14–15), asking the children to recall all the key words they can from the story, e.g. *paint, swim, ride, horse, see, walk, sing, hear, scared, run, climb, happy.*

ESDC

We are all good at different things. What's your talent?

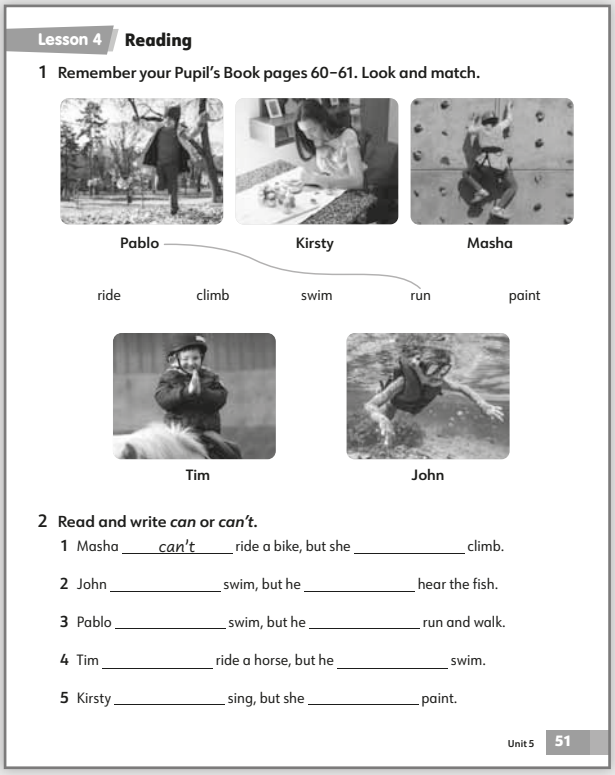
- Read out the question and ask if anyone can translate it into L1. This question helps the children explore how they can behave in a considerate and respectful way in the community.

ESDC *continued*

- Organise the class into pairs to discuss what they are good at. Circulate among the pairs to encourage any shy children who might have difficulty thinking of their talents. Prompt them to consider what they enjoy doing and from there to understand their talents.
- Ask pairs to share examples of their friends' talents. You may wish to conduct a quick, simple class survey of talents. Affirm children's talents by pointing out how they can help others in the class who might want to learn how to better do some things.

Possible answers: some students may feel they are talented in certain academic disciplines, at certain sports, artistic endeavours or languages. Affirm all responses, and redirect discussion of whether some children in the class might be 'better' at any particular talents than others.

Workbook page 51



Lesson 4 **Reading**

1 Remember your Pupil's Book pages 60–61. Look and match.

Pablo Kirsty Masha

ride climb swim run paint

Tim John

2 Read and write *can* or *can't*.

1 Masha *can't* ride a bike, but she _____ climb.

2 John _____ swim, but he _____ hear the fish.

3 Pablo _____ swim, but he _____ run and walk.

4 Tim _____ ride a horse, but he _____ swim.

5 Kirsty _____ sing, but she _____ paint.

Unit 5 51

1 Remember your Pupil's Book pages 60–61. Look and match.

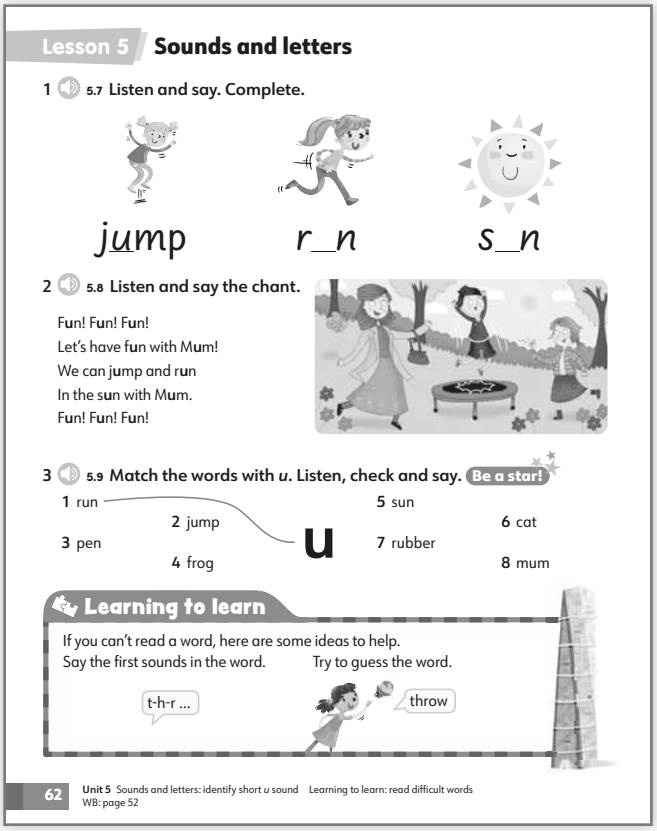
Answers: Pablo – run, Kirsty– paint, Masha – climb, Tim – ride, John – swim

2 Read and write *can* or *can't*.

Answers: 1 can't, can **2** can, can't **3** can't, can **4** can, can't **5** can't, can

Lesson 5 Sounds and letters

Pupil's Book page 62



Learning objectives: Sounds and letters: identify short *u* sound; Learning to learn: read difficult words

Sounds and letters words: jump, run, sun

Resources: Sounds and letters worksheet

5.6 Warm-up: What's the last word?

- Play *What's the last word?* (see the Games bank, pages 14–15). Pause the audio after some of the key words in the text, e.g. *walk, can't, paint, hear, climb, swim, horse*.

1 5.7 Listen and say. Complete.

- With the children's books closed, point to each of the pictures in your book and ask *What's this?* Listen to their suggestions.
- Now play the audio and have the children open their books and check.
- Play the audio again for the children to repeat the words chorally. Do this twice.
- Point to the *u* in the word *jump* in your book. Ask *What's this letter?* (*u*) *What's the sound?* (/ʌ/)
- Write a big, clear *u* on the board as a model for the children. Have them write the *u* in the three words.

Audioscript

/ʌ/ /ʌ/ /ʌ/ jump
/ʌ/ /ʌ/ /ʌ/ run
/ʌ/ /ʌ/ /ʌ/ sun

Answers: jump, run, sun

2 5.8 Listen and say the chant.

- Play the chant and have the children follow in their books. Have them raise their hands every time they see / hear a word with *u*.
- Play the chant again, pausing after each line for the children to repeat. Pay particular attention to the *u* sound.
- Play the chant once more and have the children join in as much as they can.
- Divide the class into two groups. Have each half of the class say alternate lines. They all join together again for the final *Fun! Fun! Fun!*

3 5.9 Match the words with *u*. Listen, check and say. Be a star!

- Ask the children how many words they can see with the letter *u* (there are five).
- Point out the example and have the children draw lines to join the remaining words with *u* to the big letter *u* in the middle.
- Ask the children which numbers they chose and play the audio to confirm.
- Play the audio again for the children to repeat the words chorally and then individually to check pronunciation.

Audioscript

run, run jump, jump sun, sun
rubber, rubber mum, mum

Answers: run, jump, sun, rubber, mum

Teaching star!

Extension

Observing and copying mouth shapes can help children tune their pronunciation.

- Ask the children to look carefully at your mouth. Make the shape of the words from Lesson 5 featuring the *u* sound, but don't make any sound. The children try to guess what word you are mouthing.
- Children can continue this game in pairs.

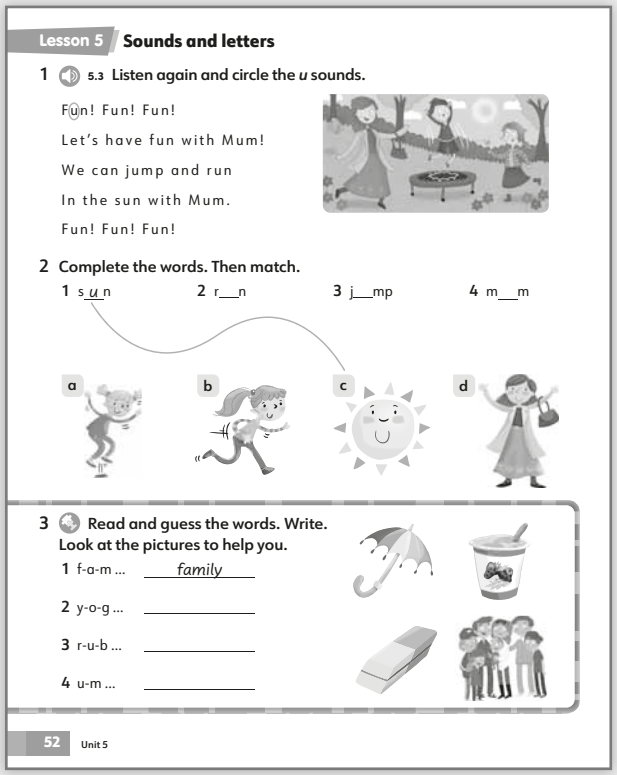
Learning to learn

- Explain the *Learning to learn* idea to the children. Have all the children follow your lead and sound out the beginning of the word *throw*. Then suddenly call out the word.
- Do two more examples of 'difficult' words on the board with the whole class, e.g. *painting* and *happy*. Sound out the first letters (and have the children join in) and then demonstrate that moment of realisation – *Oh! Painting! / Oh yes – happy!*
- Choose some words from Lesson 5, e.g. *jump, rubber, frog,* and do the same without writing them on the board. See how quickly the children can guess the words.

Cooler: Physical spelling

- Play *Physical spelling* (see the Games bank, pages 14–15) with some key words from this lesson: *jump, fun, rubber, frog, cat, throw.*

Workbook page 52


Lesson 5 Sounds and letters

1 5.3 Listen again and circle the *u* sounds.

F(u)n! Fun! Fun!
Let's have fun with Mum!
We can jump and run
In the sun with Mum.
Fun! Fun! Fun!

2 Complete the words. Then match.

1 s*u*n 2 r__n 3 j__mp 4 m__m

a b c d

3 Read and guess the words. Write. Look at the pictures to help you.

1 f-a-m ... *family*
2 y-o-g ...
3 r-u-b ...
4 u-m ...

52 Unit 5

1 5.3 Listen again and circle the *u* sounds.

Answers: F(u)n! F(u)n! F(u)n!
Let's have f(u)n with M(u)m!
We can j(u)mp and r(u)n
In the s(u)n with M(u)m.
F(u)n! F(u)n! F(u)n!.

2 Complete the words. Then match.

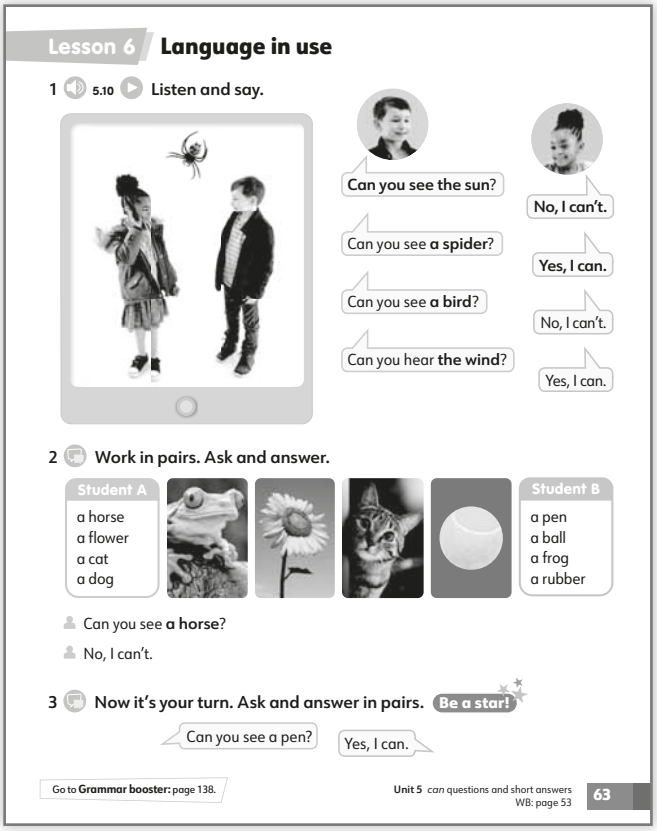
Answers: 1 sun – c **2** run – b **3** jump – a **4** mum – d

3 Read and guess the words. Write. Look at the pictures to help you.

Answers: 1 family **2** yoghurt **3** rubber **4** umbrella

Lesson 6 Language in use

Pupil's Book page 63



Learning objectives: *can* questions and short answers

Review vocabulary: baby, bird, cat, dog, flower, fox, frog, horse, spider, sun, wind, worm

Resources: Language in use video; Grammar worksheet 2

5.8 Warm-up: Say the chant again

- Using mime if necessary to prompt them, ask the children to recall the chant from Lesson 5. Then play the audio to see how well they remembered. Write it on the board.
- Have the whole class say the chant together.

1 5.10 Listen and say.

- Refer the children to the picture. Ask what they think the boy and girl are talking about.
- Play the audio and have the children follow in their books.
- Play the audio again, pausing after each question for the children to repeat. Before continuing, elicit the corresponding answer and then check with the audio.
- If using the video, play it and let the children watch and enjoy it.
- Play the video again and stop after each question to elicit the answer from the class. Play the video to confirm and have them all repeat it.
- Now play the video one more time and have the children repeat the questions and answers. Encourage them to imitate the intonation and body language as closely as possible.

2 Work in pairs. Ask and answer.

- Refer the children to the photos and give them 20 seconds to look at them. Then ask the children to close their books. Divide the class into pairs to remember and write a list of the things in the photos. Elicit the items, write them on the board and check pronunciation.
- Now refer the children to the example in speech bubbles and point out that the question is the same as in Activity 1, but the blue words are changed for the items in the photos. Elicit and drill another example question.
- In the same pairs, have the children take turns, as Student A and Student B, to ask about the other items in their sets of photos.

3 Now it's your turn. Ask and answer in pairs.

Be a star!

- Start by asking a few *Can you see …?* questions to the whole class, e.g. *Can you see a pen? Can you see an umbrella?* Have them all answer *Yes, I can* and point to the item, or *No, I can't.*
- The children continue the activity in pairs.

Grammar booster

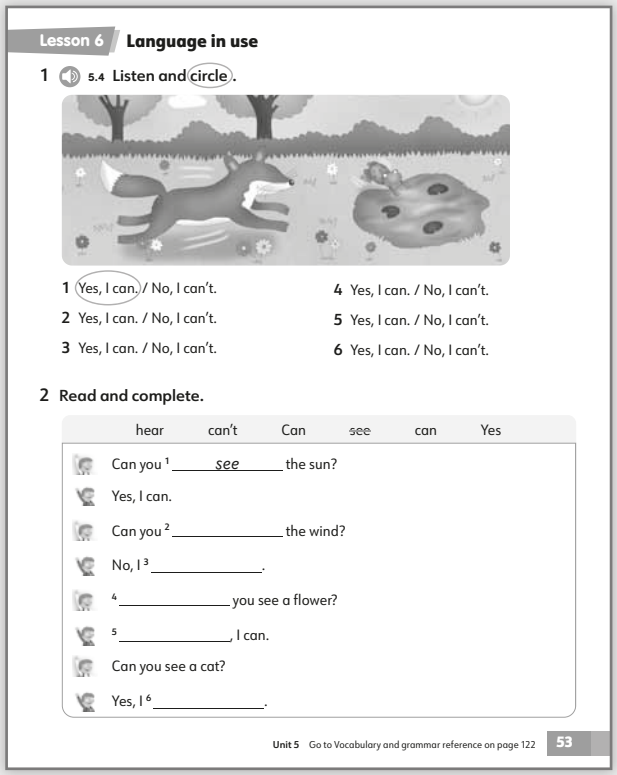
For additional practice, ask the children to turn to page 138 of their Pupil's Book to complete Activity 2. You may also wish to have the children complete this activity at home.

Answers: 1 Yes, I can. **2** No, I can't.
3 Yes, I can. **4** No, I can't.

Cooler: I can see …

- This is a variation on the traditional game *I spy with my little eye …* Choose an object in the class that the children know the name of, but don't tell them. Say *I can see something beginning with …* and give the first sound of the word (rather than the letter).
- Have the children look around and suggest items until they guess the one you're thinking of.
- Repeat the game. Then invite confident children to choose objects for the rest of the class to guess.

Workbook page 53



Lesson 6 **Language in use**

1 5.4 Listen and circle.

1 Yes, I can. / No, I can't.
2 Yes, I can. / No, I can't.
3 Yes, I can. / No, I can't.
4 Yes, I can. / No, I can't.
5 Yes, I can. / No, I can't.
6 Yes, I can. / No, I can't.

2 Read and complete.

hear can't Can see can Yes

Can you 1 _see_ the sun?
Yes, I can.
Can you 2 _____ the wind?
No, I 3 _____.
4 _____ you see a flower?
5 _____, I can.
Can you see a cat?
Yes, I 6 _____.

Unit 5 Go to Vocabulary and grammar reference on page 122 53

Grammar reference:

Remind the children that they can refer to the grammar reference on page 122 to help them when completing these activities.

1 5.4 Listen and circle.

Audioscript

1 *Can you see the sun?*
Yes, I can.
2 *Can you see a baby?*
No, I can't.
3 *Can you see a cat?*
No, I can't.
4 *Can you see a frog?*
Yes, I can.
5 *Can you see a spider?*
No, I can't.
6 *Can you see a flower?*
Yes, I can.

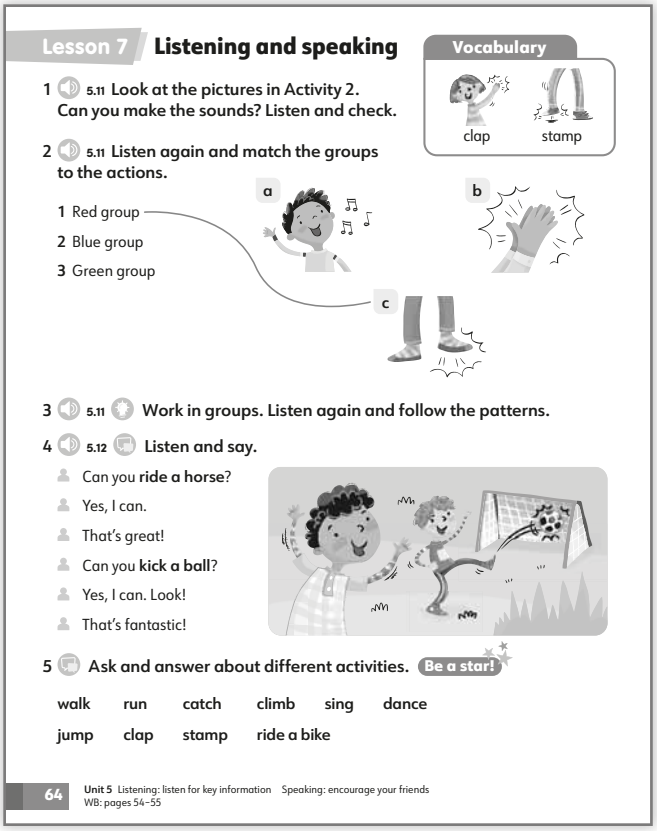
Answers: 1 Yes, I can. **2** No, I can't. **3** No, I can't. **4** Yes, I can. **5** No, I can't. **6** Yes, I can.

2 Read and complete.

Answers: 1 see **2** hear **3** can't **4** Can **5** Yes **6** can

Lesson 7 Listening and speaking

Pupil's Book page 64


Lesson 7 Listening and speaking

Vocabulary

clap stamp

1 5.11 Look at the pictures in Activity 2. Can you make the sounds? Listen and check.

2 5.11 Listen again and match the groups to the actions.

1 Red group
2 Blue group
3 Green group

a b c

3 5.11 Work in groups. Listen again and follow the patterns.

4 5.12 Listen and say.

Can you **ride a horse**?
Yes, I can.
That's great!
Can you **kick a ball**?
Yes, I can. Look!
That's fantastic!

5 Ask and answer about different activities. Be a star!

walk run catch climb sing dance
jump clap stamp ride a bike

64 Unit 5 Listening: listen for key information Speaking: encourage your friends
WB: pages 54–55

Learning objectives: Listening: listen for key information; Speaking: encourage your friends

Vocabulary: clap, stamp

Review vocabulary: action verbs

Resources: Vocabulary worksheet 2

Materials: a bag with a selection of classroom objects in it, e.g. book, glue, pen, pencil, pencil case, rubber, ruler

Warm-up: Find it

- Using the bag with objects (see *Materials*), ask a volunteer *Can you find the (rubber)? Five seconds!* The child has five seconds to feel inside the bag and try to find the object while everybody counts down. Encourage the child to answer *Yes, I can* and show the object or *No, I can't*.
- Repeat with different children.

Vocabulary

- Refer the children to the vocabulary panel. Have them do the actions and say the words.

1 5.11 Look at the pictures in Activity 2. Can you make the sounds? Listen and check.

- Refer the children to the pictures. Ask *Can you make these sounds?* Encourage them to do them.
- Play the audio for them to check.

2 5.11 Listen again and match the groups to the actions.

- Play the first part of the audio and go through the example. Then play the rest of the audio.
- For feedback, call out the colour and elicit the correct word and the action.

Audioscript

1	***Girl:***	*Red group. Can you stamp?*
	Children:	*Yes, we can!*
	Girl:	*Fantastic!*
2	***Girl:***	*Blue group. Can you clap?*
	Children:	*Yes, we can!*
	Girl:	*Great!*
3	***Boy:***	*Green group. Can you sing?*
	Children:	*Yes, we can!*
	Boy:	*That's nice!*
4	***Adult:***	*Can you do it all together?*
	Children:	*Uh … no … we can't.*
	Adult:	*Yes, you can. Stamp your feet! Now clap your hands! Now sing! That's fantastic!*

Answers: 1 c **2** b **3** a

3 5.11 Work in groups. Listen again and follow the patterns.

- Divide the class into 3 groups: red, blue and green.
- Play the audio again for the groups to do the actions.

4 5.12 Listen and say.

- Point to the picture and ask *Are the boys happy or sad?* (*happy*)
- Play the audio and ask *Can he kick a ball? (Yes)* Ask if we say *That's great* or *That's fantastic* when something is good or bad (*good*).
- Play the audio again for the children to repeat with suitable intonation.
- The children practise the dialogue chorally and then in pairs.

5 Ask and answer about different activities.

Be a star!

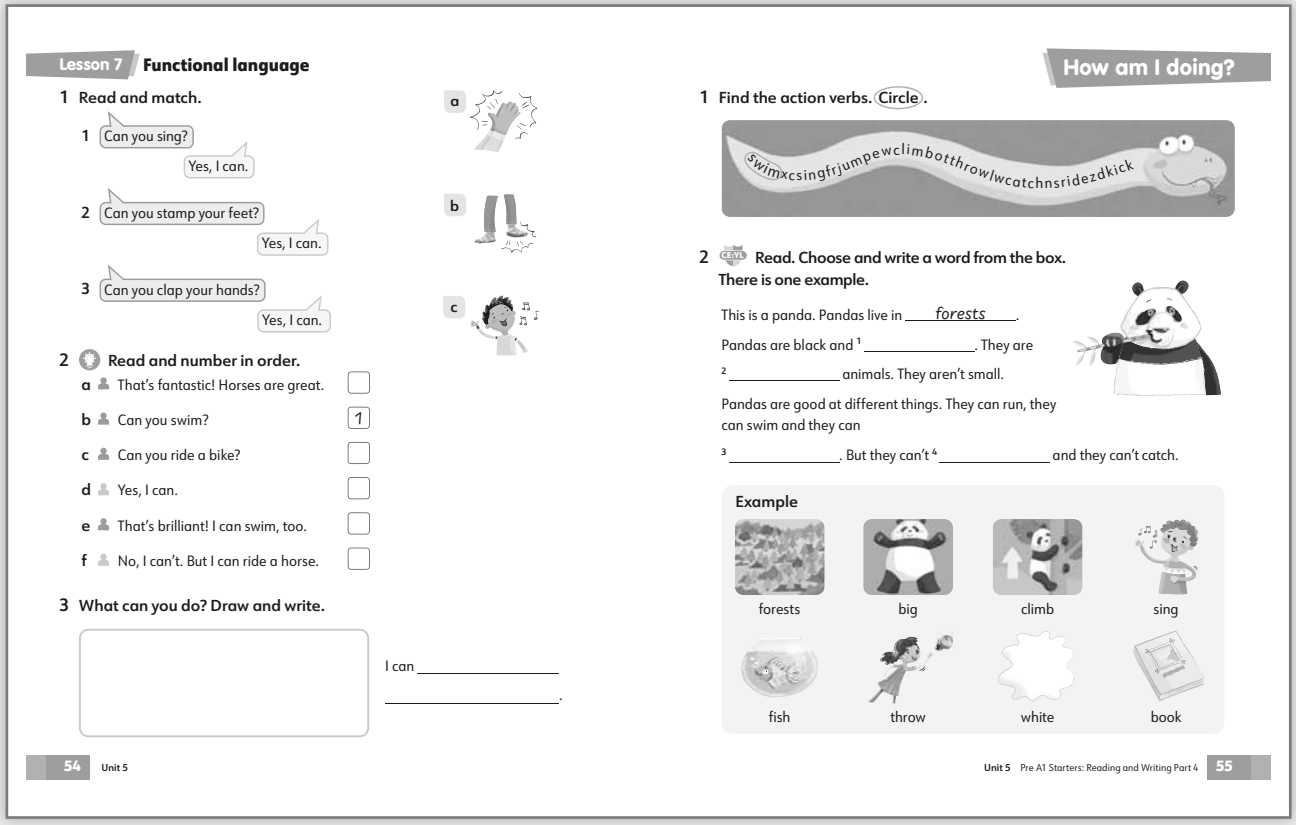
- Demonstrate the activity by asking different children a *Can you ...?* question and responding: *That's great / fantastic!* Then change roles.
- The children continue in pairs. When you clap your hands, the children must say *Goodbye!* and talk to someone new.

Cooler: Half phrases

- Write the following two lists vertically on the board next to each other: 1. *That's ... / Yes, ... / No, ... / Can ... / Can you ... / 2. ... I can't. / ... you swim? / ... fantastic! / ... I can. / ... ride a horse?*
- Invite different children to the board to match the halves and make a complete sentence.

Answers: That's fantastic!, Yes, I can. No, I can't. Can you swim? Can you ride a horse?

Workbook pages 54–55



Lesson 7 Functional language

1 Read and match.

1 Can you sing? Yes, I can.

2 Can you stamp your feet? Yes, I can.

3 Can you clap your hands? Yes, I can.

a b c

2 Read and number in order.

a That's fantastic! Horses are great. ☐
b Can you swim? 1
c Can you ride a bike? ☐
d Yes, I can. ☐
e That's brilliant! I can swim, too. ☐
f No, I can't. But I can ride a horse. ☐

3 What can you do? Draw and write.

I can _____.

54 Unit 5

How am I doing?

1 Find the action verbs. Circle.

swimxcsingfrjumpewclimbotthrowlwcatchnsridezdkick

2 CE:YL Read. Choose and write a word from the box. There is one example.

This is a panda. Pandas live in *forests*.
Pandas are black and 1 _____. They are 2 _____ animals. They aren't small.
Pandas are good at different things. They can run, they can swim and they can 3 _____. But they can't 4 _____ and they can't catch.

Example
forests big climb sing
fish throw white book

Unit 5 Pre A1 Starters: Reading and Writing Part 4 55

1 Read and match.

Answers: 1 c **2** b **3** a

2 Read and number in order.

Answers: a 6 **b** 1 **c** 4 **d** 2 **e** 3 **f** 5

3 What can you do? Draw and write.

Answers: Children's own answers.

1 Find the action verbs. Circle.

Answers: swim, sing, jump, climb, throw, catch, ride, kick

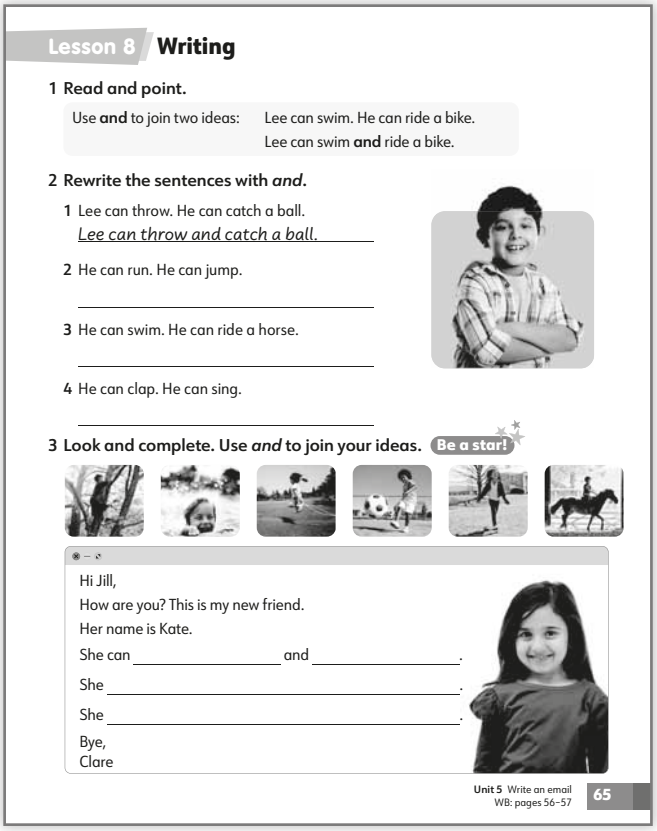
2 CE:YL Read. Choose and write a word from the box. There is one example.

- This activity helps the children prepare for Part 4 of the Reading and Writing paper of the Cambridge English: Pre A1 Starters test. The children complete the text by choosing words from the illustrated list in the box.
- Review the example. Then the children work in pairs. Encourage them to read each sentence and guess the word before they look at the box.
- Check the answers with the class.
- (To prepare, they should practise reading a text quickly for general meaning.)

Answers: 1 white **2** big **3** climb **4** throw

Lesson 8 Writing

Pupil's Book page 65



Lesson 8 Writing

1 Read and point.

Use **and** to join two ideas: Lee can swim. He can ride a bike. / Lee can swim **and** ride a bike.

2 Rewrite the sentences with *and*.

1 Lee can throw. He can catch a ball.
Lee can throw and catch a ball.

2 He can run. He can jump.

3 He can swim. He can ride a horse.

4 He can clap. He can sing.

3 Look and complete. Use *and* to join your ideas. Be a star!

Hi Jill,
How are you? This is my new friend.
Her name is Kate.
She can _____ and _____.
She _____.
She _____.
Bye,
Clare

Unit 5 Write an email
WB: pages 56–57 65

Learning objectives: Use *and* to join ideas; Write an email

Resources: Unit 5 test

Warm-up: Team sentences

- Play *Team sentences* (see the Games bank, pages 14–15) with *I can / can't …* sentences, e.g. *I can jump; I can't kick a ball*, etc.

1 Read and point.

- Ask volunteers to read out the example sentences while you write them on the board. After each sentence, ask *How many actions?* (*Lee can swim. – 1; He can ride a bike. – 1; Lee can swim and ride a bike. – 2*)
- Explain that we can put two actions in one sentence using *and*. Ask which words aren't repeated in the last sentence (he can).
- Give an example about you, e.g. *I can jump and ride a bike.* Elicit more examples from volunteers.

2 Rewrite the sentences with *and*.

- Go through the example sentence. Then elicit an answer for each question. Write the answers on the board, but leave a space in place of either *and* or a verb.
- Invite volunteers to complete the spaces on the board. Ask for whole-class agreement and then have the children complete the activity.
- Write an alternative sentence to one of the answers, e.g. *He can jump and run.* Ask if this makes a difference (no).

Answers: 1 Lee can throw and catch a ball. **2** He can run and jump. **3** He can swim and ride a horse. **4** He can clap and sing.

Teaching star!

Pairwork

Children can benefit from the extra practice they get working in pairs. They can gain confidence for contributing to a whole-class activity.

- Hold up your book and point to two of the actions in Activity 3. Elicit a sentence using *and* to join the actions using *I can … and …*
- Divide the class into pairs. Have them take turns – one child points to two activities and the other makes a sentence joining them.

3 Look and complete. Use *and* to join your ideas.

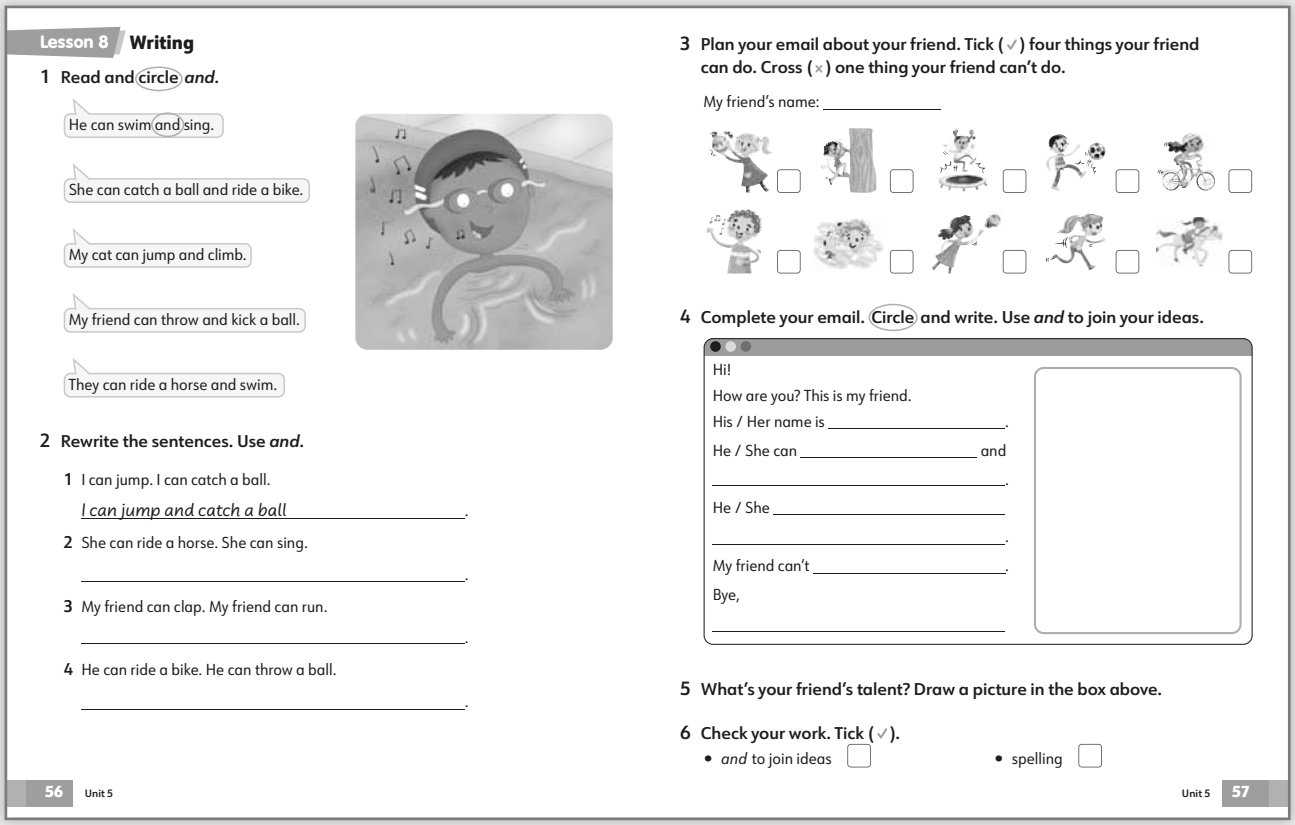
Be a star!

- Explain that Clare is writing an email about her new friend, in the photo. Have the children identify the actions in the pictures. Tell them this will be part of the email.
- Ask a volunteer to read out the beginning of the email while you write the sentences on the board.
- Point to the first two pictures and elicit how to complete the sentence. Write it on the board.
- Repeat with the other sentences. Then read out the email and have the children repeat it chorally.
- Finally, the children copy the text into their books.

Answers: She can climb and swim. She can jump and kick a ball. She can run and ride a horse.

Cooler: A chain memory game

- Start the 'chain' by saying *Kate can climb*. Ask a confident child to repeat this and add a new action, e.g. *Kate can climb and jump*. Continue around the class or in groups.



Lesson 8 **Writing**

1 Read and circle *and*.

He can swim and sing.

She can catch a ball and ride a bike.

My cat can jump and climb.

My friend can throw and kick a ball.

They can ride a horse and swim.

2 Rewrite the sentences. Use *and*.

1 I can jump. I can catch a ball.
I can jump and catch a ball.

2 She can ride a horse. She can sing.
_____.

3 My friend can clap. My friend can run.
_____.

4 He can ride a bike. He can throw a ball.
_____.

3 Plan your email about your friend. Tick (✓) four things your friend can do. Cross (×) one thing your friend can't do.

My friend's name: _____

4 Complete your email. Circle and write. Use *and* to join your ideas.

Hi!
How are you? This is my friend.
His / Her name is _____.
He / She can _____ and _____.
He / She _____ _____.
My friend can't _____.
Bye,
_____

5 What's your friend's talent? Draw a picture in the box above.

6 Check your work. Tick (✓).
- *and* to join ideas ☐
- spelling ☐

56 Unit 5

Unit 5 57

1 Read and circle *and*.

- The children find and circle all the *ands* in the text.

Answers: He can swim (and) sing. She can catch a ball (and) ride a bike. My cat can jump (and) climb. My friend can throw (and) kick a ball. They can ride a horse (and) swim.

2 Rewrite the sentences. Use *and*.

- The children write new sentences joining the actions with *and*.

Answers: 1 I can jump and catch a ball.
2 She can ride a horse and sing. **3** My friend can clap and run. **4** He can ride a bike and throw a ball.

3 Plan your email about your friend. Tick (✓) four things your friend can do. Cross (✕) one thing your friend can't do.

- The children think of a friend and tick or cross the activities.

Answers: Children's own answers.

4 Complete your email. Circle and write. Use *and* to join your ideas.

- The children complete the email using the information about their friend.

Sample answer:
Hi!
How are you? This is my friend.
His name is Tim.
He can run and climb.
He can jump and swim.
My friend can't ride a bike.
Bye,
Jeff

5 What's your friend's talent? Draw a picture in the box above.

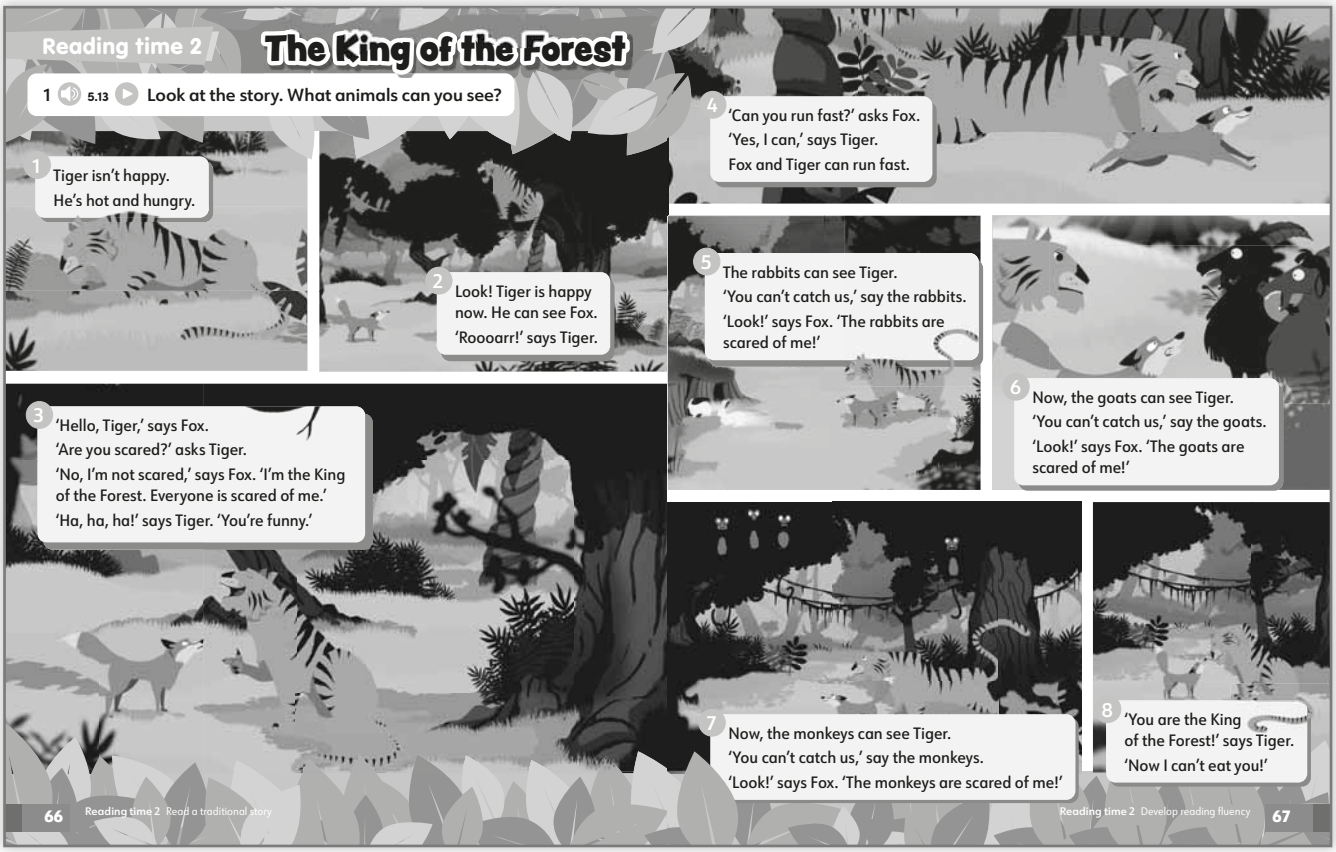
- The children draw a picture of their friend doing one of the activities from their email.

Answers: Children's own answers.

6 Check your work. Tick (✓).

- The children use the check list to make sure their work is complete and correct.

Pupil's Book page 66–67



Learning objectives: Read a traditional story; Develop reading fluency

Additional vocabulary: fast, forest, fox, goat, king, monkey, rabbit, tiger

Review vocabulary: adjectives

Resources: Reading time 2 video

Warm-up: Animals ping pong

- Divide the class into two teams. Explain that the first theme is *animals* and have the teams take turns to give the name of an animal. This 'sends the ball' to the other team who have five seconds to reply with a different animal. As each team says an animal, quickly write a list on one side of the board. The game stops when a team cannot find a new word in five seconds.
- This game can be repeated a few times – the children get better each time and enjoy the improvement!

1 5.13 Look at the story. What animals can you see?

- Refer the children to the pictures. Ask *What can you see?* (*Possible answers: a fox, a tiger, goats, rabbits, monkeys, a forest, trees, plants*)
- Tell them the title of the story, *The King of the Forest*, and clarify *king* with a picture of a king and clarify *forest* by asking *Where are they?*
- Ask the children the following pre-reading questions:
  Are the fox and the tiger friends? (*No, the fox and the tiger aren't friends.*)
  Is the fox scared? (*No, the fox isn't scared.*)
  Are the other animals scared? (*Yes, the other animals are scared.*)
- Ask the children to raise their hands to give a suggestion, but don't confirm anything at this point.
- Have the children look at the story to find and name all the animals.
- Ask the children who they think is *The King of the Forest.*

Answers: Animals in the story: tiger, fox, rabbits, goats, monkeys

5.13 Read the story.

- Give the children time to read the story, without the audio, so that all children are reading at their own pace.
- If some of the children aren't able to read independently at this point, then support them by reading along with them. Help them with any difficult words. Some children will need motivation. Remind them that reading is fun!
- Then play the audio and let the children listen and follow in their books. This will help consolidate what they read.
- You could invite the children to join in with the key repeated sentences *Everyone is scared of me. The ... are scared of me*.

Check the story.

- Ask some questions to check the children's understanding of key aspects of the story:
- Point to picture 1 – *Is Tiger happy?* (*No, he isn't. Tiger isn't happy.*) *Why is Tiger not happy?* (*He's hot and he's hungry.*)
- Point to picture 2 – *Is Tiger happy now?* (*Yes, he is. Tiger is happy now.*)
- Point to picture 3 – *Is Fox scared?* (*No, he isn't scared.*)
- Point to picture 4 – *Can Fox and Tiger run fast?* (*Yes, they can. Fox and Tiger can run fast.*)
- Point to picture 5, 6, 7 – *Are the rabbits / goats / monkeys scared?* (*Yes, they are. The rabbits, goats and monkeys are scared.*) *Why?* (*They are scared of Tiger.*)
- Point to picture 8 – *Is Fox happy?* (*Yes, he is.*) *Why?* (*He's the King of the Forest. Tiger can't eat Fox.*)

Rate the story.

- Ask the children if they liked the story. (They will be doing more critical thinking about the story in the next lesson, but after the first encounter with the story, it is good to get some feedback and set a positive attitude for the follow-up.)
- You may wish to discuss with the children language they can use to talk about whether they liked the reading text. You may wish to write a list of adjectives on the board. Some examples could be:
  fun
  good
  interesting
  exciting
  fantastic
  boring
- Explain or demonstrate the meaning of these with the children.
- If any of the children didn't like the reading text, you may wish to encourage them to consider any positive aspects.
- Finally, you may wish to remind children that everybody has got their own opinion which may be different to their classmates, and that's OK. Encourage children to respect their classmate's opinions.

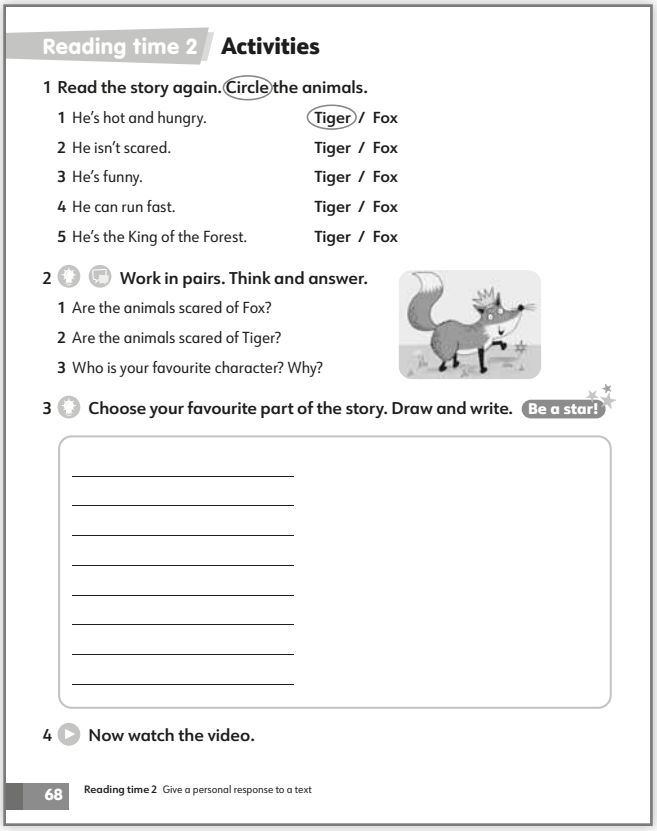
Cooler: The shark game



- Play *The shark game* (see the Games bank, pages 14–15) with key vocabulary from the reading text, e.g. *forest, hungry, scared, rabbit, catch, goat, monkey, king*.

Reading time 2 / Activities

Pupil's Book page 68



Reading time 2 Activities

1 Read the story again. Circle the animals.

1 He's hot and hungry. Tiger / Fox
2 He isn't scared. Tiger / Fox
3 He's funny. Tiger / Fox
4 He can run fast. Tiger / Fox
5 He's the King of the Forest. Tiger / Fox

2 Work in pairs. Think and answer.

1 Are the animals scared of Fox?
2 Are the animals scared of Tiger?
3 Who is your favourite character? Why?

3 Choose your favourite part of the story. Draw and write. Be a star!

4 Now watch the video.

68 Reading time 2 Give a personal response to a text

Learning objectives: Give a personal response to a text

Additional vocabulary: fast, forest, king

Review vocabulary: adjectives

Resources: Reading time 2 video

Warm-up: How many words?

- Read out some sentences from the story *The King of the Forest* and have the children tell you how many words there are in each one. Suggested sentences: *Everyone is scared of me.* (5); *Fox and Tiger can run fast.* (6); *The rabbits can see Tiger.* (5); *The monkeys are scared of me!* (6); *You are the King of the Forest.* (7); *Now I can't eat you.* (5).
- Then have the children repeat the sentences chorally.

1 Read the story again. Circle the animals.

- Recap the story quickly by asking *Where are Fox and Tiger? What animals can they see? Are the animals scared?*
- Ask different children to dictate sentences 1–5 to you and write them on the board.
- Ask the children if they can remember the answers. Have them circle the answers in pencil in their books (to change later if necessary). Point out that they can circle both animals if necessary.
- Now have the children read the story again, with or without audio as you prefer.
- For feedback, read out the sentences and have the children call out *Fox* or *Tiger*. Circle the answers on the board and have the children make any necessary changes in their books.

Answers: 1 Tiger **2** Fox **3** Fox **4** Tiger and Fox **5** Fox

2 Work in pairs. Think and answer.

- Check that the children understand the questions. Then give them time to look, think and decide.
- The children can then compare ideas with a friend. (They will probably need to use L1 to do this.)
- Finally, ask the whole class and see if there are differences of opinion.

Answers: 1 No **2** Yes **3** Children's own answers.

3 Choose your favourite part of the story. Draw and write. Be a star!

- Ask the children what their favourite part of the story is and listen to a few suggestions (in L1 if necessary).
- Have them choose their favourite part of the story and draw a picture to illustrate it.
- Then ask them to write a phrase that relates to that part of the story. Circulate, monitor and help as necessary

4 Now watch the video.

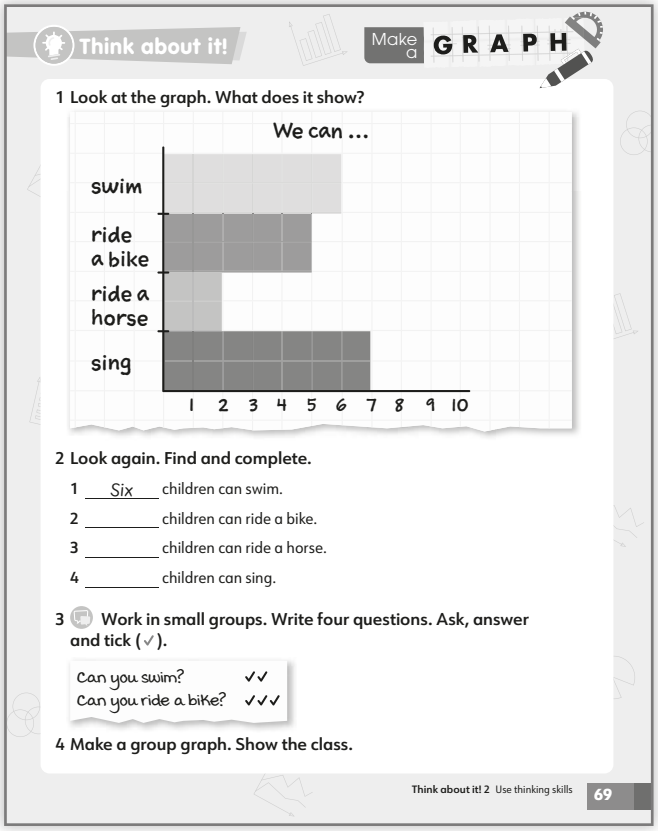
- Show the children the video of the story. Encourage them to join in with the key repeated sentences.
- Ask which version they preferred, the printed version or the video.

Cooler: Visualisation

- Ask the children to close their eyes and imagine they are walking in the forest.
- Ask *What can you hear? What can you see? Can you see any animals? Look – a fox! Are you scared? Look a tiger! Are you scared? Can you run fast? Run, run, run! OK – you're home! Open your eyes.*
- Have the children open their eyes. Recall the questions and encourage the children to share some of their ideas with the class, or in groups.

Think about it!

Pupil's Book page 69



Learning objectives: Use thinking skills; Make a group graph

Materials: large (A3) sheets of paper (one sheet for each group) – if possible with an empty grid photocopied onto it (like Activity 1), a ruler and coloured pencils per group for Activity 4

Warm-up: An action game

- Ask the children a series of questions and have them answer and do the actions or count, e.g. *Can you ride a bike? Can you kick a ball? Can you sing? Can you climb a tree? Can you count from one to ten? Can you count from ten to one?*

1 Look at the graph. What does it show?

- Refer the children to the graph and ask *What colours, numbers and actions can you see? Ask What action is yellow / blue / green / purple?*
- Now ask the children what information the graph shows and elicit suggestions.

Answers: The graph shows how many people, in a class or group, can do different actions.

2 Look again. Find and complete.

- Have the children look at the graph again and ask *How many children can swim?* (*six*) *How do we know?* (*Elicit how you can draw a line down to number 6 from the end of the yellow block.*)
- Read out the example sentence, and point out that this is the same information as they just found.
- Read out the remaining sentences. Ask the children to find the action on the graph – ask *What colour is 'ride a bike'?*, etc. Count the squares together, and have them trace a line down from the end of the block to the number at the bottom. Elicit the answers orally. Write the numbers on the board.
- Then have the children complete the sentences in their books.

Answers: 1 Six **2** Five **3** Two **4** Seven

3 Work in small groups. Write four questions. Ask, answer and tick (✓).

- Elicit all the action verbs the children know and write them on the board (from this unit: *catch, climb, jump, kick, ride a bike, sing, swim, throw, run, walk, ride a horse, clap, stamp*).
- Cross out the verbs used in Activity 1 and ask the class to choose four of the remaining verbs to use on a new graph. Erase all the other verbs. Elicit the *Can you ...?* questions and write them on the board. Have the children copy them into their notebooks with space alongside to add ticks.
- Divide the class into groups of four. Explain that they now have to ask their questions to the children in other groups. Pair off groups and give them time to ask questions, putting a tick next to the question for every positive answer. Repeat until they have talked to at least two or three other groups.

4 Make a group graph. Show the class.

- Give each group a sheet of A3 paper (see *Materials*). Explain they will make new graphs similar to the one in Activity 1.
- Have the children write the verbs and a title for the graph in the correct place on the photocopied grid. (If you can't give them a photocopied blank grid, demonstrate how to draw the grid on their sheet.)
- As an example, ask a group how many ticks they have for one verb. Count the squares, mark it and colour in the space up to that point.
- Have the children do the same, with each child adding the results for one verb.
- Invite groups to show their graph to the class.
- Give plenty of praise for achieving a difficult task!

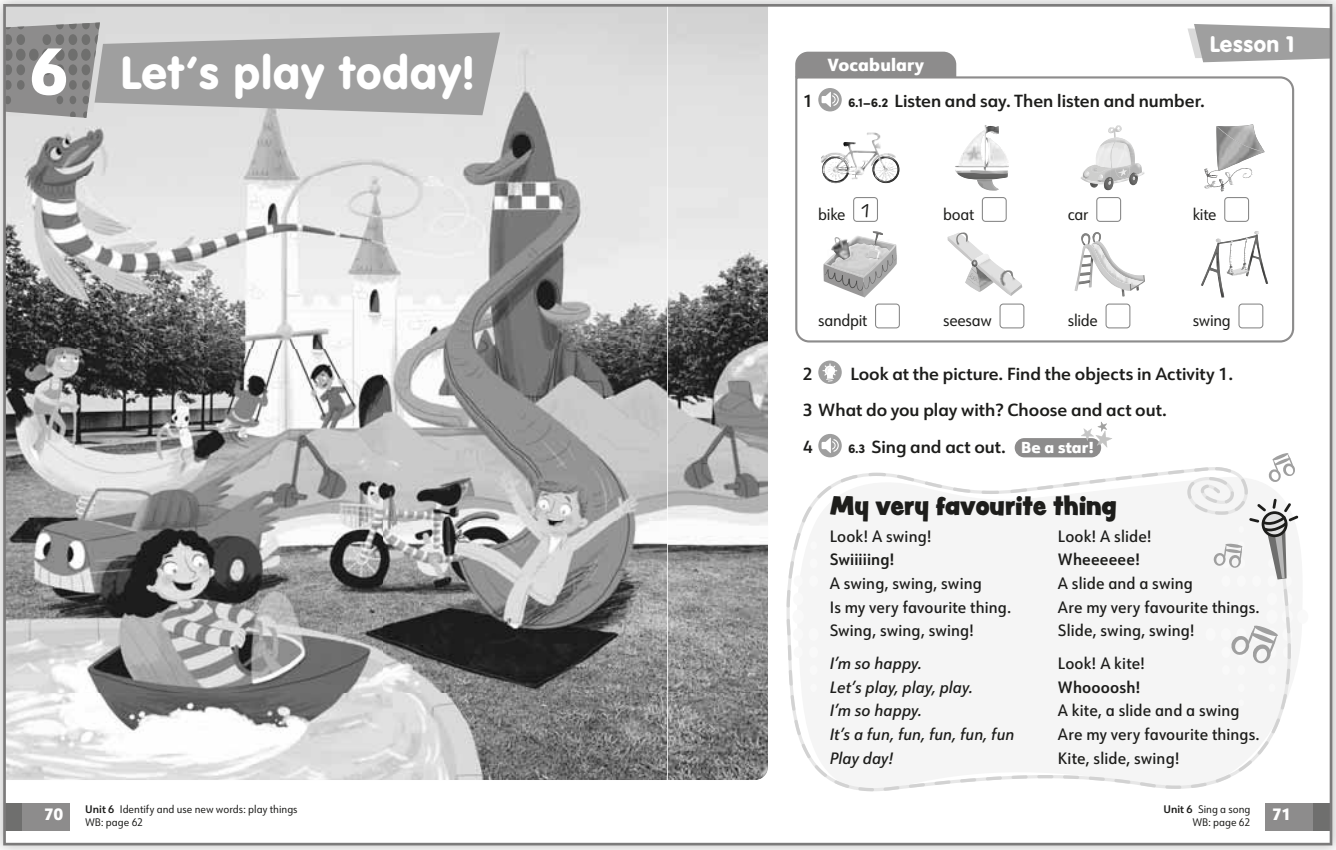
Cooler: Simon says

- Play *Simon says* (see the Games bank, pages 14–15) with *I can ...* phrases using the action verbs from Unit 5.

6 Let's play today!

Lesson 1 Vocabulary

Pupil's Book pages 70–71



Learning objectives: Identify and use new words: play things; Sing a song using the target vocabulary

Vocabulary: bike, boat, car, kite, sandpit, seesaw, slide, swing

Resources: Flashcards; Vocabulary worksheet 1

Materials: paper, pens or pencils

Warm-up: The big picture

- Draw the children's attention to the picture on page 70. Ask *Where are they?* (*in a park*) *What are the children's names? Are they happy or sad?* (*happy*) *What can you see? Can you find Bot?* (*He's on the seesaw with Anna.*)
- Ask *What's your favourite part of the picture?*

1 6.1 Listen and say.

- Play the audio. Have the children listen and point at the pictures.
- Play the audio again. The children point and repeat.
- Play the audio one more time and have the children do a mime of playing with each item.

6.2 Then listen and number.

- Play the audio, pausing after the first word to point out the example answer.
- Play the rest of the audio for the children to number the words.
- For feedback, say each number and have the class call out the word. Ask different children to repeat each word to check pronunciation.

Audioscript

1 *slide,* ***2*** *car,* ***3*** *kite,* ***4*** *swing,* ***5*** *bike,* ***6*** *sandpit,* ***7*** *boat,* ***8*** *seesaw*

Answers: bike – 5, boat – 7, car – 2, kite – 3, sandpit – 6, seesaw – 8, slide – 1 swing – 4

2 Look at the picture. Find the objects in Activity 1.

- Hold up your Pupil's Book, point to the bike in Activity 1 and then indicate the big picture. Say *Can you see a bike*? Have the children point to the bike in the big picture and repeat *bike*.
- Repeat with the other items.
- Nominate different children to choose an item and say the name. Have the rest of the class find the item in the big picture.

3 What do you play with? Choose and act out.

- Refer the children to the pictures in Activity 1. Mime playing with one of the items, e.g. driving a toy car, for the children to call out *Car!*
- In pairs, children take turns miming playing with one of the items for their friend to guess.

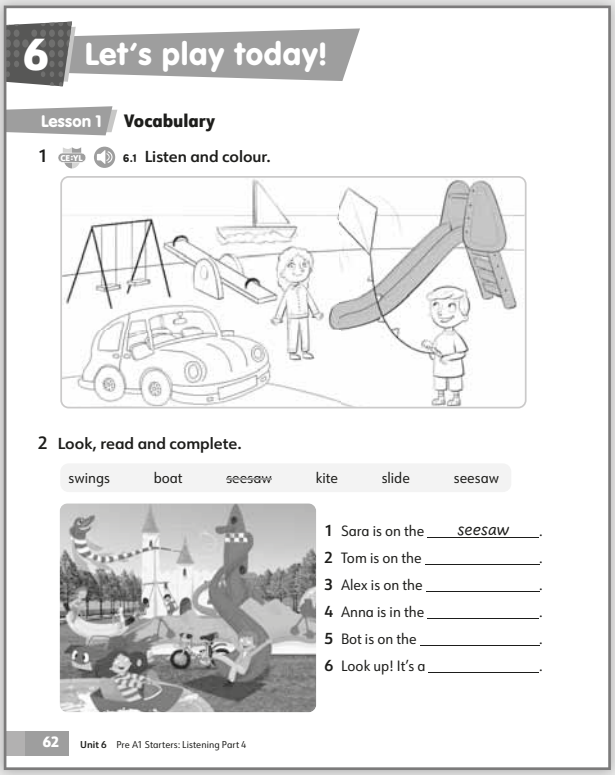
4 6.3 Sing and act out. Be a star!

- Ask the children to turn their Pupil's Book face down. Explain that they will hear a song and that they should raise their hands every time they hear one of the words from Activity 1. Play the song and join in the actions with the children. Check the meaning of *play* and *fun*.
- Now have the children look at the song in their Pupil's Book. Play it again pausing after each line for them to repeat (singing).
- Decide on a mime for each of the items:
  swing – mime holding the ropes on either side and move backward and forward
  slide – extend your arms out to the sides and stretch your legs in front of you
  kite – mime pulling on the string and looking up at the kite
  happy – a big smile
  play and fun – smile and jump
- Play the song and have the children mime first. Then play again and have the children mime and sing. (This is quite challenging, but all the children can join in with the key words, if not the whole song.)

Cooler: Ready, set, draw!

- Play *Ready, set, draw*! (see the Games bank, pages 14–15) with the new vocabulary from this lesson.

Workbook page 62


6 Let's play today!

Lesson 1 Vocabulary

1 CE:YL 6.1 Listen and colour.

2 Look, read and complete.

swings boat seesaw kite slide seesaw

1 Sara is on the seesaw.
2 Tom is on the _____.
3 Alex is on the _____.
4 Anna is in the _____.
5 Bot is on the _____.
6 Look up! It's a _____.

62 Unit 6 Pre A1 Starters: Listening Part 4

1 CE:YL 6.1 Listen and colour.

- This activity helps the children prepare for Part 4 of the Listening paper of the Cambridge English: Pre A1 Starters test. The children listen, look at the picture and colour the items.
- Go through the example first, and then have the children complete the activity individually.
- (To help prepare for this part of the test, the children need plenty of practice with names of colours and item vocabulary.)

Audioscript

1 Speaker: *Look at the picture. Listen and look. There is one example. The slide is grey. Can you see the grey slide? This is the example. Now you listen and colour.*
2 Speaker: *The seesaw is red.*
3 Speaker: *The swings are green.*
4 Speaker: *The boat is purple.*
5 Speaker: *The car is orange.*
6 Speaker: *The kite is yellow and red.*

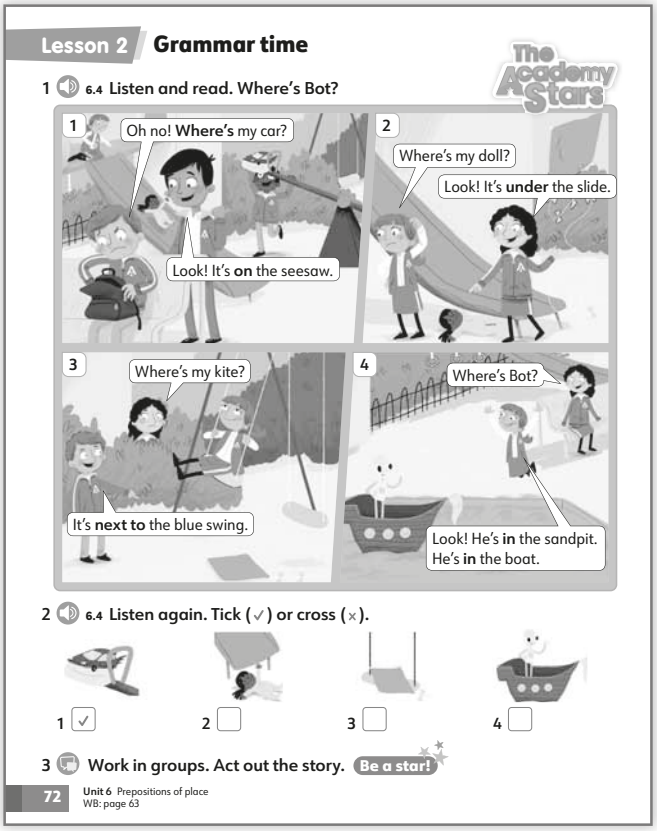
Answers: 1 slide – grey **2** seesaw – red **3** swings – green **4** boat – purple **5** car – orange **6** kite – yellow and red

2 Look, read and complete.

Answers: 1 seesaw **2** slide **3** swing **4** boat **5** seesaw **6** kite

Lesson 2 Grammar time

Pupil's Book page 72



Learning objectives: Say where things are using prepositions of place; Read and act out a story using the target grammar

Grammar: prepositions of place

Review vocabulary: play things

6.3 Warm-up: Sing the song!

- Play the song *My very favourite thing* and have the children join in and do the actions.
- Before playing the song, you may wish to remind the children of the mimes they learned in the previous lesson:
  swing – mime holding the ropes on either side and move backward and forward
  slide – extend your arms out to the sides and stretch your legs in front of you
  kite – mime pulling on the string and looking up at the kite
  happy – a big smile
  play and fun – smile and jump
- You could also teach the children any new mimes or ask them if they know any others, for variety.

1 6.4 Listen and read. Where's Bot?

- Refer the children to the pictures on page 72. Ask *Who can you see*? *What are their names*? *Where are they*? (*in a park / playground*) *What are they doing*? (*playing*)
- Play the audio. Have the children follow in their books and find the answer to the question *Where's Bot*?
- Play the audio again and have the children do the actions in the story. For each *Where's* question, have the children mime looking around.
- For each preposition have the children copy your actions: *on* – hold out a closed fist and place the other hand on top;
  under – place the other hand under your closed fist;
  next to – place your hand next to the closed fist;
  in – cup your hand as if holding a ball and point into the 'cup'.

Answer: Bot is in the boat in the sandpit.

2 6.4 Listen again. Tick (✓) or cross (✗).

- Refer the children to the pictures and do the appropriate mime for the preposition shown in each one. Elicit prepositions for the pictures – *on, under, next to*, *in*.
- Play the audio again and stop after *It's on the seesaw*. Point to the picture and say *Yes or no*? (*Yes*). Indicate the tick for *yes*.
- Play the rest of the story and have the children tick or cross.
- Call out the numbers, have the children say *yes* or *no* and then find the phrase in the story that confirms the answer.

Answers: 1 ✓ 2 ✓ 3 ✗ 4 ✓

3 Work in groups. Act out the story.

Be a star!

- Play the audio again for the class to repeat each line chorally. Check their pronunciation of the prepositions.
- Ask *How many characters are in the story*? (*four*) Divide the class into groups of four and either have them decide who will be each character, or designate the roles.
- Allow the children a few minutes to practise acting out the story. No props are really needed, although they could use a schoolbag for part 1 to look for the car.
- Ask if any groups would like to act out the story for the class.

Teaching star!

Groupwork

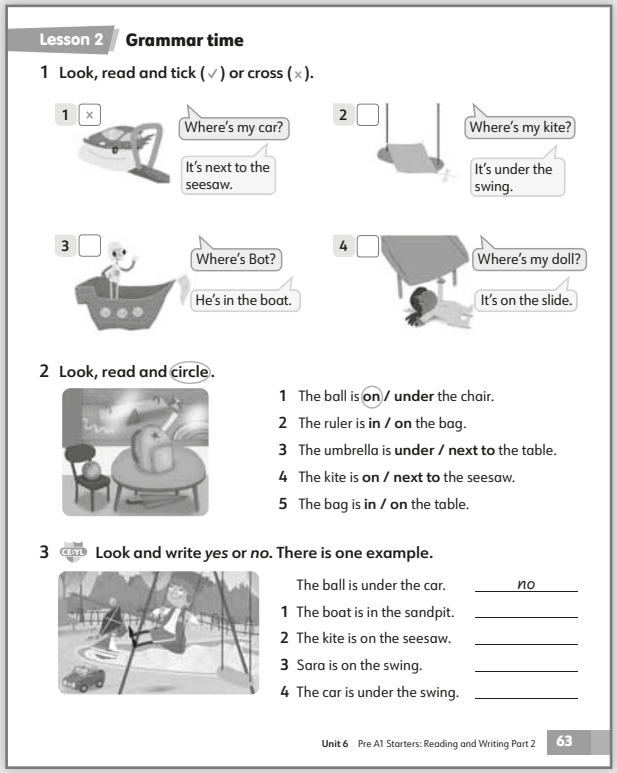
Adapt Activity 3 to allow more children to act out the story for an audience.

- When the children have had time to practise the story, partner each group with another.
- Have each group act out the story for their partner group.
- As several groups are acting out the story at the same time, it allows a lot more children to be involved and engaged with the language.

Cooler: Team sentences

- Play *Team sentences* (see the Games bank, pages 14–15). Suggested sentences: *It's on the seesaw. It's under the slide. Where's my kite? It's next to the blue swing. He's in the boat.*

Workbook page 63



Lesson 2 **Grammar time**

1 Look, read and tick (✓) or cross (×).

1 × Where's my car? It's next to the seesaw.

2 ☐ Where's my kite? It's under the swing.

3 ☐ Where's Bot? He's in the boat.

4 ☐ Where's my doll? It's on the slide.

2 Look, read and circle.

1 The ball is **on / under** the chair.
2 The ruler is **in / on** the bag.
3 The umbrella is **under / next to** the table.
4 The kite is **on / next to** the seesaw.
5 The bag is **in / on** the table.

3 CE:YL Look and write *yes* or *no*. There is one example.

The ball is under the car. *no*
1 The boat is in the sandpit. _____
2 The kite is on the seesaw. _____
3 Sara is on the swing. _____
4 The car is under the swing. _____

Unit 6 Pre A1 Starters: Reading and Writing Part 2 63

1 Look, read and tick (✓) or cross (✗).

Answers: 1 ✗ **2** ✗ **3** ✓ **4** ✗

2 Look, read and circle.

Answers: 1 on **2** in **3** under **4** next to **5** on

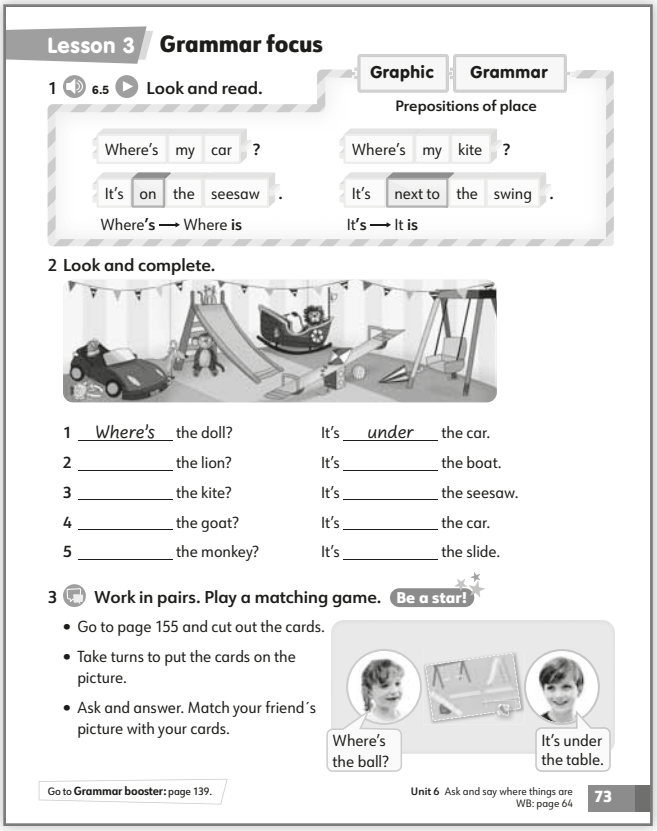
3 CE:YL Look and write *yes* or *no*. There is one example.

- This activity helps the children prepare for Part 2 of the Reading and Writing paper of the Cambridge English: Pre A1 Starters test. The children read the sentences, look at the picture, and write *yes* if the sentence is true or *no* if the sentence is false.
- If done in class, ask the children what they can see in the picture.
- Go through the example first, and then have the children complete the activity individually.
- Ask individual children to read out the sentences and the class calls out *yes* or *no*.
- (To help prepare for this part of the test, the children need plenty of practice matching sentences to pictures.)

Answers: 1 yes **2** no **3** yes **4** no

Lesson 3 Grammar focus

Pupil's Book page 73


Lesson 3 Grammar focus

1 6.5 Look and read.

Graphic | Grammar

Prepositions of place

Where's my car ?

It's on the seesaw .

Where's → Where is

Where's my kite ?

It's next to the swing .

It's → It is

2 Look and complete.

1 Where's the doll? It's under the car.
2 _____ the lion? It's _____ the boat.
3 _____ the kite? It's _____ the seesaw.
4 _____ the goat? It's _____ the car.
5 _____ the monkey? It's _____ the slide.

3 Work in pairs. Play a matching game. Be a star!

- Go to page 155 and cut out the cards.
- Take turns to put the cards on the picture.
- Ask and answer. Match your friend's picture with your cards.

Where's the ball?

It's under the table.

Go to Grammar booster: page 139.

Unit 6 Ask and say where things are WB: page 64

73

Learning objectives: Ask and say where things are

Grammar: Prepositions of place

Review vocabulary: play things

Resources: Graphic Grammar video; Grammar worksheet 1

Materials: school objects, scissors

Warm-up: Put the letters back

- Play *Put the letters back* (see the Games bank, pages 14–15). Write the following incomplete sentences on the board: *Wh_ r_ 's my d_ ll? _ t's _ nd_ r th_ sl_ d_. Wh_ r_ 's B_ t? H_ 's _ n th_ s_ ndp_ t.* (Solution: *Where's my doll? It's under the slide. Where's Bot? He's in the sandpit.*)

1 6.5 Look and read.

- Play the audio and have the children follow in their books. Encourage them to do the mimes for *Where's* and the prepositions from the last lesson.
- Play the audio again for the children to repeat chorally.
- Highlight the contractions *Where's* and *It's* by counting out the full version of each sentence on your fingers, and then pushing the *Where is* and *It is* fingers together to show the contraction.
- Divide the class in two and have them ask and answer the questions chorally, changing roles.

- If using the video, tell the children they will see a video of children playing with their toys in the playground. Play the video and let the children watch and enjoy.
- Play the video again and have the children repeat each question and answer. Encourage them to do actions for the question (mime looking around) and the answer (pointing).

2 Look and complete.

- Elicit the prepositions again using the mimes from the last lesson.
- Have the children read out the example question and answer (also using mime).
- Then elicit the question word for the next question and have the children complete it in their books.
- Elicit the answer to number 2 and then have the children complete the activity individually. Fast finishers can compare their answers in pairs.
- For feedback, invite pairs of children to read out the questions and answers. Ask for whole-class agreement each time and write the prepositions for the answers on the board.

Answers: 1 Where's, under **2** Where's, in **3** Where's, on **4** Where's, next to **5** Where's, under

3 Work in pairs. Play a matching game.

Be a star!

- Organise the children in pairs and have them open their books to page 155.
- Make sure the children all have scissors with which to cut the cards. For this activity, the children will use two sets of cards. Each child uses their own set.
- Give the children time to cut out the cards. Then have two confident children read out the example dialogue and have all the class repeat it.
- Have the children mix up their cards and take turns to choose a card and put it on their picture of a playground. After all cards have been placed on their pictures, the children take turns to ask *Where's the ...?* and answer *It's under / next to / on ...* The children see if the positions of the items on their pictures match. Circulate, monitor and help as needed.

Grammar booster

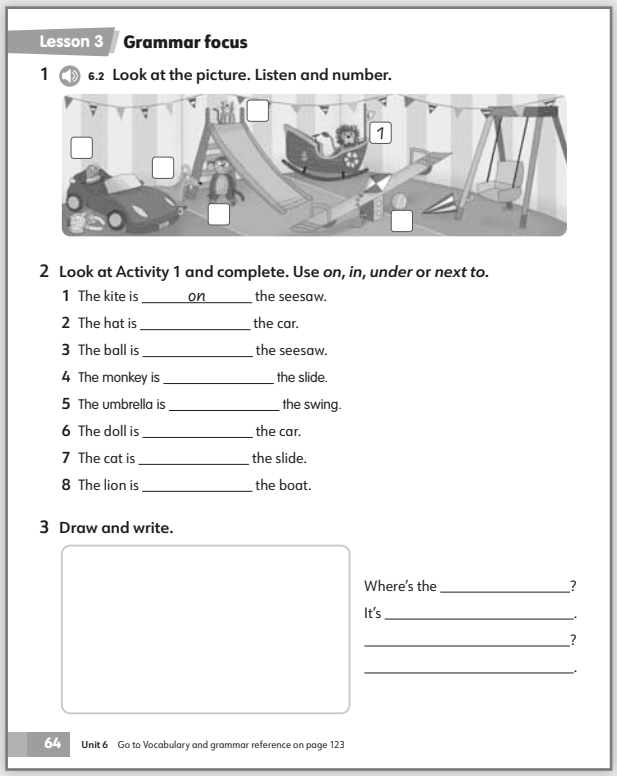
For additional practice, ask the children to turn to page 139 of their Pupil's Book to complete Activity 1. If the children need more grammar practice before the communicative Activity 3, have them complete this activity first. Alternatively, you may wish to have the children complete this activity at home.

Answers: 1 next to **2** on **3** under **4** on **5** on **6** in

Cooler: A guessing game

- Show the children a selection of objects from your bag – a pen, a pencil, a rubber, a ruler, etc.
- Tell them that you're going to place the objects in and around your desk. Have the children turn away or cover their eyes. Place the objects in, on, under or next to other items on your desk – a book, a bag, a box, etc. Try to put most of them out of sight.
- Have the children turn back and ask them *Where's the …?* Have the children raise their hands to make a guess. When a child guesses correctly, reveal the object.

Workbook page 64



Lesson 3 **Grammar focus**

1 6.2 Look at the picture. Listen and number.

2 Look at Activity 1 and complete. Use *on*, *in*, *under* or *next to*.

1 The kite is _on_ the seesaw.
2 The hat is _____ the car.
3 The ball is _____ the seesaw.
4 The monkey is _____ the slide.
5 The umbrella is _____ the swing.
6 The doll is _____ the car.
7 The cat is _____ the slide.
8 The lion is _____ the boat.

3 Draw and write.

Where's the _____?
It's _____.
_____?
_____.

64 Unit 6 Go to Vocabulary and grammar reference on page 123

Grammar reference:

Remind the children that they can refer to the grammar reference on page 123 to help them when completing these activities.

1 6.2 Look at the picture. Listen and number.

Audioscript

1 *It's in the boat. What is it?*
2 *It's under the slide. What is it?*
3 *It's on the slide. What is it?*
4 *It's next to the car. What is it?*
5 *It's in the car. What is it?*
6 *It's under the seesaw. What is it?*

Answers: 1 lion **2** monkey **3** cat **4** goat **5** hat **6** ball

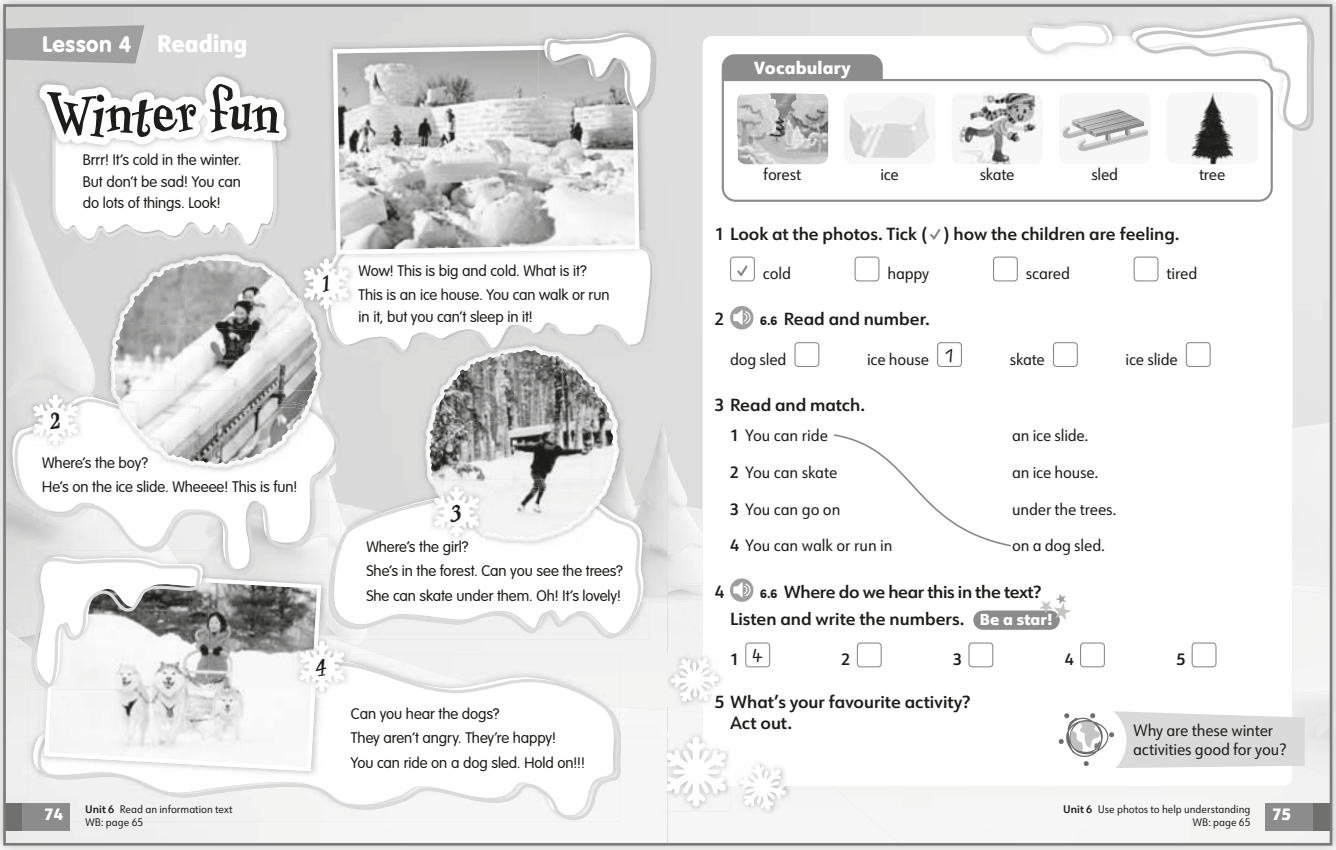
2 Look at Activity 1 and complete. Use *on, in, under* or *next to*.

Answers: 1 on **2** in **3** under **4** under **5** next to **6** next to **7** on **8** in

3 Draw and write.

Answers: Children's own answers.

Pupil's Book pages 74–75



Learning objectives: Read an information text; Use photos to help understanding

Vocabulary: forest, ice, skate, sled, tree

Review vocabulary: angry, big, fun, happy, hear, ride, run, walk

Resources: Flashcards; Vocabulary worksheet 2

Warm-up: Put the letters back

- Play *Put the letters back* (see the Games Bank, pages 14–15). Write the following incomplete sentences on the board: *Wh_ r_ 's th_ k_ t_ ? _ t's _ n th_ s_ _ s_ w. Wh_ r_'s th_ m_ nk_ y? _ t's _ nd_ r th_ sl_ d_. Wh_ r_ 's th_ l_ _n? _ t's _ n th_ b_ _ t.* (Solution: *Where's the kite? It's on the seesaw. Where's the monkey? It's under the slide. Where's the lion? It's in the boat.*)

Vocabulary

- Refer the children to the vocabulary panel on page 75 and read out the words for the class to repeat.
- Ask *Is winter fun*? Mime skating and have the children copy you. Say *Can you find a dog sled in your book*? and have them hold up their books so they can all see different images.

1 Look at the photos. Tick (✓) how the children are feeling.

- Refer the children to all the photos on page 74. Ask *How do you think the children in these photos are feeling*? *Would you want to do any of these things*?
- Ask a few different children to share their answers with the class.

Answers: cold, children's own answers

2 6.6 Read and number.

- Refer the children's attention to the text and the example answer. Ask the children to find *ice house* in text 1 (This is an ice house.)
- Have the children read the words in the activity and look back at the text to find the words. They then write the number of the text in which they found the words.
- Write the words on the board. Invite children to come to the board and write the number of the text associated with the words. Ask for whole-class agreement each time.

Answers: 1 ice house **2** ice slide **3** skate **4** dog sled

3 Read and match.

- Have the children look quickly through the text to find the activities. Write the sentence beginnings on the board.

- Read out the sentence beginnings and have the children find the answers in the text.
- Have the children confirm their ideas with a friend.
- As a class, work through the activity. Write the sentence endings on the board as children complete the match and you elicit class agreement.

Answers: 1 You can ride on a dog sled. **2** You can skate under the trees. **3** You can go on an ice slide. **4** You can walk or run in an ice house.

Teaching star!

Reading

The ability to scan a text and find key words is very important for reading skills. If children can do this, they can find information more quickly.

- Write the following words on the board and ask the children to look at the text and find how many times they can find each word.
- Words to look for: *cold* (2); *ice* (2); *look* (3).

4 6.6 Where do we hear this in the text? Listen and write the numbers.

Be a star!

- Play the audio, pausing after the first word to point out the example answer.
- Play the rest of the audio for the children to number the words.
- For feedback, say each number and have the class call out the word. Ask different children to repeat each word to check pronunciation.

Answers: 1 4 **2** 1 **3** 2 **4** 1 **5** 3

5 What's your favourite activity? Act out.

- Ask volunteers to come to the front of the class and act out their favourite activity. Elicit class responses to guess the activity. The first child to respond correctly can take the next turn to act out.

Cooler: Simon says

- Play *Simon says* (see the Games bank, pages 14–15) with the children miming the prepositions and actions from this lesson: e.g. *Simon says … You're on the ice slide! You're in an ice house! You're in a forest. You can skate! You can ride on a dog sled. You're angry! You're happy! You're sad.*

ESDC

3 GOOD HEALTH AND WELL-BEING

Why are these winter activities good for you?

Introduce the children to Sustainable Development Goal 3: *Good health and well-being.*

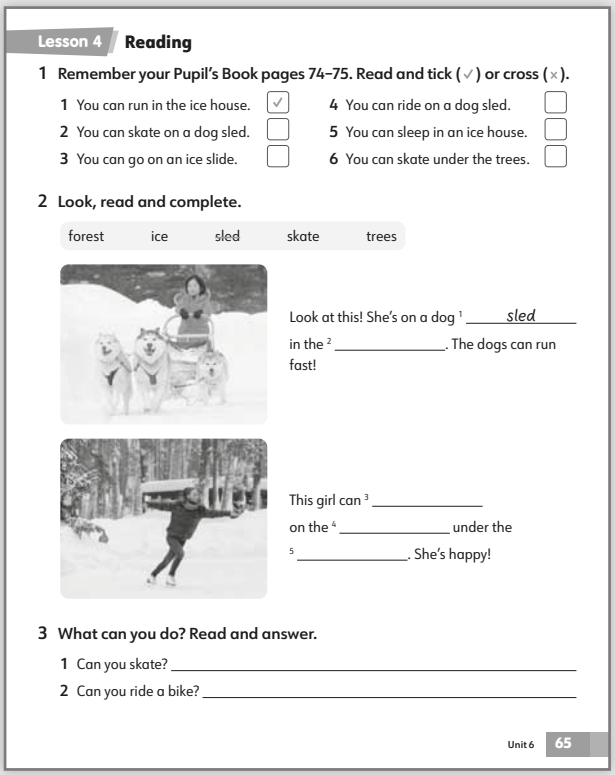
ESDC *continued*

Ask: *Why are these winter activities good for you?*

- Elicit ideas in L1, providing useful language in L2 during the discussion. This question helps children engage with ideas about healthy living through exercise.
- Draw attention to the winter activities in the text. Ask whether children have done any of these activities, and whether they enjoy them. Ask what other free-time activities they can do in winter. Write a list on the board and ask the class to identify which activities are good for you (physically or mentally).
- Encourage children to discuss why it's important and fun to exercise even in cold weather.

Possible answers: we get fresh air, we get to see and play with friends, we stay healthy, we learn how to adapt to different weather, we get to do things that we can't in warmer weather, such as skiing, making snowmen, and ice skating.

Workbook page 65



Lesson 4 Reading

1 Remember your Pupil's Book pages 74–75. Read and tick (✓) or cross (×).

1 You can run in the ice house. ✓
2 You can skate on a dog sled.
3 You can go on an ice slide.
4 You can ride on a dog sled.
5 You can sleep in an ice house.
6 You can skate under the trees.

2 Look, read and complete.

forest ice sled skate trees

Look at this! She's on a dog [1] sled in the [2] _____. The dogs can run fast!

This girl can [3] _____ on the [4] _____ under the [5] _____. She's happy!

3 What can you do? Read and answer.

1 Can you skate? _____
2 Can you ride a bike? _____

Unit 6 65

1 Remember your Pupil's Book pages 74–75. Read and tick (✓) or cross (✗).

Answers: 1 ✓ **2** ✗ **3** ✓ **4** ✓ **5** ✗ **6** ✓

2 Look, read and complete.

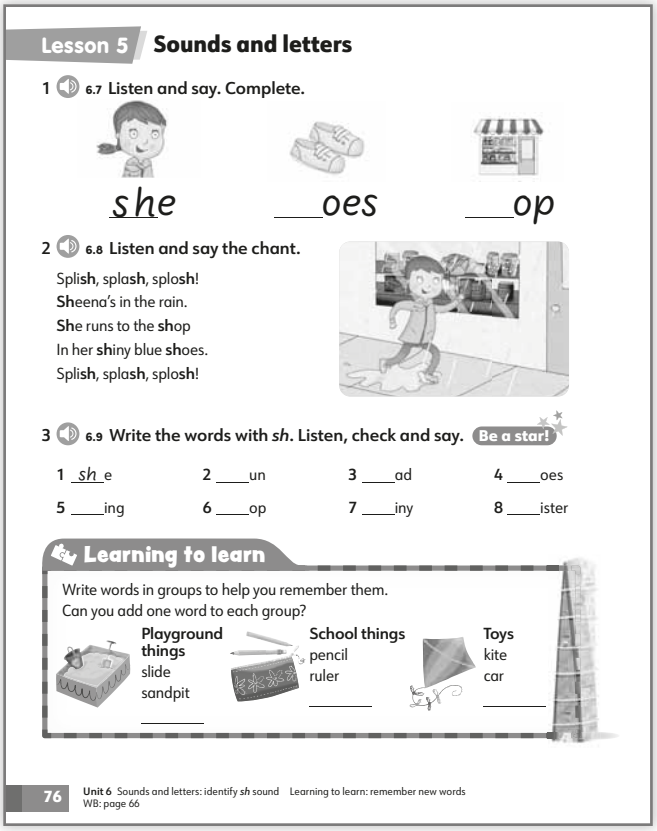
Answers: 1 sled **2** forest **3** skate **4** ice **5** trees

3 What can you do? Read and answer.

Answers: Children's own answers.

Lesson 5 Sounds and letters

Pupil's Book page 76


Lesson 5 Sounds and letters

1 6.7 Listen and say. Complete.

she ___oes ___op

2 6.8 Listen and say the chant.

Splish, splash, splosh!
Sheena's in the rain.
She runs to the shop
In her shiny blue shoes.
Splish, splash, splosh!

3 6.9 Write the words with *sh*. Listen, check and say. Be a star!

1 _sh_e 2 ___un 3 ___ad 4 ___oes
5 ___ing 6 ___op 7 ___iny 8 ___ister

Learning to learn

Write words in groups to help you remember them.
Can you add one word to each group?

Playground things: slide, sandpit, _____
School things: pencil, ruler, _____
Toys: kite, car, _____

76 Unit 6 Sounds and letters: identify *sh* sound Learning to learn: remember new words
WB: page 66

Learning objectives: Sounds and letters: identify *sh* sound; Learning to learn: remember new words

Sounds and letters words: she, shoes, shop

Resources: Sounds and letters worksheet

Warm-up: Team spelling

- Play *Team spelling* (see the Games bank, pages 14–15) with the words: *winter, house, slide, skate, happy, scared*.

1 6.7 Listen and say. Complete.

- Refer the children to the pictures. Ask if they know the words for these things.
- Play the audio for the children to repeat the words chorally. Do this twice.
- Point to the *sh* in the word she in your book. Ask *What are these letters?* (*sh*) *What's the sound?* (/ʃ/)
- Write a big, clear *sh* on the board as a model for the children. Have them write the *sh* in the three words.

Audioscript

/ʃ//ʃ//ʃ/ she
/ʃ/ /ʃ/ /ʃ/ shoes
/ʃ/ /ʃ/ /ʃ/ shop

Answers: she, shoes, shop

2 6.8 Listen and say the chant.

- Play the chant and have the children follow in their books. Have them raise their hands every time they see / hear a word with *sh*.
- Play the chant again, pausing after each line for the children to repeat. Pay particular attention to the *sh* sound.
- Play the chant once more and have the children join in as much as they can.
- Divide the class into two groups. Have each half of the class say alternate lines. They all say *Splish, splash, splosh*! together.

Teaching star!

Mixed ability

Saying the whole chant is challenging for less confident children. They can, however, join in and practise the key sound.

- Point out that when the class is saying the chant, children have the option of trying to say *sh* in the right places. Everyone who wants to can say the whole chant.
- Play the audio and give an example of just saying the *sh* sounds – the children will find it quite funny.

Doing this means that all the children are involved, and the key sound is being focused on.

3 6.9 Write the words with *sh*. Listen, check and say. Be a star!

- Point out the example, and write both possibilities on the board: *she* and *se*. Elicit that *she* is the correct word.
- Have the children say each of the words with a *sh* sound at the beginning. Ask them if it is a real word, *Yes* or *no*?
- Have them complete the words that start with *sh*.
- Ask the children what numbers they chose to write, and play the audio to confirm.
- Play the audio again for the children to repeat the words chorally and then individually to check pronunciation.

Audioscript

she, she shoes, shoes shop, shop shiny, shiny

Answers: she, shoes, shop, shiny

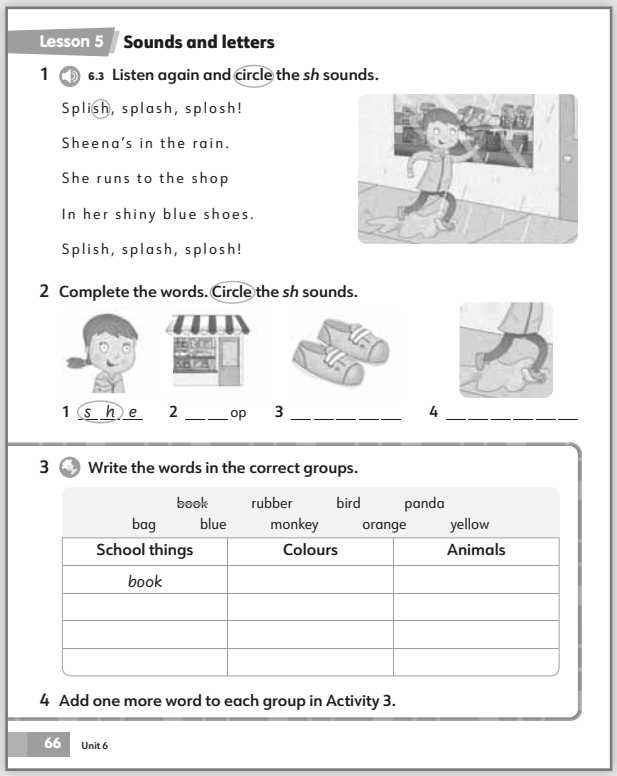
Learning to learn

- Explain to the children that when they learn new words, it can be helpful to learn them in groups of the same type of word.
- Refer the children to the words and images in the *Learning to learn box*. Ask what other items can go in the groups and have them all add one word to each group.
- If you have time, elicit their words and write them on the board. Ask the children to check their spelling.
- Ask what other groups of words they can think of, (*animals, feelings, actions*, etc.).

Cooler: Physical spelling

- Play *Physical spelling* (see the Games bank, pages 14–15) with some key words from this lesson: *shoes, shop, pencil, green, shiny, splosh*.

Workbook page 66



Lesson 5 **Sounds and letters**

1 6.3 Listen again and circle the *sh* sounds.

Spli(sh), splash, splosh!
Sheena's in the rain.
She runs to the shop
In her shiny blue shoes.
Splish, splash, splosh!

2 Complete the words. Circle the *sh* sounds.

1 (s h) e 2 __ __ op 3 __ __ __ __ __ 4 __ __ __ __ __ __

3 Write the words in the correct groups.

book rubber bird panda bag blue monkey orange yellow

School things	Colours	Animals
book		

4 Add one more word to each group in Activity 3.

66 Unit 6

1 6.3 Listen again and circle the *sh* sounds.

Answers:
Spli(sh), spla(sh), splo(sh)!
(Sh)eena's in the rain.
(Sh)e runs to the (sh)op
In her (sh)iny blue (sh)oes.
Spli(sh), spla(sh), splo(sh)!

2 Complete the words. Circle the *sh* sounds.

Answers: 1 (sh)e **2** (sh)op **3** (sh)oes **4** spla(sh)

3 Write the words in the correct groups.

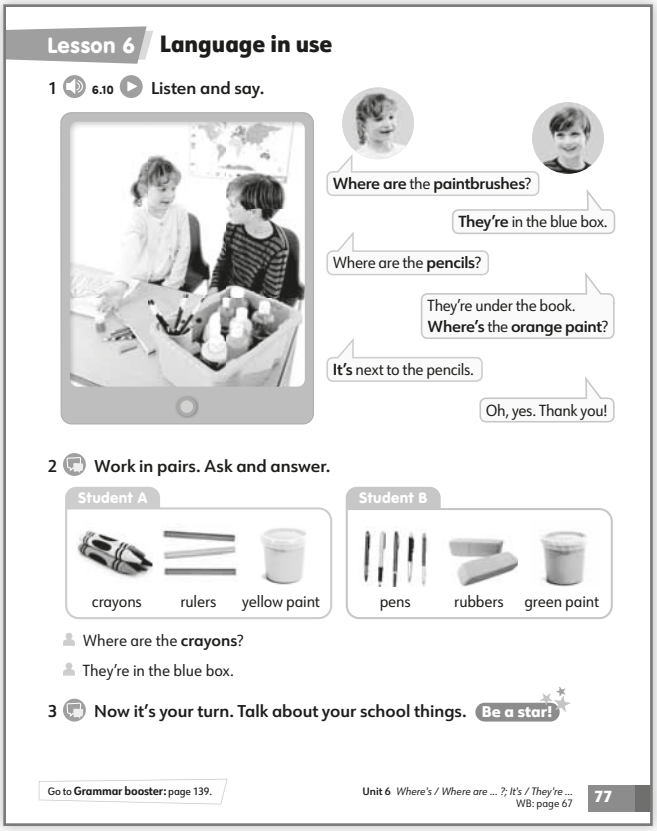
Answers: School things: book, rubber, bag; Colours: blue, orange, yellow; Animals: bird, panda, monkey

4 Add one more word to each group in Activity 3.

Answers: Children's own answers.

Lesson 6 Language in use

Pupil's Book page 77



Learning objectives: *Where's / Where are ...?; It's / They're ...*

Review vocabulary: classroom objects

Resources: Language in use video; Grammar worksheet 2

6.8 Warm-up: Say the chant again

- Using mime if necessary to prompt them, ask the children to recall the chant from Lesson 5. Then play the audio to see how well they remembered. Write it on the board.
- Have the whole class say the chant together.

1 6.10 Listen and say.

- Play the audio and have the children follow in their books.
- Play the audio again and have the children repeat each question and answer.
- Ask the children the difference between questions with *Where are ...?* and *Where's ...*? (*Where are* for plural / asking about more than one thing, Where's for singular / asking about one thing). Ask how the answers are different (*They're* for plural / more than one thing, *It's* for singular / one thing).
- Play the audio one more time, and have the children repeat and imitate the intonation as closely as possible.

- If using the video, play it and let the children watch and enjoy it.
- Play the video again and stop after each question to elicit the answer from the class. Play the video to confirm and have them all repeat it.
- Now play the video one more time and have the children repeat the questions and answers. Encourage them to imitate the intonation and body language as closely as possible.

Teaching star!

Extension

Before moving onto independent production, it will help some children to think carefully about word order.

- On one side of the board, in random order, write the following words together with their punctuation: *Where are the pencils? They're under the blue box. Where's the green paint? It's in the blue box*. On the other side of the board, draw a line for each word in the form of two questions and answers.
- Give the children time to think about the correct order. Then invite children to come to the board and put a word in the correct place to make the questions and answers. Ask for whole-class agreement each time.
- The children will now be more ready for the following pairwork.

2 Work in pairs. Ask and answer.

- Ask the children to name the items in the pictures. Each time, ask *One or more than one*?
- Read out the example dialogue with a confident child. Point out that it is the same dialogue as in Activity 1, but the blue words are changed for the items in the boxes.
- Elicit the questions for all the items and drill them. Elicit the answers for a singular and a plural item.
- Divide the class into pairs to make new dialogues using the words in the boxes. Monitor and pay attention to the children's use of singular and plural forms.
- Finish with some pairs of children making questions and answers across the class.

3 Now it's your turn. Talk about your school things. Be a star!

- Have the children look in their bags and around the room and find things they can ask questions about. (If your classroom does not have much equipment in it, you can place things around the class before you begin!)
- Elicit a few questions first and give answers. See if the children agree with your answers. (Give one wrong answer to make sure the children are following correctly!)
- Divide the class into pairs to ask and answer about their school things.
- As an additional challenge, after several turns, the child answering can cover their eyes and answer from memory.

Grammar booster

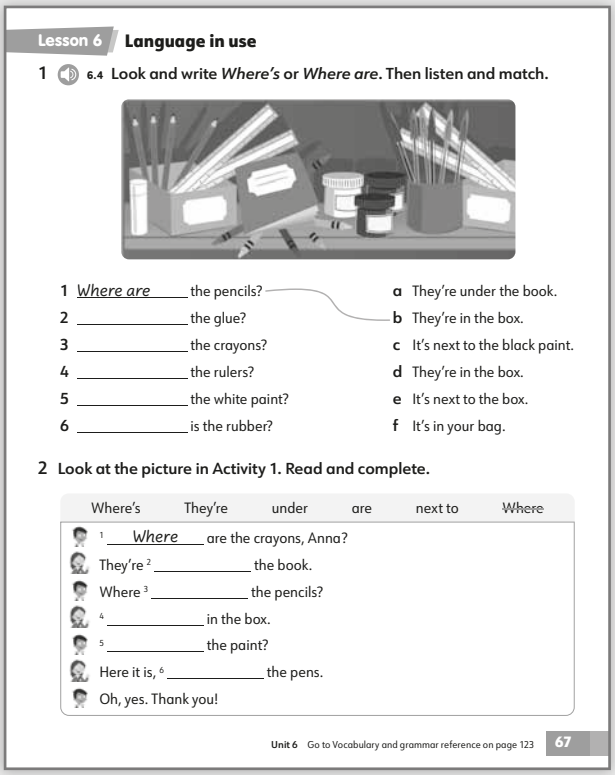
For additional practice, ask the children to turn to page 139 of their Pupil's Book to complete Activity 2. You may also wish to have the children complete this activity at home.

Answers: 1 on the seesaw **2** Where are, under the slide **3** Where is, on the slide **4** boats, They're **5** lion, It's on **6** bike, It's

Cooler: Visualisation

- Ask the children to close their eyes and imagine what you tell them. Say *Imagine you're in your bedroom. Can you see your books? Where are the books? What colour are they? Can you see your pens and pencils? Where are they? Can you see a box? What colour is it? Where is it? Can you see any toy animals or pictures of animals? What animals can you see? Where are they? What's your favourite thing in this room? Where is it?*
- Have the children open their eyes. Recall the questions and have the children tell a friend about what they saw in their bedroom, e.g. *My books are on the table. A blue box is under the bed.*

Workbook page 67



Lesson 6 **Language in use**

1 6.4 Look and write *Where's* or *Where are*. Then listen and match.

1 *Where are* the pencils? — b They're in the box.
2 _____ the glue? — a They're under the book.
3 _____ the crayons? — c It's next to the black paint.
4 _____ the rulers? — d They're in the box.
5 _____ the white paint? — e It's next to the box.
6 _____ is the rubber? — f It's in your bag.

2 Look at the picture in Activity 1. Read and complete.

Where's | They're | under | are | next to | ~~Where~~

1 *Where* are the crayons, Anna?
They're 2 _____ the book.
Where 3 _____ the pencils?
4 _____ in the box.
5 _____ the paint?
Here it is, 6 _____ the pens.
Oh, yes. Thank you!

Unit 6 Go to Vocabulary and grammar reference on page 123 67

Grammar reference:

Remind the children that they can refer to the grammar reference on page 123 to help them when completing these activities.

1 6.4 Look and write *Where's or Where are*. Then listen and match.

Audioscript

1 *Where are the pencils?*
They're in the box.
2 *Where's the glue?*
It's next to the box.
3 *Where are the crayons?*
They're under the book.
4 *Where are the rulers?*
They're in the box.
5 *Where's the white paint?*
It's next to the black paint.
6 *Where is the rubber?*
It's in your bag.

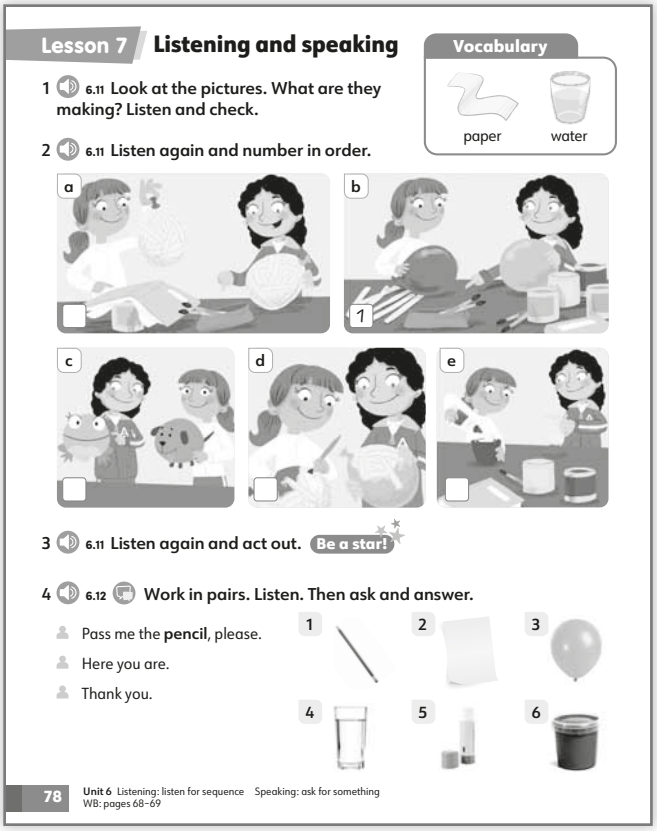
Answers: 1 Where are – b **2** Where's – e **3** Where are – a **4** Where are – d **5** Where's – c **6** Where – f

2 Look at the picture in Activity 1. Read and complete.

Answers: 1 Where **2** under **3** are **4** They're **5** Where's **6** next to

Lesson 7 Listening and speaking

Pupil's Book page 78



Learning objectives: Listening: listen for sequence; Speaking: ask for something

Vocabulary: paper, water

Review vocabulary: classroom objects

Resources: Vocabulary worksheet 2

Materials: paper, pens or pencils

Warm-up: Disappearing words

- Play *Disappearing words* (see the Games bank, pages 14–15) using: *box, paintbrush, green paint, under, in, on, next to, Where's, Where are, yellow paint, table*.

1 6.11 Look at the pictures. What are they making? Listen and check.

- Refer the children to the vocabulary panel and read out the words for the class to repeat.
- Refer them to the pictures and elicit suggestions about what Anna and Sara are doing. Ask if they have made anything in this way before.
- Play the audio and have the children listen and confirm their answers.

Audioscript

1 Sara: *Where's the paper?*
Anna: *It's next to the pencil case.*
2 Sara: *The glue is in the pot, now. Pass me the water, please.*
Anna: *Here you are.*
Sara: *Thank you.*
3 Anna: *Now let's put the paper on the balloons.*
4 Anna: *Where's the green paint?*
Sara: *It's under the book. Where are the paintbrushes?*
Anna: *They're in my pencil case.*
5 Anna: *This is my frog! It's big and green.*
Sara: *... and this is my dog! It's brown.*

Answers: a frog and a dog.

2 6.11 Listen again and number in order.

- Play part 1 of the audio again. Stop and elicit or point out that Anna is pointing at the strips of paper next to the pencil case, so this refers to frame b.
- Play the rest of the dialogue, pausing after each part for the children to find and number the right picture. Ask if they need to hear it one more time.
- For feedback, call out the letters for the pictures and have the children tell you the numbers.

Answers: a 4 **b** 1 **c** 5 **d** 3 **e** 2

3 6.11 Listen again and act out.

Be a star!

- Play the audio one more time and have the children do all the actions.

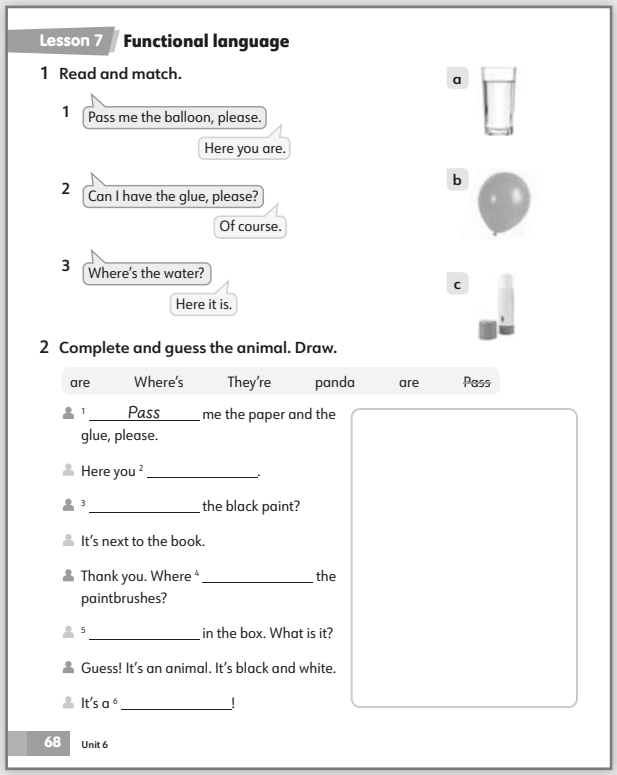
4 6.12 Work in pairs. Listen. Then ask and answer.

- Play the audio and have the children repeat each line. Pay attention to *Here you are* as children often find this combination of sounds difficult.
- Elicit the names of the items in the pictures and invite two confident children to make an example dialogue using and passing a piece of paper.
- Divide the class into pairs to make new minidialogues, passing the other items.

Cooler: Ready, set, draw!

- Play *Ready, set, draw*! (see the Games bank, pages 14–15) with some key vocabulary from this unit, e.g. *paper, water, forest, ice, tree, sled*.

Workbook page 68



Lesson 7 **Functional language**

1 **Read and match.**

1 Pass me the balloon, please. / Here you are.

2 Can I have the glue, please? / Of course.

3 Where's the water? / Here it is.

a

b

c

2 **Complete and guess the animal. Draw.**

are Where's They're panda are ~~Pass~~

1 ___Pass___ me the paper and the glue, please.

Here you 2 _____.

3 _____ the black paint?

It's next to the book.

Thank you. Where 4 _____ the paintbrushes?

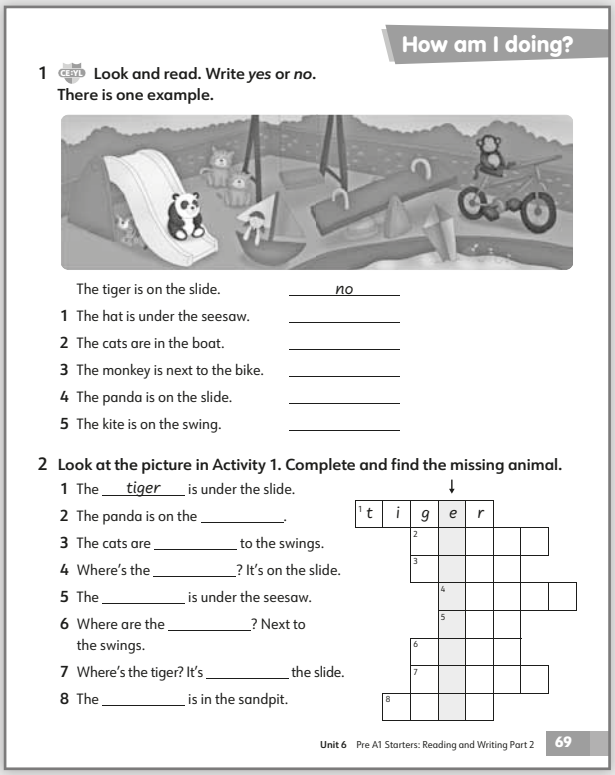
5 _____ in the box. What is it?

Guess! It's an animal. It's black and white.

It's a 6 _____!

68 Unit 6

Workbook page 69



How am I doing?

1 CE:YL **Look and read. Write *yes* or *no*. There is one example.**

The tiger is on the slide. ___no___

1 The hat is under the seesaw. _____

2 The cats are in the boat. _____

3 The monkey is next to the bike. _____

4 The panda is on the slide. _____

5 The kite is on the swing. _____

2 **Look at the picture in Activity 1. Complete and find the missing animal.**

1 The ___tiger___ is under the slide.

2 The panda is on the _____.

3 The cats are _____ to the swings.

4 Where's the _____? It's on the slide.

5 The _____ is under the seesaw.

6 Where are the _____? Next to the swings.

7 Where's the tiger? It's _____ the slide.

8 The _____ is in the sandpit.

Unit 6 Pre A1 Starters: Reading and Writing Part 2 69

1 Read and match.

Answers: 1 b **2** c **3** a

2 Complete and guess the animals. Draw.

Answers: 1 Pass **2** are **3** Where's **4** are **5** They're **6** panda

1 CE:YL Look and read. Write *yes* or *no*. There is one example.

- This activity helps the children prepare for Part 2 of the Reading and Writing paper of the Cambridge English: Pre A1 Starters test. The children read the sentences, look at the picture, and write *yes* if the sentence is true or *no* if the sentence is false.
- If done in class, ask the children what they can see in the picture.
- Go through the example first, and then have the children complete the activity individually.
- Ask individual children to read out the sentences and the class calls out *yes* or *no*.
- (To help prepare for this part of the test, the children need plenty of practice matching sentences to pictures.)

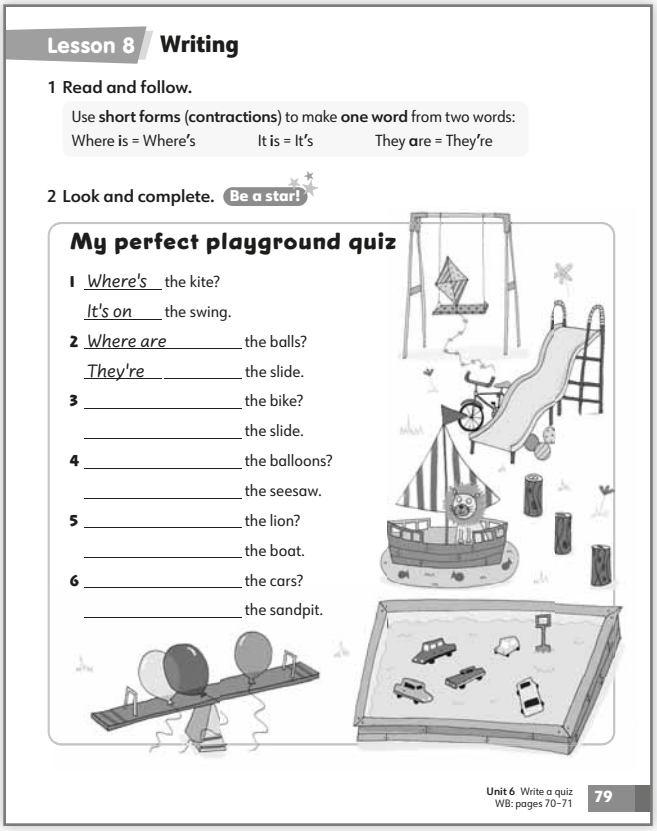
Answers: 1 yes **2** no **3** no **4** yes **5** no

2 Look at the picture in Activity 1. Complete and find the missing animal.

Answers: 1 tiger **2** slide **3** next **4** panda **5** hat **6** cats **7** under **8** kite
Missing animal: elephant

Lesson 8 Writing

Pupil's Book page 79


Lesson 8 Writing

1 Read and follow.

Use **short forms** (**contractions**) to make **one word** from two words:
Where **is** = Where's It **is** = It's They **are** = They're

2 Look and complete. Be a star!

My perfect playground quiz

1 *Where's* the kite?
It's on the swing.
2 *Where are* the balls?
They're the slide.
3 _____ the bike?
_____ the slide.
4 _____ the balloons?
_____ the seesaw.
5 _____ the lion?
_____ the boat.
6 _____ the cars?
_____ the sandpit.

Unit 6 Write a quiz
WB: pages 70–71
79

Learning objectives: Use short forms (contractions); Write a quiz

Resources: Unit 6 test

Materials: paper and pencils

6.3 Warm-up: Sing the song!

- Play the song *My very favourite thing* and have the children sing and act it out.

1 Read and follow

- Hold up your left hand (palm facing you) and point to the first two fingers on the right. Say *Where is* and then push the fingers together and say *Where's*. Do this again and have the children repeat the uncontracted and contracted form.
- Repeat for *It is* and *They are*.
- Read out the information in the box, using your fingers again, and have the children follow.

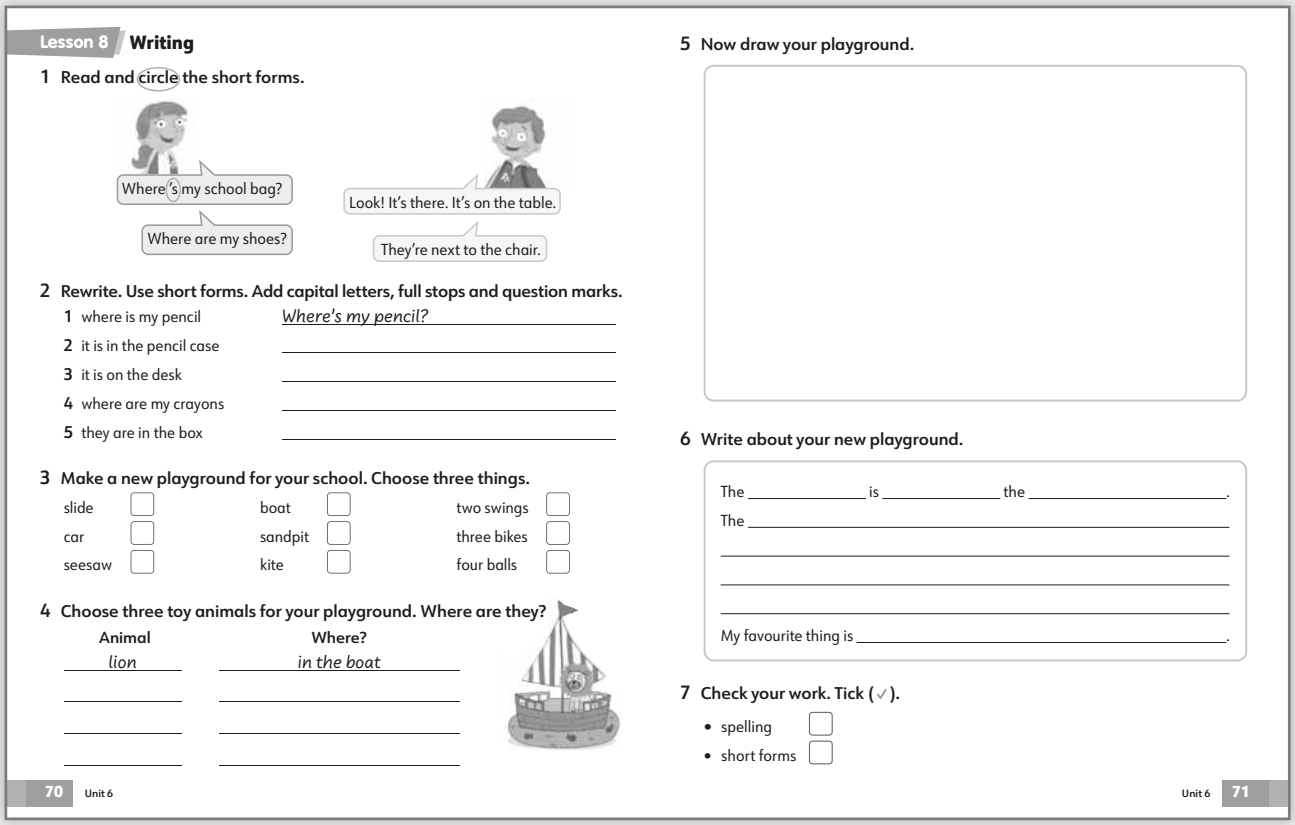
2 Look and complete. Be a star!

- Ask the children if they remember the difference between *Where's* and *Where are*, *It's* and *They're* (remind them if necessary).
- Refer the children to the picture and ask what they can see, including the positions of the items.
- Invite a pair of children to read out the example questions and answers for the class to repeat.
- Read out the third question and elicit how to complete the answer.
- Give the children time to look at and think about the rest of the questions, but ask them not to write yet.
- Elicit the complete questions and answers for the rest of the activity. Write them on the board.
- Have the children copy these into their books.

Answers: 1 Where's the kite? It's on the swing.
2 Where are the balls? They're under the slide.
3 Where's the bike? It's next to the slide.
4 Where are the balloons? They're on the seesaw.
5 Where's the lion? It's in the boat.
6 Where are the cars? They're in the sandpit.

Cooler: Listen and draw

- Tell the children that you are going to describe a playground and that they should draw it exactly as you describe.
- Draw a simple playground and describe each element slowly and clearly, giving the children time to draw it. Emphasise the prepositions and other important information. Suggestion: *In the playground there are two slides, a seesaw and a boat. There's a kite under a slide. There's a hat in the boat. There are two boys on the seesaw.*
- When they have finished, have them compare their drawing with a friend. Congratulate them all.



Lesson 8 **Writing**

1 Read and circle the short forms.

Where's my school bag?

Where are my shoes?

Look! It's there. It's on the table.

They're next to the chair.

2 Rewrite. Use short forms. Add capital letters, full stops and question marks.

1 where is my pencil *Where's my pencil?*
2 it is in the pencil case _____
3 it is on the desk _____
4 where are my crayons _____
5 they are in the box _____

3 Make a new playground for your school. Choose three things.

slide ☐ boat ☐ two swings ☐
car ☐ sandpit ☐ three bikes ☐
seesaw ☐ kite ☐ four balls ☐

4 Choose three toy animals for your playground. Where are they?

Animal	Where?
lion	*in the boat*

5 Now draw your playground.

6 Write about your new playground.

The _____ is _____ the _____.
The _____
_____
_____
_____
My favourite thing is _____.

7 Check your work. Tick (✓).

- spelling ☐
- short forms ☐

70 Unit 6

Unit 6 71

1 Read and circle the short forms.

- The children read the dialogue and circle any short forms / contractions.

Answers: Where's my school bag? Look! It's there. It's on the table. Where are my shoes? They're next to the chair.

2 Rewrite. Use short forms. Add capital letters, full stops and question marks.

- The children rewrite the sentences using short forms and the correct punctuation.

Answers: 1 Where's my pencil?
2 It's in the pencil case. **3** It's on the desk.
4 Where are my crayons? **5** They're in the box.

3 Make a new playground for your school. Choose three things.

- The children choose items from the list for their new school playground.

Answers: Children's own answers.

4 Choose three toy animals for your playground. Where are they?

- The children choose and write three animals and their positions.

Answers: Children's own answers.

5 Now draw your playground.

- The children draw their playground in the frame.

Answers: Children's own answers.

6 Write about your new playground.

- The children describe their drawing.

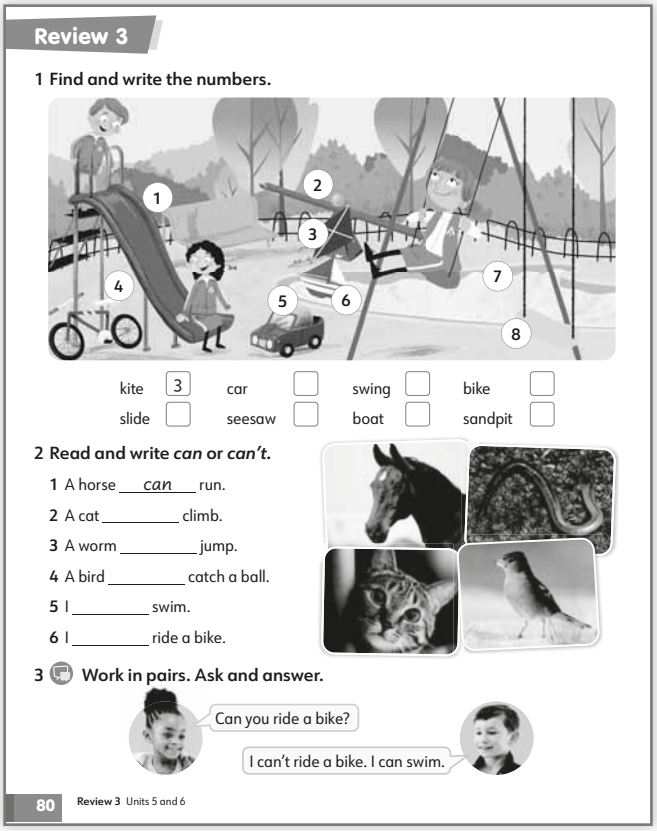
Answers: Children's own answers.

7 Check your work. Tick (✓).

- The children use the check list to make sure their work is correct.

Review 3

Pupil's Book page 80



Learning objectives: Review vocabulary, grammar and sounds from Units 5 and 6; Pre A1 Starters: Listening Part 4; Speaking Part 1

Grammar: *can / can't* for ability; *where's / where are* and prepositions of place

Vocabulary: play things and action verbs

Sounds: short sounds a, e, i, o, u

Resources: Flashcards; Speaking exam practice video

Materials: coloured pencils

Warm-up: The shark game

- Play *The shark game* (see the Games bank, pages 14–15) with some of the key vocabulary from Units 5 and 6.

1 Find and write the numbers.

- Refer the children to the picture and ask *Where's Anna / Sara / Tom*?
- Go through the example first and then have the children continue.
- Call out the numbers and have the children call back the words.

Answers: kite – 3, car – 5, swing – 8, bike – 4, slide – 1, seesaw – 2, boat – 6, sandpit – 7

2 Read and write *can* or *can't*.

- Have the children act out the action verbs in the sentences.
- Ask *Can a horse run? Yes or no?* (*Yes*) *Can or can't?* (*can*) *Can a worm run? Yes or no?* (*No*) *Can or can't?* (*can't*)
- Have the children complete the activity individually.
- Invite volunteers to read out their sentences. Ask for whole-class agreement each time.

Answers: 1 can **2** can **3** can't **4** can't
5 Children's own answers. **6** Children's own answers.

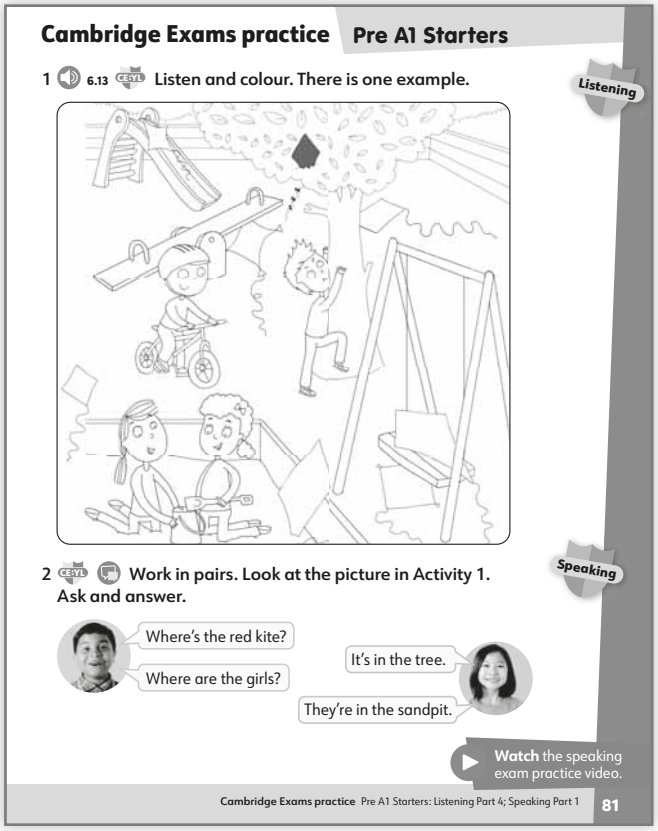
3 Work in pairs. Ask and answer.

- Invite two children to read out the example dialogue for the class to repeat.
- Divide the class into pairs to ask and answer questions about activities they can and can't do, using the vocabulary they've learnt in this unit.

Cooler: Disappearing words

- Play *Disappearing words* (see the Games bank, pages 14–15) recalling all the key words from this Review lesson.

Pupil's Book page 81



1 6.13 CE:YL Listen and colour. There is one example.

- This activity helps prepare the children for Part 4 of the Listening paper of the Cambridge English: Pre A1 Starters test.
- Refer the children to the picture and elicit what they can see. Ask *Where are the kites?* and elicit the positions. Ask *What colour is the kite in the tree?* (*red*)
- Play the first part of the audio. Point out the example.
- Play the rest of the audio. Make sure the children have time to find each kite and start to colour it. (Reassure them they can finish colouring later.)
- Elicit the answers by pointing and asking *What colour is this*? Play the audio again if necessary.

Audioscript

Examiner: *Look at the children in the park.*
Child: *I can see eight kites! I've got my pencils here. Can I colour one?*
Examiner: *Yes. A kite is in the tree. Colour that one, please.*
Child: *OK! What colour?*
Examiner: *Colour the kite in the tree red.*
Narrator: *Can you see the red kite in the tree? This is an example. Now you listen and colour.*

1 Examiner: *Colour the kite on the slide now.*
Child: *Sorry? The kite on the slide?*
Examiner: *Yes. Have you got a green pencil?*
Child: *Yes, I have.*
Examiner: *Yes. Have you got a green pencil?*
2 Examiner: *Can you see the kite under the seesaw?*
Child: *Yes!*
Examiner: *Excellent! Colour that kite now, please.*
Child: *OK! What colour?*
Examiner: *Can you colour the kite under the seesaw orange, please?*
Child: *OK!*
3 Examiner: *Now colour the kite next to the sandpit, please.*
Child: *The kite next to the sandpit … OK.*
Examiner: *You can choose the colour.*
Child: *Blue! I love blue!*
Examiner: *Me, too!*
4 Examiner: *Find the kite under the swing, please.*
Child: *Yes, I can see the kite under the swing.*
Examiner: *Good! Colour this kite purple, please.*
Child: *OK.*
5 Examiner: *Now look at the kite on the swing.*
Child: *OK!*
Examiner: *Yes, colour the kite on the swing, please.*
Child: *Can I colour it yellow?*
Examiner: *Yes, thank you!*

Answers: 1 kite on slide – green **2** kite under seesaw – orange **3** kite next to sandpit – blue **4** kite under swing – purple **5** kite on swing – yellow

2 CE:YL Work in pairs. Look at the picture in Activity 1. Ask and answer.

- This activity helps prepare the children for Part 1 of the Speaking paper of the Cambridge English: Pre A1 Starters test.
- Invite two children to read out the example dialogue for the class to repeat. Divide the class into pairs to ask and answer questions about the picture.

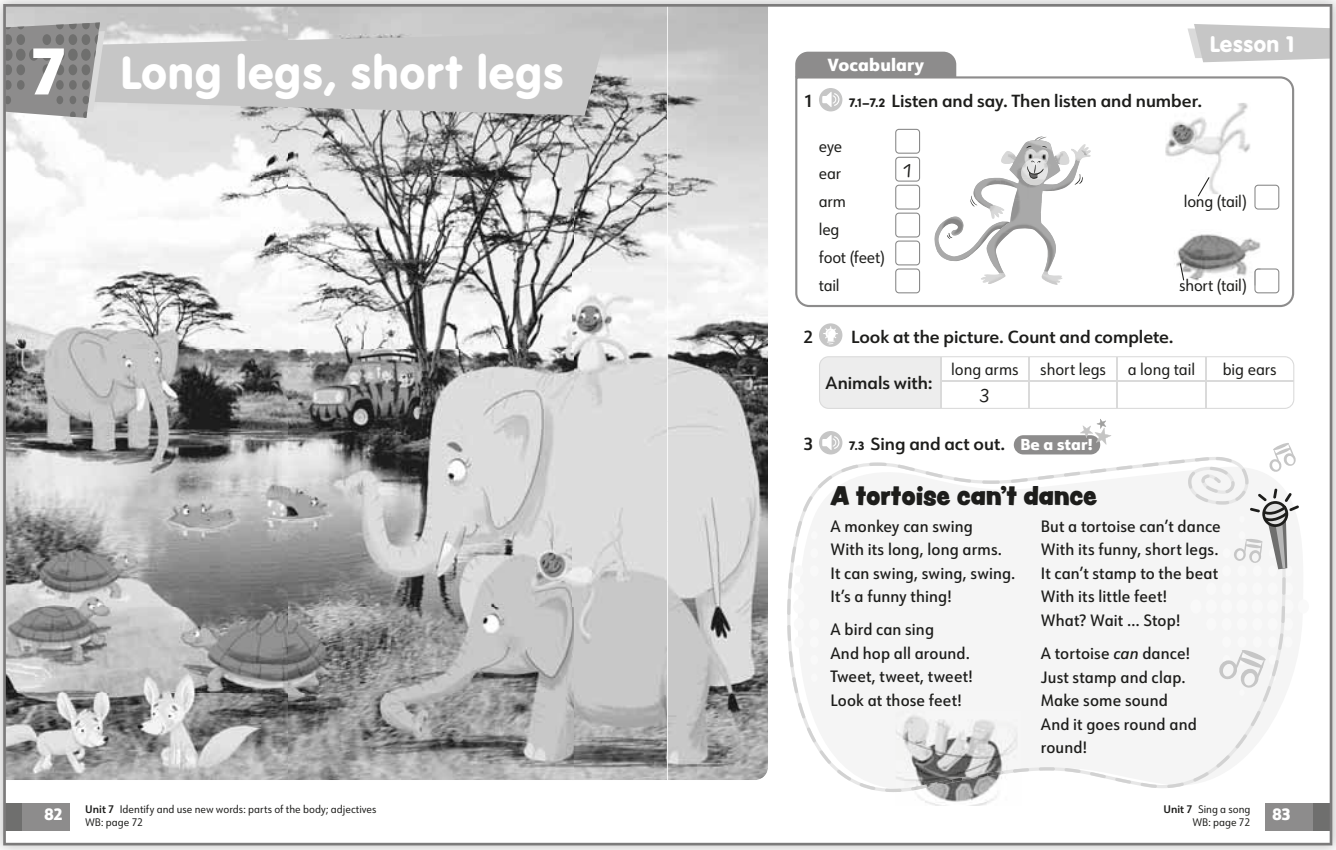
My progress: Units 5 and 6 (page 117)

- Clarify the meaning of each *I can …* statement. Elicit examples to help the children remember the content.
- Show the children the correct stickers for the *My progress* check. Give them time to decide if they are ready to give themselves a sticker.
- Have the children hold up their books and show their stickers to the class. Encourage a round of applause for their effort and achievement!

7 Long legs, short legs

Lesson 1 Vocabulary

Pupil's Book pages 82–83



Learning objectives: Identify and use new words: parts of the body; adjectives; Sing a song using the target vocabulary

Vocabulary: arm, ear, eye, foot, leg, long, short, tail

Resources: Flashcards; Vocabulary worksheet 1

Warm-up: The big picture

- Refer the children to the picture on page 82. Ask *Who's in the car? What animals can you see? What's your favourite animal? Can you see Bot? Where is he? (He's in the car behind the children.)*

1 7.1 Listen and say.

- Refer the children to the pictures and ask *What's this? (a monkey).*
- Play the audio and have the children listen and point to the parts of the picture.
- Play the audio again, pausing after each one for the children to repeat and then draw a line from the word to the corresponding part of the picture. Demonstrate by drawing a line to one ear. Each time, have the children point first so that you can confirm they have the correct part.

7.2 Then listen and number.

- Play the audio, pausing after the first word to point out the example answer.
- Play the rest of the audio for the children to number the words.
- For feedback, say each number and have the class call out the word. Ask different children to repeat each word to check pronunciation.

Audioscript

***1** ear, **2** arm, **3** leg, **4** long, **5** foot, **6** tail, **7** short, **8** eye*

Answers: eye – **8**, ear – **1**, arm – **2**, leg – **3**, foot – **5**, tail – **6**, long – **4**, short – **7**

2 Look at the picture. Count and complete.

- Hold up your Pupil's Book, point to the first part of the chart and say *Long arms – like this or this?* – mime shrinking your arm back to your body and then stretching it out (the second option). Point to the picture on page 82. Say *Can you see long arms? (the monkeys).* Count the monkeys with the children and show them the example number 3 in the chart.
- Check the meaning of *short legs*, *long tail* and *big ears* by miming these with the children.
- Then have them find and count the animals and write the numbers in the chart.
- Read out the chart headings and have the children tell you the number. Ask for whole-class agreement each time. Ask the children which animals they counted for each part.

Answers: long arms – **3** (monkeys), short legs – **5** (tortoises, foxes), a long tail – **8** (monkeys, elephants, foxes), big ears – **5** (elephants, foxes)

Teaching star!

Pairwork

Activity 2 can be continued in pairs to give the children their first chance to use the language in a communicative way with a response.

- Divide the class into pairs and demonstrate with one confident pair. One child says, e.g. *long arms* and the other child points at an animal in the picture and says the name, e.g. *monkey.*
- This gives the children their first chance to use the language in a communicative way with a response.

3 7.3 Sing and act out.

Be a star!

- Ask the children to turn their Pupil's Book face down. Explain that they will hear a song and that when they hear a part of the body, they should point to the part of their own body. Play the audio and join in the actions with the children.
- Now have the children look at the song in their Pupil's Book. Play it again, pausing after each line for them to repeat (singing).
- Decide on a mime for each of the items:
  swing – mime swinging from a branch;
  sing – mime singing with open mouth;
  dance, stamp, clap – do the actions.
- Play the song and have the children mime first. Then play again and have the children mime and sing. (This is quite challenging, but all the children can join in with the key words, if not the whole song.)

Cooler: Simon says

- Play *Simon says* (see the Games bank, pages 14–15) with the parts of the body from this lesson. Say *Simon says touch your …*

ESDC

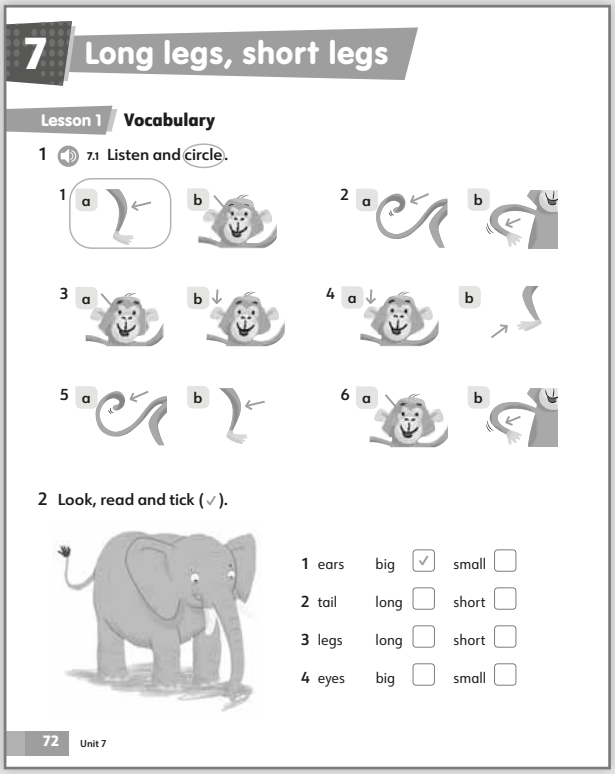
SDG Goal 15: Life on land

Introduce the children to Sustainable Development Goal 15: *Life on land.*

- Draw attention to the animals in the picture on page 82. Ask the children to name as many of the animals they can and brainstorm all the other land animals they can think of.
- Ask if the children know of any animals that need our help because of environmental or other issues. Affirm responses and discuss the importance of protecting all the different animal species on Earth. Ask the children what we can do to help them.

Possible answers: we can look after the land to make sure the animals have enough food and water, we can make sure the animals are protected from other humans, we can share what we know with other people so that they understand how important all animals are to Earth.

Workbook page 72


7 Long legs, short legs

Lesson 1 Vocabulary

1 7.1 Listen and circle.

2 Look, read and tick (✓).

1 ears	big	✓	small	
2 tail	long		short	
3 legs	long		short	
4 eyes	big		small	

72 Unit 7

1 7.1 Listen and circle.

Audioscript

1	*leg*	**2**	*arm*	**3**	*ear*
4	*foot*	**5**	*tail*	**6**	*eye*

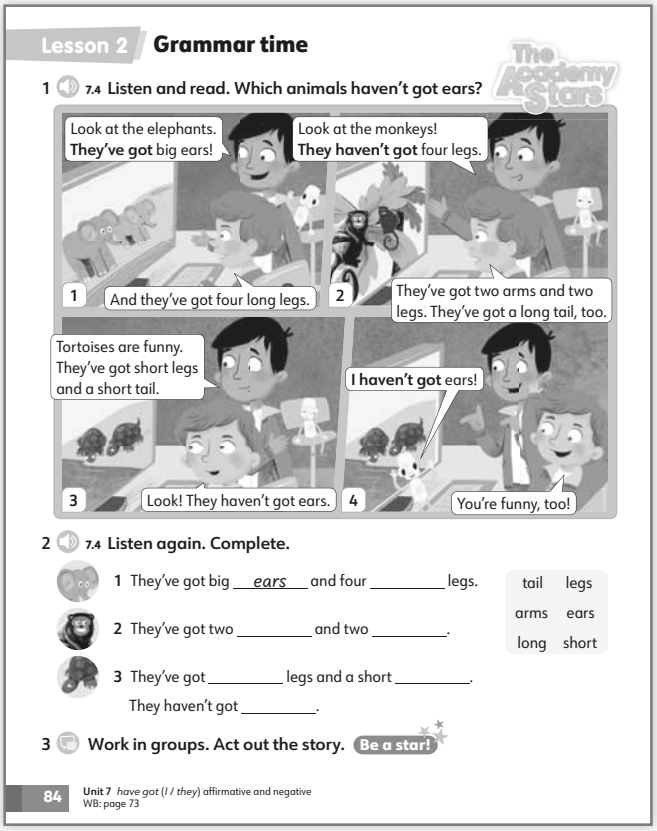
Answers: 1 a **2** b **3** b **4** b **5** a **6** a

2 Look, read and tick (✓).

Answers: 1 big **2** long **3** long **4** small

Lesson 2 Grammar time

Pupil's Book page 84



Learning objectives: Understand and use *have got* (*I / they*) affirmative and negative; Read and act out a story using the target grammar

Grammar: *Have got* (*I / they*) affirmative and negative

Review vocabulary: parts of the body; adjectives

7.3 Warm-up: Sing the song!

- Play the song *A tortoise can't dance* and have the children join in and do the actions.
- Before playing the song, you may wish to remind the children of the mimes they learnt in the previous lesson:
  swing – mime swinging from a branch
  sing – mime singing with open mouth
  dance, stamp, clap – do the actions
- You could also teach the children any new mimes or ask them if they know any others, for variety.

1 7.4 Listen and read. Which animals haven't got ears?

- Refer the children to the pictures and ask *What animals can you see? (elephants, monkeys, tortoises) Ask Where are the children? (at school).*
- Play the audio. Have the children follow in their books.
- Then give the children some time to read the story quietly for themselves, and ask them to find the answer to the question *Which animals haven't got ears?*
- For feedback, say *Look at the animals' ears*. Elicit, and have the class repeat, a sentence for each animal: *elephants – They've got big ears; monkeys – They've got small ears; tortoises – They haven't got ears.*
- Then ask *What about Bot?* Elicit and repeat (imitating Bot's voice) *I haven't got ears!*

Answer: Tortoises

2 7.4 Listen again. Complete.

- Refer the children to the first sentence and work through the example with the class. Ask where they can find the answer (Frame 1 and the word in the box on the right).
- Then the children answer the remaining questions. Fast finishers can compare their answers with a friend.
- Play the audio again for the children to check their answers.
- For feedback, invite different children to read out the sentences. Ask for whole-class agreement each time.

Answers: 1 ears, long **2** arms, legs
3 short, tail, ears

3 Work in groups. Act out the story.

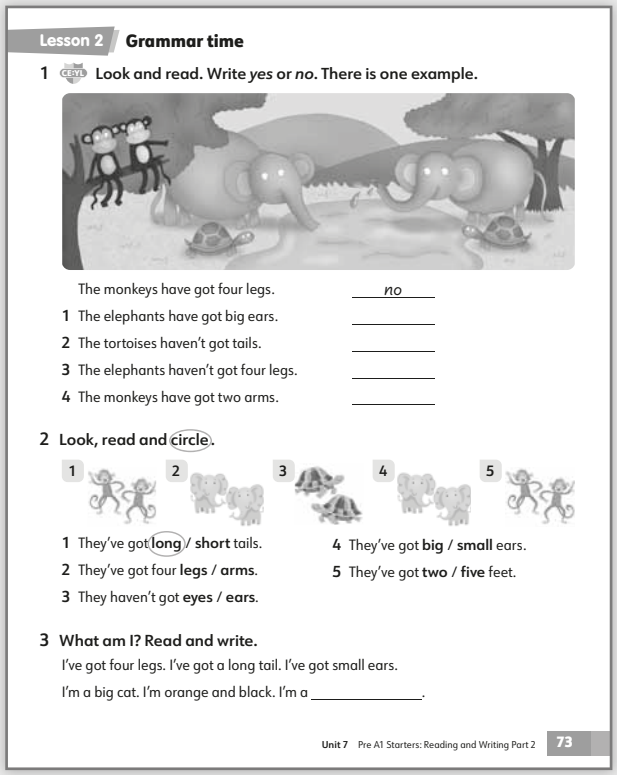
Be a star!

- Play the audio again for the class to repeat each line chorally. Check their pronunciation of *They've got* and *haven't got*.
- Ask *How many characters are in the story? (three)* Divide the class into groups of three and either have them decide who will be each character, or designate the roles.
- Allow the children a few minutes to practise acting out the story. Monitor, encourage and check for pronunciation.
- Ask if any groups would like to act out the story for the whole class. Alternatively, they could take turns to act it out for another group.
- If you wish, you could ask the children to change roles and act out the story again.

Cooler: Which animal?

- Write *elephants, monkeys, tortoises* and *Bot* on the board. Say some sentences about the animals in the story and have the children tell you which animal it is, e.g. *They've got big ears. They've got a long tail. They haven't got ears. They haven't got four legs. 'I haven't got ears!' (in Bot's voice),* etc.

Workbook page 73



Lesson 2 **Grammar time**

1 **Look and read. Write *yes* or *no*. There is one example.**

The monkeys have got four legs. *no*

1 The elephants have got big ears. _____

2 The tortoises haven't got tails. _____

3 The elephants haven't got four legs. _____

4 The monkeys have got two arms. _____

2 **Look, read and circle.**

1 2 3 4 5

1 They've got **long** / **short** tails.

2 They've got four **legs** / **arms**.

3 They haven't got **eyes** / **ears**.

4 They've got **big** / **small** ears.

5 They've got **two** / **five** feet.

3 **What am I? Read and write.**

I've got four legs. I've got a long tail. I've got small ears.

I'm a big cat. I'm orange and black. I'm a _____.

Unit 7 Pre A1 Starters: Reading and Writing Part 2 73

1 CE:YL Look and read. Write *yes* or *no*. There is one example.

- This activity helps the children prepare for Part 2 of the Reading and Writing paper of the Cambridge English: Pre A1 Starters test. The children read the sentences, look at the picture, and write *yes* or *no*.
- If done in class, go through the example first, asking the children to find the monkeys in the picture. Ask *Have they got four legs? (No)*. Point out the example answer.
- The children continue individually and then check with a friend.
- Ask individual children to read out the sentences and the class calls out *yes* or *no*.
- (To help prepare for this part of the test, the children need plenty of practice matching sentences to pictures.)

Answers: 1 yes **2** no **3** no **4** yes

2 Look, read and circle.

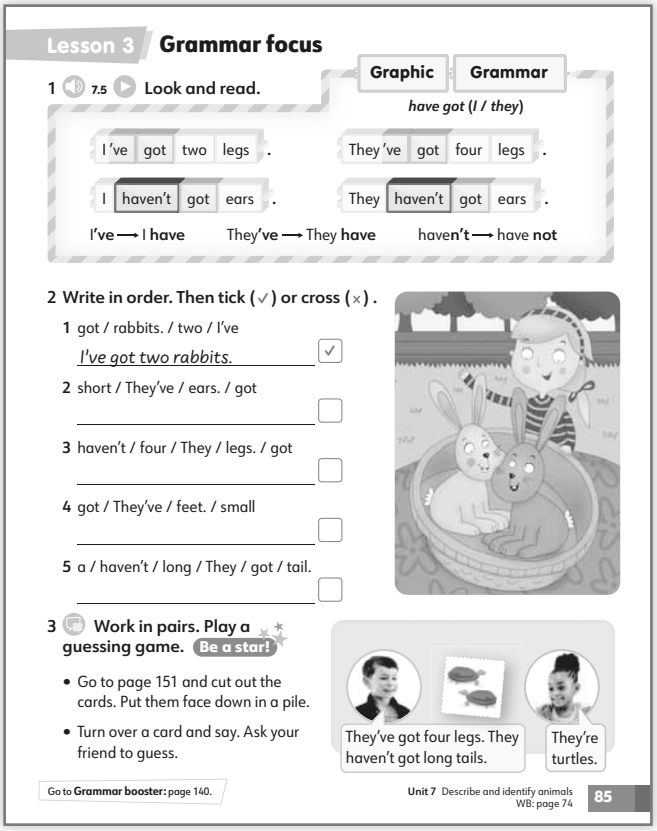
Answers: 1 long **2** legs **3** ears **4** big **5** two

3 What am I? Read and write.

Answer: tiger

Lesson 3 Grammar focus

Pupil's Book page 85


Lesson 3 Grammar focus

1 7.5 Look and read.

Graphic | Grammar

have got (I / they)

I 've got two legs . They 've got four legs .

I haven't got ears . They haven't got ears .

I've → I have They've → They have haven't → have not

2 Write in order. Then tick (✓) or cross (×).

1 got / rabbits. / two / I've

I've got two rabbits. ✓

2 short / They've / ears. / got ☐

3 haven't / four / They / legs. / got ☐

4 got / They've / feet. / small ☐

5 a / haven't / long / They / got / tail. ☐

3 Work in pairs. Play a guessing game. Be a star!

- Go to page 151 and cut out the cards. Put them face down in a pile.
- Turn over a card and say. Ask your friend to guess.

They've got four legs. They haven't got long tails.

They're turtles.

Go to Grammar booster: page 140.

Unit 7 Describe and identify animals WB: page 74 85

Learning objectives: Describe and identify animals

Grammar: *have got* (*I / they*) affirmative and negative

Review vocabulary: parts of the body; adjectives; animals

Resources: Graphic Grammar video; Grammar worksheet 1

Materials: scissors

Warm-up: *Yes* or *no*?

- Write a big *Yes* on one side of the board, and a big *No* on the other.
- Read out some sentences about animals and have the children point to the *Yes* side of the board if the sentence is true and to the *No* side of the board if the sentence is false. Suggested sentences: *Elephants have got big ears. Monkeys haven't got legs. Tortoises have got short legs,* etc.

1 7.5 Look and read.

- Play the audio. Have the children stand up for affirmative sentences and sit down for negative sentences.
- Play the audio again, pausing after each sentence to ask *Is this yes or no?* Have the children point to *'ve got or haven't got* in their Pupil's Book. Elicit or point out that the *yes* sentences use *'ve got* and the *no sentences* use *haven't got*. Draw the children's attention to the use of colours – blue for affirmative and red for negative.
- Reinforce the contraction of *I / They've* and *haven't* by counting out the full version of each sentence on your fingers and then pushing the fingers together to show the contraction.
- Play the audio again one more time for the children to repeat.

- If using the video, tell the children they will see a video of Bot at the doctor's! Play the video and let the children watch and enjoy.
- Play the video again and have the children repeat the key sentences in part 1.
- In part 2, pause the video before the sentences and elicit ideas from the children. Then check with the video.

2 Write in order. Then tick (✓) or cross (✗).

- Refer the children to the example. Read out the jumbled version first, and then read out the correct version. Have the children repeat.
- Elicit the correct version for number 2 and write it on the board.
- Have the children continue the activity individually.
- Invite volunteers to read out the sentences. Ask for whole-class agreement each time. Write the sentences on the board.
- Then read out the example sentence again. Refer the children to the picture and ask *Yes* or *no*? (*yes*) Point to the example tick.
- Have the children tick or cross each sentence and compare their answers with a friend.
- For feedback, read out the sentences and have the children stand up for a tick and sit down for a cross.

Answers: 1 I've got two rabbits. ✓ **2** They've got short ears. ✗ **3** They haven't got four legs. ✗ **4** They've got small feet. ✗ **5** They haven't got a long tail. ✓

Teaching star!

Extension

Some children will find the above word ordering activity easier than others and finish faster.

- Challenge the fast finishers to look at the sentences again and then test their memories by covering the text, saying the sentences and checking one by one.
- If two children next to each other finish early, they can use the same activity to test each other's memories.

3 Work in pairs. Play a guessing game.

Be a star!

- Organise the children in pairs and have them open their books to page 151.
- Have the children cut out the cards with their scissors. For this activity, the children will use two sets of cards and place them face down in their own piles. To demonstrate the game, read the example to the children *They've got four legs. They haven't got long tails*. Show the children the matching turtle card as the answer.
- Have the children take turns to choose a card and think about how they would describe the animal(s) in the picture. Then they hide the card and use the language to describe the animal(s) for their friend to guess.
- Allow time for the children to complete the game.

Grammar booster

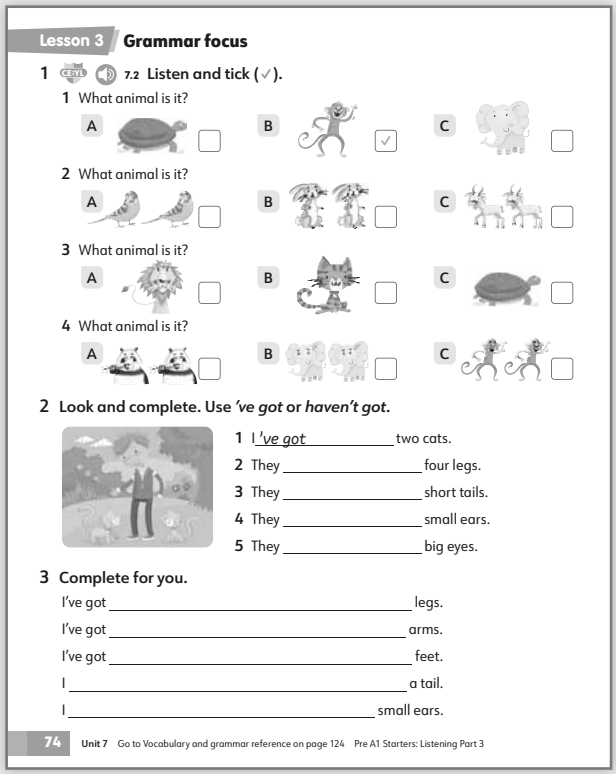
For additional practice, ask the children to turn to page 140 of their Pupil's Book to complete Activity 1. If the children need more grammar practice before the communicative Activity 3, have them complete this activity first. Alternatively, you may wish to have the children complete this activity at home.

Answers: 1 b **2** d **3** a **4** c **5** f **6** e

Cooler: Crazy animal

- Draw two oval bodies and round heads of the same generic animal on the board. Then start adding body parts, e.g. very long legs, very big ears, a very short tail, very small eyes and very big feet.
- For each new part, elicit a sentence – *They've got ...*
- Invite the children to invent a name for the animal.

Workbook page 74



Lesson 3 **Grammar focus**

1 CE:YL 7.2 **Listen and tick (✓).**

1 What animal is it?
A ☐ B ☑ C ☐

2 What animal is it?
A ☐ B ☐ C ☐

3 What animal is it?
A ☐ B ☐ C ☐

4 What animal is it?
A ☐ B ☐ C ☐

2 **Look and complete. Use *'ve got* or *haven't got*.**

1 I *'ve got* two cats.
2 They _____ four legs.
3 They _____ short tails.
4 They _____ small ears.
5 They _____ big eyes.

3 **Complete for you.**

I've got _____ legs.
I've got _____ arms.
I've got _____ feet.
I _____ a tail.
I _____ small ears.

74 Unit 7 Go to Vocabulary and grammar reference on page 124 Pre A1 Starters: Listening Part 3

Grammar reference:

Remind the children that they can refer to the grammar reference on page 124 to help them when completing these activities.

1 CE:YL 7.2 Listen and tick (✓).

- This activity helps the children prepare for Part 3 of the Listening paper of the Cambridge English: Pre A1 Starters test. The children listen, look at the pictures and tick the correct boxes.
- Go through the example first, and then have the children complete the activity individually.
- Check answers with the class.
- (To help prepare for this part of the test, the children need plenty of practice matching words to pictures.)

Audioscript

Speaker: *Look at the pictures. Now listen and look. There is one example.*

1 ***Speaker:*** *I'm brown, and I've got a long tail. I've got two legs, and I've got two long arms, too! What animal is it?*

Speaker: *Can you see the tick? Now listen and tick the box.*

2 ***Speaker:*** *They've got a tail and two legs. They've got small feet. What animal is it?*

3 ***Speaker:*** *I'm small, and I've got four short legs. I can't walk fast. What animal is it?*

4 ***Speaker:*** *They've got small black ears and four short legs. They are black and white. What animal is it?*

Answers: 1 B **2** A **3** C **4** A

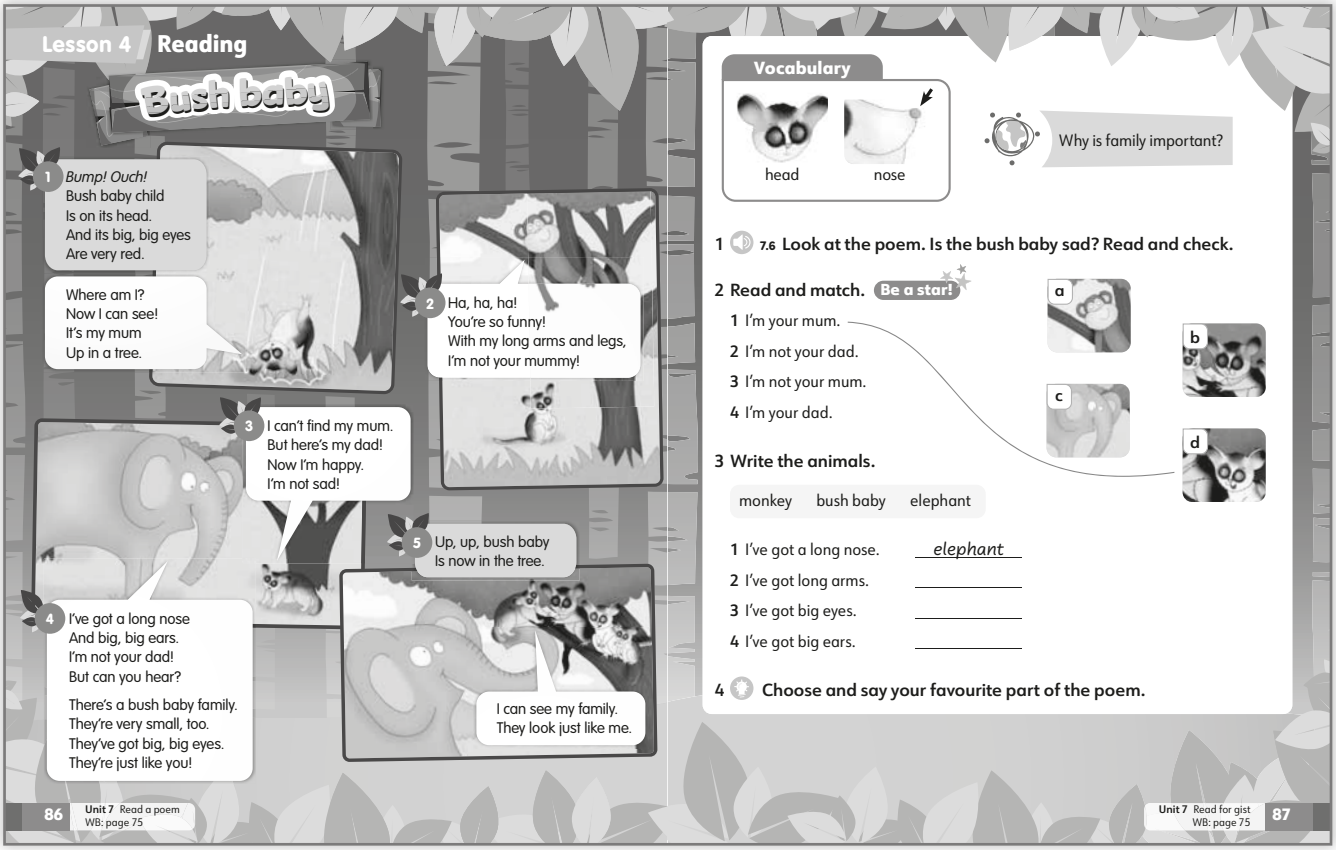
2 Look and complete. Use *'ve got* or *haven't got*.

Answers: 1 've got **2** 've got **3** haven't got **4** 've got **5** haven't got

3 Complete for you.

Answers: two, two, two, haven't got, 've got

Pupil's Book pages 86–87



Learning objectives: Read a poem; Read for gist

Vocabulary: bush baby, head, nose

Review vocabulary: dad, family, happy, mum, sad, tree

Resources: Flashcards; Vocabulary worksheet 2

7.4 Warm-up: Stand up / sit down when you hear ...

- Divide the class into two groups. Tell one group they must raise and lower their arms quickly every time they hear *'ve got*. The other group must do the same for *haven't got.*
- Play the audio and have the children respond accordingly.

Vocabulary

- Refer the children to the vocabulary panel on page 87. Read out the words. Show the children what a bush baby is. For head and nose, have the children point to their own head and nose and repeat.
- Point quickly to your nose, head, head, nose, head, etc. and have the children say the words. Then repeat including your eye and ear too.

1 7.6 Look at the poem. Is the bush baby sad? Read and check.

- Refer the children to the pictures and ask them what animals they can see. Write the names of the animals on the board. They may not know *Bush baby* – have them look at the title of the poem and tell them this is the name of the animal. Drill it chorally.
- Have the children read the poem individually to answer the question *Is the bush baby sad?*
- Point to the first picture and ask *Is the bush baby sad now? (yes)* Then point to the last picture and repeat the question (*no*).
- Play the audio and have the children listen and follow. Pause after the mention of mum and dad, point to the monkey and the elephant and ask *Is this Bush baby's mum / dad?*

2 Read and match. Be a star!

- Refer the children to the example. Ask *Is this Bush baby's mum? (yes)*
- Allow the children some time to look at the pictures and the sentences and compare them to the story.
- Hold up your book, point to the animals and ask for the correct sentence. Write the letter-number combinations on the board and have the children draw the matching lines in their books.

Answers: 1 d **2** c **3** a **4** b

Teaching star!

Reading

Texts like this are an excellent way for children to become used to collocations – words that naturally go together.

- Call out the first word(s) of the following collocations and have the children look at the poem to find and call back the next word(s). Finally, have them repeat the collocation: *big … (eyes); I can … (see); long … (arms); I can't find … (my mum); a long … (nose); can you … (hear).*

3 Write the animals.

- Read out the example sentence and ask *Is this a monkey / bush baby? (No) Why not? (Monkeys / Bush babies haven't got long noses.) Is this an elephant? (Yes)* Elicit why, and point out the example answer.
- Have the children complete the activity individually.
- Invite different children to come and write the answers on the board. Ask for whole-class agreement each time.

Answers: 1 elephant **2** monkey **3** bush baby **4** elephant

4 Choose and say your favourite part of the poem.

- Have the children look back at the poem. Give them a moment to look and remember. Then play the audio.
- Have the children raise their hands when the audio comes to their favourite part.

Cooler: Disappearing words

- Play *Disappearing words* (see the Games bank, pages 14–15) using: *bush baby, head, eyes, mum, tree, arms, legs, sorry, ears, nose, dad, family).*

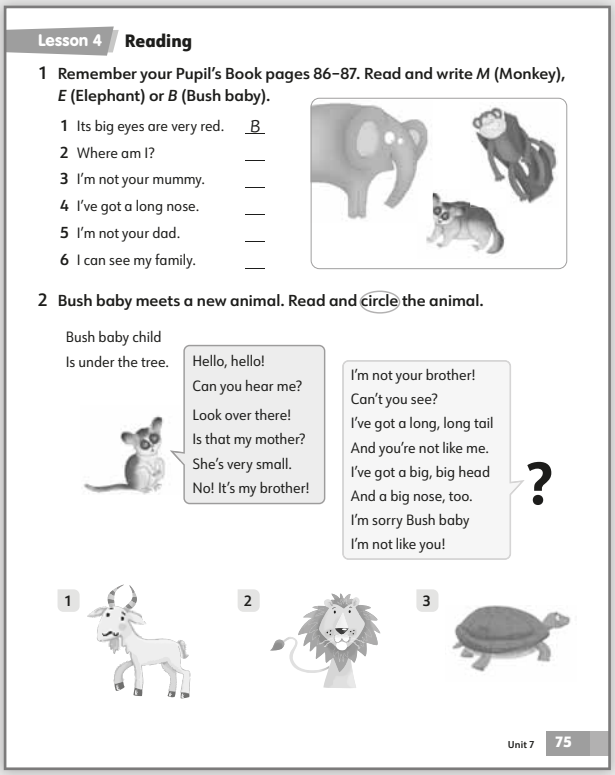
ESDC

Why is family important?

- Read out the question and ask if anyone can translate it into L1. This question helps the children explore how they behave in a considerate and respectful way in the community.
- Elicit ideas on how children's family members are important to them. Be sure to welcome mention of immediate and extended family members as part of the discussion. If children seem enthusiastic about the topic, ask volunteers to share why a particular member of their family is important to them.

Possible answers: families can teach us how to be kind to each other, parents and grandparents love and look after us, our brothers and sisters help and play with us, we all learn from each other.

Workbook page 75



Lesson 4 **Reading**

1 Remember your Pupil's Book pages 86–87. Read and write *M* (Monkey), *E* (Elephant) or *B* (Bush baby).

1 Its big eyes are very red. B
2 Where am I? ___
3 I'm not your mummy. ___
4 I've got a long nose. ___
5 I'm not your dad. ___
6 I can see my family. ___

2 Bush baby meets a new animal. Read and circle the animal.

Bush baby child
Is under the tree.

Hello, hello!
Can you hear me?
Look over there!
Is that my mother?
She's very small.
No! It's my brother!

I'm not your brother!
Can't you see?
I've got a long, long tail
And you're not like me.
I've got a big, big head
And a big nose, too.
I'm sorry Bush baby
I'm not like you!

?

1 2 3

Unit 7 75

1 Remember your Pupil's Book pages 86–87. Read and write *M* (Monkey), *E* (Elephant) or *B* (Bush baby).

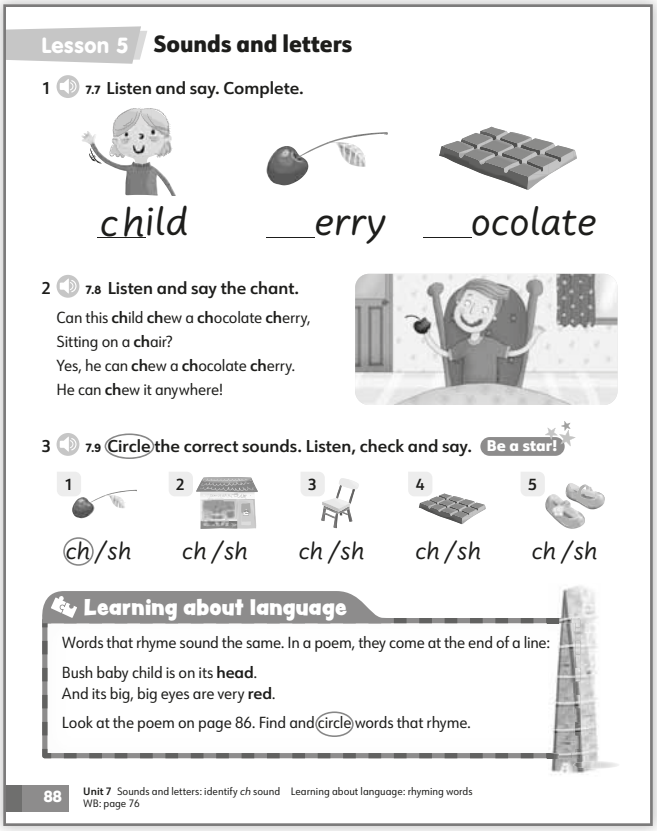
Answers: 1 B **2** B **3** M **4** E **5** E **6** B

2 Bush baby meets a new animal. Read and circle the animal.

Answer: 2

Lesson 5 Sounds and letters

Pupil's Book page 88


Lesson 5 Sounds and letters

1 7.7 Listen and say. Complete.

child ___erry ___ocolate

2 7.8 Listen and say the chant.

Can this child chew a chocolate cherry,
Sitting on a chair?
Yes, he can chew a chocolate cherry.
He can chew it anywhere!

3 7.9 Circle the correct sounds. Listen, check and say. Be a star!

1 ch/sh 2 ch/sh 3 ch/sh 4 ch/sh 5 ch/sh

Learning about language

Words that rhyme sound the same. In a poem, they come at the end of a line:

Bush baby child is on its **head**.
And its big, big eyes are very **red**.

Look at the poem on page 86. Find and circle words that rhyme.

88 Unit 7 Sounds and letters: identify *ch* sound Learning about language: rhyming words
WB: page 76

Learning objectives: Sounds and letters: identify *ch* sound; Learning about language: rhyming words

Sounds and letters words: cherry, child, chocolate

Resources: Sounds and letters worksheet

7.6 Warm-up: What's the next word?

- Play *What's the next word?* (see the Games bank, pages 14–15). Pause the audio just before some of the key words in the poem, e.g. *head, eyes, see, legs, dad, nose, small, me.*

1 7.7 Listen and say. Complete.

- With the children's books closed, point to each of the pictures in your book and ask *What's this?* Listen to their suggestions.
- Now play the audio and have the children open their books and check.
- Play the audio again for the children to repeat the sound and the words chorally. Then ask a few individuals to say each word to check pronunciation.
- Point to the ch in the word child in your book. Ask *What are these letters? (ch) What's the sound?* (/tʃ/)
- Write a big, clear *ch* on the board as a model for the children. Have them complete the words.

Audioscript

/tʃ/ /tʃ/ /tʃ/ child
/tʃ/ /tʃ/ /tʃ/ cherry
/tʃ/ /tʃ/ /tʃ/ chocolate

2 7.8 Listen and say the chant.

- Play the chant and have the children follow in their books. Have them raise their hands every time they see / hear a word with *ch*.
- Play the chant again, pausing after each line for the children to repeat. Pay particular attention to the *ch* sound.
- Play the chant once more and have the children join in as much as they can.
- Finally, divide the class into two groups, with one group saying the first two lines and the other the second two. Then change roles.

3 7.9 Circle the correct sounds. Listen, check and say. Be a star!

- Refer the children to the pictures and elicit the words. Emphasise the *sh* or *ch* sounds.
- Point to the example and have the children repeat *ch-ch-ch-cherry*.
- Elicit the word for number 2 again, and have them repeat the initial sound – *sh-sh-sh-shop*. The children circle the *sh*.
- Have the children complete the activity and compare with a friend. Then play the audio for them to listen and confirm.
- Elicit the words and write the correct sound on the board for each number.

Audioscript

1 */tʃ/ cherry* ***2*** */ʃ/ shop* ***3*** */tʃ/ chair*
4 */tʃ/ chocolate* ***5*** */ʃ/ shoes*

Answers: 1 ch **2** sh **3** ch **4** ch **5** sh

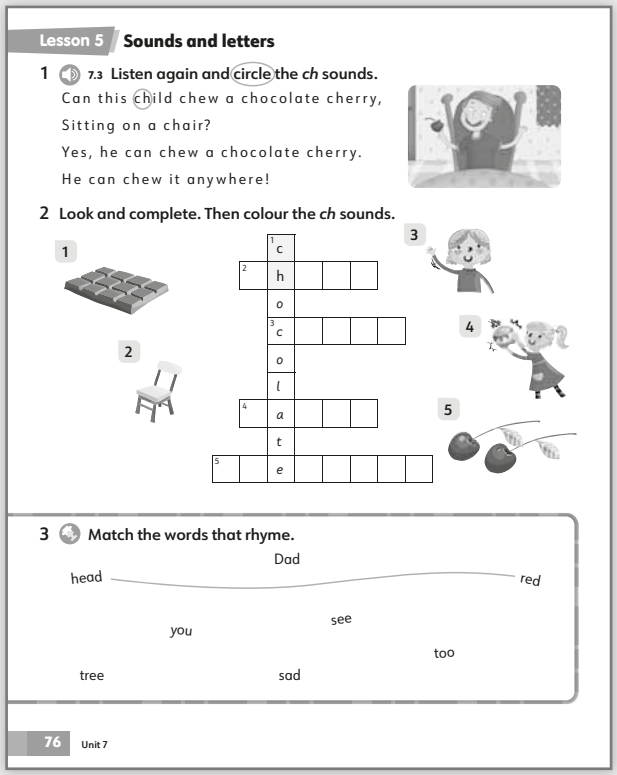
Learning about language

- Explain the *Learning about language* idea to the children. Read out the two lines of the poem and have all the children join in on the words *head* and *red*. Ask if they hear they have the same sound.
- Have the children look at the poem again and find pairs of rhyming words.
- Elicit their suggestions and ask for whole-class agreement. Write the rhyming words on the board: *head – red, see – tree, dad – sad, too – you, tree – me.*

Cooler: Physical spelling

- Play *Physical spelling* (see the Games bank, pages 14–15) with key words from today's lesson.

Workbook page 76



Lesson 5 **Sounds and letters**

1 7.3 Listen again and circle the *ch* sounds.

Can this child chew a chocolate cherry,
Sitting on a chair?
Yes, he can chew a chocolate cherry.
He can chew it anywhere!

2 Look and complete. Then colour the *ch* sounds.

1 2 3 4 5

1	c
2	h
	o
3	c
	o
	l
4	a
	t
5	e

3 Match the words that rhyme.

Dad
head red
see
you
too
tree sad

76 Unit 7

1 7.3 Listen again and circle the *ch* sounds.

Answers: Can this ch ild ch ew a ch ocolate ch erry,
Sitting on a ch air?
Yes, he can ch ew a ch ocolate ch erry.
He can ch ew it anywhere!

2 Look and complete. Then colour the *ch* sounds.

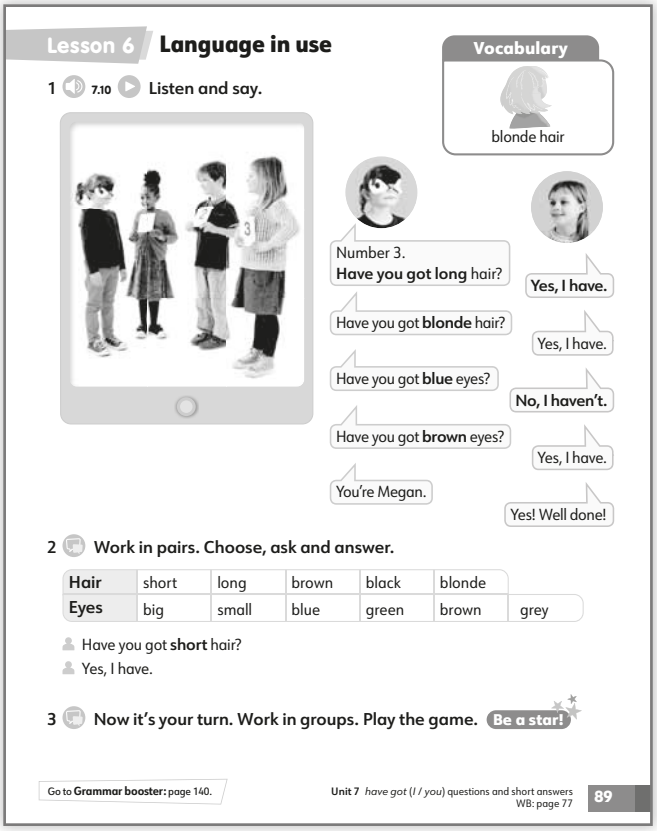
Answers: 1 chocolate **2** chair **3** child
4 catch **5** cherries

3 Match the words that rhyme.

Answers: head – red, see – tree, you – too,
Dad – sad

Lesson 6 Language in use

Pupil's Book page 91



Learning objectives: *have got* (*I / you*) questions and short answers

Review vocabulary: colours

Resources: Language in use video; Grammar worksheet 2

Materials: paper, pens or pencils

Warm-up: Team spelling

- Play *Team spelling* (see the Games bank, pages 14–15) with key words from Lesson 5, e.g. *cherry, chocolate, chair, shop, chocolate, shoes, child.*

Vocabulary

- Refer the children to the vocabulary box at the top of the page. Read out the words and have them repeat. Ask if anyone in the class has blonde hair or if they know someone famous with blonde hair.

1 7.10 Listen and say.

- Tell the children they will hear some children playing a guessing game. Play the audio and have the children follow in their books. Ask them what the game is (identifying the children without looking).
- Play the audio again for the children to repeat chorally.
- Divide the class into two groups and have them roleplay the dialogue chorally, with one group asking the questions and the other answering. Then change roles.

- If using the video, play it and let the children watch and enjoy it.
- Play the video again and stop after each question to elicit the answer from the children. Play the video to confirm and have them all repeat.
- Then play the video one more time for the children to repeat chorally. Encourage them to imitate the intonation and body language as closely as possible.

2 Work in pairs. Choose, ask and answer.

- Have the children read out each of the words for the hair together with the word *hair* after it – *short hair, black hair*, etc. Then do the same for the eyes.
- Invite two confident children to read out the example dialogue. Point out that it is the same as in Activity 1, but the blue word is changed for an item in the box.
- Ask a confident child *Have you got (long) hair?* and elicit the answer *Yes, I have or No, I haven't*. Prompt the children to ask you questions about your hair and eyes.
- Divide the class into pairs to continue the activity. Circulate and monitor.
- Finish with some questions between children across the class.

3 Now it's your turn. Work in groups. Play the game.

Be a star!

- Divide the children into groups of four. Give three of the children a number – 1, 2 or 3. Have them write their number on a small piece of paper. These can then be shared among the group.
- One child covers their eyes – the others take a number.
- The first child then asks questions to the others about their hair and eyes to discover who they are. When they guess correctly, they change roles and numbers.
- Choose a group of confident children to demonstrate the game for the class first.

Grammar booster

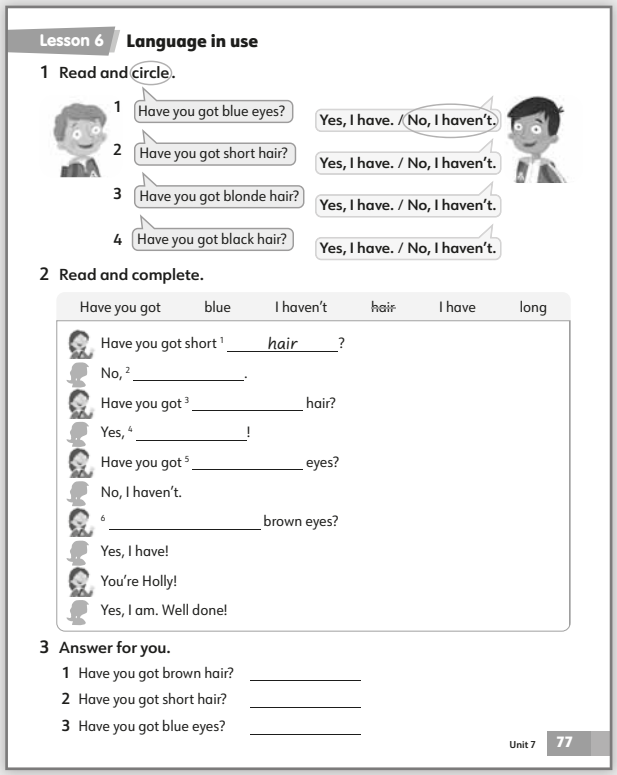
For additional practice, ask the children to turn to page 140 of their Pupil's Book to complete Activity 2. You may also wish to have the children complete this activity at home.

Answers: No, I haven't; No, I haven't; No, I haven't; No, I haven't

Cooler: Sit down if ...

- Ask all the children to stand up. Tell them you will say some sentences, and they must sit down if those sentences are true for them, e.g. *Sit down if ... you've got blue eyes; you've got blonde hair; you've got big ears; you've got ...* (continue with other eye and hair colours and lengths).
- Try to order the sentences so that as many children as possible are standing nearly until the end.

Workbook page 77



Lesson 6 **Language in use**

1 Read and circle.

1 Have you got blue eyes? — Yes, I have. / No, I haven't.
2 Have you got short hair? — Yes, I have. / No, I haven't.
3 Have you got blonde hair? — Yes, I have. / No, I haven't.
4 Have you got black hair? — Yes, I have. / No, I haven't.

2 Read and complete.

Have you got | blue | I haven't | ~~hair~~ | I have | long

Have you got short [1] *hair*?
No, [2] _____.
Have you got [3] _____ hair?
Yes, [4] _____!
Have you got [5] _____ eyes?
No, I haven't.
[6] _____ brown eyes?
Yes, I have!
You're Holly!
Yes, I am. Well done!

3 Answer for you.

1 Have you got brown hair? _____
2 Have you got short hair? _____
3 Have you got blue eyes? _____

Unit 7 77

1 Read and circle.

Answers: 1 No, I haven't. **2** Yes, I have. **3** No, I haven't. **4** Yes, I have.

2 Read and complete.

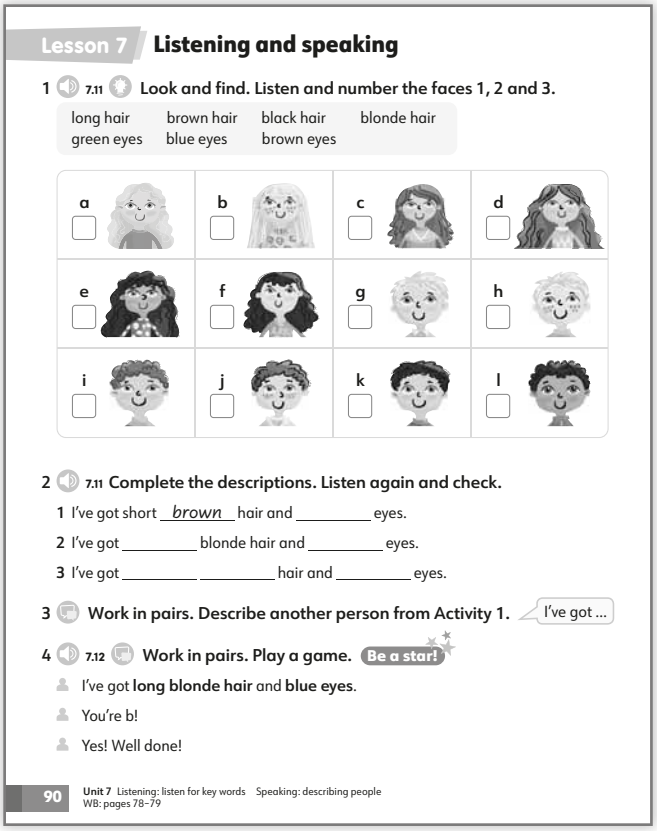
Answers: 1 hair **2** I haven't **3** long **4** I have **5** blue **6** Have you got

3 Answer for you.

Answers: Children's own answers.

Lesson 7 Listening and speaking

Pupil's Book page 90



Lesson 7 Listening and speaking

1 7.11 Look and find. Listen and number the faces 1, 2 and 3.

long hair | brown hair | black hair | blonde hair
green eyes | blue eyes | brown eyes

a b c d
e f g h
i j k l

2 7.11 Complete the descriptions. Listen again and check.

1 I've got short brown hair and _____ eyes.
2 I've got _____ blonde hair and _____ eyes.
3 I've got _____ _____ hair and _____ eyes.

3 Work in pairs. Describe another person from Activity 1. I've got ...

4 7.12 Work in pairs. Play a game. Be a star!

I've got long blonde hair and blue eyes.
You're b!
Yes! Well done!

90 Unit 7 Listening: listen for key words Speaking: describing people
WB: pages 78–79

Learning objectives: Listening: listen for key words; Speaking: describing people

Resources: Vocabulary worksheet 2

Warm-up: Put the letters back

- Play *Put the letters back* (see the Games bank, pages 14–15). Write the following incomplete sentences on the board: *H_v_ y__ g_t l_ng h__r? Y_s, _ h_v_. H_v_ y__ g_t bl__ _y_s? N_, _ h_v_ n't.* (Solution: *Have you got long hair? Yes, I have. Have you got blue eyes? No, I haven't.*)

1 7.11 Look and find. Listen and number the faces 1, 2 and 3.

- Refer the children to the pictures and elicit the differences (*long / short hair, black / brown / blonde hair, blue / green / brown eyes*).
- Play the first part of the audio. Stop after each new piece of information and check, e.g. *long hair or short hair?* Decide as a class the first picture (i).
- Play parts 2 and 3 of the audio for the children to answer. Play them again if necessary.
- Elicit each answer in turn and play the audio to check.

Audioscript

1 ***Boy 1:*** *Who am I?*
Boy 2: *Have you got long hair?*
Boy 1: *No, I haven't.*
Boy 2: *Have you got blonde hair?*
Boy 1: *No, I haven't.*
Boy 2: *Have you got brown hair?*
Boy 1: *Yes, I have.*
Boy 2: *OK. So you've got short, brown hair. Have you got blue eyes?*
Boy 1: *Yes, I have. Well done!*

2 ***Girl 1:*** *OK. Who am I?*
Girl 2: *Have you got long hair?*
Girl 1: *Yes, I have.*
Girl 2: *Have you got brown hair?*
Girl 1: *No, I haven't.*
Girl 2: *OK. Have you got blonde hair?*
Girl 1: *Yes, I have.*
Girl 2: *So you've got long blonde hair.*
Girl 1: *Yes.*
Girl 2: *Have you got blue eyes?*
Girl 1: *No, I haven't.*
Girl 2: *Have you got green eyes?*
Girl 1: *Yes, I have!*

3 ***Boy 2:*** *Who am I?*
Boy 1: *Have you got short hair?*
Boy 2: *Yes, I have.*
Boy 1: *OK. Have you got brown hair?*
Boy 2: *No, I haven't.*
Boy 1: *Have you got black hair?*
Boy 2: *Yes, I have.*
Boy 1: *So you've got short black hair. Have you got brown eyes?*
Boy 2: *No, I haven't.*
Boy 1: *Have you got blue eyes?*
Boy 2: *Yes, I have!*

Answers: 1 i **2** a **3** k

2 7.11 Complete the descriptions. Listen again and check.

- Have the children look at face 1 (i) again. Elicit the colour of his eyes. Do the same for 2 (a) and 3 (k). Play the audio again to check their answers.

Answers: 1 brown, blue **2** long, green
3 short, black, blue

3 Work in pairs. Describe another person from Activity 1.

- Choose a picture from Activity 1 and describe him / her. Have the children raise their hands when they know who it is. Elicit the correct letter.

4 7.12 Work in pairs. Play a game.

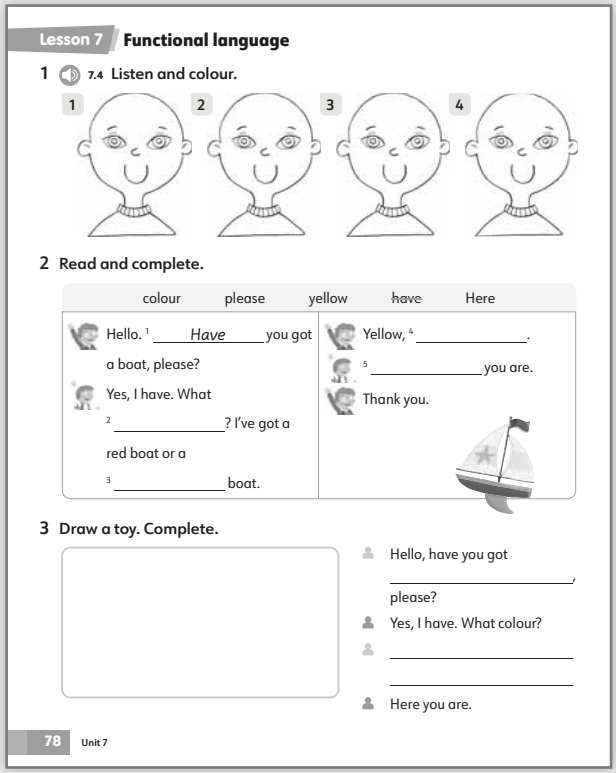
Be a star!

- Invite two children to read out the example dialogue.
- Then divide the class into pairs to continue describing and guessing. This is a continuation of Activity 3 but this time the activity focuses on pairwork.

Cooler: Disappearing sentences

- Play *Disappearing sentences* (see the Games bank, pages 14–15). Have the children read out the sentences from Activity 2 for you to write on the board.

Workbook page 78



Lesson 7 Functional language

1 7.4 Listen and colour.

2 Read and complete.

colour please yellow ~~have~~ Here

Hello. 1 *Have* you got a boat, please?

Yes, I have. What 2 _____? I've got a red boat or a 3 _____ boat.

Yellow, 4 _____.

5 _____ you are.

Thank you.

3 Draw a toy. Complete.

Hello, have you got _____, please?

Yes, I have. What colour?

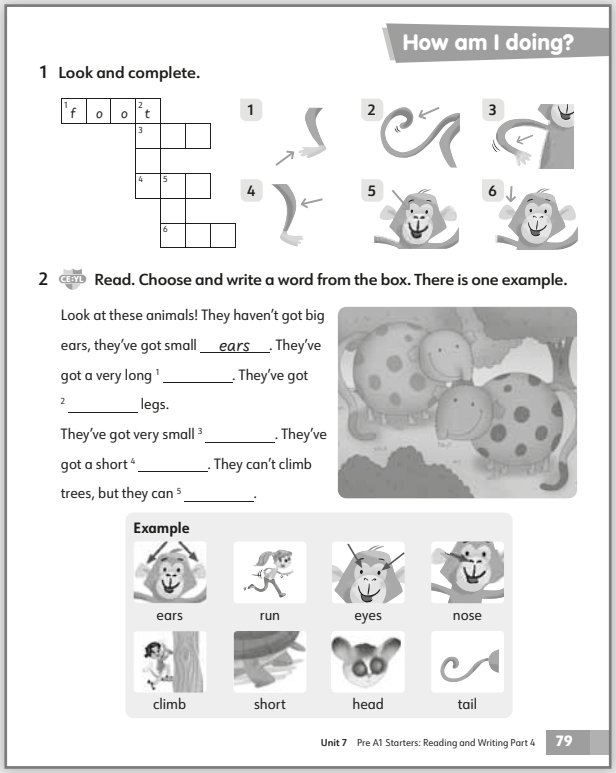
_____

_____

Here you are.

78 Unit 7

Workbook page 79



How am I doing?

1 Look and complete.

2 Read. Choose and write a word from the box. There is one example.

Look at these animals! They haven't got big ears, they've got small *ears*. They've got a very long 1 _____. They've got 2 _____ legs. They've got very small 3 _____. They've got a short 4 _____. They can't climb trees, but they can 5 _____.

Example

ears run eyes nose

climb short head tail

Unit 7 Pre A1 Starters: Reading and Writing Part 4 79

1 7.4 Listen and colour.

Audioscript

1 *I've got short black hair. I've got brown eyes.*
2 *I've got short blonde hair. I've got green eyes.*
3 *I've got long black hair. I've got green eyes.*
4 *I've got long blonde hair. I've got blue eyes.*

Answers: Children colour as follows: **1** black hair, brown eyes **2** short blonde hair, green eyes **3** long black hair, green eyes **4** long blonde hair, blue eyes

2 Read and complete.

Answers: 1 Have **2** colour **3** yellow **4** please **5** Here

3 Draw a toy. Complete.

Suggested answers: Have you got a (robot /kite / etc.), please? (Colour), please.

1 Look and complete.

Answers: 1 foot **2** tail **3** arm **4** leg **5** eye **6** ear

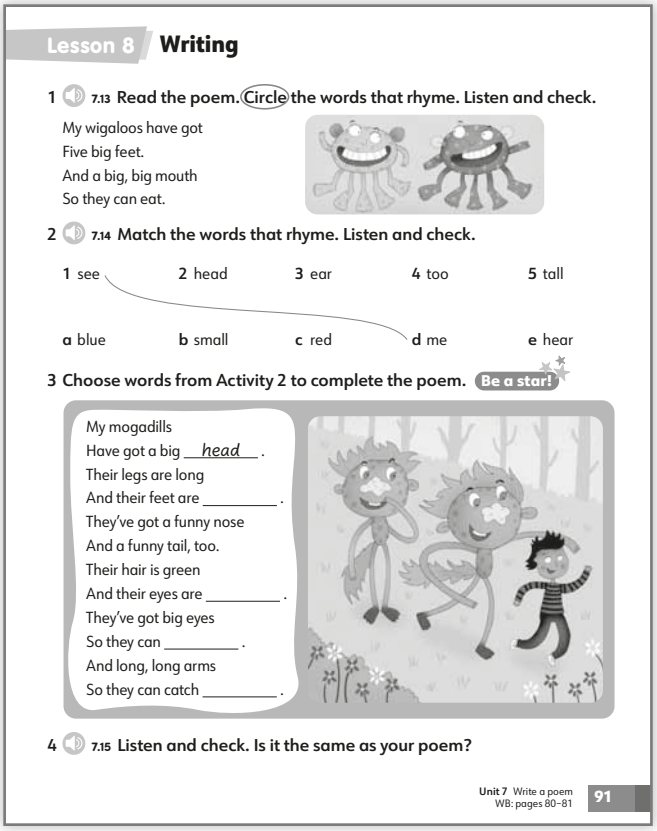
2 CE:YL Read. Choose and write a word from the box. There is one example.

- This activity helps the children prepare for Part 4 of the Reading and Writing paper of the Cambridge English: Pre A1 Starters test. The children complete the text by choosing words from the illustrated list in the box.
- If done in class, go through the example first. Then have the children work in pairs to continue the activity. Encourage them to read each sentence and guess the word before they look at the word box.
- Check the answers with the class.
- (To help prepare children for this part of the test, they should practise reading a text quickly for general meaning first.)

Answers: 1 tail **2** short **3** eyes **4** nose **5** run

Lesson 8 Writing

Pupil's Book page 91


Lesson 8 Writing

1 7.13 Read the poem. Circle the words that rhyme. Listen and check.

My wigaloos have got
Five big feet.
And a big, big mouth
So they can eat.

2 7.14 Match the words that rhyme. Listen and check.

1 see 2 head 3 ear 4 too 5 tall

a blue b small c red d me e hear

3 Choose words from Activity 2 to complete the poem. Be a star!

My mogadills
Have got a big __head__ .
Their legs are long
And their feet are _____ .
They've got a funny nose
And a funny tail, too.
Their hair is green
And their eyes are _____ .
They've got big eyes
So they can _____ .
And long, long arms
So they can catch _____ .

4 7.15 Listen and check. Is it the same as your poem?

Unit 7 Write a poem
WB: pages 80–81
91

Learning objectives: Identify rhyming words; Write a poem

Resources: Unit 7 test

Warm-up: Rhyming words

- Write the words *red* and *head* on the board. Say them and ask the children if they sound the same. Remind them of rhyming words.
- Tell them you will say some words (see below) and write them on the board, and the children have to think of a word that rhymes. As soon as they think of one, they raise their hands. Elicit as many suggestions as possible. Possible words: *eye (I, sky), cat (mat, bat, hat), ear (here, hear), fox (box), you (two, too, blue), key (me, see, three), sun (fun, run), van (can).*

1 7.13 Read the poem. Circle the words that rhyme. Listen and check.

- Refer the children to the poem and have them identify the rhyming words.
- Then play the audio for them to check and repeat the words chorally.

Answers: feet, eat

2 7.14 Match the words that rhyme. Listen and check.

- Refer the children to the example and have them repeat the rhyming words.
- Then have the children complete the activity individually and compare their answers with a friend.
- Invite different children to read a pair of rhyming words. Ask for whole-class agreement each time. Have all the children repeat the pairs of words.

Answers: 1 d **2** c **3** e **4** a **5** b

3 Choose words from Activity 2 to complete the poem.

Be a star!

- Refer the children to the picture and ask *What are they?* Ask them to look at the first line of the poem to find their name (*mogadills*).
- Then refer the children to the example answer and the first gap. Write *head* on the board. Elicit a word that rhymes with *head*, and write *red* under *head* on the board.
- Divide the class into pairs to look at the rest of the poem and think about the words that can complete the spaces.
- When they are ready, elicit the words for each space and continue the list vertically on the board. Finally, have the children complete the poem in their books.

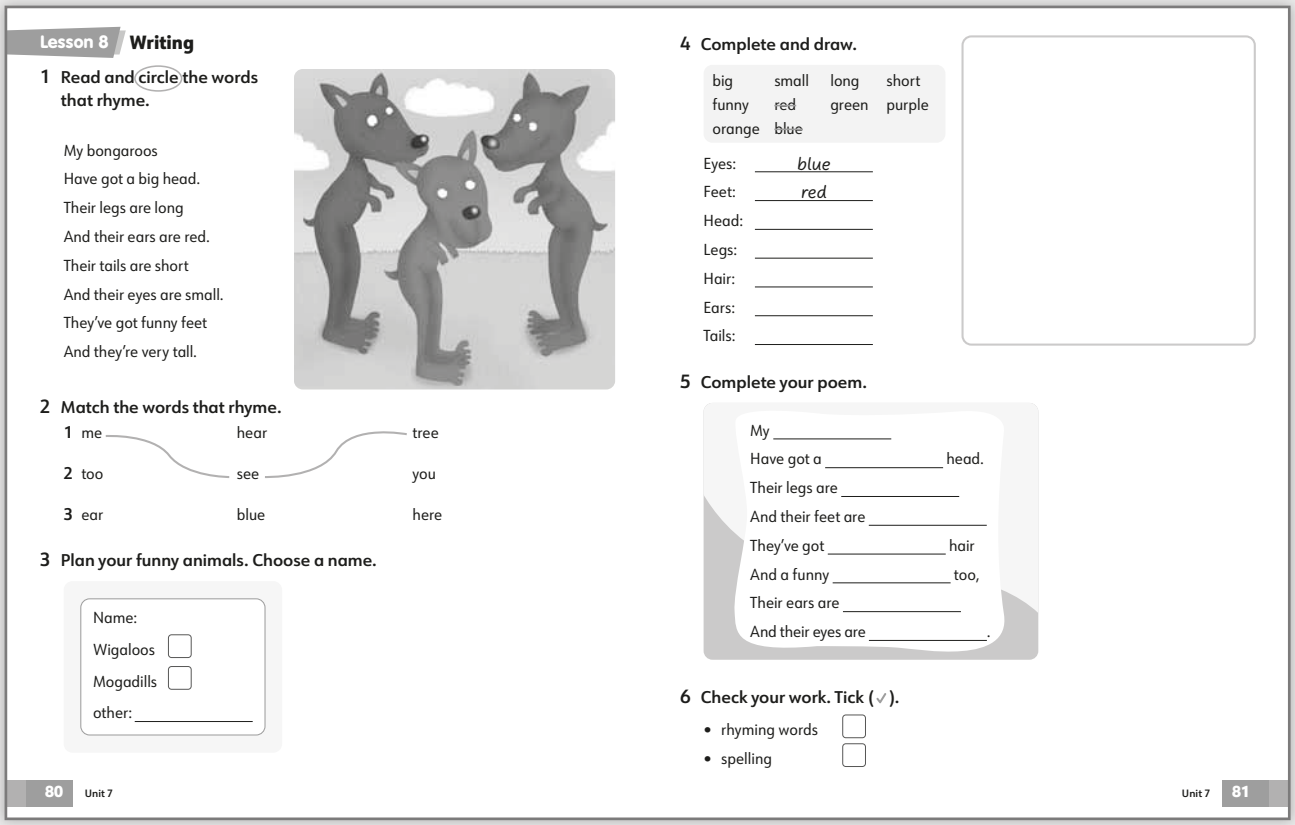
Answers: head, red, blue, see, me

4 7.15 Listen and check. Is it the same as your poem?

- Now play the audio and have the children listen and check with their poem. Encourage them to say *yes* or *no* after each answer.
- Now play the audio again, and have the children join in with all the rhyming words.

7.15 Cooler: What's the next word?

- Play *What's the next word?* (see the Games bank, pages 14–15). Pause the audio just before the rhyming words.



Lesson 8 **Writing**

1 **Read and circle the words that rhyme.**

My bongaroos
Have got a big head.
Their legs are long
And their ears are red.
Their tails are short
And their eyes are small.
They've got funny feet
And they're very tall.

2 **Match the words that rhyme.**

1 me	hear	tree
2 too	see	you
3 ear	blue	here

3 **Plan your funny animals. Choose a name.**

Name:
Wigaloos ☐
Mogadills ☐
other: _____

4 **Complete and draw.**

big small long short
funny red green purple
orange blue

Eyes: *blue*
Feet: *red*
Head: _____
Legs: _____
Hair: _____
Ears: _____
Tails: _____

5 **Complete your poem.**

My _____
Have got a _____ head.
Their legs are _____
And their feet are _____
They've got _____ hair
And a funny _____ too,
Their ears are _____
And their eyes are _____.

6 **Check your work. Tick (✓).**

- rhyming words ☐
- spelling ☐

80 Unit 7

Unit 7 81

1 Read and circle the words that rhyme.

- The children find and circle the rhyming words in the poem.

Answers: head – red; small – tall

2 Match the words that rhyme.

- The children draw lines to match the groups of rhyming words (three words in each group).

Answers: me – see – tree; too – blue – you; ear – hear – here

3 Plan your funny animals. Choose a name.

- The children choose a name for their invented animals.

Answers: Children's own answers.

4 Complete and draw.

- The children complete the list of physical features of their animals by choosing and writing adjectives from the box.

Answers: Children's own answers.

5 Complete your poem.

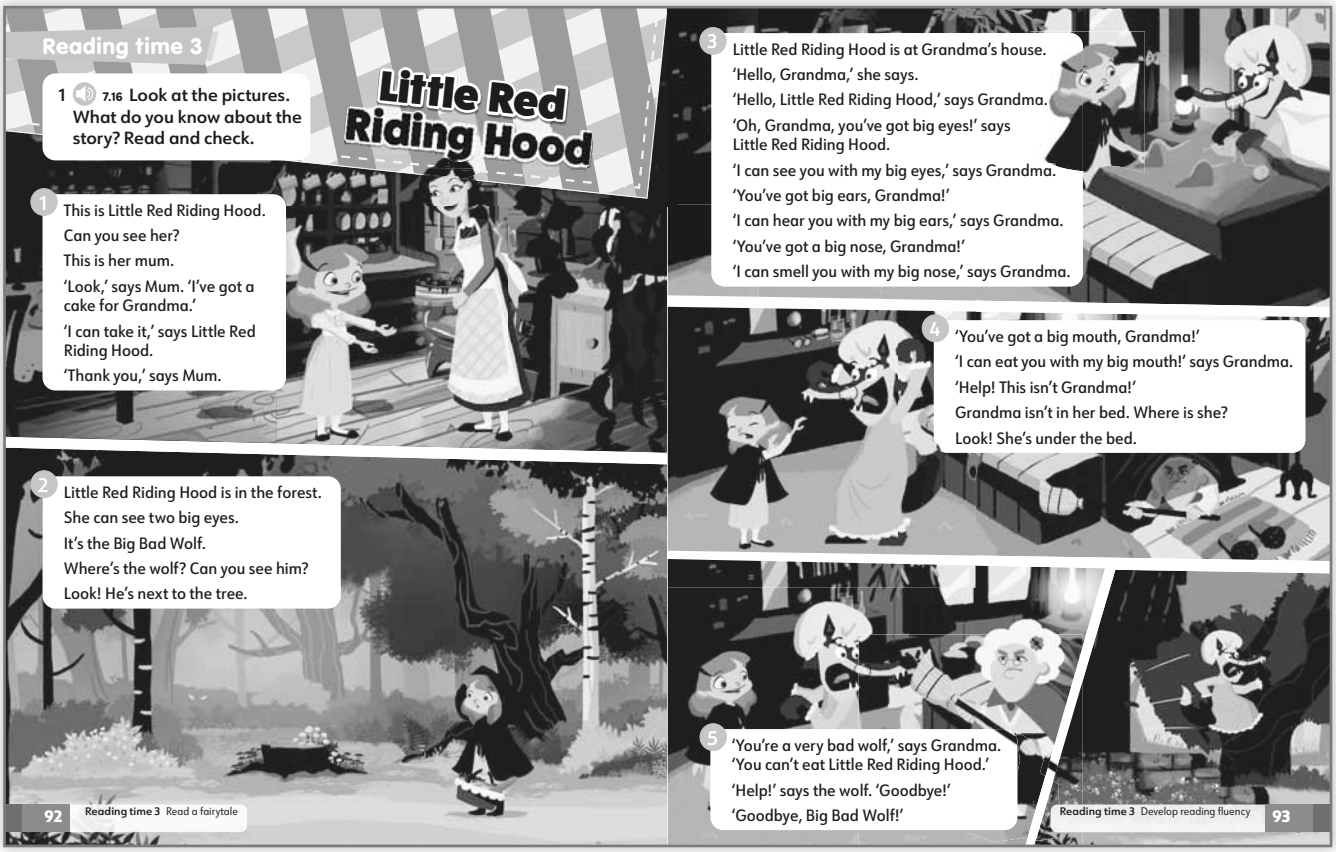
- The children complete the poem using the words from Activity 4.

Answers: Children's own answers.

6 Check your work. Tick (✓).

- The children use the check list to make sure their work is correct and complete.

Pupil's Book pages 92–93



Learning objectives: Read a fairytale; Develop reading fluency

Additional vocabulary: cake, eat, help, mouth, smell, take, wolf

Resources: Reading time 3 video

Warm-up: Team vocabulary race

- Play *Team vocabulary* race (see the Games bank, pages 14–15) with the topic *parts of the body*.

1 Look at the pictures. What do you know about the story? Read and check.

- Refer the children to the pictures in the story. Ask if they recognise, have seen or heard the story before. If they have, ask what the story is called in their language. Refer them to the title and have them repeat *Little Red Riding Hood*.
- Elicit what they know about the story. Give the children a few minutes to look at the story and find the main characters, places and animals. Then ask the following pre-reading questions:
  Who are the main characters? (The main characters are a girl, her mum, her grandma, a wolf)
  Where does the story happen? (The story happens in a forest)
  What animals are there? (There is a wolf)

7.16 Read the story.

- Play the audio of the story and have the children follow in their books. Stop at certain points and ask the children what number they are on to check that they are following closely.
- Play the audio again and encourage the children to follow the words with their finger.
- After each section, give the children time to look at the text again and recognise in the written form some of what they heard.

Check the story.

- Ask some questions to check the key aspects of the story:
- Point to picture 1 – *Where is Little Red Riding Hood? (Possible answers: Little Red Riding Hood is at home / in the kitchen.)* Point to her mother – *Who's this? (This is Little Red Riding Hood's mum.)*
- Point to picture 2 – *Where is Little Red Riding Hood? (Little Red Riding Hood is in the forest.) Where's she going? (Little Red Riding Hood is visiting her grandma / travelling to her grandma's house.) What can she see? (Little Red Riding Hood can see two big eyes.)*
- Point to picture 3 – *Is this Grandma? (No, it isn't Grandma.) Who is it? (It's the wolf / Big Bad Wolf.) The wolf's eyes, ears and nose are …? (They're big.)*

- Point to picture 4 – *Is Little Red Riding Hood happy? (No, she isn't. She's scared.) (check the meaning of Help!) Where's Grandma? (Grandma is under the bed.)*
- Point to picture 5 – *Is Grandma scared? (Grandma is angry.) Is the wolf scared? (Yes, the wolf / the Big Bad Wolf is scared.)*
- Point to picture 6 – *Where's the wolf now? (The wolf / Big Bad Wolf is in the forest.) Is he happy? (No, he isn't.)*

Rate the story

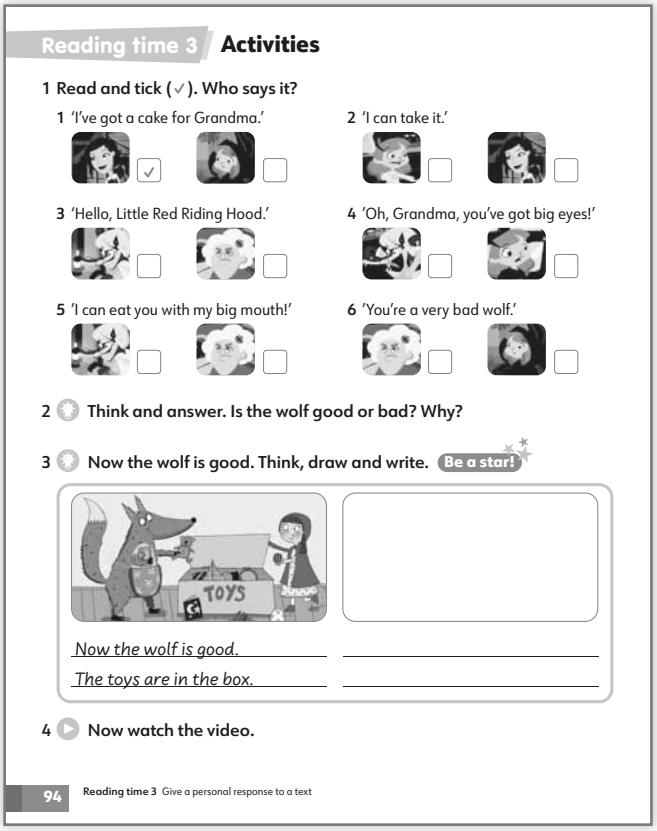
- Ask the children if they liked the story. (They will be doing more critical thinking about the story in the next lesson, but after the first encounter with the story, it is good to get some feedback and set a positive attitude for the follow-up.)
- You may wish to discuss with the children language they can use to talk about whether they liked the reading text. You may wish to write a list of adjectives on the board. Some examples could be:
  fun
  good
  interesting
  exciting
  fantastic
  boring
- Explain or demonstrate the meaning of these with the children.
- If any of the children didn't like the reading text, you may wish to encourage them to consider any positive aspects.
- Finally, you may wish to remind children that everybody has got their own opinion which may be different to their classmates, and that's OK. Encourage children to respect their classmate's opinions.

Cooler: The shark game

- Play *The shark game* (see the Games bank, pages 14–15) with key vocabulary from the story. Some examples you could use are:
  cake
  grandma
  forest
  wolf
  mouth
  help
  goodbye

Reading time 3 Activities

Pupil's Book page 94


Reading time 3 Activities

1 Read and tick (✓). Who says it?

1 'I've got a cake for Grandma.' 2 'I can take it.'

3 'Hello, Little Red Riding Hood.' 4 'Oh, Grandma, you've got big eyes!'

5 'I can eat you with my big mouth!' 6 'You're a very bad wolf.'

2 Think and answer. Is the wolf good or bad? Why?

3 Now the wolf is good. Think, draw and write. Be a star!

TOYS

Now the wolf is good.

The toys are in the box.

4 Now watch the video.

94 Reading time 3 Give a personal response to a text

Learning objectives: Give a personal response to a text

Additional vocabulary: bad, eat, mouth, take

Resources: Reading time 3 video

Materials: coloured pens or pencils

Warm-up: How many words?

- Read out some sentences from the story *Little Red Riding Hood* and have the children tell you how many words there are in each one. Suggested sentences: *This is Little Red Riding Hood. (6); Little Red Riding Hood is in the forest. (8); She can see two big eyes. (6); I can eat you with my big mouth.* (8).
- Then have the children repeat the sentences chorally

1 Read and tick (✓). Who says it?

- Refer the children to the example sentence and the two pictures. Read out the sentence and mime Mum giving the cake to Little Red Riding Hood. Point out the example tick.
- Elicit the answer to the next question. The children tick the box next to Little Red Riding Hood.
- Have the children continue the activity individually. Remind them that they can check with the story if they're not sure.
- For feedback, read out each sentence and have the children say the name of the character who says it.

Answers: 1 Mum **2** Little Red Riding Hood **3** The wolf **4** Little Red Riding Hood **5** The wolf **6** Grandma

2 Think and answer. Is the wolf good or bad? Why?

- Check that the children understand the question and allow them some time to think about their answer before opening a discussion.
- First ask the children to raise their hands to vote: *The wolf is good. / The wolf is bad.*
- Then invite the children to give some reasons for their opinions. (They may need to use L1 to answer.)

3 Now the wolf is good. Think, draw and write.

Be a star!

- Ask the children what the wolf is doing in the picture (helping put the toys in the toy box). *Is this good or bad? (good!)* Elicit what other good things we can do for other people. Get some suggestions from the class.
- Now have the children draw a picture of the wolf doing something good. Have them copy the sentence *Now the wolf is good.* and write another sentence for the picture (you may need to give some help with vocabulary for this).

4 Now watch the video.

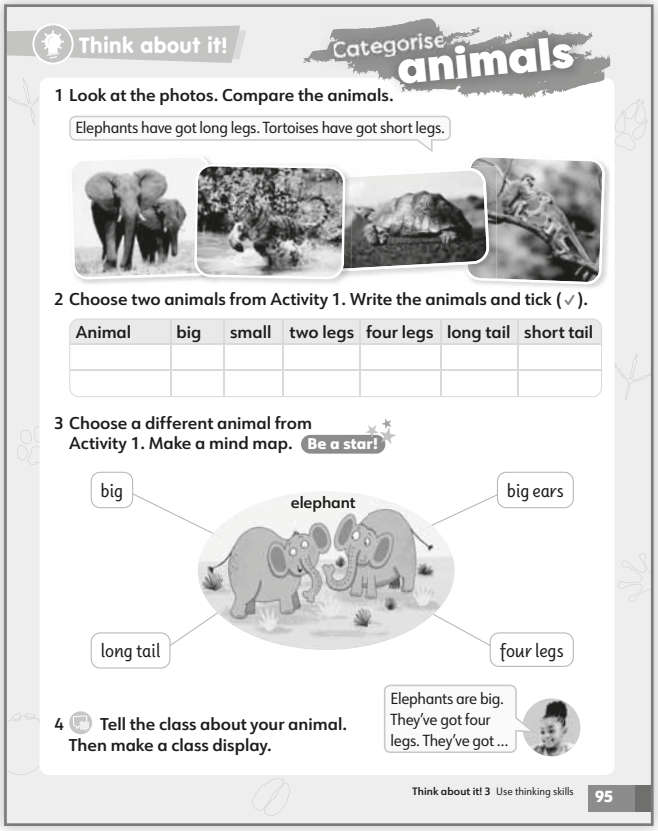
- Show the children the video of the story. Encourage them to join in with some of the key repeated sentences.
- Ask which version they preferred, the printed version or the video.

Cooler: Visualisation

- Ask the children to close their eyes and imagine they are walking in the forest and they see an animal. Ask *What animal is it? Look at the animal. Look at its eyes, nose, ears, mouth. Are they big or small? Look at its legs and tail. Are they long or short? Are you scared?*
- Have the children open their eyes. Recall the questions and encourage the children to share some of their ideas with the class, or in groups.

Think about it!

Pupil's Book page 95



Learning objectives: Use thinking skills; Make a mind map

Materials: a sheet of paper for each child

Warm-up: Simon says

- Play *Simon says* (see the Games bank, pages 14–15) with animal mimes. Say *Simon says be an elephant / a monkey / a tiger,* etc.

1 Look at the photos. Compare the animals.

- Refer the children to the animals in the pictures and elicit their names.
- Have them repeat the example sentences. Point out that they express a difference.
- Now say *Elephants have got big ears* and elicit a sentence from the children about an animal which is different (e.g. *Tortoises haven't got ears*).
- Give the children some time to look at the pictures and think about their differences. Elicit some examples of sentences about differences.

2 Choose two animals from Activity 1. Write the animals and tick (✓).

- Do an example on the board. Copy the list of categories across the board, and write *tiger* on the left. Go through the categories one by one and elicit which ones are true for a tiger. Write a tick below the true ones.
- Have the children do the same with two animals of their choice.

Answers: Children's own answers.

3 Choose a different animal from Activity 1. Make a mind map. Be a star!

- Show the children how to make a mind map on the board.
- Start with a picture of your animal (the tiger from Activity 2). Quickly draw a tiger and write *tiger* next to it.
- Then add the information from the table you made as shown in the Pupil's Book example – *big, four legs, long tail*. Draw a circle around each piece of information. Ask the children for any other information they could add, e.g. *orange and black, can run fast,* etc.
- Now the children do the same on a sheet of paper. Circulate, monitor and help as needed.

4 Tell the class about your animal. Then make a class display.

- Give a short example yourself first about the tiger, using short simple sentences – *My animal is a tiger. They're ... They've got ... They can ...*
- Invite children who want to show the class their work to come to the front and speak about it.
- Make a display of some of the mind maps and put the others in a folder to be seen by all later.

Teaching star!

Groupwork

Positive feedback is very important to boost children's confidence and encourage them to continue making an effort.

- As an alternative to presenting their mind maps to the whole class, divide the class into groups of five or six and have each child show and explain their work to the others.
- Encourage all the children to think of something positive to say about each presentation, e.g. *That's good / fantastic / interesting. Your picture is amazing / great,* etc.
- They could also make a positive suggestion, e.g. You can say *Elephants are grey*. Prompt the original speaker to respond, e.g. *Thanks. That's a good idea!*

Cooler: Enjoy your friends' work

- Have the children leave their mind maps on their desks and walk around the classroom, admiring their friends' work. While they do this, call out *Stop*! now and again and invite the children to say what they like about the mind map they are looking at.

8 Old and new clothes

Lesson 1 Vocabulary

Pupil's Book pages 96–97



Learning objectives: Identify and use new words: clothes; Sing a song using the target vocabulary

Vocabulary: dress, jacket, shirt, shoes, skirt, socks, trousers, T-shirt

Resources: Flashcards; Vocabulary worksheet 1

Warm-up: The big picture

- Refer the children to the picture on page 96. Ask *What can you see? What colours can you see? Can you find Bot? (He's on a chair behind the clothing rack.)* Ask what they think the people are doing and where they are.

ESDC

12 RESPONSIBLE CONSUMPTION AND PRODUCTION

What can we do with old clothes?

Introduce pupils to Sustainable Development Goal 12: *Responsible consumption and production.*

Ask: *What can we do with old clothes?*

- Read out the question and ask if anyone can translate it into L1. This question helps the children explore how they behave in a considerate and respectful way in the community.
- Remind the children of the discussion about the importance of keeping old things, from Unit 2. Ask they what they can remember about why keeping old things is important. Explain that keeping old clothes is important for the same reasons, or to do other things with clothes rather than just throw them away.
- Ask the children to think about what old clothes they have. Elicit examples, and ask what we can do with old clothes other than wear them.

Possible answers: we can use them for dressing up, to make new things, to upcycle them; we can also take them to a charity shop or clothes bank to help other people.

1 8.1 Listen and say.

- Play the audio. Have the children listen and point at the pictures.
- Play the audio again. The children point and repeat.
- Play the audio one more time and have the children do a mime of putting on each item.

8.2 Then listen and number.

- Play the audio, pausing after the first word to point out the example answer.
- Play the rest of the audio for the children to number the words.
- For feedback, say each number and have the class call out the word. Ask different children to repeat each word to check pronunciation.

Audioscript

1 *shoes,* ***2*** *shirt,* ***3*** *T-shirt,* ***4*** *trousers,* ***5*** *skirt,* ***6*** *jacket,* ***7*** *dress,* ***8*** *socks*

Answers: dress – **7**, jacket – **6**, shirt – **2**, shoes – **1**, skirt – **5**, socks – **8**, trousers – **4**, T-shirt – **3**

2 Look at the picture. Find the clothes in Activity 1.

- Hold up your Pupil's Book, point to the *dress* in Activity 1 and then indicate the big picture. Say *Can you see a dress?* Have the children point to the dress in the big picture and repeat *dress*.
- Repeat with the other clothes.
- Nominate different children to choose an item and say the name. Have the rest of the class find the item in the big picture.

3 Look at the clothes in the picture. Are they old or new?

- Use an old and new item of your clothes or other possessions to help the children recall *old* and *new*.
- Refer the children to the clothes in the picture and ask *Are they all new? Are they all old?*
- Take a class vote – have the children raise their hands to vote for: *all old; some old* and *some new; all new*.
- Ask the children why they think that.

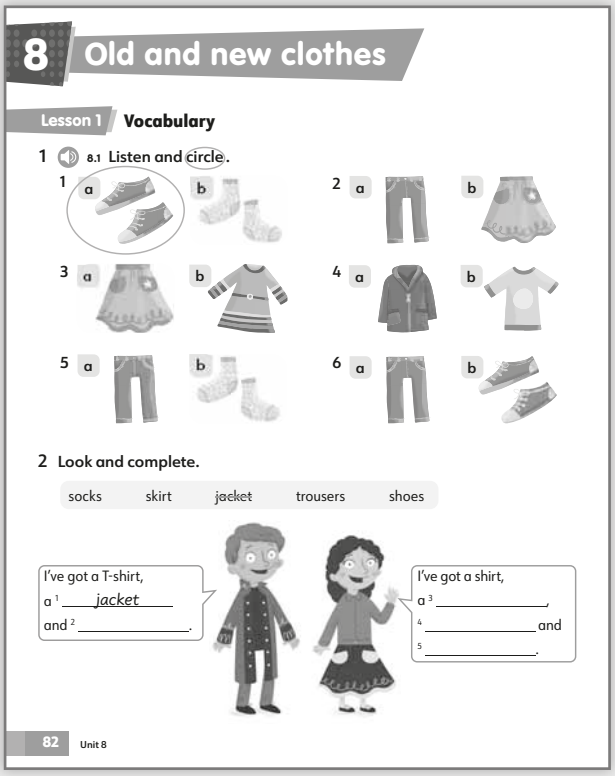
4 8.3 Sing a song. Be a star!

- Ask the children to turn their Pupil's Book face down. Explain that they will hear a song and that they should raise their hands every time they hear one of the words from Activity 1. Play the song and join in the actions with the children. Check the meaning of *without* and *mess*.
- Now have the children look at the song in their Pupil's Book. Play it again pausing after each line for them to repeat (singing).
- Play the song and have the children point to the items of clothing as they are mentioned – either their own or a friend's or, if necessary, in the picture. Then play the song again and have the children point and sing. The children will enjoy doing this a few times

Cooler: A group mime game

- Invite five or six children to come to the front of the classroom. Secretly show each one a different item of clothing from Activity 1. They all have ten seconds to mime putting on that item while the rest of the class watch. Then say *Stop!*
- Their classmates raise their hands to say names and the corresponding item of clothing. The children say *yes* or *no*.
- Repeat with different children and clothes.

Workbook page 82



1 8.1 Listen and circle.

Audioscript

1 *My shoes are blue.* ***2*** *That's my skirt.* ***3*** *My dress is red.* ***4*** *This is my jacket.* ***5*** *Where are my socks?* ***6*** *My trousers are purple.*

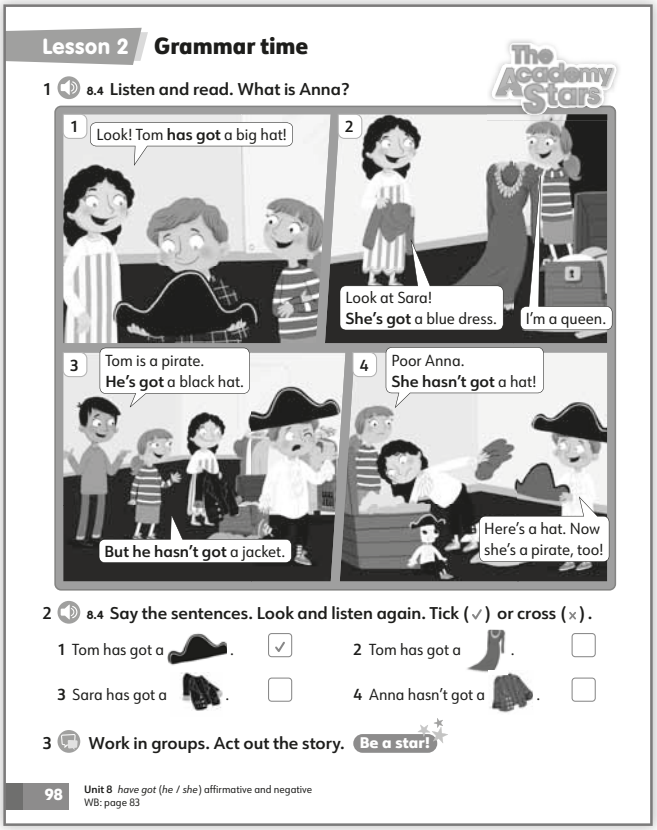
Answers: 1 a **2** b **3** b **4** a **5** b **6** a

2 Look and complete.

Answers: 1 jacket **2** trousers / shoes **3** skirt **4** socks / shoes **5** shoes / socks

Lesson 2 Grammar time

Pupil's Book page 98



Learning objectives: Understand and use *have got* (*he / she*); Read and act out a story using the target grammar

Grammar: *have got* (*he / she*) affirmative and negative

Review vocabulary: clothes

Materials: paper, pens or pencils

8.3 Warm-up: Sing the song!

- Play the song *Where's my shoe?* and have the children join in and point to the clothes around them.

1 8.4 Listen and read. What is Anna?

- Refer the children to the pictures, and ask *Who can you see? What are their names?* Ask what are they doing (dressing up).
- Play the audio. Have the children follow in their books and find the answer to the question *What is Anna?*
- Play the audio again and have the children nod their heads when there is an affirmative (*he / she's got*), and shake their heads for the negative (*he / she hasn't got*). Elicit the difference between *he's got* and *she's got* (*he's for boys and she's for girls*).
- Play the audio one more time for the children to repeat chorally.

Answer: She's a pirate.

2 8.4 Say the sentences. Look and listen again. Tick (✓) or cross (✗).

- Refer the children to the small pictures and elicit the name of the items. Have the children say the full sentences.
- Play the audio of the story again and stop after *Tom has got a big hat*. Point to the picture and say *Yes* or *no*? (*Yes*). Indicate the example tick for *yes*.
- Play the rest of the story and have the children tick or cross each item.
- For feedback, call out the numbers and have the children say *yes* or *no*.

Answers: 1 ✓ 2 ✗ 3 ✗ 4 ✓

3 Work in groups. Act out the story.

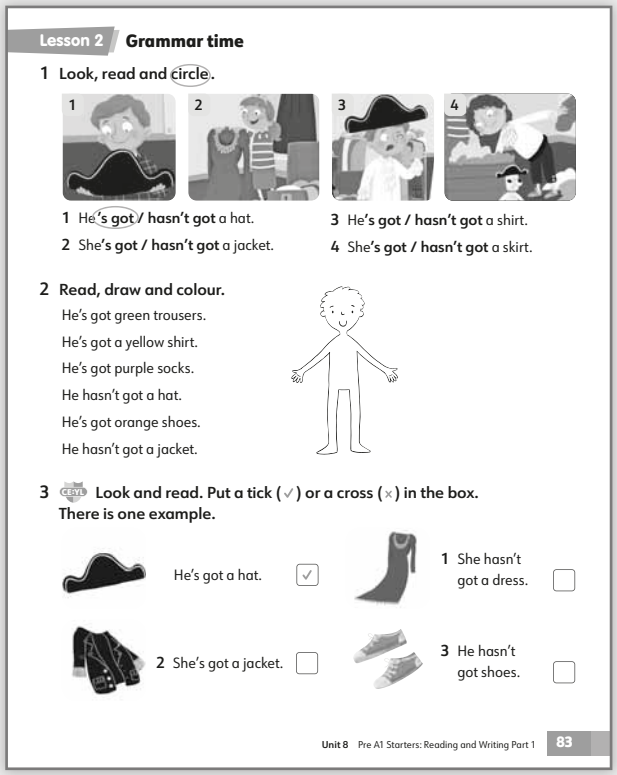
Be a star!

- Play the audio again for the class to repeat each line chorally. Check their pronunciation of *he / she's got* and *he / she hasn't got*.
- Ask *How many characters are in the story?* (*four*) Divide the class into groups of four and either have them decide who will be each character, or designate the roles by giving each child a number 1–4: number 1s are Tom, number 2s Anna, number 3s Alex and number 4s Sara.
- Allow the children a few minutes to practise acting out the story. Monitor, encourage and check pronunciation.
- Ask if any groups would like to act out the story for the whole class. Alternatively, they could take turns to act it out for another group.
- If you wish, you could ask the children to change roles and act out the story again.

Cooler: Team sentences

- Play *Team sentences* (see the Games bank, pages 14–15). Suggested sentences: *Tom has got a big hat. She's got a blue dress. He's got a black hat. He hasn't got a jacket. She hasn't got a hat.*

Workbook page 83



Lesson 2 **Grammar time**

1 Look, read and circle.

1 He's got / hasn't got a hat.
2 She's got / hasn't got a jacket.
3 He's got / hasn't got a shirt.
4 She's got / hasn't got a skirt.

2 Read, draw and colour.

He's got green trousers.
He's got a yellow shirt.
He's got purple socks.
He hasn't got a hat.
He's got orange shoes.
He hasn't got a jacket.

3 CE:YL Look and read. Put a tick (✓) or a cross (×) in the box. There is one example.

He's got a hat. ☑
1 She hasn't got a dress. ☐
2 She's got a jacket. ☐
3 He hasn't got shoes. ☐

Unit 8 Pre A1 Starters: Reading and Writing Part 1 83

1 Look, read and circle.

Answers: 1 's got **2** hasn't got **3** 's got **4** hasn't got

2 Read, draw and colour.

Answers: Children should draw trousers and colour them green, draw a shirt and colour it yellow, draw socks and colour them purple and draw shoes and colour them orange.

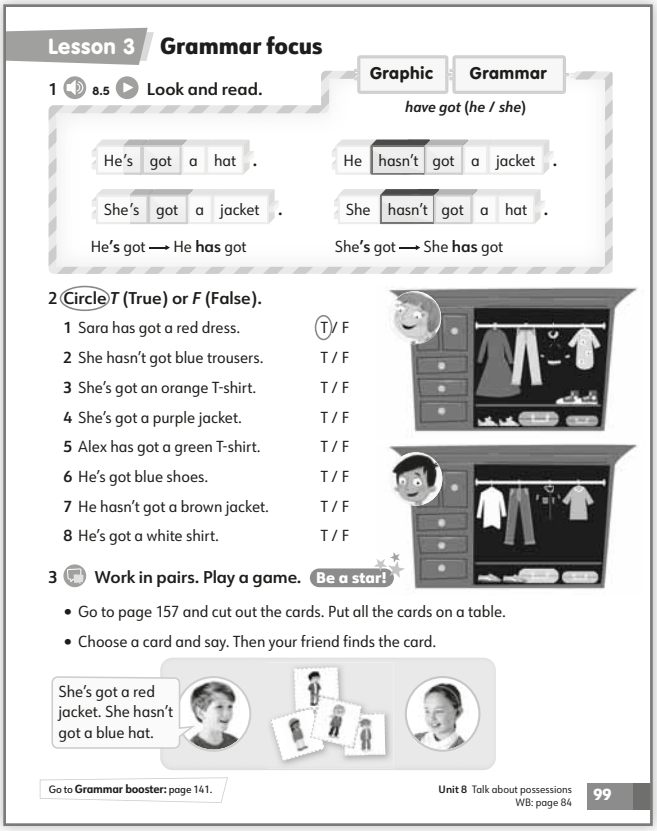
3 CE:YL Look and read. Put a tick (✓) or a cross (✕) in the box. There is one example.

- This activity helps the children prepare for Part 1 of the Reading and Writing paper of the Cambridge English: Pre A1 Starters test. The children look, read and tick or cross the boxes.
- If done in class, go through the example first, point to the picture of the hat and indicate the tick for *yes*.
- Point to the other pictures and read out the sentences. Elicit the names of the items of clothing. Then give them some quiet time to read and tick or cross the boxes accordingly.
- Invite different children to read out the sentences and have the rest of the class call out *yes* or *no*. Write the ticks and crosses on the board next to the corresponding number.
- (To help prepare for this part of the test, the children need plenty of practice in recognising and naming items.)

Answers: 1 ✕ **2** ✓ **3** ✕

Lesson 3 Grammar focus

Pupil's Book page 99



Learning objectives: Talk about possessions

Grammar: *have got* (*he / she*) affirmative and negative: *He's got a hat. He hasn't got a jacket. She's got a jacket. She hasn't got a hat.*

Review vocabulary: clothes

Resources: Graphic Grammar video; Grammar worksheet 1

Materials: paper, pens or pencils, scissors

Warm-up: Ready, set, draw!

- Play *Ready, set, draw!* (see the Games bank, pages 14–15). Use pictures of the items of clothing from page 97.

1 8.5 Look and read.

- Play the audio and have the children follow in their books. Have them stand up for affirmative sentences and sit down for negative sentences.
- Play the audio again and have the children repeat each line.
- Highlight the contractions *he's* and *hasn't* by counting out the full version of each sentence on your fingers, and then pushing the *he has* and *has not* fingers together to show the contraction.
- Play the audio one more time for the children to repeat chorally.

- If using the video, tell the children they will see a video of children in a clothes shop. Play the video and let the children watch and enjoy.
- Play the video again and have the children repeat the key sentences.
- Have the children do actions for the affirmative (nod head) and negative (shake head), or whatever actions are commonly used in their culture.

2 Circle *T* (True) or *F* (False).

- Refer the children to the pictures. Ask what clothes they can see and whose they are.
- Read out the example sentence and ask the children *yes* or *no*? Point to the red dress and show the children the *T* for True. Elicit and / or clarify the meaning of *true* and *false*.
- Have the children complete the activity individually and compare with a friend.
- Invite pairs of children to read out the sentences and the others to call out *true* or *false*. Ask for whole-class agreement each time, and write the answers on the board.

Answers: 1 T **2** T **3** F **4** F **5** T **6** F **7** F **8** T

3 Work in pairs. Play a game.

Be a star!

- Organise the children in pairs and have them open their books to page 157 and make sure the children all have scissors with which to cut out the cards.
- Give the children time to cut out the cards. For this activity, they will use two sets of cards.
- Work through the example activity with the children. Point to the card and to what the girl is wearing. Say *She's got a red jacket. She hasn't got …* and allow a volunteer to answer a *blue hat.* If necessary, ask volunteers to present another example to the whole class before the children begin working in pairs.
- The children take turns to look at the cards and describe what one character has / hasn't got. Their friend then guesses which character is being described.
- Circulate and monitor.

Teaching star!

Pairwork

Children will happily repeat an activity if they are working with a different partner. For Activity 3 above:

- Have the children do the activity as described above with one friend.
- Then divide the class into different pairs (e.g. the person behind them rather than next to them) and repeat.
- The 'novelty' of talking to a different person makes the activity fresh. Children also get a wider range of interaction.

Grammar booster

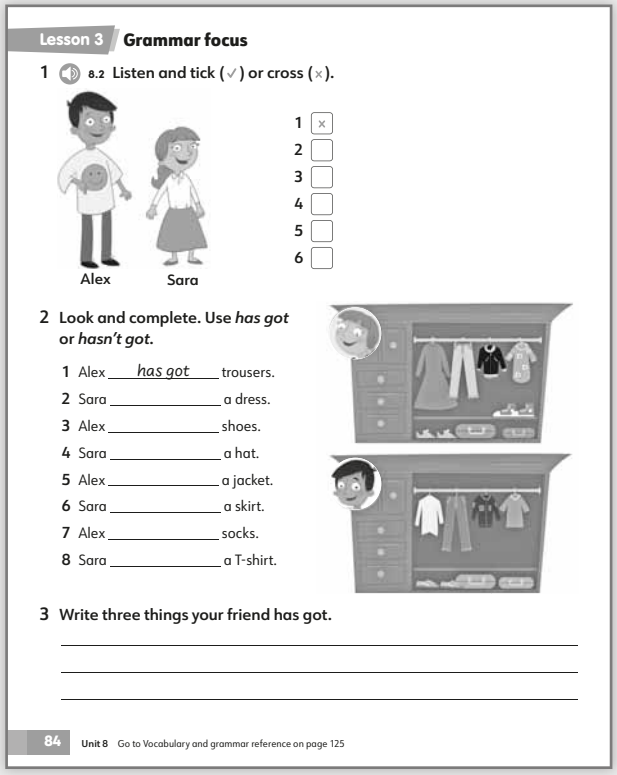
For additional practice, ask the children to turn to page 141 of their Pupil's Book to complete Activity 1. If the children need more grammar practice before the communicative Activity 3, have them complete this activity first. Alternatively, you may wish to have the children complete this activity at home.

Answers: 1 hasn't got **2** 's got **3** 's got **4** hasn't got **5** 's got **6** hasn't got

Cooler: A memory game

- Start the 'chain' by saying *My friend has got … a black jacket*. Encourage the next child to say *My friend has got a black jacket …* and add another item, e.g. *and a green dress*. Continue around the class or in groups. If necessary, allow other children to help by suggesting new clothes and colours.

Workbook page 84



Lesson 3 **Grammar focus**

1 8.2 Listen and tick (✓) or cross (×).

Alex Sara

1 ×
2 ☐
3 ☐
4 ☐
5 ☐
6 ☐

2 Look and complete. Use *has got* or *hasn't got*.

1 Alex *has got* trousers.
2 Sara _____ a dress.
3 Alex _____ shoes.
4 Sara _____ a hat.
5 Alex _____ a jacket.
6 Sara _____ a skirt.
7 Alex _____ socks.
8 Sara _____ a T-shirt.

3 Write three things your friend has got.

_____
_____
_____

84 Unit 8 Go to Vocabulary and grammar reference on page 125

Grammar reference:

Remind the children that they can refer to the grammar reference on page 125 to help them when completing these activities.

1 8.2 Listen and tick (✓) or cross (✗).

Audioscript

1 *Alex has got a shirt.*
2 *Sara has got a dress.*
3 *Alex hasn't got a hat.*
4 *Sara hasn't got shoes.*
5 *Sara has got a skirt.*
6 *Alex has got trousers.*

Answers: 1 ✗ **2** ✗ **3** ✓ **4** ✗ **5** ✓ **6** ✓

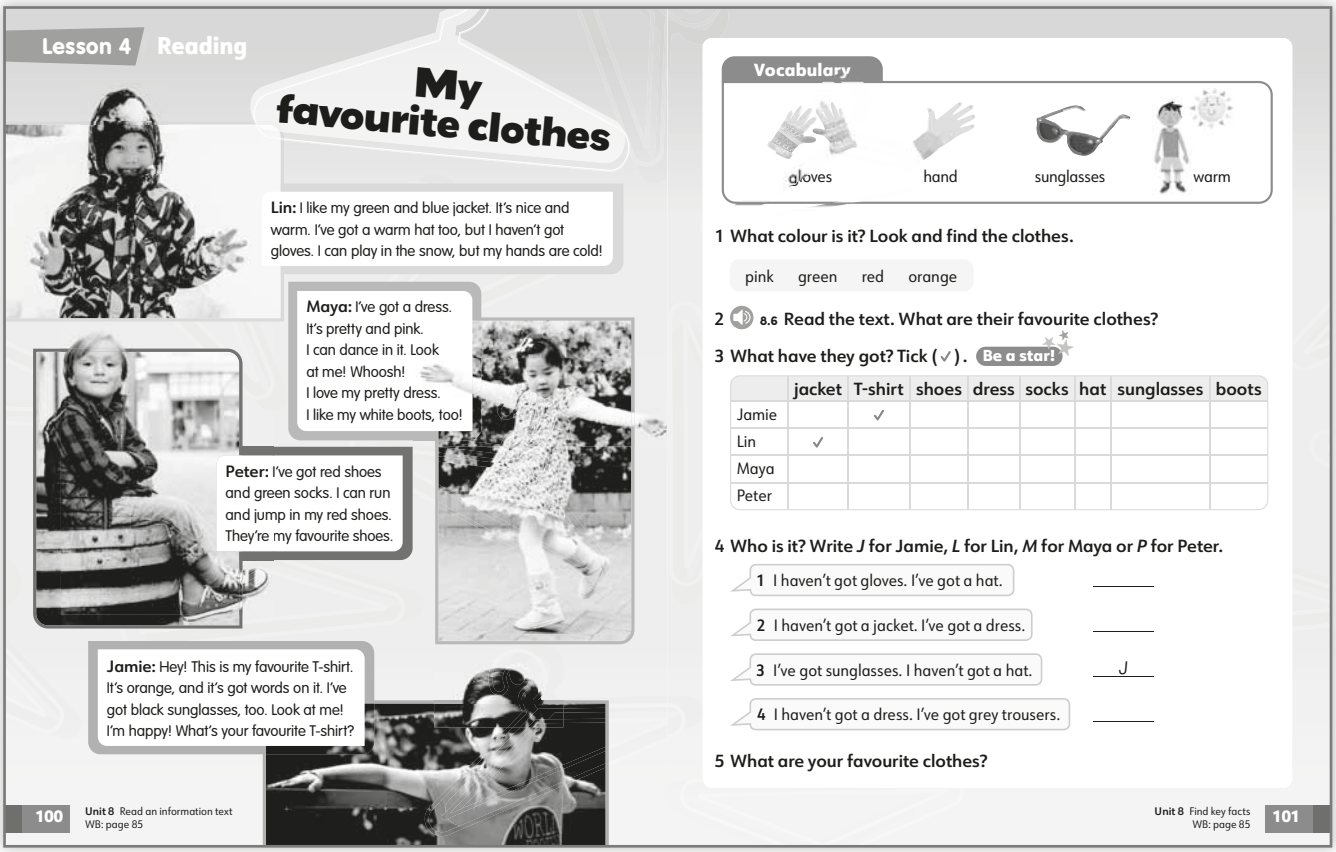
2 Look and complete. Use *has got* or *hasn't got*.

Answers: 1 has got **2** has got **3** has got **4** hasn't got **5** has got **6** hasn't got **7** hasn't got **8** has got

3 Write three things your friend has got.

Answers: Children's own answers.

Pupil's Book pages 100–101



Learning objectives: Read an information text; Find key facts

Vocabulary: gloves, hand, sunglasses, warm

Review vocabulary: cold, colours, dress, happy, jump, run

Resources: Flashcards; Vocabulary worksheet 2

Warm-up: How many words?

- Read out some sentences and have the children tell you how many words there are in each one. Suggested sentences: *Sara has got a red dress.* (6); *She hasn't got blue trousers.* (5); *Tom has got a green T-shirt.* (6); *He's got blue shoes.* (4); *He hasn't got a brown jacket.* (6)
- Then have the children repeat the sentences chorally.

Vocabulary

- Refer the children to the vocabulary panel on page 101 and read out the words for the class to repeat.
- Do a little mime for each one: *gloves* – put on a pair of gloves; *hand* – wave a hand; *sunglasses* – put on sunglasses; *warm* – wrap your arms around yourself (hug yourself) while exhibiting a pleasant facial expression. Say a word and encourage the children to do the mime.

1 What colour is it? Look and find the clothes.

- Have the children look at the words in the yellow box. Then refer them to the photos on page 100 to find items to match the four colours.

Answers: pink dress, green jacket, green socks, red shirt, red shoes, orange t-shirt

2 8.6 Read the text. What are their favourite clothes?

- Refer the children to the photos and say *These children have got their favourite clothes on. Can you tell what their favourite clothes are?*
- Ask the children to read the text to find the answers. (You may wish to play the audio for the children to follow in their books, or just allow them to read the text at their own pace.)

Answers: Lin – jacket; Maya – dress; Peter – shoes; Jamie – T-shirt

Teaching star!

Reading

The skill of scanning a text and finding key words, rather than reading word by word, is an important one to develop.

- Write these key words on the board and have the children repeat them – *gloves, dress, shoes and T-shirt*.
- Now use *gloves* as an example. Hold up your book and, quietly repeating the word *gloves* to yourself, move your finger quickly across the first part of the text until you find the word *gloves*.
- Ask the whole class to search for *dress* in the same way – quietly repeating the word and moving quickly through the text just looking for the key word. When they find it, have them point to it in their books.
- Repeat for *shoes* and *T-shirt*.

3 What have they got? Tick (✓).

Be a star!

- Have the children look at the chart. Point out the example answers. Ask *Who has got a jacket?* (Lin) *Who has got a T-shirt?* (Jamie)
- Have the children read the text and look at the photos to find the items that each child has got. Instruct them to place a tick mark in the box for the item and the corresponding child.

Answers: Jamie – T-shirt, sunglasses; Lin – jacket, hat; Maya – dress, boots; Peter – shoes, socks

4 Who is it? Write *J* for Jamie, *L* for Lin, *M* for Maya or *P* for Peter.

- Read out each of the four sentences.
- Have the children look back to the text and pictures to find out which child each sentence refers to.

Answers: 1 Lin **2** Maya **3** Jamie **4** Peter

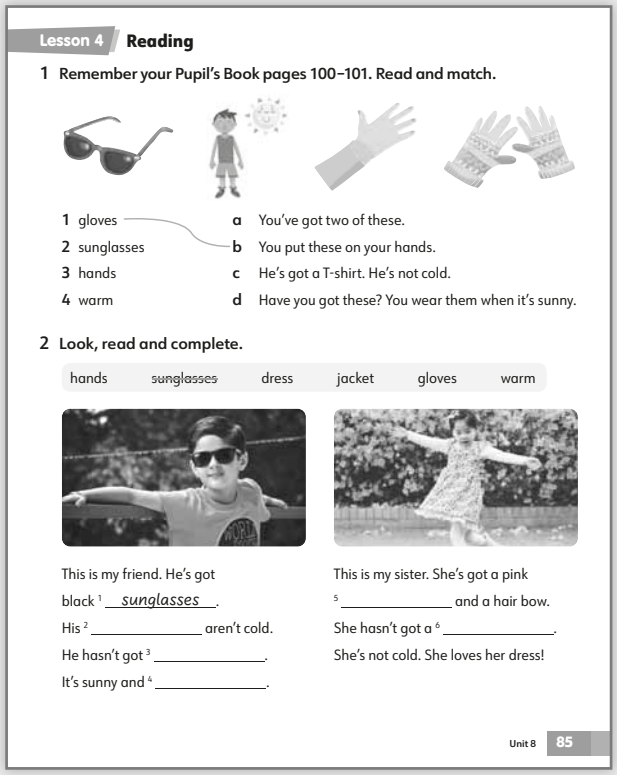
5 What are your favourite clothes?

- Give the children a little time to think about the question.
- Nominate a few of the children to share their answers with the class.

Cooler: Disappearing sentences

- Play *Disappearing sentences* (see the Games bank, pages 14–15) using the first three lines of *Lin's* text.

Workbook page 85



Lesson 4 **Reading**

1 Remember your Pupil's Book pages 100–101. Read and match.

1	gloves	a	You've got two of these.
2	sunglasses	b	You put these on your hands.
3	hands	c	He's got a T-shirt. He's not cold.
4	warm	d	Have you got these? You wear them when it's sunny.

2 Look, read and complete.

hands ~~sunglasses~~ dress jacket gloves warm

This is my friend. He's got black [1] *sunglasses*. His [2] _____ aren't cold. He hasn't got [3] _____. It's sunny and [4] _____.

This is my sister. She's got a pink [5] _____ and a hair bow. She hasn't got a [6] _____. She's not cold. She loves her dress!

Unit 8 85

1 Remember your Pupil's Book pages 100–101. Read and match.

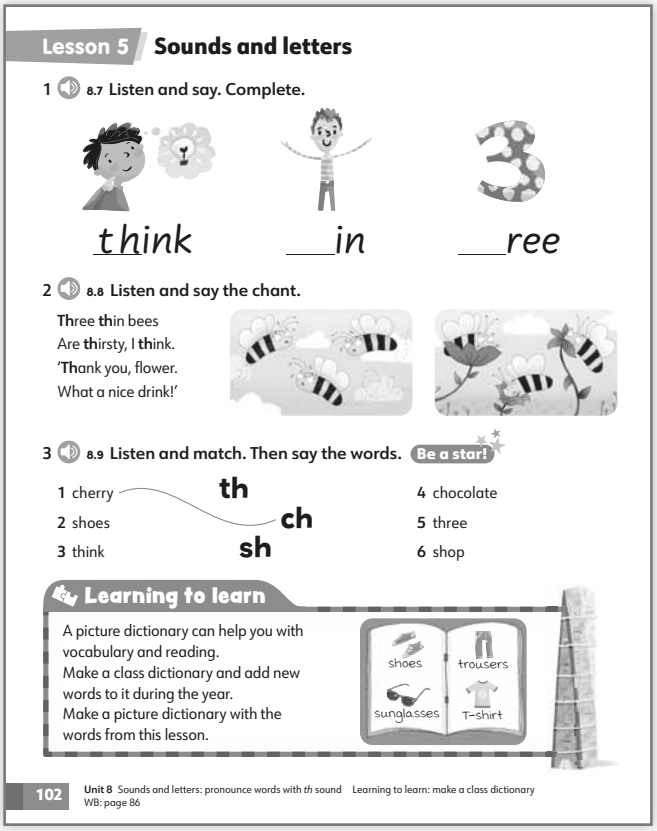
Answers: 1 b **2** d **3** a **4** c

2 Look, read and complete.

Answers: 1 sunglasses **2** hands **3** gloves **4** warm **5** dress **6** jacket

Lesson 5 Sounds and letters

Pupil's Book page 102



Learning objectives: Sounds and letters: pronounce words with *th* sound; Learning to learn: make a class dictionary

Sounds and letters words: thin, think, three

Resources: Sounds and letters worksheet

Materials: paper, pens or pencils

Warm-up: Team spelling

- Play *Team spelling* (see the Games bank, pages 14–15) with key words from the text *My favourite clothes*, e.g. *gloves, jacket, sunglasses, hands, dress, socks, shoes*.

1 8.7 Listen and say. Complete.

- Refer the children to the pictures. Ask if they can guess the words.
- Play the audio for the children to repeat the words chorally. Do this twice.
- Point to the *th* in the word *think* in your book. Ask *What are these letters?* (*th*) *What's the sound?* (/θ/)
- Write a big, clear *th* on the board as a model for the children. Have them complete the *th* in the three words.

Audioscript

/θ/ /θ/ /θ/ *think*
/θ/ /θ/ /θ/ *thin*
/θ/ /θ/ /θ/ *three*

2 8.8 Listen and say the chant.

- Play the chant and have the children follow in their books. Have them raise their hands every time they see / hear a word with *th*.
- Play the chant again, pausing after each line for the children to repeat. Pay particular attention to the *th* sound.
- Play the chant once more and have the children join in as much as they can.
- Finally, divide the class into two groups, with one group saying the first two lines and the other the second two. Then change roles.

3 8.9 Listen and match. Then say the words.

Be a star!

- Refer the children to the letters in the middle and ask *What are these letters? What are their sounds?*
- Go through the example – point out that *cherry* is spelt with a *ch* and has a /tʃ/ sound.
- Play the audio and have the children match the rest of the words to their letters / sounds.
- Say each word, and have the children respond with the sound they linked it to. Then make the sound and have the children call out the corresponding words.

Answers: 1 ch **2** sh **3** th **4** ch **5** th **6** sh

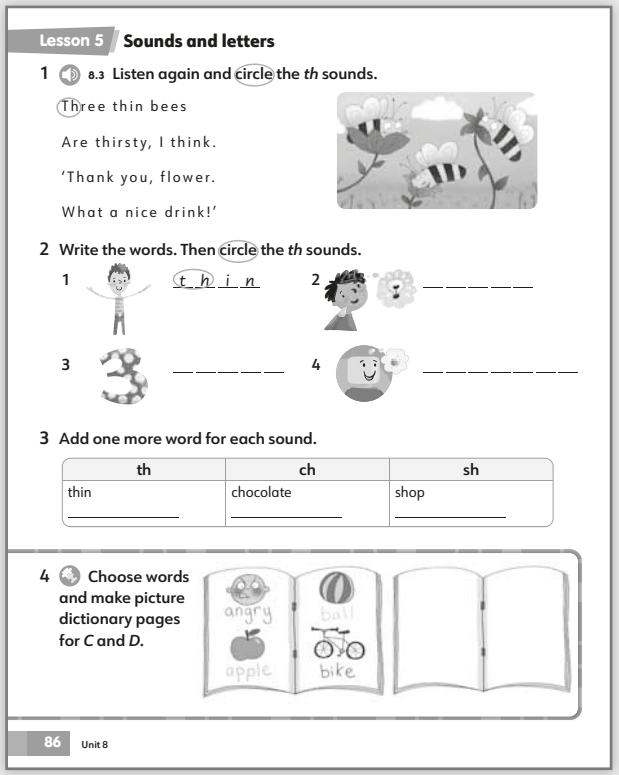
Learning to learn

- Read out and clarify the message of the *Learning to learn* box. Ask what other words can go in the section for *S* (*skirt, socks*) and *T* (*tail, toy, tree,* etc.).
- Divide the class into six groups and assign each group one of the following words: cherry, chocolate, shoes, shop, think, three. Give each group a piece of paper and ask them to draw a picture of their word, and write the word underneath, to go in the class picture dictionary.
- When they have finished, each group holds up their drawing for the other groups to say the word.
- Collect the drawings and use them to make a picture dictionary, which you can add to during the year.

Cooler: Physical spelling

- Play *Physical spelling* (see the Games bank, pages 14–15) with the words from Activity 3.

Workbook page 86



Lesson 5 **Sounds and letters**

1 8.3 Listen again and circle the *th* sounds.

(Th)ree thin bees
Are thirsty, I think.
'(Th)ank you, flower.
What a nice drink!'

2 Write the words. Then circle the *th* sounds.

1 (t_h) i n
2 _____
3 _____
4 _____

3 Add one more word for each sound.

th	ch	sh
thin	chocolate	shop

4 Choose words and make picture dictionary pages for *C* and *D*.

angry
apple
ball
bike

86 Unit 8

1 8.3 Listen again and circle the *th* sounds.

Answers: (Th)ree (th)in bees
Are (th)irsty, I (th)ink.
'(Th)ank you, flower.
What a nice drink!'

2 Write the words. Then circle the *th* sounds.

Answers: **1** (th)in **2** (th)ink **3** (th)ree **4** (th)irsty

3 Add one more word for each sound.

Answers: Children's own answers.

4 Choose words and make picture dictionary pages for *C* and *D*.

Answers: Children's own answers.

Lesson 6 Language in use

Pupil's Book page 103



Learning objectives: Present continuous questions and answers

Review vocabulary: colours

Resources: Language in use video; Grammar worksheet 2

8.8 Warm-up: Say the chant again

- Using mime if necessary to prompt them, ask the children to recall the chant from Lesson 5. Then play the audio to see how well they remembered. Write it on the board.
- Have the whole class say the chant together.

1 8.10 Listen and say.

- Tell the children they will hear some children talking about costumes. Play the audio and have the children follow in their books.
- Play the audio again for the children to repeat chorally.
- Ask the children what we use *wearing* to talk about (our clothes at the moment).
- Write the first answer from the dialogue on the board and point to the *a* before *white shirt* and the fact that there is no *a* before *black trousers*. Elicit or explain that we use *a / an* with just one thing (singular), but that some clothes like *trousers* have a plural form and so don't use *a*.
- Play the audio one more time, and have the children repeat and imitate the intonation as closely as possible.

- If using the video, play it and let the children watch and enjoy it.
- Play the video again and stop after each question to elicit the answer from the class. Play the video to confirm and have them all repeat it.
- Now play the video one more time and have the children repeat the questions and answers. Encourage them to imitate the intonation and body language as closely as possible.

2 Work in pairs. Ask and answer.

- Ask the children to name the items in the pictures. Each time, ask *A (T-shirt) or no 'a'*?
- Invite two confident children to read out the example dialogue.
- Elicit the question and drill it with the class. Do the same for the example answer – *I'm wearing a black T-shirt.*
- Point out that it is the same dialogue as in Activity 1, but the blue words are changed for the items in the boxes.
- Divide the class into pairs to continue the activity. Circulate, monitor and pay attention to the children's use of singular and plural forms. Fast finishers can change roles and do it again.
- When they have finished, set them a challenge to do the same from memory. The child asking can check the correct answer in the book.

3 Now it's your turn. What are you wearing today?

Be a star!

- Have the children look at their own clothes and practise describing them first, silently in their heads. Help them with further vocabulary if necessary.
- Then have the children tell a friend about their clothes. Before they start, remind the children of the phrase *I'm wearing ...* and elicit a few examples from confident children.

Teaching star!

Extension

The children can extend the language practice from Activity 3 and give their partner a reason to listen.

- Have the children work in pairs. They turn to the big picture on page 96 and make sentences using the clothes in the picture.
- The child listening has to find and point to the clothes mentioned.

Grammar booster

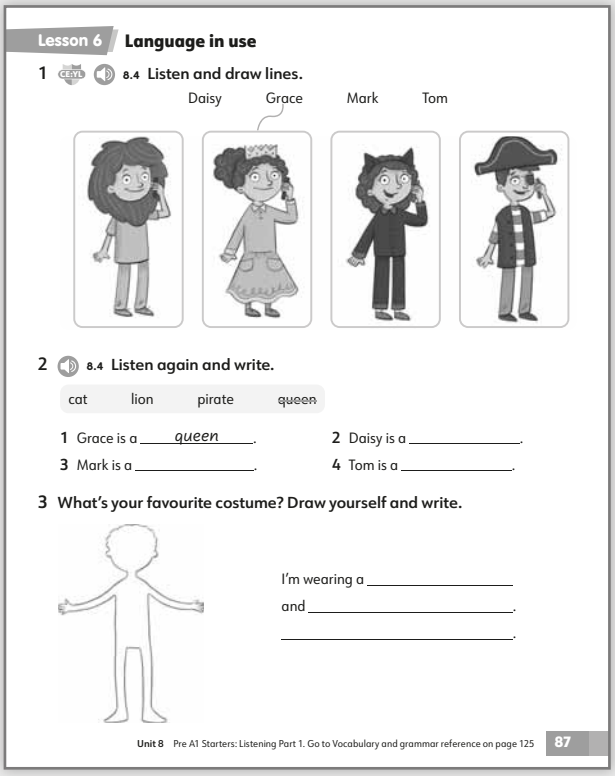
For additional practice, ask the children to turn to page 141 of their Pupil's Book to complete Activity 2. You may also wish to have the children complete this activity at home.

Answers: 1 I'm wearing a pink shirt and pink trousers and brown shoes. **2** I'm wearing a green jacket and purple trousers and purple shoes.

Cooler: Visualisation

- Ask the children to close their eyes and imagine what you tell them. Say: *Imagine you're at a birthday party. What are you wearing? What colour are your clothes? Imagine you're in the forest. What are you wearing? Is it different from the birthday party? Imagine you're in an ice house. It's very cold! What are you wearing? Imagine you're a pirate! What are you wearing?*
- Have the children open their eyes. Recall the questions and encourage the children to tell a friend about what clothes they are wearing in each situation, e.g. *In the forest, I'm wearing blue trousers and a green jacket. I've got a hat.*

Workbook page 87



Lesson 6 **Language in use**

1 CE:YL 8.4 **Listen and draw lines.**

Daisy Grace Mark Tom

2 8.4 **Listen again and write.**

cat lion pirate ~~queen~~

1 Grace is a *queen*. 2 Daisy is a _____.
3 Mark is a _____. 4 Tom is a _____.

3 **What's your favourite costume? Draw yourself and write.**

I'm wearing a _____
and _____.
_____.

Unit 8 Pre A1 Starters: Listening Part 1. Go to Vocabulary and grammar reference on page 125 87

Grammar reference:

Remind the children that they can refer to the grammar reference on page 125 to help them when completing these activities.

1 CE:YL 8.4 Listen and draw lines.

- This activity helps the children prepare for Part 1 of the Listening paper of the Cambridge English: Pre A1 Starters test. The children listen, look and draw lines.
- Go through the example first, point to the picture of Grace and trace the line with your finger.
- Give the children time to look at the pictures, then listen and draw lines for the rest of the activity.
- Invite different children to offer their responses and have the rest of the class call out *yes* or *no*.
- (To help prepare for this part of the test, the children need plenty of practice in recognising and naming the costume pieces.)

Audioscript

Speaker: *Look at the picture. Listen and look. There is one example.*

1 Daisy: *Hello Grace! What are you wearing?*
Grace: *Hi, Daisy. I'm wearing a long dress.*
Daisy: *Are you a queen?*
Grace: *Yes, I am.*
Speaker: *Can you see the line? This is an example. Now you listen and draw lines.*

2 Daisy: *Hello Tom! What are you wearing?*
Tom: *I'm wearing yellow trousers and a yellow T-shirt.*
Daisy: *Are you a cat, Tom?*
Tom: *No, I'm not. I'm a lion!*

3 Daisy: *Hello Mark! What are you wearing?*
Mark: *I'm wearing trousers, a T-shirt and a hat.*
Daisy: *Are you a pirate, Mark?*
Mark: *Yes, I am!*

4 Mark: *And you, Daisy? What are you wearing?*
Daisy: *I'm wearing black trousers and a black shirt.*
Mark: *Have you got a hat?*
Daisy: *No, I haven't. But I have got funny little ears!*
Mark: *Are you a cat?*
Daisy: *Yes, I am!*

Answers: 1 Grace – 2 **2** Tom – 1 **3** Mark – 4 **4** Daisy – 3

2 8.4 Listen again and write.

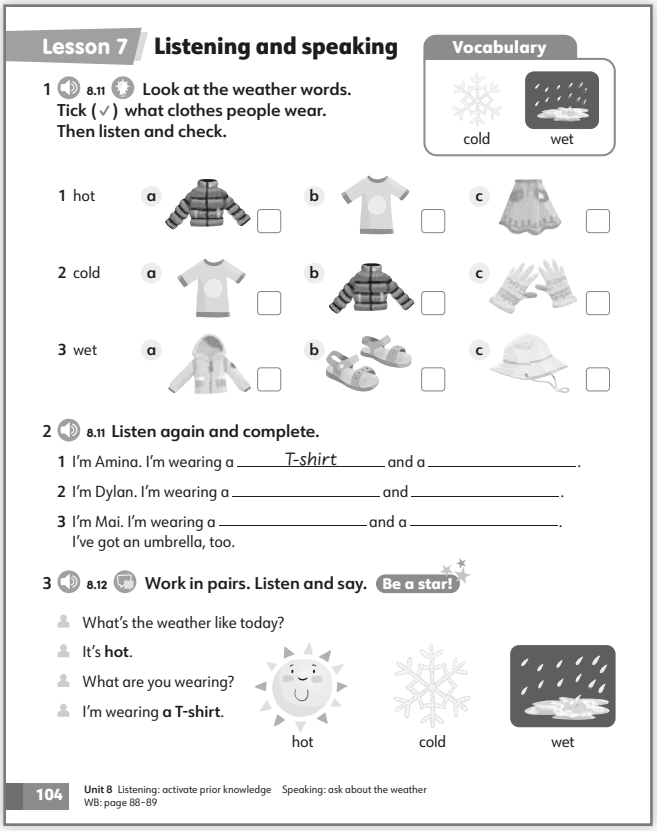
Answers: 1 queen **2** cat **3** pirate **4** lion

3 What's your favourite costume? Draw yourself and write.

Answers: Children's own answers.

Lesson 7 Listening and speaking

Pupil's Book page 104



Learning objectives: Listening: activate prior knowledge; Speaking: ask about the weather

Vocabulary: cold, wet

Review vocabulary: clothes

Resources: Vocabulary worksheet 2

Warm-up: Team vocabulary race

- Play *Team vocabulary race* (see the Games bank, pages 14–15) with the topic *clothes*. If time, repeat the game with *colours*.

Vocabulary

- Do a mime for *wet* and ask the class to recall the mimes for *cold* and *hot* (*hot* is at the bottom of the page).

1 8.11 Look at the weather words. Tick (✓) what clothes people wear. Then listen and check.

- Elicit the names of the clothes and have the children think about which to wear in each situation. Say *It's hot / It's cold / It's wet* in turn and call out the clothes. The children raise their hands for the items they chose. They tick their choices.
- Play the audio, pausing after part 1 to check the answers. Play parts 2 and 3 with no interruption.
- Confirm the answers with the class.

Audioscript

1	***Amina:***	*Hi, I'm Amina. I'm from Jordan. It's very hot today.*
	Child:	*What are you wearing?*
	Amina:	*I'm wearing a T-shirt and a skirt.*
2	***Dylan:***	*Hi, I'm Dylan. I'm from Canada.*
	Child:	*What's the weather like today?*
	Dylan:	*It's very cold.*
	Child:	*What are you wearing?*
	Dylan:	*I'm wearing a jacket and gloves!*
3	***Mai:***	*Hello, I'm Mai. I'm from China.*
	Child:	*What's the weather like today?*
	Mai:	*It's wet.*
	Child:	*What are you wearing?*
	Mai:	*I'm wearing a jacket and a hat. I've got an umbrella, too.*

Answers: 1 a ✗ b ✓ c ✓ **2** a ✗ b ✓ c ✓ **3** a ✓ b ✗ c ✓

2 8.11 Listen again and complete.

- Have the children predict the completed sentence for Amina. Play part 1 of the audio. Check the answer.
- Give them a moment to predict the missing words for *Dylan* and *Mai*. Then play the audio for them to complete the sentences.
- Invite different children to read out a sentence. Write the missing words on the board.

Answers: 1 T-shirt, skirt **2** jacket, gloves **3** jacket, hat

3 8.12 Work in pairs. Listen and say.

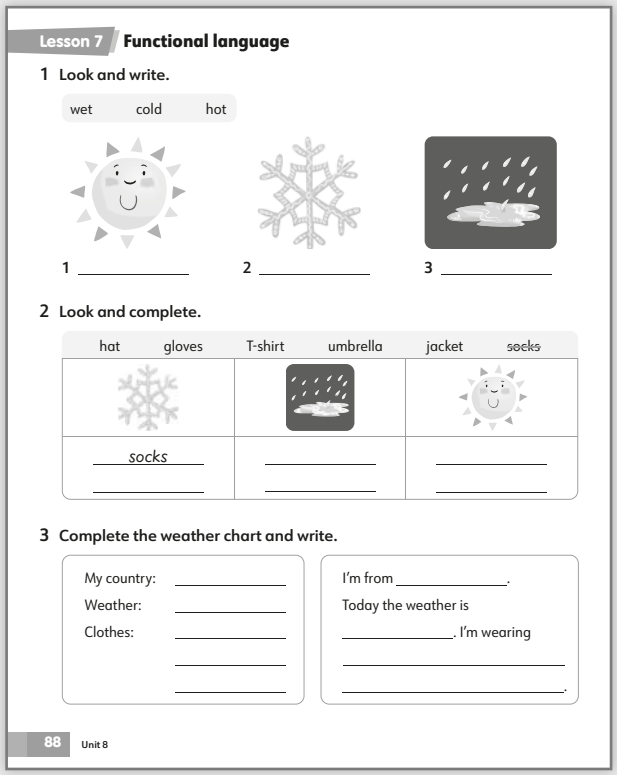
Be a star!

- Play the audio and have the children point at the correct picture (*hot*).
- Play the audio again for the children to repeat. Drill the questions a few times.
- Have a confident child ask you the questions, and answer, e.g. *It's cold. I'm wearing a jacket.*
- Divide the class into pairs to continue the activity.

Cooler: Draw and label

- Draw a picture on the board of a suitably dressed child and write, e.g. *It's wet today. I'm wearing a jacket and a hat.*
- Have the children do the same and show their work to friends near them.

Workbook page 88



Lesson 7 **Functional language**

1 Look and write.

wet cold hot

1 _____ 2 _____ 3 _____

2 Look and complete.

hat	gloves	T-shirt	umbrella	jacket	~~socks~~
socks					

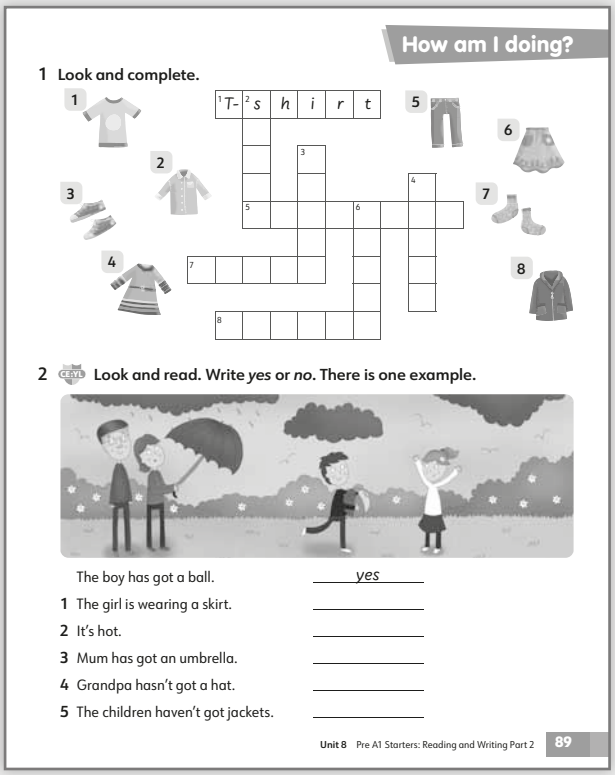
3 Complete the weather chart and write.

My country: _____
Weather: _____
Clothes: _____

I'm from _____.
Today the weather is _____. I'm wearing _____.

88 Unit 8

Workbook page 89



How am I doing?

1 Look and complete.

2 CE:YL Look and read. Write *yes* or *no*. There is one example.

The boy has got a ball. *yes*
1 The girl is wearing a skirt. _____
2 It's hot. _____
3 Mum has got an umbrella. _____
4 Grandpa hasn't got a hat. _____
5 The children haven't got jackets. _____

Unit 8 Pre A1 Starters: Reading and Writing Part 2 89

1 Look and write.

Answers: 1 hot **2** cold **3** wet

2 Look and complete.

Answers: snow: socks, gloves;
rain: jacket, umbrella; sun: T-shirt, hat

3 Complete the weather chart and write.

Answers: Children's own answers.

1 Look and complete.

Answers: 1 T-shirt **2** shirt **3** shoes **4** dress **5** trousers **6** skirt **7** socks **8** jacket

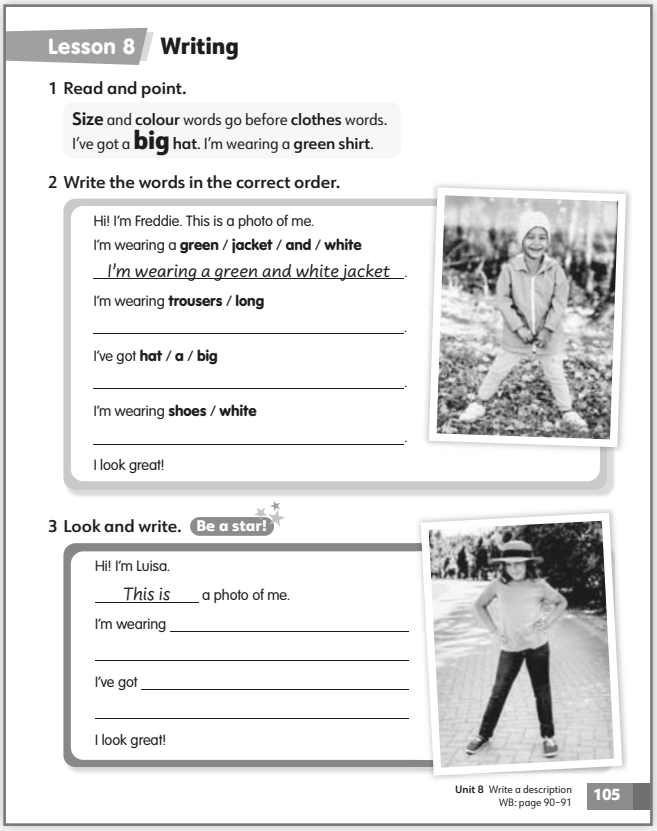
2 CE:YL Look and read. Write *yes* or *no*. There is one example.

- This activity helps the children prepare for Part 2 of the Reading and Writing paper of the Cambridge English: Pre A1 Starters test. The children read the sentences, look at the picture, and write *yes* if the sentence is true or *no* if the sentence is false.
- If done in class, ask the children what they can see in the picture and how the people are feeling.
- Go through the example first, and then have the children complete the activity individually.
- Ask different children to read out the sentences and the class calls out *yes* or *no*.
- (To help prepare for this part of the test, the children need plenty of practice matching sentences to pictures.)

Answers: 1 yes **2** no **3** yes **4** no **5** yes

Lesson 8 Writing

Pupil's Book page 105



Lesson 8 Writing

1 Read and point.

Size and **colour** words go before **clothes** words.
I've got a **big** **hat**. I'm wearing a **green** **shirt**.

2 Write the words in the correct order.

Hi! I'm Freddie. This is a photo of me.
I'm wearing a **green** / **jacket** / **and** / **white**
I'm wearing a green and white jacket.
I'm wearing **trousers** / **long**
_____.
I've got **hat** / **a** / **big**
_____.
I'm wearing **shoes** / **white**
_____.
I look great!

3 Look and write. Be a star!

Hi! I'm Luisa.
This is a photo of me.
I'm wearing _____
_____
I've got _____
_____
I look great!

Unit 8 Write a description
WB: page 90–91
105

Learning objectives: Word order: adjective + noun; Write a description

Resources: Unit 8 test

Materials: paper, pens or pencils

Warm-up: Team sentences

- Play *Team sentences* (see the Games bank, pages 14–15). Suggested sentences: *I'm wearing a T-shirt and a skirt. What are you wearing? It's cold and wet. I've got an umbrella.*

1 Read and point.

- Write the example sentences on the board. Read them out and point to the size words and multi-colour /green words. Elicit or explain that these words come before the thing they refer to (the words in blue). Read them again and have the children point in their books.
- Write on the board *I've got a big green hat* and ask *Which is number one – size or colour?* (*size*)
- Give the class some further practice by writing the following groups of words on the board in random order: *shoes / small / brown; orange / T-shirt / long; blue / short / jacket.*
- Invite different children to write the words in the correct order on the board, and ask for whole-class agreement each time (*small brown shoes; long orange T-shirt; short blue jacket*).

2 Write the words in the correct order.

- Refer the children to the picture and ask what they can see.
- Write the jumbled example sentence on the board. Ask *Colour and clothes, or clothes and colour?* (*colour and clothes*). Elicit and write the sentence on the board. Point out that *red and white* and *white and red* are the same and both correct.
- Give the children time to look at the next sentences, but ask them not to write yet.
- Then elicit the sentences and write them on the board. Ask for whole-class agreement each time.
- Have the children copy the finished sentences into their books.

Answers: I'm wearing a green and white jacket.
I'm wearing long trousers. I've got a big hat.
I'm wearing white shoes.

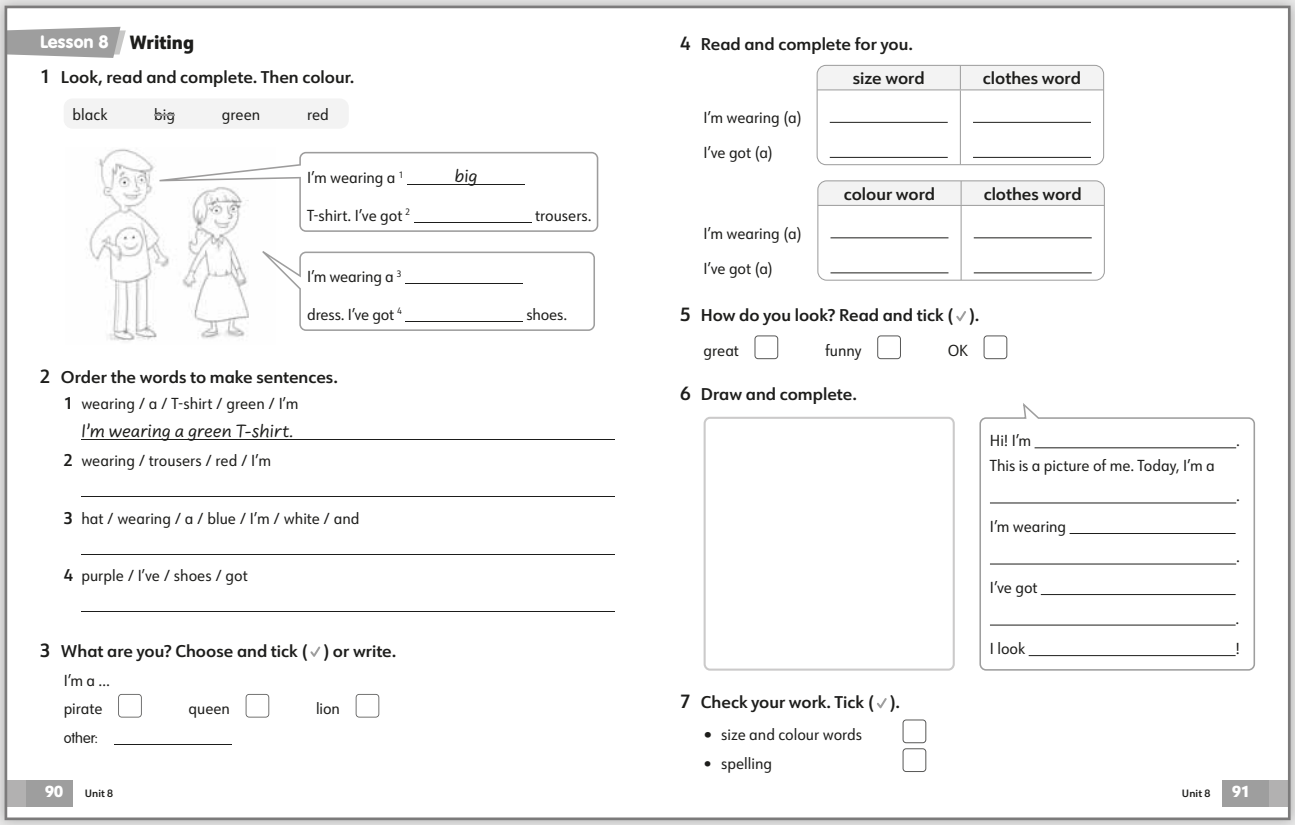
3 Look and write. Be a star!

- Refer the children to the picture and ask *What clothes can you see?* Encourage them to include colour and / or size in their answers.
- Have the children look at the text and ask *What's her name?* (*Luisa*). Then elicit sentences for the rest of the description and write the text on the board.
- Have the children copy the text into their books.

Suggested answer: This is a photo of me.
I'm wearing blue trousers.
I'm wearing a pink shirt.
I've got a brown and black hat.
I'm wearing blue shoes.

Cooler: I can see ...

- This is a variation on the traditional *I spy with my little eye* game. Say to the children *I can see something ... green!* The children try to guess what it is in the room (or possibly through the window!) that you are thinking of, e.g. *a green bag, a green book,* etc. Continue with more clues – *something big, something small, something blue, something long,* etc.



Lesson 8 **Writing**

1 Look, read and complete. Then colour.

black ~~big~~ green red

2 Order the words to make sentences.

1 wearing / a / T-shirt / green / I'm
I'm wearing a green T-shirt.

2 wearing / trousers / red / I'm

3 hat / wearing / a / blue / I'm / white / and

4 purple / I've / shoes / got

3 What are you? Choose and tick (✓) or write.

I'm a ...

pirate ☐ queen ☐ lion ☐

other: _____

4 Read and complete for you.

	size word	clothes word
I'm wearing (a)		
I've got (a)		

	colour word	clothes word
I'm wearing (a)		
I've got (a)		

5 How do you look? Read and tick (✓).

great ☐ funny ☐ OK ☐

6 Draw and complete.

Hi! I'm _____.
This is a picture of me. Today, I'm a _____.
I'm wearing _____.
I've got _____.
I look _____!

7 Check your work. Tick (✓).

- size and colour words ☐
- spelling ☐

90 Unit 8

Unit 8 91

1 Look, read and complete. Then colour.

- The children look at the pictures and complete the sentences. They can choose which colours they would like to use to colour the clothes.

Answers: 1 big **2** green / red / black **3** red / green / black **4** black / green / red

2 Order the words to make sentences.

- The children write correct sentences.

Answers: 1 I'm wearing a green T-shirt. **2** I'm wearing red trousers. **3** I'm wearing a blue and white hat. **4** I've got purple shoes.

3 What are you? Choose and tick (✓) or write.

- The children decide what they want to be.

Answers: Children's own answers.

4 Read and complete for you.

- Tell the children to imagine they are dressing up in any outfit they like.
- The children fill in the chart about the costume they are wearing.

Answers: Children's own answers.

5 How do you look? Read and tick (✓).

- The children choose an adjective to describe themselves in their costume.

Answers: Children's own answers.

6 Draw and complete.

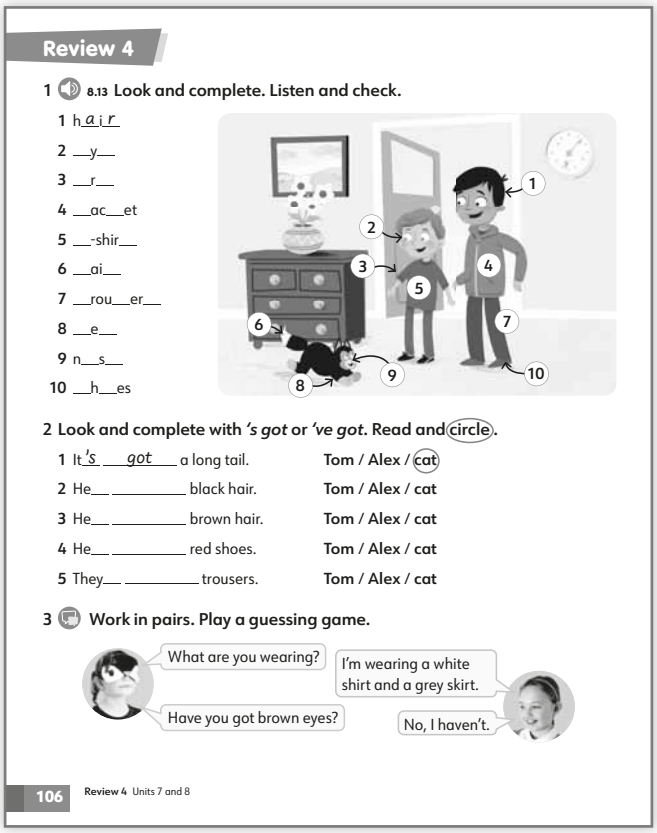
- The children draw a picture of themselves in their costume. They then complete the description of their clothes and how they look.

Answers: Children's own answers.

7 Check your work. Tick (✓).

- The children use the check list to make sure their work is correct and complete.

Pupil's Book page 106



Review 4

1 8.13 Look and complete. Listen and check.

1 h_a_i_r_
2 __y__
3 __r__
4 __ac__et
5 __-shir__
6 __ai__
7 __rou__er__
8 __e__
9 n__s__
10 __h__es

2 Look and complete with *'s got* or *'ve got*. Read and circle.

1 It's got a long tail. Tom / Alex / cat
2 He__ _____ black hair. Tom / Alex / cat
3 He__ _____ brown hair. Tom / Alex / cat
4 He__ _____ red shoes. Tom / Alex / cat
5 They__ _____ trousers. Tom / Alex / cat

3 Work in pairs. Play a guessing game.

What are you wearing?
I'm wearing a white shirt and a grey skirt.
Have you got brown eyes?
No, I haven't.

106 Review 4 Units 7 and 8

Learning objectives: Review vocabulary, grammar and sounds from Units 7 and 8; Pre A1 Starters: Reading and Writing Part 2; Speaking Part 4

Grammar: *have got* (*I / you / he / she / they*) affirmative, negative and questions

Vocabulary: parts of the body, adjectives, clothes

Sounds: *th, ch, sh*

Resources: Flashcards; Speaking exam practice video

Warm-up: The shark game

- Play *The shark game* (see the Games bank, pages 14–15) with some of the key vocabulary from Units 7 and 8.

1 8.13 Look and complete. Listen and check.

- Show the class the picture. Ask *What can you see?*
- Explain the example. Then have the children continue.
- Play the audio for them to check their work.
- Call out the numbers and have the children spell out the words.

Answers: 1 hair **2** eye **3** arm **4** jacket **5** T-shirt **6** tail **7** trousers **8** leg **9** nose **10** shoes

2 Look and complete with *'s got* or *'ve got*. Read and circle.

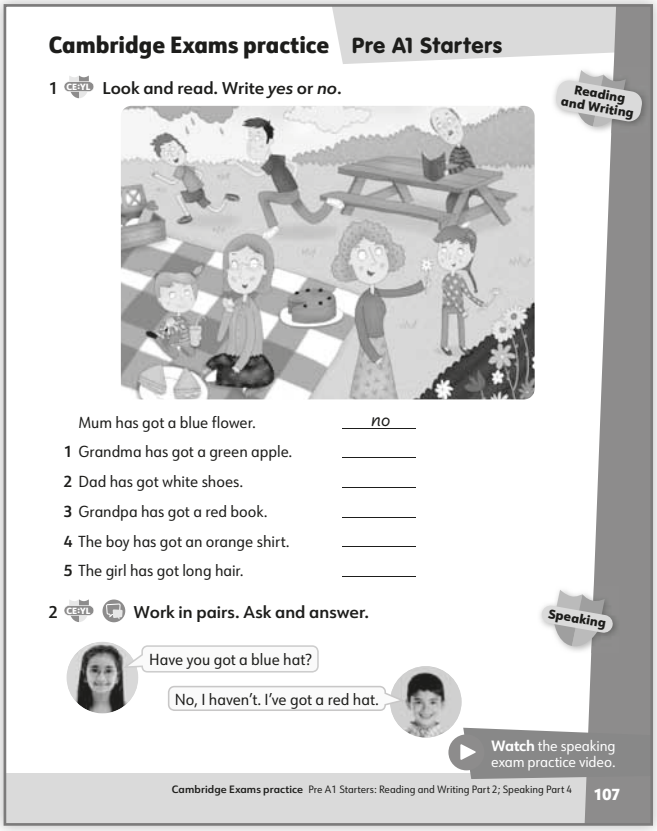
- Read out the example sentence and elicit the difference between *'s got* (*he / she / it* – one person) and *'ve got* (*they* – two or more people). Ask *Has Tom or Alex got a tail?* (*no*). Point out only *cat* is circled.
- Have the children complete the activity individually.
- Ask for volunteers to read out the sentences and say the names. Ask for whole-class agreement.

Answers: 1 's got – cat **2** 's got – Alex **3** 's got – Tom **4** 's got – Alex **5** 've got – Tom and Alex

3 Work in pairs. Play a guessing game.

- Invite three or four children to come to the front and line up facing the class. Look at their clothes, hair and eyes and then turn away. Tell the children you want only one person to answer. Ask questions and try to guess which child is answering.
- Then ask two children to read out the example dialogue and drill the questions.
- Divide the class into groups of four or five to play the guessing game as you demonstrated.

Pupil's Book page 107


Cambridge Exams practice Pre A1 Starters

1 Look and read. Write *yes* or *no*.

Reading and Writing

Mum has got a blue flower. *no*

1 Grandma has got a green apple. _____

2 Dad has got white shoes. _____

3 Grandpa has got a red book. _____

4 The boy has got an orange shirt. _____

5 The girl has got long hair. _____

2 Work in pairs. Ask and answer.

Speaking

Have you got a blue hat?

No, I haven't. I've got a red hat.

Watch the speaking exam practice video.

Cambridge Exams practice Pre A1 Starters: Reading and Writing Part 2; Speaking Part 4 107

1 Look and read. Write *yes* or *no*.

- This activity helps prepare the children for Part 2 of the Reading and writing paper of the Cambridge English: Pre A1 Starters test.
- Refer them to the picture and ask what clothes, colours and objects they can see.
- Work through the example sentence and answer with the children. Point to the woman holding the flower and ask *Has the woman got a blue flower?* (*no*)
- Now have the children answer the rest of the sentences by writing *yes* or *no*. Make sure that the children have time to find each person and write on the line.
- (To help prepare children for this part of the test, encourage them to look carefully at the picture before writing their answers.)

Answers: 1 yes **2** yes **3** yes **4** no **5** yes

2 Work in pairs. Ask and answer.

- This activity helps prepare the children for Part 4 of the Speaking paper of the Cambridge English: Pre A1 Starters test.
- Organise the children in pairs.
- Ask a pair of volunteers to read the example dialogue.
- Have the pairs ask and answer questions about what they have and haven't got, and what they are wearing. Circulate and monitor the conversations.
- (To help prepare children for this part of the test, they will need to recall vocabulary about clothing.)

Answers: Children's own answers.

Cooler: Disappearing words

- Play *Disappearing words* (see the Games bank, pages 14–15), recalling all the key words from this Review lesson.

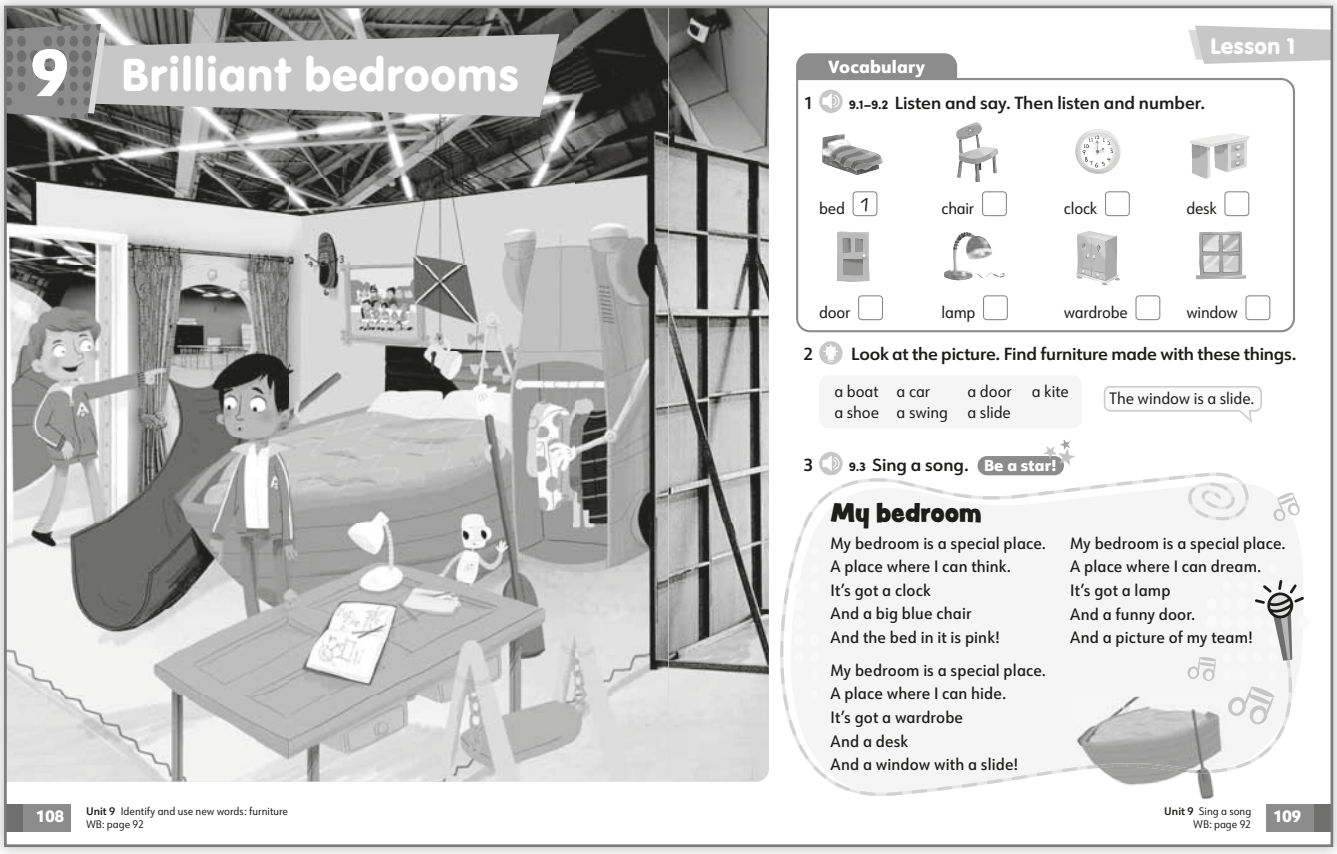
My progress: Units 7 and 8 (page 117)

- Clarify the meaning of each *I can* ... statement. Elicit examples to help them remember the content.
- Show the children the correct stickers for the *My progress* check. Give them time to decide if they are ready to give themselves a sticker. Provide encouragement if necessary.
- Have all the children hold up their books and show all their stickers to the class. Encourage them to give themselves a round of applause for their effort and achievement!

9 Brilliant bedrooms

Lesson 1 Vocabulary

Pupil's Book pages 108–109



Learning objectives: Identify and use new words: furniture; Sing a song using the target vocabulary

Vocabulary: bed, chair, clock, desk, door, lamp, wardrobe, window

Resources: Flashcards; Vocabulary worksheet 1

Materials: paper, pens or pencils, coloured pencils

Warm-up: The big picture

- Refer the children to the picture on page 108. Ask *Where are Tom and Alex? What can you see?* Ask what they think the boys are talking about. Ask *What's your favourite part of the picture? Can you see Bot?* (*He's next to the desk / bed / between the desk and the bed*).

1 9.1 Listen and say.

- Play the audio. Have the children listen and point to the pictures.
- Play the audio again. The children point and repeat.

9.2 Then listen and number.

- Play the audio, pausing after the first word to point out the example answer.
- Play the rest of the audio for the children to number the words.
- For feedback, say each number and have the class call out the word. Ask different children to repeat each word to check pronunciation.

Audioscript

1 *bed,* ***2*** *lamp,* ***3*** *desk,* ***4*** *door,* ***5*** *wardrobe,* ***6*** *window,* ***7*** *clock,* ***8*** *chair*

Answers: bed – **1**, chair – **8**, clock – **7**, desk – **3**, door – **4**, lamp – **2**, wardrobe – **5**, window – **6**

2 Look at the picture. Find furniture made with these things.

- Hold up your Pupil's Book, say *a slide* and then look in the big picture to find a slide. When you find it, indicate that it is a window and point to the example in the speech bubble.
- Repeat with the first item in the box, a boat, to elicit the sentence *The bed is a boat*.
- Read out the other words in the list and have the children continue the activity in pairs.
- After a few minutes, say an item from the box and have the class say the corresponding sentence. Make it fun by saying them in a different order and then faster.

Answers: boat – bed, car – wardrobe, door – desk, kite – lamp, shoe – clock, swing – chair, slide – window

Teaching star!

Managing pairwork

You can keep the classroom focused and productive in an activity like the one above with two easy techniques.

- Set a time limit – in the case of exchanging information, tell the children they have only two minutes to ask and answer.
- Use a signal to get the children's attention when the time is up – a countdown from ten to one (encourage the children who have finished to join in), a gentle sound like shaking a tambourine, or a visible signal like standing on your chair and waving until everyone is waving back.

Doing this makes it easy to get all the children's attention and be ready to move on with the next phase of the lesson.

3 9.3 Sing a song.

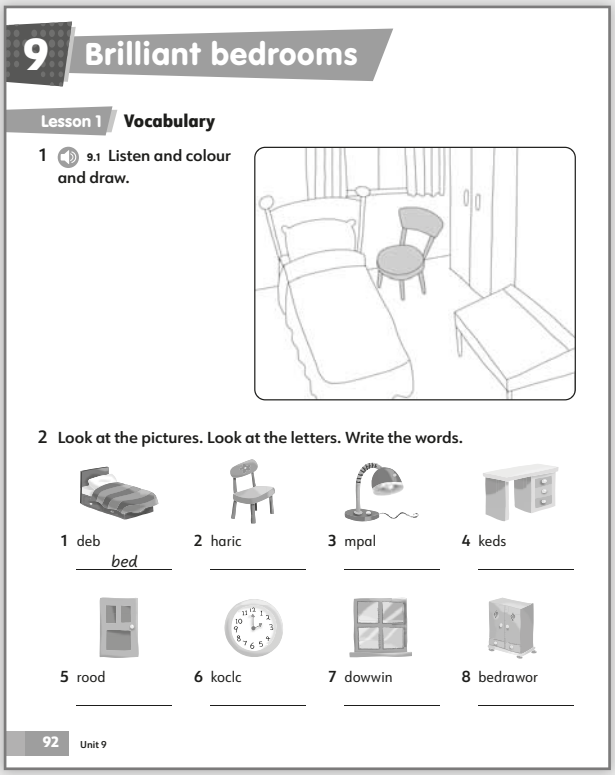
Be a star!

- Ask the children to turn their Pupil's Book face down. Explain that they will hear a song and that when they hear one of the objects in Activity 1 mentioned, they should raise their hands. Play the audio and join in with the children.
- Now have the children look at the song in their Pupil's Book. Play it again pausing after each line for them to repeat (singing).
- Finally, play the song and have everyone sing along.

Cooler: Ready, set, draw!

- Play *Ready, set, draw!* (see the Games Bank, pages 14–15) with the new vocabulary from this lesson.

Workbook page 92


9 Brilliant bedrooms

Lesson 1 Vocabulary

1 9.1 Listen and colour and draw.

2 Look at the pictures. Look at the letters. Write the words.

1 deb *bed*
2 haric
3 mpal
4 keds
5 rood
6 koclc
7 dowwin
8 bedrawor

92 Unit 9

1 9.1 Listen and colour and draw.

Audioscript

1 *Colour the chair grey.*
2 *Colour the bed blue.*
3 *Draw a lamp on the desk. Colour it orange.*
4 *Colour the desk green.*
5 *Draw a clock next to the window. Colour it yellow.*
6 *Colour the wardrobe brown.*

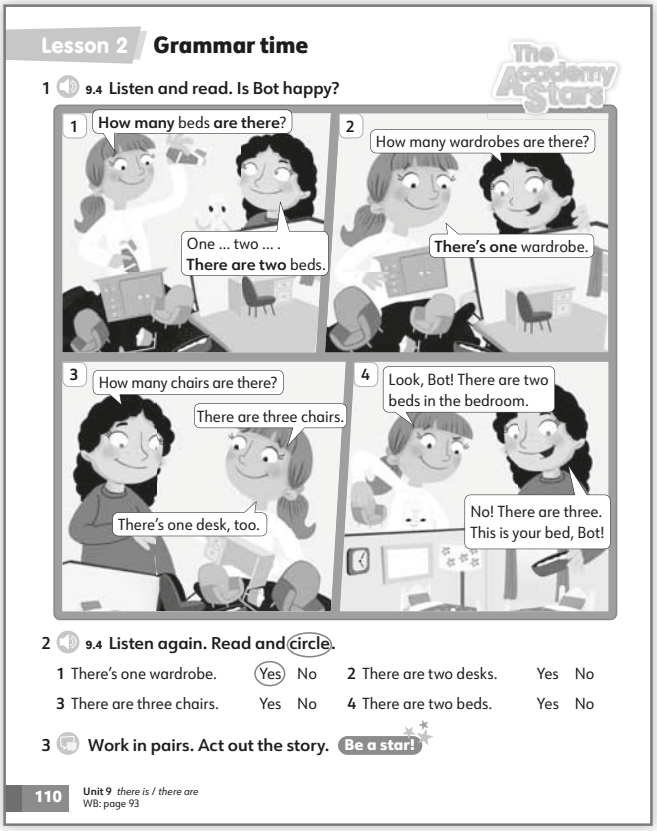
Answers: Children colour the chair grey, the bed blue, and draw a lamp to colour orange. They colour the desk green, then draw a clock next to the window and colour it yellow. Finally, they colour the wardrobe brown.

2 Look at the pictures. Look at the letters. Write the words.

Answers: 1 bed **2** chair **3** lamp **4** desk **5** door **6** clock **7** window **8** wardrobe

Lesson 2 Grammar time

Pupil's Book page 110



Learning objectives: Understand and use *there is / there are*; Read and act out a story using the target grammar

Grammar: *there is / there are* – question and affirmative

Review vocabulary: furniture

9.3 Warm-up: Sing the song!

- Play the song *My bedroom* and have the children join in and point to the items in the picture on page 110 as they are mentioned.

1 9.4 Listen and read. Is Bot happy?

- Refer the children to the pictures, and ask *What can you see? Where are the children?* (*at home / in a (toy) shop*)
- Play the audio. Have the children follow in their books and find the answer to the question *Is Bot happy?*
- Then give the children a minute to read the story quietly to themselves.
- Call out the following words: *beds, wardrobe, chair,* and ask the children to find the corresponding part of the story.
- Have volunteers read out a sentence about each of the items. (*There are two beds. There's one wardrobe. There are three chairs.*)

Answer: Yes, he is.

2 9.4 Listen again. Read and circle.

- Read out the first sentence. Tell the children that they are going to listen to the audio again and that when they hear the word *wardrobe* they should raise their hands.
- Play the audio and when they raise their hands, stop and ask *How many? One, two or three?* (*one*). Read out the sentence again and indicate the example answer.
- Play the rest of the audio for the children to listen and circle *yes* or *no*.
- For feedback, invite different children to read out the sentences. Ask for whole-class agreement each time and play the audio to confirm, if necessary. (Point out that there are three beds in the last part of the story, so number 4 is *no*.)

Answers: 1 Yes **2** No **3** Yes **4** No

3 Work in pairs. Act out the story.

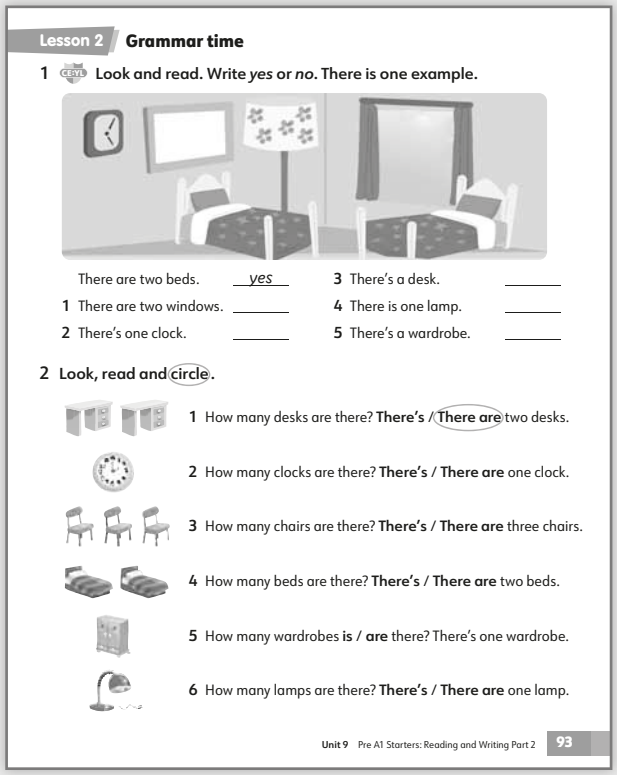
Be a star!

- Play the audio again for the class to repeat each line chorally. Check their pronunciation of *How many* and *There's / There are.*
- Divide the class into pairs. Have them decide who is number 1 and number 2. Then tell them *Number 1 – you're Sara. Number 2 – you're Anna.*
- Allow the children a few minutes to practise acting out the story. Monitor, encourage and check pronunciation.
- Ask if any pairs would like to act out the story for the whole class. Alternatively, they could take turns to act it out for another pair.
- If you wish, you could ask the children to change roles and act out the story again.

Cooler: Stand up, sit down

- Tell the children you will make some sentences about bedrooms. If the sentence is true for their bedroom, they stand up. If it is false, they sit down. They can stand up again the next time a sentence is true for them. Suggested sentences: *There's one … / There are two … chair(s) / bed(s) / clock(s) / door(s) / window(s),* etc. *in my bedroom.*

Workbook page 93



Lesson 2 **Grammar time**

1 CE:YL **Look and read. Write *yes* or *no*. There is one example.**

There are two beds. *yes*
1 There are two windows. _____
2 There's one clock. _____
3 There's a desk. _____
4 There is one lamp. _____
5 There's a wardrobe. _____

2 **Look, read and circle.**

1 How many desks are there? **There's** / **There are** two desks.
2 How many clocks are there? **There's** / **There are** one clock.
3 How many chairs are there? **There's** / **There are** three chairs.
4 How many beds are there? **There's** / **There are** two beds.
5 How many wardrobes **is** / **are** there? There's one wardrobe.
6 How many lamps are there? **There's** / **There are** one lamp.

Unit 9 Pre A1 Starters: Reading and Writing Part 2 93

1 CE:YL Look and read. Write *yes* or *no*. There is one example.

- This activity helps the children prepare for Part 2 of the Reading and Writing paper of the Cambridge English: Pre A1 Starters test. The children read the sentences, look at the picture, and write *yes* if the sentence is true or *no* if the sentence is false.
- If done in class, ask the children what they can see in the picture.
- Go through the example first, and then have the children complete the activity individually.
- Ask different children to read out the sentences and the class calls out *yes* or *no*.
- (To help prepare for this part of the test, the children need plenty of practice matching sentences to pictures.)

Answers: 1 yes **2** yes **3** no **4** yes **5** no

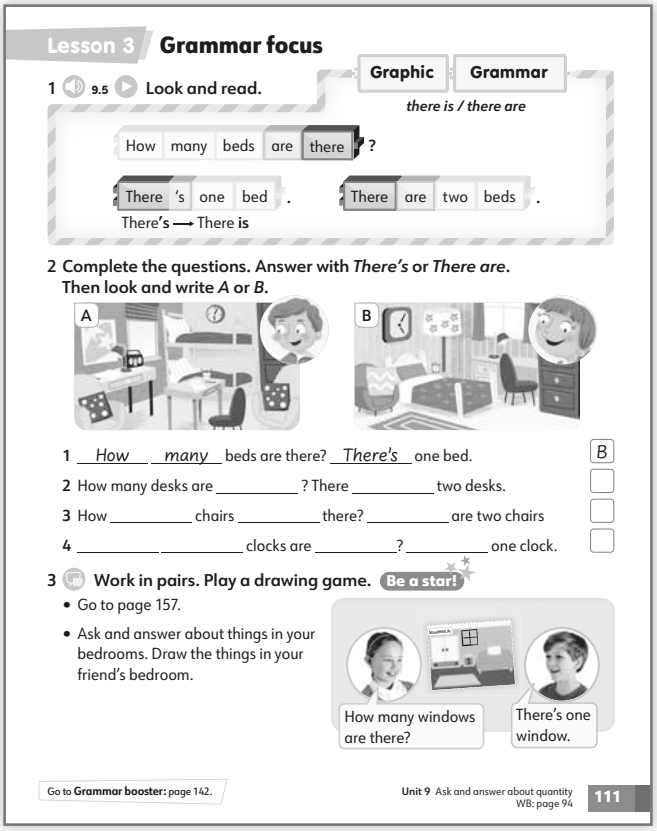
2 Look, read and circle.

- The children look at the pictures, read the sentences and circle the correct words to complete.

Answers: 1 There are **2** There's **3** There are **4** There are **5** are **6** There's

Lesson 3 Grammar focus

Pupil's Book page 111



Learning objectives: Ask and answer about quantity

Grammar: *How many; there is / there are. How many beds are there? There's one bed. There are two beds.*

Review vocabulary: furniture

Resources: Graphic Grammar video; Grammar worksheet 1

Warm-up: Group mime

- Invite five or six children to come to the front of the class. Secretly show each of them a different piece of furniture from page 109. They all have ten seconds to mime using that piece of furniture while the rest of the class watch. Then say *Stop!*
- Their classmates raise their hands to say names and the corresponding piece of furniture. The children say *yes* or *no*.
- Repeat with different children and furniture.

1 9.5 Look and read.

- Play the audio and have the children follow in their books.
- Play the audio again. Stop after each sentence and have the children repeat.
- Draw the children's attention to the colours – purple and then blue in the sentences, but the other way round for the question.
- Elicit the difference between *There's* and *There are* (one thing – singular / more than one thing – plural).
- Reinforce the contraction of *There's* by counting the full version on your fingers and then pushing your fingers together to show the contraction.
- Play the audio one more time for the children to repeat.

- If using the video, tell the children they will see a video of a family looking at bedroom furniture in a shop. Play the video and let the children watch and enjoy.
- Play the video again and have the children repeat the key sentences in part 1.
- In part 2, pause the video before the sentences and elicit ideas from the children. Then check with the video.

2 Complete the questions. Answer with *There's* or *There are*. Then look and write *A* or *B*.

- Read out the first completed sentence and have the children repeat. Elicit how we make the question (*How many (name of furniture with s) are there* + question mark). Ask why the example sentence uses *There's* (only one bed). Ask why the example answer is B (picture A has two beds).
- Elicit the complete question and answer for number 2. Write it on the board. Ask *A or B?* (*A*)
- Have the children continue the activity individually and compare with a friend.
- Invite pairs of volunteers to read out questions and answers. Ask for whole-class agreement each time, and write the questions and answers on the board.

Answers: 1 How many, There's, B **2** there, are, A
3 many, are, There, B **4** How many, there, There's, A

3 Work in pairs. Play a drawing game.

Be a star!

- Organise the children in pairs and have them open their books to page 157.
- Invite two confident children to read out the example dialogue.
- Have the children play the game, taking turns to ask and answer about what is in the two bedrooms. Children should first draw their own bedrooms, without looking at each other's drawings. Then they use the answers to their questions to draw each other's bedrooms, making sure to draw the correct amount of items. When they are finished, the children look at each other's drawings to check their answers.
- If there is time, ask a few volunteers to share their drawings and describe the bedrooms, using *there is / there are*.

Grammar booster

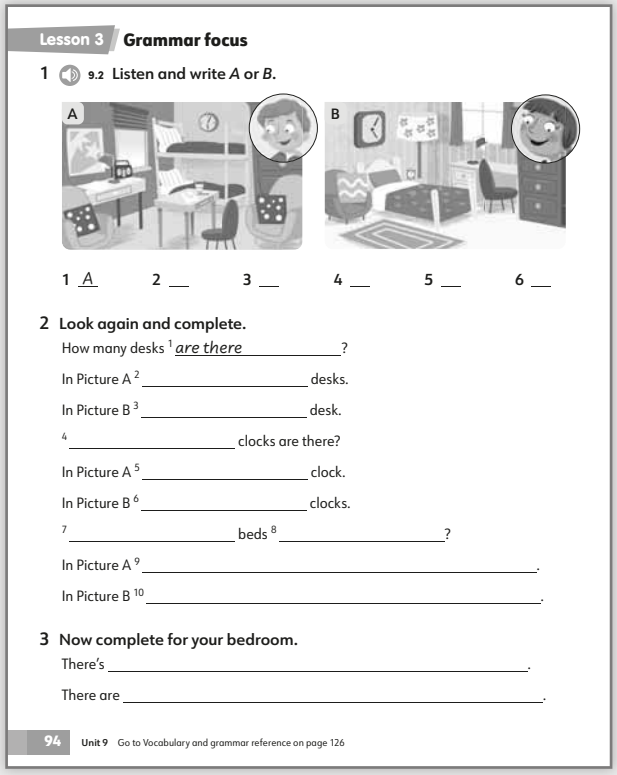
For additional practice, ask the children to turn to page 142 of their Pupil's Book to complete Activity 1. If the children need more grammar practice before the communicative Activity 3, have them complete this activity first. Alternatively, you may wish to have the children complete this activity at home.

Answers: 1 There's **2** There are **3** There are **4** There's

Cooler: Yes or no

- Write a big *Yes* on one side of the board, and a big *No* on the other side. Have the children close their books.
- Read out some sentences about picture A or picture B from Activity 2, and have the children point to the *Yes* side of the board if the sentence is true and to the *No* side of the board if the sentence is false. Suggested sentences: There are two clocks in picture A. (N); *There's one desk in picture B. (Y); There are two beds in Picture B. (N); There are two lamps in picture B. (Y); There's a pink chair in picture A. (N); There are two blue chairs in picture B. (N); There's a red lamp in picture A. (Y)*

Workbook page 94



Lesson 3 **Grammar focus**

1 9.2 Listen and write *A* or *B*.

A

B

1 A 2 ___ 3 ___ 4 ___ 5 ___ 6 ___

2 Look again and complete.

How many desks [1] *are there* _____?

In Picture A [2] _____ desks.

In Picture B [3] _____ desk.

[4] _____ clocks are there?

In Picture A [5] _____ clock.

In Picture B [6] _____ clocks.

[7] _____ beds [8] _____?

In Picture A [9] _____.

In Picture B [10] _____.

3 Now complete for your bedroom.

There's _____.

There are _____.

94 Unit 9 Go to Vocabulary and grammar reference on page 126

Grammar reference:

Remind the children that they can refer to the grammar reference on page 126 to help them when completing these activities.

1 9.2 Listen and write *A* or *B*.

Audioscript

1 *There are two beds.*
2 *There are two clocks.*
3 *There's one lamp.*
4 *There's one desk.*
5 *There's one bed.*
6 *There are three chairs.*

Answers: 1 A **2** B **3** A **4** B **5** B **6** A

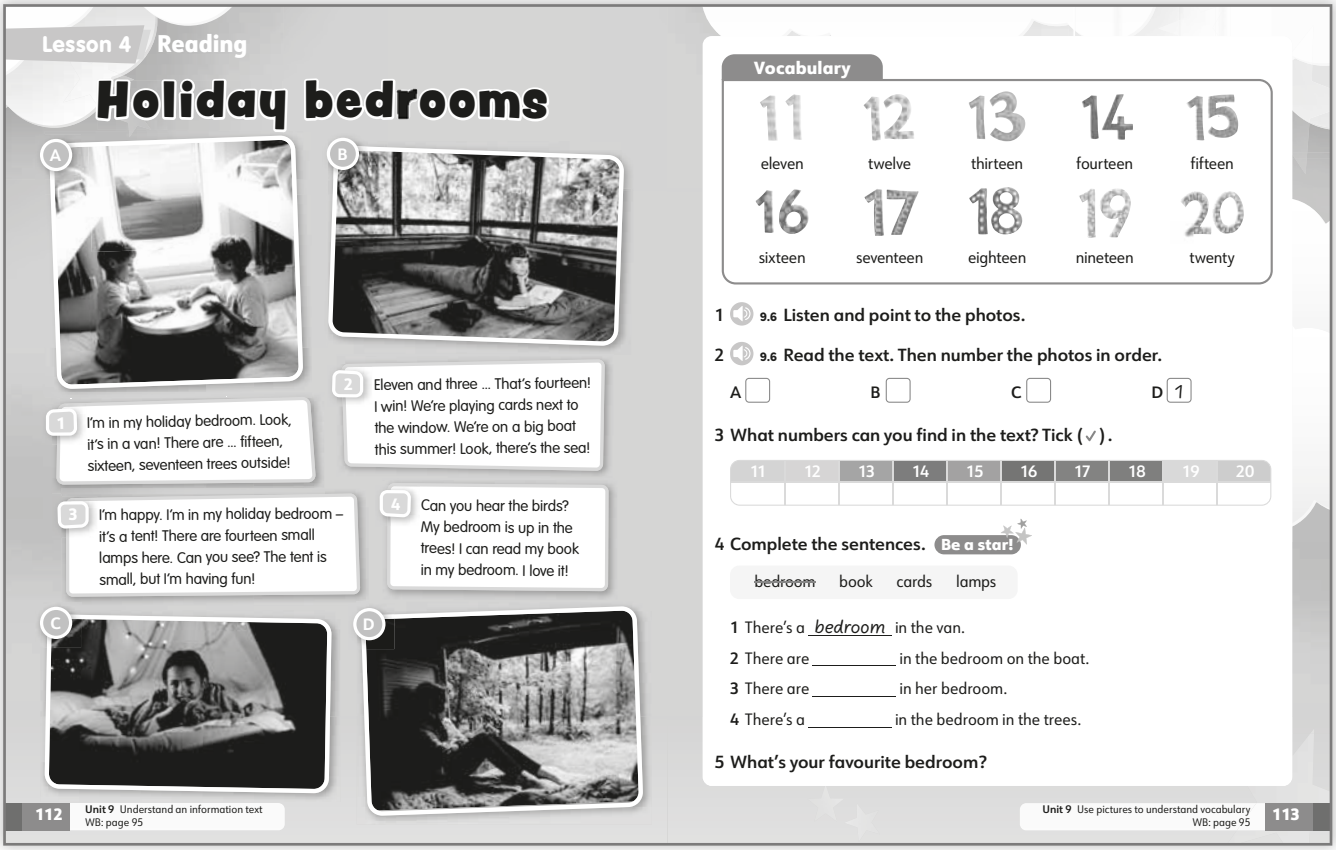
2 Look again and complete.

Answers: 1 are there **2** there are two **3** there's one **4** How many **5** there's one **6** there are two **7** How many **8** are there **9** there are two beds **10** there's one bed

3 Now complete for your bedroom.

Answers: Children's own answers.

Pupil's Book pages 112–113



Learning objectives: Understand an information text; Use pictures to understand vocabulary

Vocabulary: numbers 11–20

Review vocabulary: book, birds, boat, happy, small, trees, van

Resources: Flashcards; Vocabulary worksheet 2

9.4 Stand up / sit down when you hear ...

- Divide the class into two groups. Tell one group that they must stand up and sit down quickly (or raise and lower their arms quickly) every time they hear *There's; the second group must do the same for There are, and the third group must do the same for How many.*
- Play the audio and have the children respond accordingly.

Vocabulary

- Refer the children to the numbers in the vocabulary panel at the top of page 113. Read out the numbers and have the children point as you count. Count backwards and have the children point. Call out numbers in random order and have the children point.
- Now read out the numbers in order for the children to repeat, pointing at the numbers. Do the same counting back from 20.
- Now have the children count with you from 11 to 20 and then back down from 20 to 11 (this is challenging!).

1 9.6 Listen and point to the photos.

- Refer the children to the photos and ask *Where are the children at in these photos? What things can you see?*
- Give the children some quiet time to look.
- Play the audio and have the children point to the photos as they follow in their books.
- Ask the questions again and elicit answers. Ask for whole-class agreement each time and write the answers on the board.

2 9.6 Read the text. Then number the photos in order.

- Give the children time to read the story and to look at and number the photos in the order of the story.
- Have the children hold up their books. Ask *What's number ...?* for the children to point to the pictures in their books. Ask for whole-class agreement each time.

Answers: A 2 **B** 4 **C** 3 **D** 1

Teaching star!

Reading – join in!

One of the things that motivates children when learning to read is joining in with key parts of the story. Lots of children's stories have phrases where the children can easily join in, and this one does too. Being part of the telling of the story encourages them to follow more closely.

- Have the children join in with *Look...* (it appears two times – part 1 and part 2.
- Have the children look for *Can you...* in parts 3 and 4.

3 What numbers can you find in the text? Tick (✓).

- Refer the children back to the story to search for the numbers shown in the boxes.
- Then have them tick (✓) the numbers that are mentioned in the story.

Answers: 11, 14, 15, 16, 17

4 Complete the sentences.

Be a star!

- Read out the example sentence to the children. Then have them complete the sentences using the words in the box.

Answers: 1 bedroom **2** cards **3** lamps **4** book

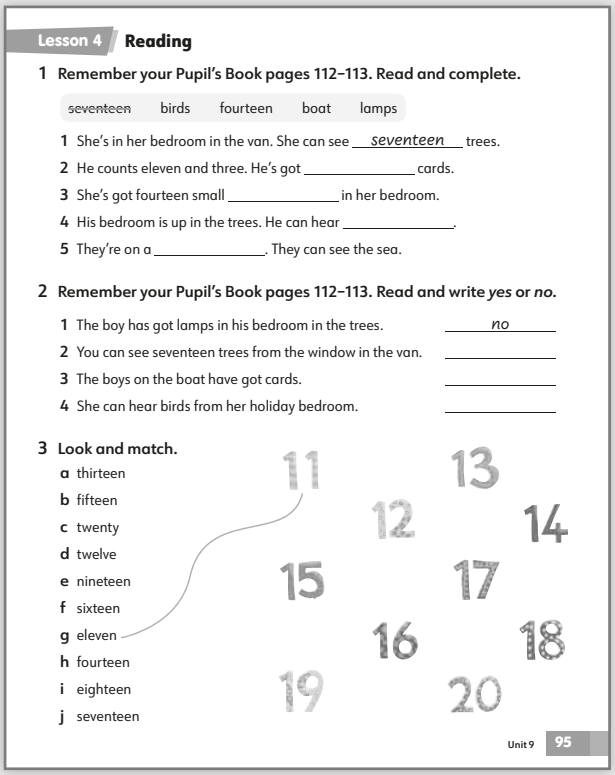
5 What's your favourite bedroom?

Answers: Children's own answers

Cooler: Disappearing words

- Play *Disappearing words* (see the Games bank, pages 14–15) with vocabulary from this lesson, e.g. *eleven, thirteen, fifteen, sixteen, seventeen, bedroom, book, boat, cards, lamp.*

Workbook page 95



Lesson 4 Reading

1 Remember your Pupil's Book pages 112–113. Read and complete.

~~seventeen~~ birds fourteen boat lamps

1 She's in her bedroom in the van. She can see *seventeen* trees.
2 He counts eleven and three. He's got _____ cards.
3 She's got fourteen small _____ in her bedroom.
4 His bedroom is up in the trees. He can hear _____.
5 They're on a _____. They can see the sea.

2 Remember your Pupil's Book pages 112–113. Read and write *yes* or *no*.

1 The boy has got lamps in his bedroom in the trees. *no*
2 You can see seventeen trees from the window in the van. _____
3 The boys on the boat have got cards. _____
4 She can hear birds from her holiday bedroom. _____

3 Look and match.

a thirteen
b fifteen
c twenty
d twelve
e nineteen
f sixteen
g eleven
h fourteen
i eighteen
j seventeen

11 13 12 14 15 17 16 18 19 20

Unit 9 95

1 Remember your Pupil's Book pages 112–113. Read and complete.

Answers: 1 seventeen **2** fourteen **3** lamps **4** birds **5** boat

2 Remember your Pupil's Book pages 112–113. Read and write *yes* or *no*.

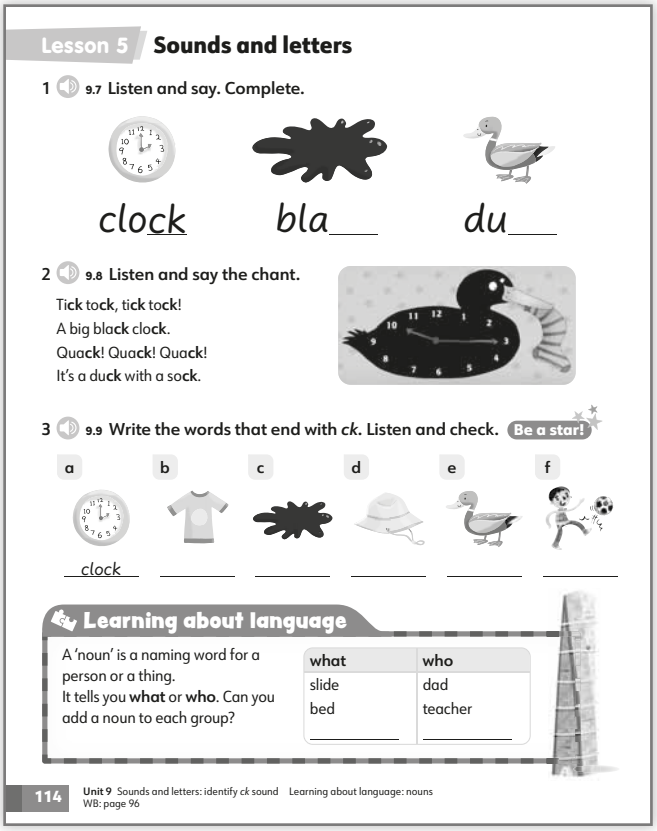
Answers: 1 no **2** yes **3** yes **4** yes

3 Look and match.

Answers: a 13 **b** 15 **c** 20 **d** 12 **e** 19 **f** 16 **g** 11 **h** 14 **i** 18 **j** 17

Lesson 5 Sounds and letters

Pupil's Book page 114


Lesson 5 Sounds and letters

1 9.7 Listen and say. Complete.

clock bla___ du___

2 9.8 Listen and say the chant.

Tick tock, tick tock!
A big black clock.
Quack! Quack! Quack!
It's a duck with a sock.

3 9.9 Write the words that end with *ck*. Listen and check. Be a star!

a b c d e f

clock

Learning about language

A 'noun' is a naming word for a person or a thing.
It tells you **what** or **who**. Can you add a noun to each group?

what	who
slide	dad
bed	teacher
___	___

114 Unit 9 Sounds and letters: identify *ck* sound Learning about language: nouns
WB: page 96

Learning objectives: Sounds and letters: identify *ck* sound; Learning about language: nouns

Sounds and letters words: black, clock, duck

Resources: Sounds and letters worksheet

9.6 Warm-up: What's the next word?

- Play *What's the next word?* (see the Games bank, pages 14–15). Stop the audio just before some of the key words in the story, e.g. *bedroom, seventeen, cards, boat, happy, sixteen, trees, book.*

1 9.7 Listen and say. Complete.

- With the children's books closed, point to each of the pictures in your book and ask *What's this?* Listen to their suggestions.
- Now play the audio and have the children open their books and check.
- Play the audio again for the children to repeat the sound and the words chorally. Then ask a few individuals to say each word to check pronunciation.
- Point to the *ck* in the word *clock* in your book. Ask *What are these letters?* (*ck*) *What's the sound?* (*/k/*)
- Write a big, clear *ck* on the board as a model for the children. Have them complete the words.

Audioscript

/k/ /k/ /k/ clock
/k/ /k/ /k/ black
/k/ /k/ /k/ duck

2 9.8 Listen and say the chant.

- Play the chant and have the children follow in their books. Have them raise their hands every time they see / hear a word with *ck*.
- Play the chant again, pausing after each line for the children to repeat. Pay particular attention to the *ck* sound.
- Play the chant once more and have the children join in as much as they can.
- Finally, divide the class into two groups, with each group saying alternate lines. Then change roles.

3 9.9 Write the words that end with *ck*. Listen and check. Be a star!

- Ask the children to name the things in the pictures. Have them repeat the words, emphasising the end sounds.
- Point to the first picture and ask *What's this*? (*a clock*). Write it on the board and ask if it ends in *ck* (*yes*). Underline the *ck* at the end.
- Repeat with the second picture (*a T-shirt*). Ask if this ends in *ck* (*no*).
- Have the children continue the activity individually. Explain that they should write only the words that end in *ck*.
- Give them time to compare their answers with a friend. Then play the audio for them to check.
- Invite different children to dictate the words, and write them on the board. Ask the children to copy them into their books.

Audioscript

clock black duck kick

Answers: a – clock c – black e – duck f – kick

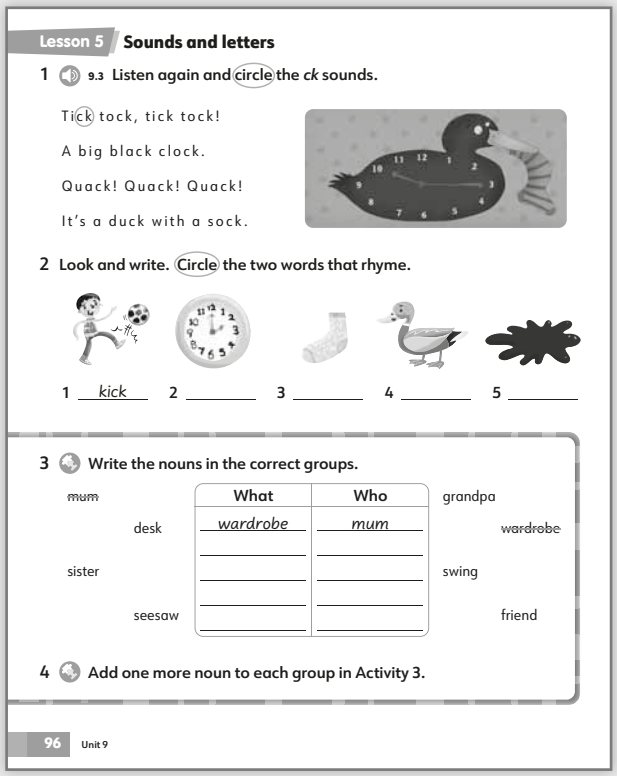
Learning about language

- Explain the *Learning about language* idea to the children. Point to the chart and explain that *what* is for things and *who* is for people.
- Elicit suggestions from the class for other items for each category in turn. Ask for whole-class agreement each time. The children then choose one more item to write in their books. Point out that they can look back at previous pages if they need to.

Cooler: Physical spelling

- Play *Physical spelling* (see the Games bank, pages 14–15) with key words from today's lesson.

Workbook page 96



Lesson 5 **Sounds and letters**

1 9.3 Listen again and circle the *ck* sounds.

Tick tock, tick tock!
A big black clock.
Quack! Quack! Quack!
It's a duck with a sock.

2 Look and write. Circle the two words that rhyme.

1 kick 2 _____ 3 _____ 4 _____ 5 _____

3 Write the nouns in the correct groups.

~~mum~~ desk sister seesaw grandpa ~~wardrobe~~ swing friend

What	Who
wardrobe	*mum*

4 Add one more noun to each group in Activity 3.

96 Unit 9

1 9.3 Listen again and circle the *ck* sounds.

Answers:
Ti(ck) to(ck), tick to(ck)!
A big bla(ck) clo(ck).
Qua(ck)! Qua(ck)! Qua(ck)!
It's a du(ck) with a so(ck).

2 Look and write. Circle the two words that rhyme.

Answers: 1 kick **2** clock **3** sock **4** duck **5** black
Rhyming words: clock and sock

3 Write the nouns in the correct groups.

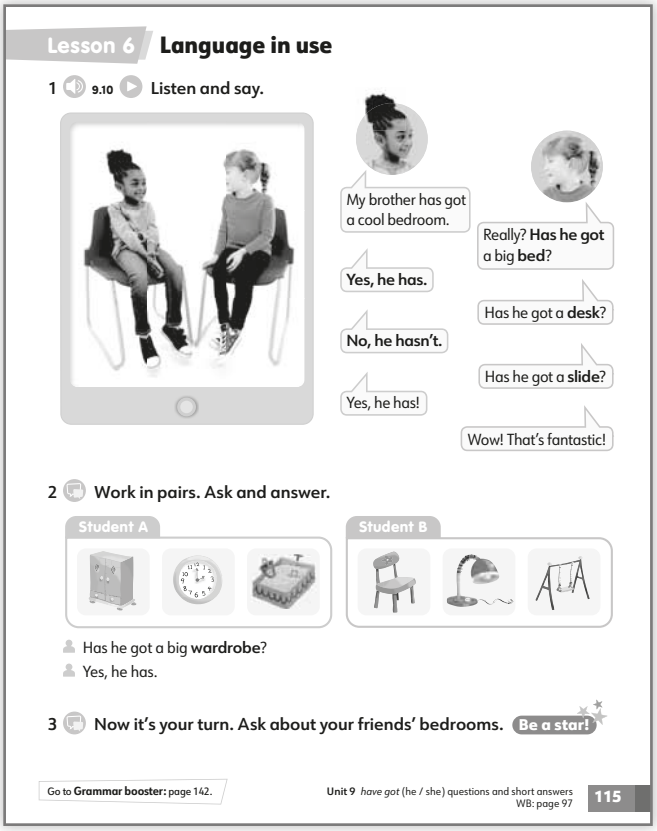
Answers: What: wardrobe, desk, seesaw, swing
Who: mum, sister, grandpa, friend

4 Add one more noun to each group in Activity 3.

Answers: Children's own answers.

Lesson 6 Language in use

Pupil's Book page 115



Learning objectives: *have got* (he / she) questions and short answers

Review vocabulary: big

Resources: Language in use video; Grammar worksheet 2

Warm-up: Team spelling

- Play *Team spelling* (see the Games bank, pages 14–15) with key words from Lesson 5, e.g. *clock, duck, T-shirt, sock, black, kick, quack, teacher.*

1 9.10 Listen and say.

- Play the audio and have the children follow in their books. Ask what the children are talking about (things in the brother's bedroom).
- Play the audio again for the children to repeat chorally.
- Divide the class into two groups and have them roleplay the dialogue – one groups asks the questions, the other says the answers. Then change roles.

- If using the video, play it and let the children watch and enjoy it.
- Play the video again and stop after each question to elicit the answer from the class. Play the video to confirm and have them all repeat it.
- Now play the video one more time and have the children repeat the questions and answers. Encourage them to imitate the intonation and body language as closely as possible.

Teaching star!

Mixed ability

Some children will pick up the question forms quickly and easily, while some will take longer to get used to it. Substitution drills can help children realise how easy the 'formula' is for making questions.

- Elicit one question, e.g. *Has he got a clock?*
- Then call out the names of other items (or show flashcards) and have the whole class make the new question chorally, e.g. Teacher: *chair.* Children: *Has he got a chair?* Teacher: *lamp.* Children: *Has he got a lamp?* etc.

The activity is quick and fun and builds confidence in those less sure of their ability.

2 Work in pairs. Ask and answer.

- Refer the children to the pictures and elicit the names of the objects.
- Invite two confident children to read out the example dialogue. Point out that the question and answer are the same as in Activity 1, but the blue word is changed for an item in the box.
- Demonstrate the activity with a confident child. Ask the child to take the part of the girl on the left in Activity 1. When you answer, include *Really?* to make the dialogue more natural, and use an object from the box. Demonstrate the full dialogue – point out that the child can answer *Yes, he has* or *No, he hasn't*.
- Drill the questions and answers one more time.
- Then divide the class into pairs to continue the activity. Circulate and monitor.

3 Now it's your turn. Ask about your friends' bedrooms. Be a star!

- Tell the class *My friend (Lucy) has got a big bedroom* (emphasise the word *big*). Prompt them to ask you some questions about her bedroom. Elicit the question form *Has she got …?* and have them ask you several questions. Use the short answers *Yes, she has. / No, she hasn't*. Drill the question and answers chorally.
- Have the children continue to talk in their same pairs, asking and answering about their friends' bedrooms.
- Fast finishers could ask each other about their own bedrooms. Remind them of the question *Have you got …?*

Grammar booster

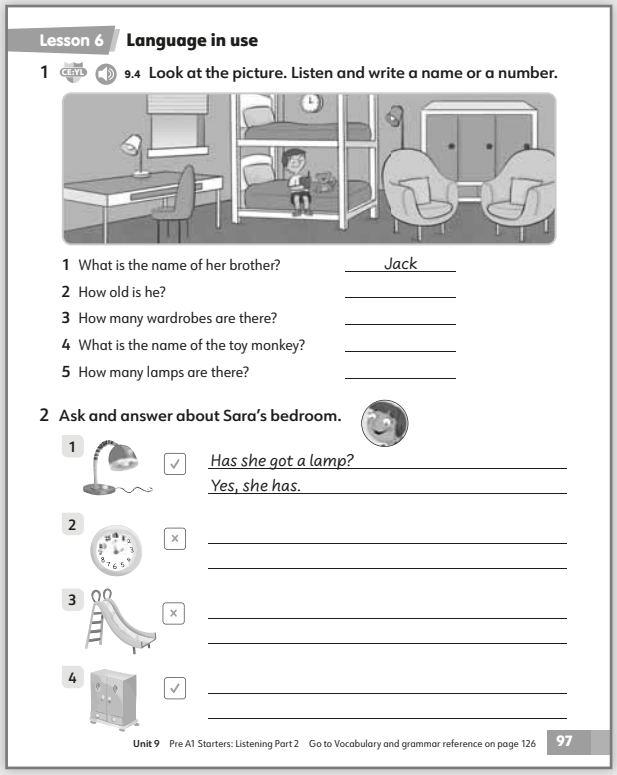
For additional practice, ask the children to turn to page 142 of their Pupil's Book to complete Activity 2. You may also wish to have the children complete this activity at home.

Answers: 1 Yes, she has. **2** No, she hasn't. **3** Yes, she has. **4** No, she hasn't. **5** Yes, she has. **6** No, she hasn't.

Cooler: Disappearing dialogue

- Play *Disappearing dialogue* (see the Games bank, pages 14–15). Have the children read out the sentences from Activity 1 for you to write on the board (stop after *No he hasn't.* if you have limited time).

Workbook page 97



Lesson 6 **Language in use**

1 CE:YL 9.4 **Look at the picture. Listen and write a name or a number.**

1 What is the name of her brother? *Jack*
2 How old is he? _____
3 How many wardrobes are there? _____
4 What is the name of the toy monkey? _____
5 How many lamps are there? _____

2 **Ask and answer about Sara's bedroom.**

1 ✓ *Has she got a lamp?* *Yes, she has.*
2 ✗ _____
3 ✗ _____
4 ✓ _____

Unit 9 Pre A1 Starters: Listening Part 2 Go to Vocabulary and grammar reference on page 126 97

Grammar reference:

Remind the children that they can refer to the grammar reference on page 126 to help them when completing these activities.

1 CE:YL 9.4 Look at the picture. Listen and write a name or a number.

- This activity helps the children prepare for Part 2 of the Listening paper of the Cambridge English: Pre A1 Starters test. The children look at the picture, listen and write names or numbers.
- Ask the children what they can see in the picture.
- Go through the example first, and then have the children complete the activity individually.
- Ask different children to read out their responses. Aim for full class agreement.
- (To help prepare for this part of the test, the children need plenty of practice listening to descriptive sentences and matching them to pictures.)

Speaker: *Look at the picture. Listen and write a name or a number. There is one example.*

1 Girl 1: *My brother has got a cool bedroom.*
Girl 2: *Really? What's his name?*
Girl 1: *His name's Jack.*
Girl 2: *Is that J-A-C-K?*
Girl 1: *Yes, Jack.*
2 Girl 2: *How old is Jack?*
Girl 1: *He's eight.*
3 Girl 2: *Has he got a wardrobe in his bedroom?*
Girl 1: *Yes, he has. He's got one big wardrobe.*
Girl 2: *OK. One wardrobe.*
4 Girl 2: *Has he got toys in his bedroom?*
Girl 1: *Yes, he has. His favourite toy is his toy monkey.*
Girl 2: *What's his monkey's name?*
Girl 1: *His name is Fred.*
Girl 2: *Fred? F-R-E-D?*
Girl 1: *Yes.*
5 Girl 2: *How many lamps are there in his bedroom?*
Girl 1: *There are two lamps.*
Girl 2: *Two lamps?*
Girl 1: *Yes. There's a red lamp next to his bed. There's a white lamp on his desk.*

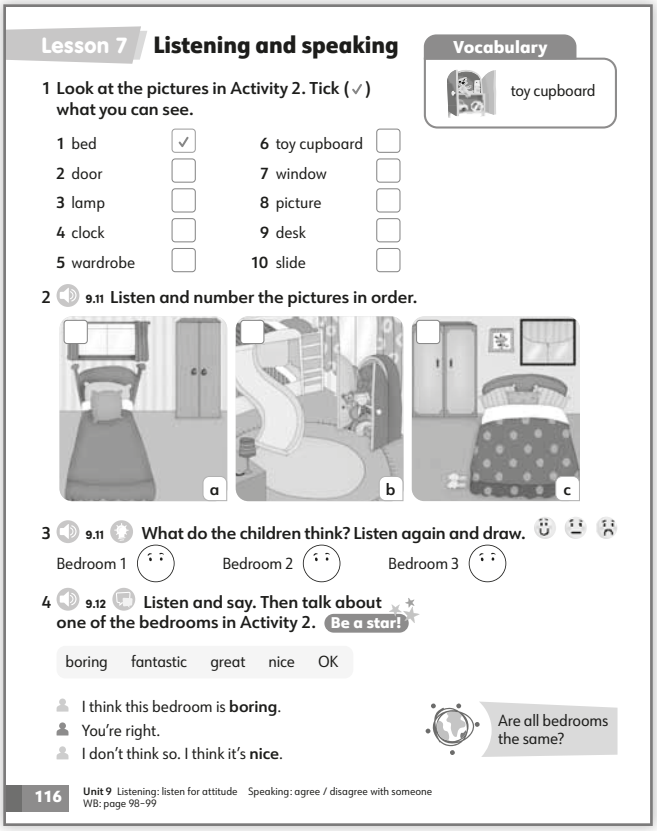
Answers: 1 Jack **2** eight **3** one **4** Fred **5** two

2 Ask and answer about Sara's bedroom.

Answers: 1 Has she got a lamp? Yes, she has. **2** Has she got a clock? No, she hasn't. **3** Has she got a slide? No, she hasn't. **4** Has she got a wardrobe? Yes, she has.

Lesson 7 Listening and speaking

Pupil's Book page 116


Lesson 7 Listening and speaking

Vocabulary

toy cupboard

1 Look at the pictures in Activity 2. Tick (✓) what you can see.

1 bed	✓	6 toy cupboard	
2 door		7 window	
3 lamp		8 picture	
4 clock		9 desk	
5 wardrobe		10 slide	

2 9.11 Listen and number the pictures in order.

a b c

3 9.11 What do the children think? Listen again and draw.

Bedroom 1 Bedroom 2 Bedroom 3

4 9.12 Listen and say. Then talk about one of the bedrooms in Activity 2. Be a star!

boring fantastic great nice OK

I think this bedroom is **boring**.
You're right.
I don't think so. I think it's **nice**.

Are all bedrooms the same?

116 Unit 9 Listening: listen for attitude Speaking: agree / disagree with someone
WB: page 98–99

Learning objectives: Listening: listen for attitude; Speaking: agree / disagree with someone

Resources: Vocabulary worksheet 2

Warm-up: The shark game

- Play *The shark game* (see the Games bank, pages 14–15) with the bedroom vocabulary from this unit.

Vocabulary

- Refer the children to the picture of the toy cupboard and have them repeat it chorally. Ask *Have you got a toy cupboard in your bedroom? Is it big?*

1 Look at the pictures in Activity 2. Tick (✓) what you can see.

- Refer the children to the pictures in Activity 2 and elicit what they can see.
- Have the children repeat each item chorally.
- Ask *Can you see a bed?* (*Yes, I can.*) Point to the example answer.
- The children continue the activity individually.

Answers: 1 ✓ **2** ✗ **3** ✓ **4** ✗ **5** ✓ **6** ✓ **7** ✓ **8** ✓ **9** ✗

2 9.11 Listen and number the pictures in order.

- Have the children turn their Pupil's Book face down.
- Tell them that they are going to hear a dialogue about each bedroom. Play each dialogue in turn, stopping to ask *Which bedroom is this?* Elicit their answers but don't confirm anything at this point.
- Now ask the children to listen again. Stop after part 1 and ask which bedroom it is (c). Play dialogues 2 and 3 and have the children number the other bedrooms.

Audioscript

1 ***Girl 1:*** *Has your bedroom got a big bed?*
Girl 2: *Yes, it has.*
Girl 1: *Has it got a big window?*
Girl 2: *No, it hasn't. It's got a small window.*
Girl 1: *How many pictures are there?*
Girl 2: *There's one picture. My bedroom is OK.*

2 ***Boy 1:*** *Has your bedroom got a big bed?*
Boy 2: *No, it hasn't. It's got a small bed.*
Boy 1: *Has it got a big window?*
Boy 2: *No, it hasn't. The window is small, too.*
Boy 1: *Has it got lots of pictures?*
Boy 2: *No, it hasn't. I think my bedroom is boring.*

3 ***Girl 1:*** *Has your bedroom got a big window?*
Girl 2: *Yes, it has! It's got a very big window.*
Girl 1: *Has it got a big bed?*
Girl 2: *Yes, it has! It's got two big beds with a slide!*
Girl 1: *A slide? Wow! That's great. Has it got a toy cupboard?*
Girl 2: *Yes, it has. It's got a big toy cupboard with lots of toys. My bedroom is fantastic!*

Answers: a 2 **b** 3 **c** 1

3 9.11 What do the children think? Listen again and draw.

- Clarify the question and draw the three different faces on the board. Have the children make sounds, e.g. positive – *Yay!*, neutral – *hmmm* and negative – *Ugh!* as you point to each face.
- Play the audio again for the children to listen and complete the faces with the attitude of the children.

4 9.12 Listen and say. Then talk about one of the bedrooms in Activity 2.

Be a star!

- Read out the words in the box with an attitude that helps express their meaning. The children repeat.
- Play the audio and have them follow in their books.
- Clarify if we say *You're right* and I *don't think so* when we agree or disagree. Divide the class into pairs to exchange opinions about the bedrooms.

ESDC

Are all bedrooms the same?

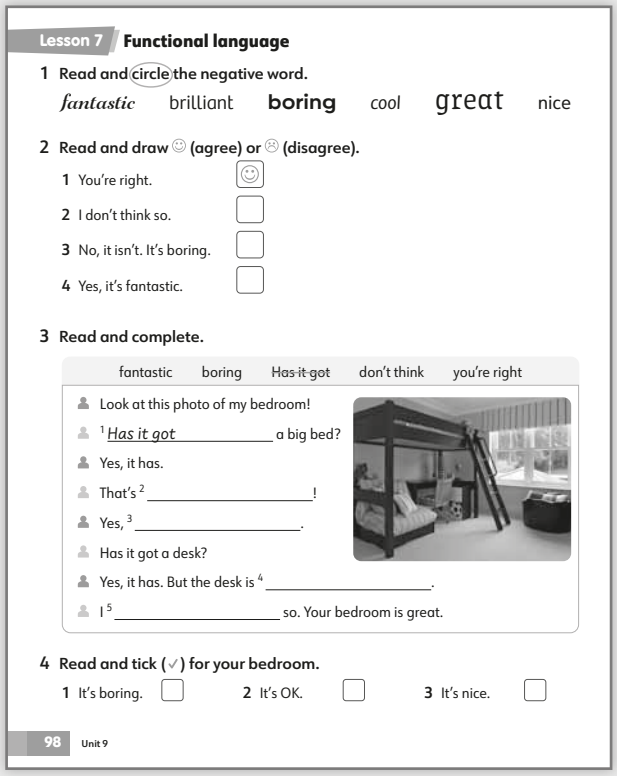
- This question helps the children identify some of the connections between our community and outside world, and identify distinguishing features of a variety of global cultures.
- Explore the concept of *same* and *different* in relation to different children's bedrooms. Ask the children about their bedrooms and others they know about. Elicit what was the same or different about them. Draw out differences without attaching opinion.

Possible answers: not all bedrooms are the same; sometimes people share bedrooms, sometimes bedrooms are also used to for other activities.

Cooler: Team vocabulary race

Play *Team vocabulary race* (see the Games bank, pages 14–15) with the topic *bedrooms*.

Workbook page 98



Lesson 7 **Functional language**

1 Read and circle the negative word.

fantastic brilliant **boring** *cool* great nice

2 Read and draw ☺ (agree) or ☹ (disagree).

1 You're right. ☺
2 I don't think so. ☐
3 No, it isn't. It's boring. ☐
4 Yes, it's fantastic. ☐

3 Read and complete.

fantastic boring ~~Has it got~~ don't think you're right

Look at this photo of my bedroom!
[1] *Has it got* _____ a big bed?
Yes, it has.
That's [2] _____!
Yes, [3] _____.
Has it got a desk?
Yes, it has. But the desk is [4] _____.
I [5] _____ so. Your bedroom is great.

4 Read and tick (✓) for your bedroom.

1 It's boring. ☐ 2 It's OK. ☐ 3 It's nice. ☐

98 Unit 9

1 Read and circle the negative word.

Answer: boring

2 Read and draw ☺ (agree) or ☹ (disagree).

Answers: 1 ☺ 2 ☹ 3 ☹ 4 ☺

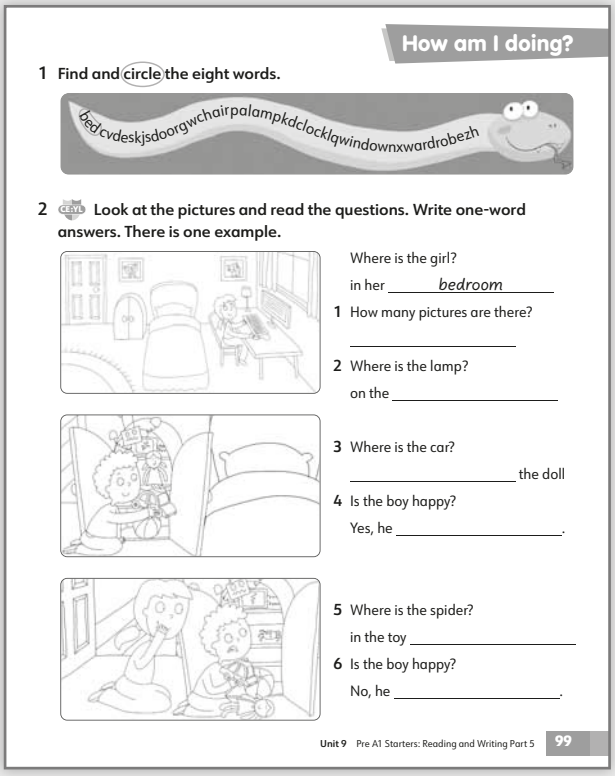
3 Read and complete.

Answers: **1** Has it got **2** fantastic **3** you're right **4** boring **5** don't think

4 Read and tick (✓) for your bedroom.

Answers: Children's own answers.

Workbook page 99



How am I doing?

1 Find and circle the eight words.

bedcvdeskjsdoorgwchairpalampkdclocklqwindownxwardrobezh

2 CE:YL Look at the pictures and read the questions. Write one-word answers. There is one example.

Where is the girl?
in her _____*bedroom*_____

1 How many pictures are there?
_____

2 Where is the lamp?
on the _____

3 Where is the car?
_____ the doll

4 Is the boy happy?
Yes, he _____.

5 Where is the spider?
in the toy _____

6 Is the boy happy?
No, he _____.

Unit 9 Pre A1 Starters: Reading and Writing Part 5 99

1 Find and circle the eight words.

Answers: bed, desk, door, chair, lamp, clock, window, wardrobe

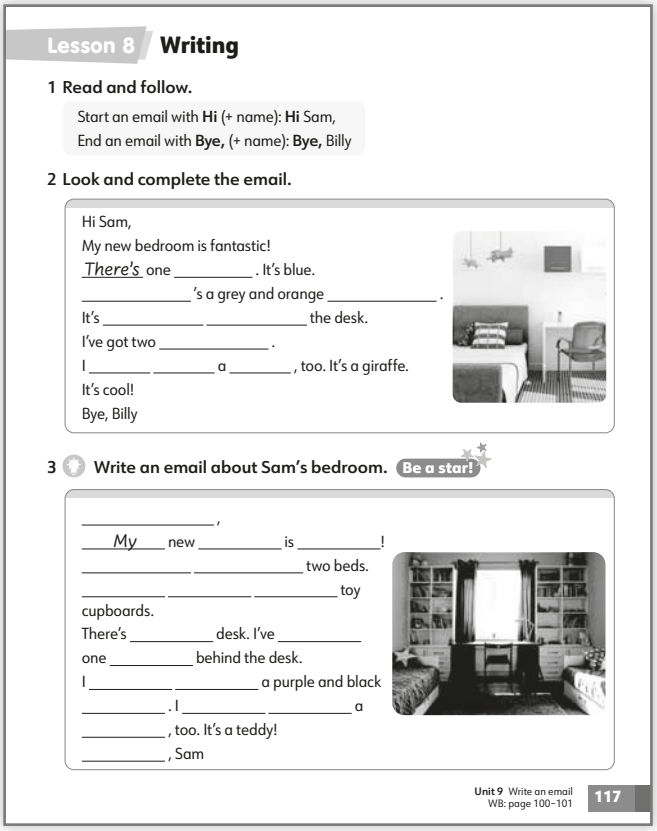
2 CE:YL Look at the pictures and read the questions. Write one-word answers. There is one example.

- This activity helps the children prepare for Part 5 of the Reading and Writing paper of the Cambridge English: Pre A1 Starters test. The children look at the pictures and answer the questions using one word each time.
- If done in class, ask the children what they can see in the pictures. Go through the example first. Then read out number 1 and elicit the answer and write it on the board. Have the children continue individually. Check the answers with the class and write them on the board.
- (To help prepare for this part of the test, the children need practice in recognising different questions words: *Where, How many*, etc.)

Answers: **1** two **2** desk **3** under **4** is **5** cupboard **6** isn't

Lesson 8 Writing

Pupil's Book page 117



Lesson 8 Writing

1 Read and follow.

Start an email with **Hi** (+ name): **Hi** Sam,
End an email with **Bye,** (+ name): **Bye,** Billy

2 Look and complete the email.

Hi Sam,
My new bedroom is fantastic!
There's one _____ . It's blue.
_____ 's a grey and orange _____ .
It's _____ _____ the desk.
I've got two _____ .
I _____ _____ a _____ , too. It's a giraffe.
It's cool!
Bye, Billy

3 Write an email about Sam's bedroom. Be a star!

_____ ,
My new _____ is _____ !
_____ _____ two beds.
_____ _____ _____ toy cupboards.
There's _____ desk. I've _____ one _____ behind the desk.
I _____ _____ a purple and black _____ . I _____ _____ a _____ , too. It's a teddy!
_____ , Sam

Unit 9 Write an email
WB: page 100–101
117

Learning objectives: How to start and end an email; Write an email

Resources: Unit 9 test

Warm-up: Physical spelling

- Play *Physical spelling* (see the Games bank, pages 14–15) with the key vocabulary about bedrooms from this unit.

1 Read and follow.

- Write on the board:
  Hi Sam,

  _____

  _____

  _____

  Bye, Billy.
- Ask *What's this?* (*an email / a letter*) Point out that we start emails with *Hi* and a name, and we end them with *Bye* and our name.

2 Look and complete the email.

- Refer the children to the picture and ask *What can you see?* Prompt the children to answer in complete sentences with *There's / There are …* Encourage them to include the colours.
- Now point to the email text and read out the first two lines. Use intonation as if you are talking to your friend, Sam.
- Read out the example answer and elicit the complete sentence.
- Read out the rest of the email in the same intonation, pausing for each space, to help the children to get a feel for the email. Then give the children a minute to look quietly at the text and the picture.
- Work through the email, sentence by sentence, eliciting suggestions for each gap. Write the full version on the board, asking for whole-class agreement for each answer.
- Have the children complete the email in their books.

Answers: There's one bed. It's blue. There's a grey and orange chair. It's next to the desk. I've got two planes. I've got a toy, too. It's a giraffe.

Teaching star!

Mixed ability

After going through the example in Activity 2, you could take some time to talk the children through some of the gaps and ask questions to show them that there are clues in the text that can help them.

- Read out the words before the first gap, *There's one* _____ Elicit that the word must be a single 'thing' because there is just one. Ask them which gap is refers to more than one. (*I've got two* _____.)
- Point out the word too, and clarify its meaning. Write on the board *I've got two* _____. and below it write *I* _____ _____ *a* _____, *too*. Point out the pattern and help them to see how the second sentence starts (*I've got*).

As the children learn to predict answers in this type of activity, they will feel more confident.

3 Write an email about Sam's bedroom.

Be a star!

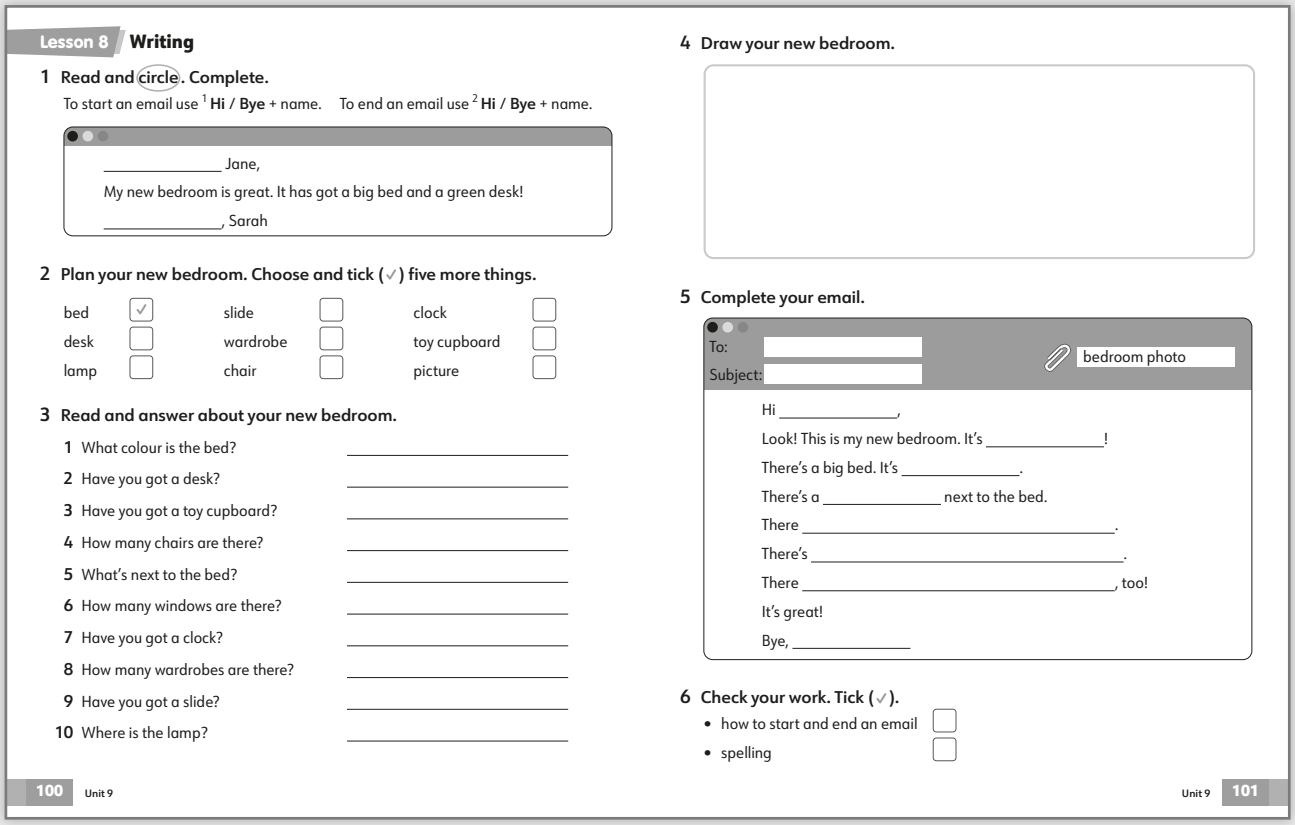
- Have the children look at the photo and say what's different from the bedroom in Activity 2.
- Elicit what is missing at the beginning and end of the email (*Hi* + name; *Bye*).
- Work through the email sentence by sentence, eliciting and prompting the answers from the class. Write each completed sentence on the board and ask for whole-class agreement each time.
- Read the whole email out, sentence by sentence, for the children to repeat.
- Have the children complete the email in their books.

Answers:
Hi Billy,
My new bedroom is fantastic! There are two beds. There are two toy cupboards. There's one desk. I've got one window behind the desk. I've got a purple and black chair. I've got a toy, too. It's a teddy!
Bye, Sam

Cooler: Read round the class

- Have the children read out the finished email in Activity 3 – each child reads one word in turn. See how fast they can do it – and still be understandable!

Workbook pages 100–101



Lesson 8 **Writing**

1 Read and circle. Complete.

To start an email use [1] **Hi / Bye** + name. To end an email use [2] **Hi / Bye** + name.

_____ Jane,
My new bedroom is great. It has got a big bed and a green desk!
_____, Sarah

2 Plan your new bedroom. Choose and tick (✓) five more things.

bed	✓	slide		clock	
desk		wardrobe		toy cupboard	
lamp		chair		picture	

3 Read and answer about your new bedroom.

1 What colour is the bed? _____
2 Have you got a desk? _____
3 Have you got a toy cupboard? _____
4 How many chairs are there? _____
5 What's next to the bed? _____
6 How many windows are there? _____
7 Have you got a clock? _____
8 How many wardrobes are there? _____
9 Have you got a slide? _____
10 Where is the lamp? _____

4 Draw your new bedroom.

5 Complete your email.

To: Subject: bedroom photo

Hi _____,
Look! This is my new bedroom. It's _____!
There's a big bed. It's _____.
There's a _____ next to the bed.
There _____.
There's _____.
There _____, too!
It's great!
Bye, _____

6 Check your work. Tick (✓).

- how to start and end an email ☐
- spelling ☐

100 Unit 9

Unit 9 101

1 Read and circle. Complete.

- The children complete the sentences about starting and ending an email.

Answers: 1 Hi **2** Bye **3** Hi **4** Bye

2 Plan your new bedroom. Choose and tick (✓) five more things.

- The children choose and tick five things they want in their new bedroom.

Answers: Children's own answers.

3 Read and answer about your new bedroom.

- The children answer questions about the things in their new bedroom.

Answers: Children's own answers.

4 Draw your new bedroom.

- The children draw their new bedroom according to the information in Activities 2 and 3.

Answers: Children's own answers.

5 Complete your email.

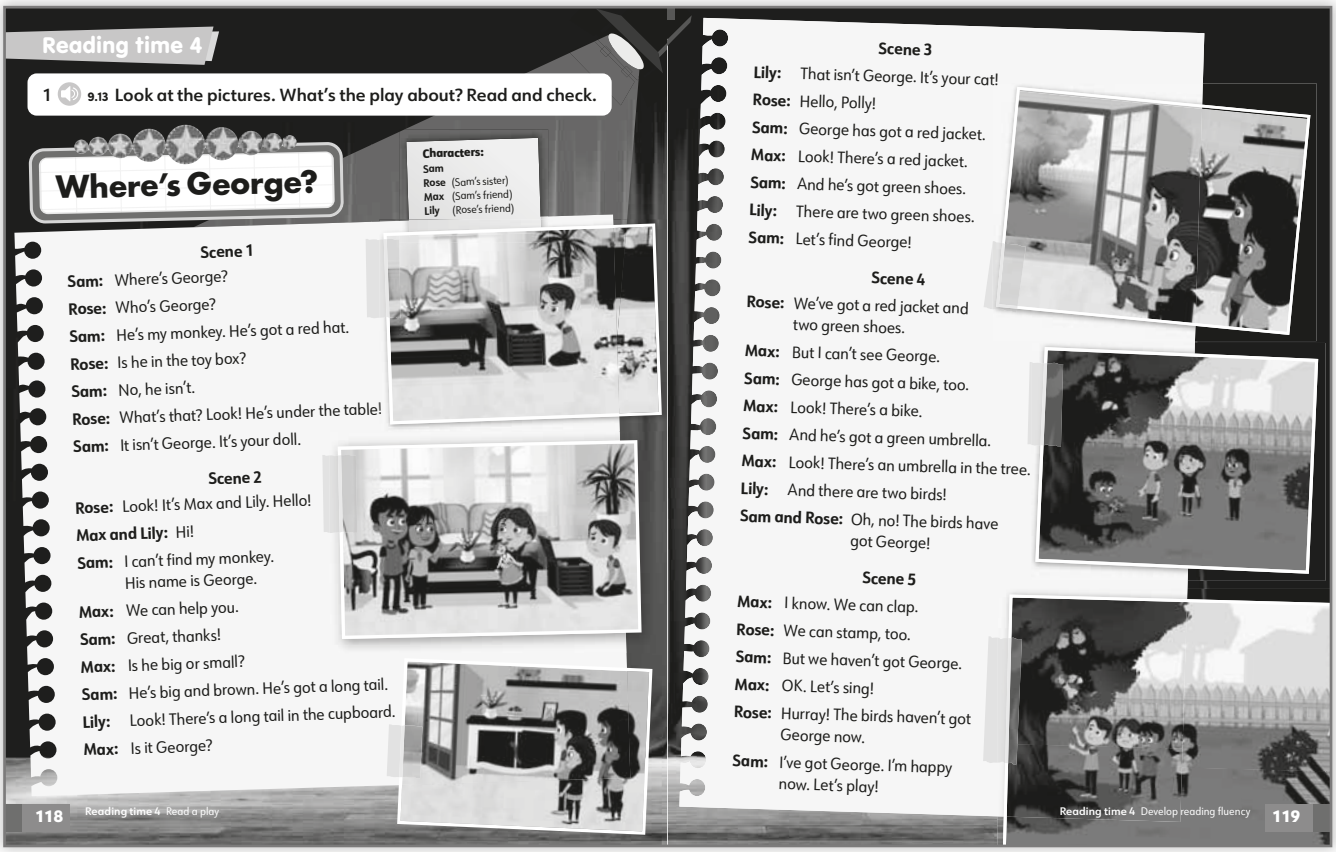
- The children complete the email using the information in Activities 2 and 3.

Answers: Children's own answers.

6 Check your work. Tick (✓).

- The children use the check list to make sure their work is complete and correct.

Pupil's Book page 118–119


Reading time 4

1 9.13 Look at the pictures. What's the play about? Read and check.

Where's George?

Characters:
Sam
Rose (Sam's sister)
Max (Sam's friend)
Lily (Rose's friend)

Scene 1

Sam: Where's George?
Rose: Who's George?
Sam: He's my monkey. He's got a red hat.
Rose: Is he in the toy box?
Sam: No, he isn't.
Rose: What's that? Look! He's under the table!
Sam: It isn't George. It's your doll.

Scene 2

Rose: Look! It's Max and Lily. Hello!
Max and Lily: Hi!
Sam: I can't find my monkey. His name is George.
Max: We can help you.
Sam: Great, thanks!
Max: Is he big or small?
Sam: He's big and brown. He's got a long tail.
Lily: Look! There's a long tail in the cupboard.
Max: Is it George?

118 Reading time 4 Read a play

Scene 3

Lily: That isn't George. It's your cat!
Rose: Hello, Polly!
Sam: George has got a red jacket.
Max: Look! There's a red jacket.
Sam: And he's got green shoes.
Lily: There are two green shoes.
Sam: Let's find George!

Scene 4

Rose: We've got a red jacket and two green shoes.
Max: But I can't see George.
Sam: George has got a bike, too.
Max: Look! There's a bike.
Sam: And he's got a green umbrella.
Max: Look! There's an umbrella in the tree.
Lily: And there are two birds!
Sam and Rose: Oh, no! The birds have got George!

Scene 5

Max: I know. We can clap.
Rose: We can stamp, too.
Sam: But we haven't got George.
Max: OK. Let's sing!
Rose: Hurray! The birds haven't got George now.
Sam: I've got George. I'm happy now. Let's play!

Reading time 4 Develop reading fluency 119

Learning objectives: Read a play; Develop reading fluency

Additional vocabulary: bike, birds, clap, clothes, colours, doll, hat, monkey, sing, size, stamp, toy box, umbrella

Resources: Reading time 4 video

Warm-up: I can see something ...

- This is a variation on the traditional game *I spy with my little eye ...* Choose something from the pictures on pages 118–119 of the Pupil's Book. Say *I can see something beginning with ... M* (*monkey*) – giving the first sound of the word (rather than the letter).
- The children look at the pictures and try to guess what you're thinking of.
- Repeat the game. Then invite confident children to set questions for the rest of the class.
- Some suggestions of items for the game: b (*bike, bird, boy, box*), c (*chair, cupboard*), d (*doll, door*), g (*girl*), s (*sofa*), t (*toy, train*), w (*window*).

1 Look at the pictures. What's the play about? Read and check.

- Have the children look at the pictures again. Ask if they know what a play is, and where we usually see one (*on a stage / in a theatre*).
- Give the children a few minutes to look at the story and get an idea of the characters and what is happening.
- Ask them what they think the story of the play is, and praise any relevant suggestions.

Answer: Some children are looking for George, a toy monkey.

1 9.13 Read the play.

- Play the audio of the play and have the children follow in their books. Stop at certain points and ask the children what number they are on to check that they are following carefully.
- Play the audio again and encourage the children to follow the words with their finger.

- After each section, give the children time to look through the text again at their own pace and to reinforce through reading what they heard and followed.
- If some of the children aren't able to read independently at this point, then support them by reading along with them. Help them with any difficult words. Some children will need motivation. Remind them that reading is fun!

Check the story.

- Ask some questions to check the key aspects of the play:
- Point to picture 1 – *Who is George?* (*George is a toy monkey. He's Sam's monkey.*) *Where is he?* (*Sam can't find his monkey.*)
- Point to picture 2 – *What are the names of the children?* (*The names of the children are Sam, Rose, Max and Lily.*)
- Point to picture 3 – *What can they see in the cupboard?* (*They can see a long tail in the cupboard. It's Polly, the cat.*)
- Point to picture 4 – *What can they see now?* (*They can see a red jacket and two green shoes.*)
- Point to picture 5 – *What can they see in the tree?* (*They can see an umbrella in the tree. They can see two birds, too.*) *Where is George?* (*George is in the tree with the birds.*)
- Point to picture 6 – *Are the children happy?* (*Yes, the children are happy. They have got George, now.*)

Rate the story.

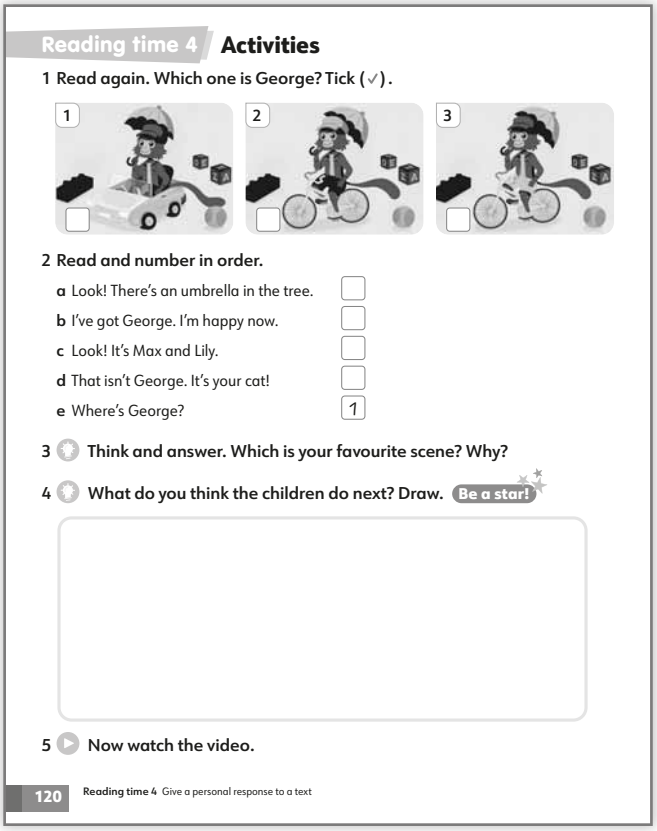
- Ask the children if they liked the play. (They will be doing more critical thinking about the play in the next lesson, but after the first encounter with the play, it is good to get some feedback and set a positive attitude for the follow-up.)
- You may wish to discuss with the children language they can use to talk about whether they liked the reading text. You may wish to write a list of adjectives on the board. Some examples could be:
  fun
  good
  interesting
  exciting
  fantastic
  boring
- Explain or demonstrate the meaning of these with the children.
- If any of the children didn't like the reading text, you may wish to encourage them to consider any positive aspects.
- Finally, you may wish to remind children that everybody has got their own opinion which may be different to their classmates, and that's OK. Encourage children to respect their classmate's opinions.

Cooler: The shark game

- Play *The shark game* (see the Games bank, pages 14–15) with key vocabulary from the story. Some examples you could use are: *monkey, table, brown, tail, cupboard, jacket, shoes, birds.*

Reading time 4 Activities

Pupil's Book page 120


Reading time 4 Activities

1 Read again. Which one is George? Tick (✓).

2 Read and number in order.

a Look! There's an umbrella in the tree.
b I've got George. I'm happy now.
c Look! It's Max and Lily.
d That isn't George. It's your cat!
e Where's George? 1

3 Think and answer. Which is your favourite scene? Why?

4 What do you think the children do next? Draw. Be a star!

5 Now watch the video.

120 Reading time 4 Give a personal response to a text

Learning objectives: Give a personal response to a text

Additional vocabulary: cat, favourite, happy

Resources: Reading time 4 video

Materials: coloured pencils

Warm-up: How many words?

- Read out some sentences from the story *Where's George?* and have the children tell you how many words there are in each one. Suggested sentences: *He's got a red hat.* (5); *I can't find my monkey.* (5); *There's a long tail in the cupboard.* (7); *George has got a red jacket.* (6); *The birds have got George!* (5).
- Then have the children repeat the phrases chorally.

1 Read again. Which one is George? Tick (✓).

- Remind the children of the story by asking some questions, e.g. *Who is George? Where is he? What has he got?*
- Refer the children back to the story and have them tell you some information about George – his clothes, his appearance, his toys, etc. For each piece of information the children give, ask *Picture 1, 2 or 3?*
- As they get more information, ask the children which picture is George and why.

Answer: 3

2 Read and number in order.

- Read out the sentences and have the children repeat chorally.
- Refer them to the example answer and point out that sentence e is the first line of the play. Ask the children which is number 5 – the last sentence. Have them find it in the story and number it *5* (*sentence b*).
- Then give the children time to find the others and number them in order.
- Read out each sentence and have the children tell you the number. Ask for whole-class agreement each time.

Answers: a **4** b **5** c **2** d **3** e **1**

3 Think and answer. Which is your favourite scene? Why?

- Ask the children *How many scenes are there in the play?* (*5*) *Which is your favourite scene?* Give the children a little time to look back at the play and think about their favourite scene.
- Call out numbers 1–5 and have the children vote for their favourite scene by raising their hand. You can ask one child to count the votes to see which is the class favourite.
- Then invite the children to give some reasons for their opinions.

4 What do you think the children do next? Draw. Be a star!

- Ask the children what they think happens next in the story. Listen to some suggestions – remember all suggestions are valid at this time!
- Give the children some time to draw a picture of their idea of the next scene. Have them show a friend and say what's happening.
- Ask if any children would like to show and tell the class about their picture.

5 Now watch the video.

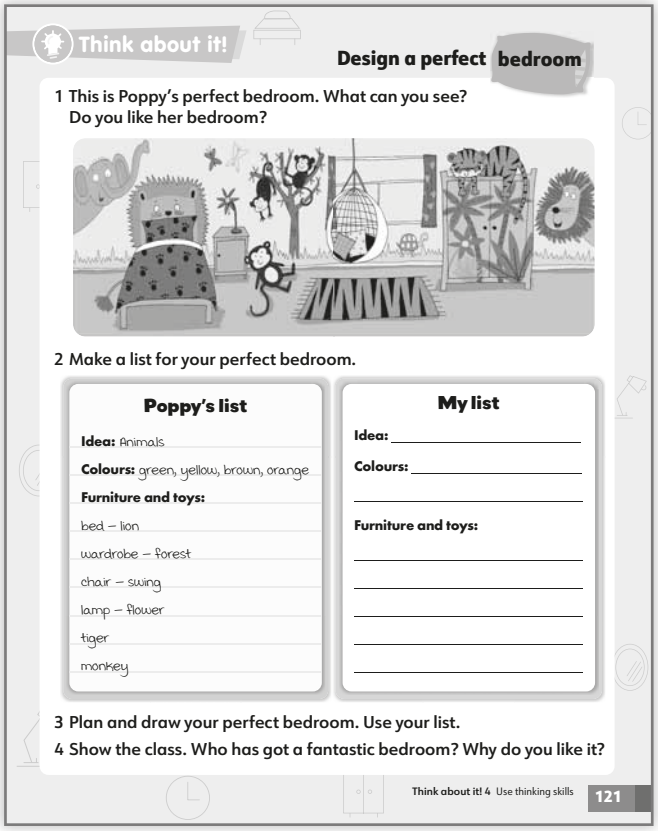
- Show the children the video of the story.
- Ask which version they preferred, the printed version or the video, and why.

Cooler: Enjoy your friends' work

- Have the children leave their pictures on their desks and walk around the classroom, admiring their friends' work. While they do this, call out *Stop!* now and again and invite the children to say what they like about the picture they are looking at, e.g. *This is a great idea! This picture is cool!*

Think about it!

Pupil's Book page 121


Think about it!

Design a perfect bedroom

1 This is Poppy's perfect bedroom. What can you see? Do you like her bedroom?

2 Make a list for your perfect bedroom.

Poppy's list

Idea: Animals

Colours: green, yellow, brown, orange

Furniture and toys:

bed – lion

wardrobe – forest

chair – swing

lamp – flower

tiger

monkey

My list

Idea: _____

Colours: _____

_____

Furniture and toys:

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

3 Plan and draw your perfect bedroom. Use your list.

4 Show the class. Who has got a fantastic bedroom? Why do you like it?

Think about it! 4 Use thinking skills 121

Learning objectives: Use thinking skills; Make a list

Review vocabulary: bed, chair, clock, desk, door, lamp, sandpit, wardrobe, window; colours

Materials: a sheet of paper and a pencil for each child

9.13 Warm-up: Act out the play

- Play the audio or video of the play *Where's George?* and have the children do the actions of the story.

1 This is Poppy's perfect bedroom. What can you see? Do you like her bedroom?

- Refer the children to the picture and ask *What can you see in the bedroom?*
- Clarify the meaning of *perfect*. Ask the children if this is a perfect bedroom for them. Ask if they like it or if they have different ideas for a perfect bedroom.

2 Make a list for your perfect bedroom.

- Read out Poppy's list and have the children point to the items in the picture.
- Ask the children for ideas for a theme for their bedroom. Elicit a few suggestions to get them started!
- Give an example of your own – *a school bedroom! White and green; the wardrobe is a whiteboard, the desk is a school desk and the bed is a sandpit!* Write your ideas on the board in the form of the list in Activity 2. Ask *Is this a good idea?* Encourage the children to respond to your idea with phrases from page 116, e.g. *No, I think it's boring. / Yes, I think it's great.*
- Now have them make their own list. They may need help from you for some vocabulary for the features of their bedroom.

Answers: Children's own answers.

3 Plan and draw your perfect bedroom. Use your list.

- Give each child paper to make a drawing of their bedroom including the features on their list.

4 Show the class. Who has got a fantastic bedroom? Why do you like it?

- Ask if any children would like to show their bedroom and tell the class about it. Each time, ask the others if they like each idea and why. The reactions may not all be positive, but make sure that each child who talks to the class gets a round of applause afterwards!

Cooler: Disappearing words

- Play *Disappearing words* (see the Games bank, pages 14–15), asking the children to recall all the key words they can from Unit 9 and Reading time 4.

10 Fabulous food

Lesson 1 Vocabulary

Pupil's Book pages 122–123



Learning objectives: Identify and use new words: food; Sing a song using the target vocabulary

Vocabulary: banana, burger, cake, carrot, mango, onion, pear, tomato

Resources: Flashcards; Vocabulary worksheet 1

Materials: paper, pens or pencils

Warm-up: The big picture

- Refer the children to the picture on page 122. Ask *What can you see? What are the children wearing? Can you find Bot?* (*He's under the table.*)

ESDC



Why is it important to eat all the colours of the rainbow?

Introduce the children to Sustainable Development Goal 3: *Good health and well-being.*

Ask: *Why is it important to eat all the colours of the rainbow?*

ESDC *continued*

- This question helps pupils engage with ideas about healthy living through diet.
- Confirm the children's understanding of *rainbow.* Discuss the importance of eating a balanced diet. Share information about rainbow foods (foods that are red, orange, yellow, green, blue, etc.).
- Organise the children into small groups (one for each colour) and ask them to list foods of that colour. Have the children create posters showing their colour's foods. Children share their findings with the class.

Possible answers: we get to eat lots of different things, rainbow foods are usually healthier than other foods.

1 10.1 Listen and say.

- Play the audio. Have the children listen and point to the pictures. Then repeat the process.

10.2 Then listen and number.

- Play the audio, pausing after the first word to point out the example answer.
- Play the rest of the audio for the children to number the words.

Audioscript

1 *pear* ***2*** *carrot* ***3*** *tomato* ***4*** *burger* ***5*** *cake*
6 *onion* ***7*** *banana* ***8*** *mango*

Answers: 1 pear **2** carrot **3** tomato **4** burger
5 cake **6** onion **7** banana **8** mango

2 Make a food colour chart. What colour food is your favourite?

- Ask the children *What colour are these foods?* Call out the foods from Activity 1 and elicit the colour. Ask if the foods sometimes have different colours (mangoes can be green or orange, onions can be yellow, white, purple or green, etc).
- Refer the children to the chart. Point out the examples and ask if the children agree (they may see apples as green or yellow instead of red).
- Elicit a food for the orange category (orange, mango, carrot, etc). Have the children complete the chart. Copy the chart to the board, allowing space for the lists – use colour names if you don't have all the coloured pens!
- Invite several children to come to the board and write a food name under the right colour.

Answers: red: tomato, apple, orange: carrot, mango, orange, yellow: banana, apple, green: pear, mango, apple, purple: onion, white: onion, brown: burger, coconut

3 10.3 Sing a song.

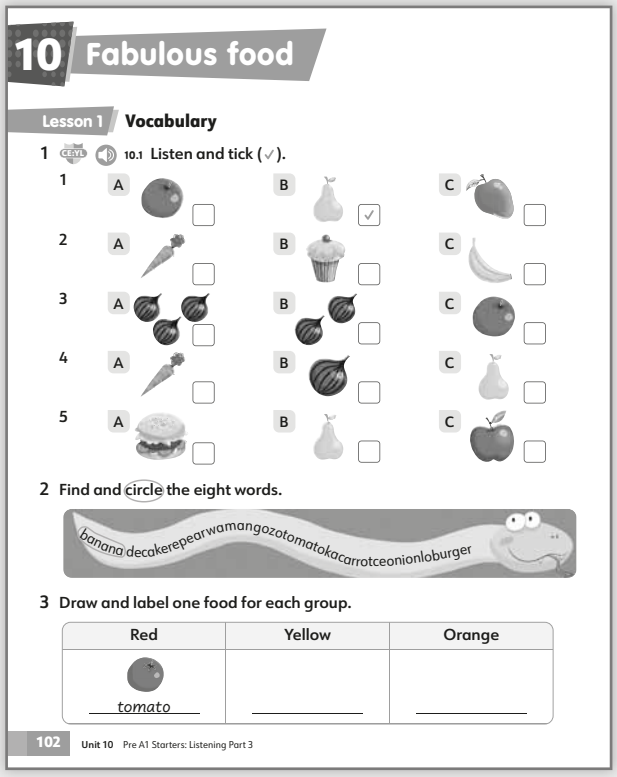
Be a star!

- Ask the children to turn their Pupil's Book face down. Explain that they will hear a song and that when they hear one of the objects in Activity 1 mentioned, they should raise their hands. Play the audio and join in with the children. Check the meaning of *treat* and *rainbow*.
- Now have the children look at the song in their Pupil's Book. Play it again pausing after each line for them to repeat (singing).
- Play the song and have the children join in and make a gesture, e.g. a happy / straight / sad face, showing if they like each food as it is mentioned. Repeat.

Cooler: Ready, set, draw!

- Play *Ready, set, draw*! (see the Games bank, pages 14–15) with the vocabulary from this lesson.

Workbook page 102


10 Fabulous food

Lesson 1 Vocabulary

1 CE:YL 10.1 Listen and tick (✓).

2 Find and circle the eight words.

banana decakerepearwamangozotomatokacarrotceonionloburger

3 Draw and label one food for each group.

Red	Yellow	Orange
tomato		

102 Unit 10 Pre A1 Starters: Listening Part 3

1 CE:YL 10.1 Listen and tick (✓).

- This activity helps the children prepare for Part 3 of the Listening paper of the Cambridge English: Pre A1 Starters test. The children listen, look at the pictures and tick the correct boxes.
- Go through the example first, and then have the children complete the activity individually.
- Check answers with the class.
- (To help prepare for this part of the test, the children need plenty of practice matching words to pictures.)

Audioscript

Speaker: *Look at the pictures. Now listen and look. There is one example.*

1 Boy: *I don't like bananas. I don't like apples. I like pears.*

Speaker: *Can you see the tick? Now you listen and tick the box.*

2 Girl: *It's not an orange carrot. It's not a pink cake. It's a yellow banana.*

3 Girl: *How many onions are there?*

Boy: *There are two onions. There aren't three onions.*

4 Boy: *There's an orange carrot. It's not an onion. It's not a pear.*

5 Girl: *Do you like apples?*

Boy: *No, I don't.*

Girl: *Do you like pears?*

Boy: *No, I don't. I like burgers!*

Answers: 1 B **2** C **3** B **4** A **5** A

2 Find and circle the eight words.

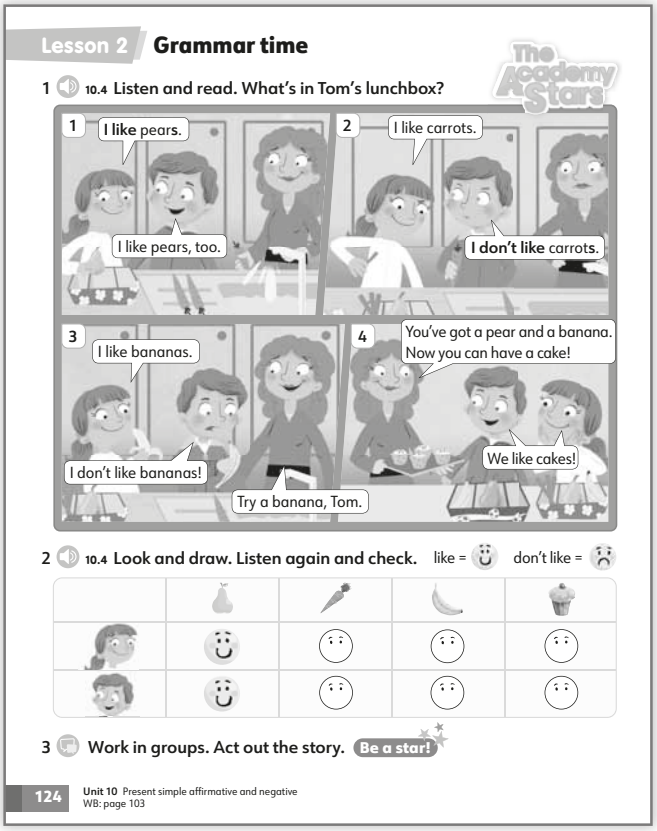
Answers: banana, cake, pear, mango, tomato, carrot, onion, burger

3 Draw and label one food for each group.

Answers: Children's own answers.

Lesson 2 Grammar time

Pupil's Book page 124



Learning objectives: Understand and use present simple affirmative and negative; Read and act out a story using the target grammar

Grammar: Present simple (*I*) affirmative and negative

Review vocabulary: food

Materials: paper, pens or pencils

10.3 Warm-up: Sing the song!

- Play the song *I can eat a rainbow* and have the children join in and make a gesture.
- Remind them of the gestures from the previous lesson: a happy / straight / sad face as each food is mentioned in the song to demonstrate if they like it or not.

1 10.4 Listen and read. What's in Tom's lunchbox?

- Refer the children to the pictures, and ask *Who can you see? What are their names? Where are they?* (*at home*) Ask what they are doing (preparing and eating food). Point to the lunch boxes and ask / explain what they are.
- Play the audio. Have the children follow in their books and find the answer to the question *What's in Tom's lunchbox*?
- Play the audio again and have the children do the actions in the story – when they see / hear *I like*, they rub their tummies and say *Yum!* When they see / hear *I don't like*, they shake their heads and say *Yuck*!
- Play the audio one more time for the children to repeat chorally.

Answers: A pear, a banana (and a cake – but only after the last picture ...!)

2 10.4 Look and draw. Listen again and check.

- Refer the children to the chart and elicit the names of the items at the top.
- Play the audio again and stop after *I like pears*, too. Point to the pear and say *Sara – like or don't like*? *Tom – like or don't like*? Point out the example smiley faces for *like* for both.
- Play the rest of the story and have the children complete the faces. Pause the audio if necessary to make sure they have time to do this.
- For feedback, call out the foods and names for the class to say *like* or *don't like*.

Answers:



3 Work in groups. Act out the story.

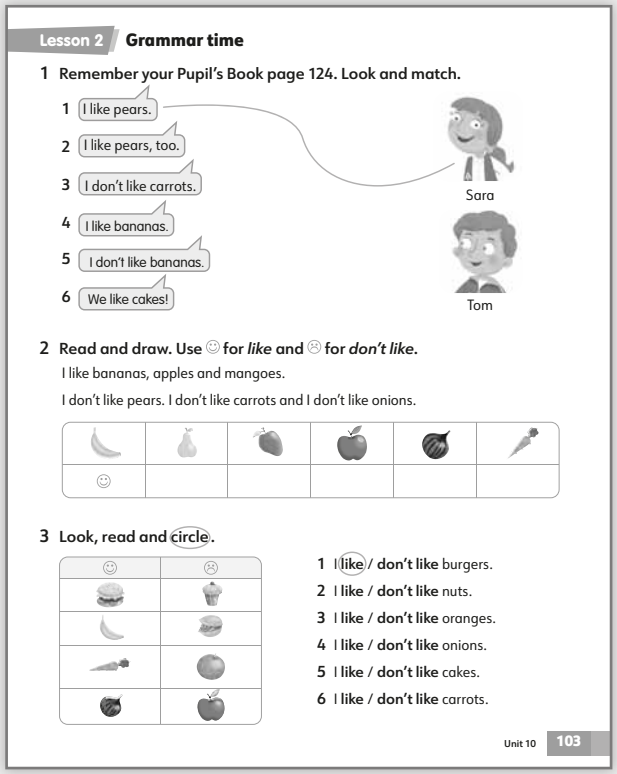
Be a star!

- Play the audio again for the class to repeat each line chorally. Pay attention to the pronunciation of *like* and *don't like*.
- Ask *How many characters are in the story?* (*three*) Divide the class into groups of three and either have them decide who will be each character, or designate the roles.
- Allow the children a few minutes to practise acting out the story. No props are really needed, but the children could use pens, pencils and rulers for the food and a pencil case for the lunchbox! Monitor, encourage and check for pronunciation.
- Ask if any groups would like to act out the story for the whole class. Alternatively, they could take turns to act it out for another group.
- If you wish, you could ask the children to change roles and act out the story again.

Cooler: Team sentences

- Play *Team sentences* (see the Games bank, pages 14–15). Suggested sentences: *I like pears. I don't like carrots. You've got a pear and a banana. You can have a cake. We like cakes!*

Workbook page 103



Lesson 2 **Grammar time**

1 **Remember your Pupil's Book page 124. Look and match.**

1 I like pears.
2 I like pears, too.
3 I don't like carrots.
4 I like bananas.
5 I don't like bananas.
6 We like cakes!

Sara

Tom

2 **Read and draw. Use ☺ for *like* and ☹ for *don't like*.**

I like bananas, apples and mangoes.

I don't like pears. I don't like carrots and I don't like onions.

3 **Look, read and circle.**

1 I **like** / **don't like** burgers.
2 I **like** / **don't like** nuts.
3 I **like** / **don't like** oranges.
4 I **like** / **don't like** onions.
5 I **like** / **don't like** cakes.
6 I **like** / **don't like** carrots.

Unit 10 103

1 Remember your Pupil's Book page 124. Look and match.

Answers: Sara: 1, 4, 6 Tom: 2, 3, 5, 6

2 Read and draw. Use ☺ for *like* and ☹ for *don't like*.

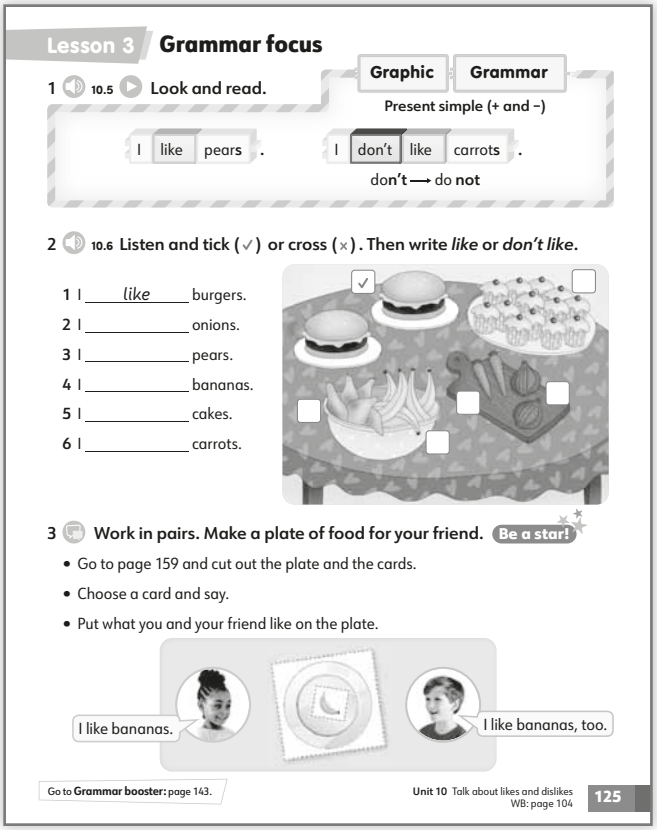
Answers: ☺ – bananas, apples, mangoes ☹ – pears, carrots, onions

3 Look, read and circle.

Answers: 1 like **2** don't like **3** don't like **4** like **5** don't like **6** like

Lesson 3 Grammar focus

Pupil's Book page 125


Lesson 3 Grammar focus

1 10.5 Look and read.

Graphic | Grammar

Present simple (+ and –)

I like pears. I don't like carrots.

don't → do not

2 10.6 Listen and tick (✓) or cross (×). Then write *like* or *don't like*.

1 I *like* burgers.
2 I _____ onions.
3 I _____ pears.
4 I _____ bananas.
5 I _____ cakes.
6 I _____ carrots.

3 Work in pairs. Make a plate of food for your friend. Be a star!

- Go to page 159 and cut out the plate and the cards.
- Choose a card and say.
- Put what you and your friend like on the plate.

I like bananas. I like bananas, too.

Go to **Grammar booster:** page 143.

Unit 10 Talk about likes and dislikes WB: page 104 125

Learning objectives: Talk about likes and dislikes

Grammar: Present simple (*I*) affirmative and negative: *I like pears. I don't like carrots.*

Review vocabulary: food

Resources: Graphic Grammar video; Grammar worksheet 1

Warm-up: Like or don't like?

- Draw a big smiley face (for *like*) on one side of the board and a big sad face (for *don't like*) on the other side. Call out the names of the foods (and show the flashcards if you have them) and have the children point to the side of the board for *like* or *don't like* according to their personal opinions.

1 10.5 Look and read.

- Play the audio and have the children follow in their books.
- Play the audio again and encourage them to make *like* or *don't like* gestures to accompany the affirmatives and negatives.
- Highlight the contraction *don't like* by counting out *I do not like carrots* on your fingers, and then pushing the do not fingers together to show the contraction.
- Play the audio for the children to repeat.
- Then play it one more time and have all the children repeat the sentences with enthusiasm for *like* and with distaste for *don't like*.

- If using the video, tell the children they will see a video of a girl and her mother shopping for fruit and vegetables. Play the video and let the children watch and enjoy.
- Play the video again and have the children repeat each sentence.
- Have the children do actions for *like* and *don't like*.

2 10.6 Listen and tick (✓) or cross (✗). Then write *like* or *don't like*.

- Refer the children to the pictures. Ask *What food is there on the table*?
- Play the example sentence of the audio and poin
- out the tick next to the burgers.
- Play the second sentence and say *Onions, yes* or *no*? (*no*). Prompt the children to put a cross.
- Play the rest of the audio and have the children complete the activity individually. Repeat if necessary.
- Invite different children to read out the completed sentences. Ask for whole-class agreement each time.

Audioscript

1 *I like burgers.*
2 *I don't like onions.*
3 *I like pears.*
4 *I don't like bananas.*
5 *I like cakes.*
6 *I like carrots.*

Answers: 1 ✓ like **2** ✗ don't like **3** ✓ like **4** ✗ don't like **5** ✓ like **6** ✓ like

3 Work in pairs. Make a plate of food for your friend.

Be a star!

- Organise the children in pairs and have them open their books to page 159. Make sure the children all have scissors with which to cut out the plate and cards. For this activity, they will use one set of cards.
- Give the children time to cut out the plate and the cards. While they do this, confirm understanding of what they see in the pictures on the cards.
- Work through the example activity with the children. Then have the children take turns to tell their friend about the food they like or don't like using the cards and *I like* or *I don't like*. They then place the cards that show what their friend likes on the plate.
- Allow time for the children to complete the game. If pairs finish early, an alternative is to have them place on each other's plates the food they say they like. Circulate and monitor.
- Finish with a few children telling the class about their likes or dislikes and have everyone respond.

Teaching star!

Extension

- Ask a confident child whether they like mangoes. Nod your head to mime (yes) so the child responds with *yes*. Say *Me too!* Explain that we can say *Me too!* when we like the same thing (responding to an affirmative sentence).
- Demonstrate the activity. Put a pencil tick and cross next to two items in Activity 2 your book. Show the class and say the corresponding sentences.
- Then elicit one or two examples from the class. Respond with *Me too!* when appropriate, or show that you don't like something by the expression on your face. Drill the sentences and possible responses. Have the children tick or cross the foods they like or don't like.

Teaching star!

Mixed ability

For less confident children, an open task sometimes feels too challenging. Activities with a target for them to reach like the one above are confidence-building.

- Specify a minimum number of likes or dislikes for the class to talk about, e.g. two likes and two dislikes.
- Have children raise their hands when they have finished this. Fast finishers can get some praise and then have the opportunity to do more about any foods they want.
- (More confident children are, of course, free to talk about as many as they want.)

Tasks like this give less confident children a feeling of achievement, and stronger children the freedom to extend more.

Grammar booster

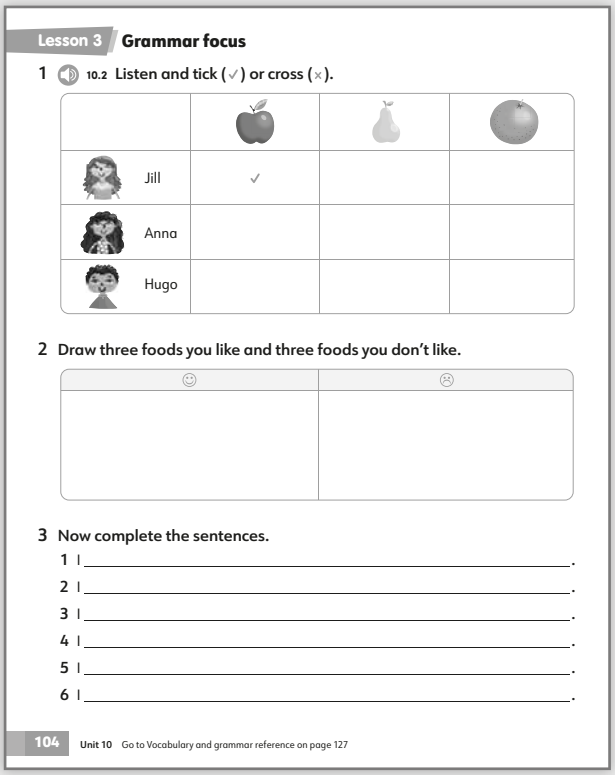
For additional practice, ask the children to turn to page 143 of their Pupil's Book to complete Activity 1. If the children need more grammar practice before the communicative Activity 3, have them complete this activity first. Alternatively, you may wish to have the children complete this activity at home.

Answers: 1 b, like **2** f, like **3** e, don't like
4 a, don't like **5** d, like **6** c, don't like

Cooler: A memory game

- Start the 'chain' by saying, e.g. *I like carrots*. Encourage the next child to repeat your sentence and add a different item with *like* or *don't like* – *I like carrots. I don't like onions*.
- Continue around the class or in groups. Each new child in the chain repeats what the others said and adds an item.

Workbook page 104


Lesson 3 Grammar focus

1 10.2 Listen and tick (✓) or cross (×).

Jill	✓		
Anna			
Hugo			

2 Draw three foods you like and three foods you don't like.

3 Now complete the sentences.

1 I _____.
2 I _____.
3 I _____.
4 I _____.
5 I _____.
6 I _____.

104 Unit 10 Go to Vocabulary and grammar reference on page 127

Grammar reference:

Remind the children that they can refer to the grammar reference on page 127 to help them when completing these activities.

1 10.2 Listen and tick (✓) or cross (✗).

Audioscript

What's that, Jill?
It's an apple! Hmmm. I like apples. Try an apple, Anna.
No, thank you. I don't like apples.
OK. You can have a pear.
Yes, please. I like pears.
Me too!
I don't like apples or pears.
Really, Hugo?
Yes. I like oranges.
Me too!

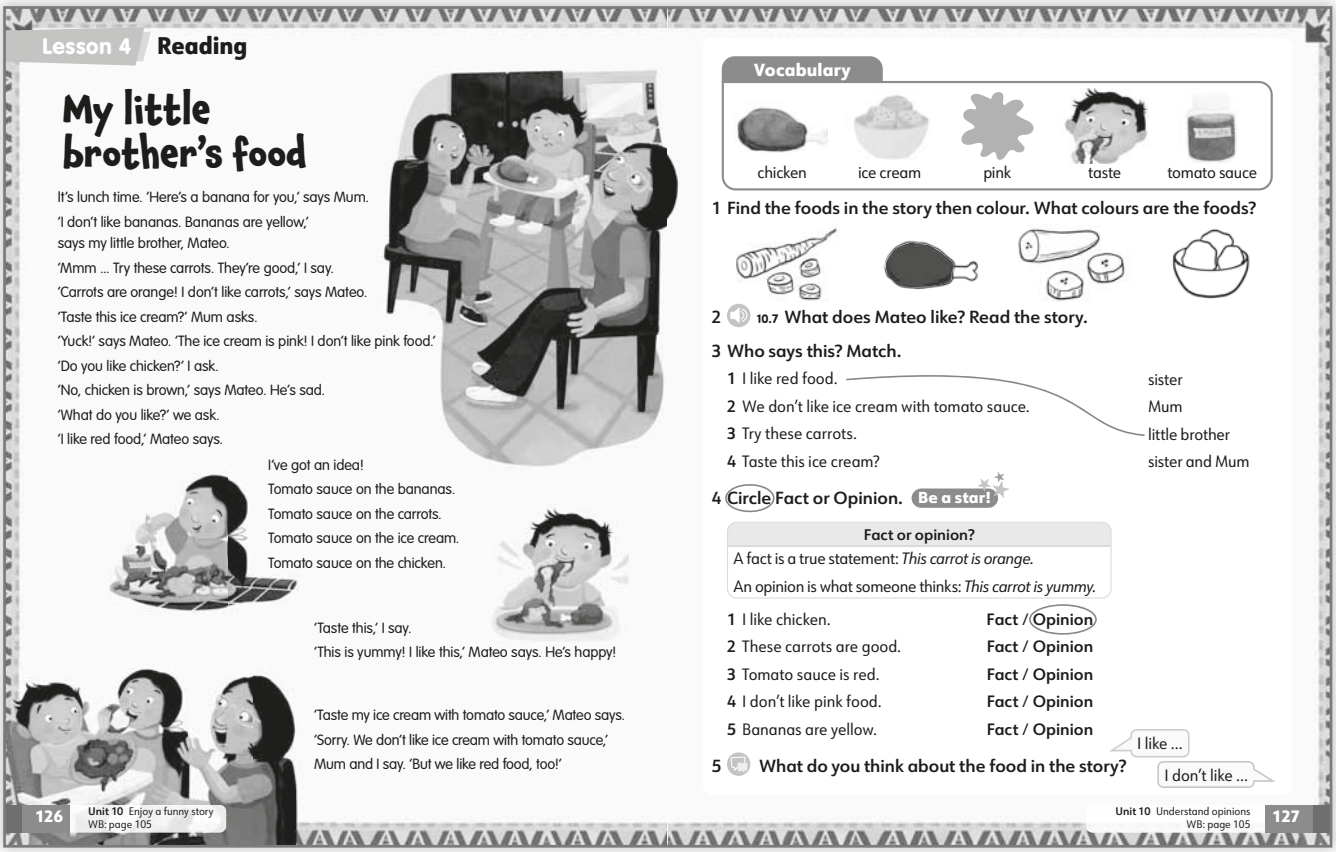
Answers: Jill: apple (✓), pear (✓), orange (✓)
Anna: apple (✗), pear (✓), orange (✓)
Hugo: apple (✗), pear (✗), orange (✓)

2 Draw three foods you like and three foods you don't like.

3 Now complete the sentences.

Answers: Children's own answers.

Pupil's Book pages 126–127



Learning objectives: Enjoy a funny story; Understand opinions

Vocabulary: chicken, ice cream, pink, taste, tomato sauce

Review vocabulary: brother, mum, red

Resources: Flashcards; Vocabulary worksheet 2

Warm-up: Stand up or sit down

- Read out sentences about likes and dislikes of food to the class, e.g. *I like mangoes. I don't like carrots.* If the sentence is true for them, they stand up. If it is false, they sit down. Recycle other food words, e.g. *apples, oranges, nuts, yoghurt*.

Vocabulary

- Refer the children's attention to the vocabulary panel on page 127 and read out the words for the class to repeat. Elicit that these are names for items that are described in the story.
- Do a little mime for each one: *tomato sauce* – mime stirring a pot of sauce and pretend to spoon it out on to a plate; *ice cream* – mime eating a spoonful *mmmmm*!; *chicken* – mime eating a drumstick; pink – gesture towards pink items in the classroom or clothing that the children may be wearing; *taste* – mime dipping a finger in something, putting on your tongue and reacting. Repeat the words in random order and have the children do the mime.
- Do the mime and have the children tell you the word.

1 Find the foods in the story then colour. What colours are the foods?

- Refer the children to the first food item and ask *What's this*? Most children will probably not recognise that it is a carrot. Ask *Can you find it in the story? What colour is it?* (orange)
- Then have them look at the other foods, find them in the story and colour them in the appropriate colours.

Answers: carrots - orange, chicken - brown, banana - yellow, ice cream - pink

2 10.7 What does Mateo like? Read the story.

- Before playing the audio, ask the children to look at the different foods in the pictures. Ask *Can you guess what Mateo likes?* Ask for responses from a few of the children but don't confirm at this point.
- Play the audio and have them look at the pictures and follow the text to confirm or change their answers.

Answer: Mateo likes red food.

3 Who says this? Match.

- Read out the matching example to the children. Explain that the sentences on the left are spoken by a character in the story and the people listed on the right are characters from the story.
- Refer the children to the text to match the remaining sentences with the character or characters in the story who said the sentences.

Answers: 1 little brother **2** sister and Mum **3** sister **4** Mum

4 Circle *Fact* or *Opinion*.

Be a star!

- Read out the description of facts and opinions. Clarify with the children.
- Refer the children to the example and point out this is an opinion because it is what someone thinks.
- Ask if number 2 is a fact or opinion (*opinion*). Then have them continue the activity individually.
- For feedback, read out each sentence and have the children respond *Fact* or *Opinion*. Ask for wholeclass agreement each time.

Answers: 1 O **2** O **3** F **4** O **5** F

Teaching star!

Reading support

Help the children with a challenging task like Activity 4 by giving clear examples first.

- Clarify with some examples of your own on the board – *Bananas are nice / delicious* (opinion); *I'm a teacher* (fact). Write two more on the board and ask the children if they are fact or opinion: *This is an English class* (fact); *English is fantastic*! (opinion)
- Check number 1 and elicit the answer to number 2 as a class. They can then continue individually as above.

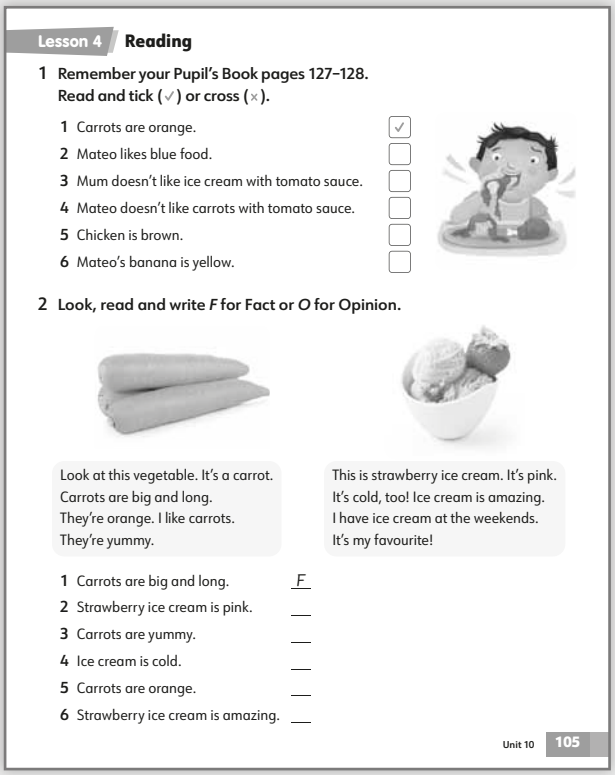
5 What do you think about the food in the story?

- Ask the children *Do you like bananas?* Listen to feedback from the children, then ask *What do you think about ice cream?*
- As a class, discuss opinions on the rest of the food mentioned in the story.
- Mention that if we don't try new food, we can't know if we like it or not. You could also point out that our taste can change as we get older, so it's a good idea to try food we don't like again from time to time.

Cooler: Disappearing sentences

- Play *Disappearing sentences* (see the Games bank, pages 14–15) using the first three sentences of the story.

Workbook page 105



Lesson 4 **Reading**

1 Remember your Pupil's Book pages 127–128. Read and tick (✓) or cross (×).

1 Carrots are orange. ☑
2 Mateo likes blue food. ☐
3 Mum doesn't like ice cream with tomato sauce. ☐
4 Mateo doesn't like carrots with tomato sauce. ☐
5 Chicken is brown. ☐
6 Mateo's banana is yellow. ☐

2 Look, read and write *F* for Fact or *O* for Opinion.

Look at this vegetable. It's a carrot. Carrots are big and long. They're orange. I like carrots. They're yummy.

This is strawberry ice cream. It's pink. It's cold, too! Ice cream is amazing. I have ice cream at the weekends. It's my favourite!

1 Carrots are big and long. F
2 Strawberry ice cream is pink. ___
3 Carrots are yummy. ___
4 Ice cream is cold. ___
5 Carrots are orange. ___
6 Strawberry ice cream is amazing. ___

Unit 10 105

1 Remember your Pupil's Book pages 126–127. Read and tick (✓) or cross (✕).

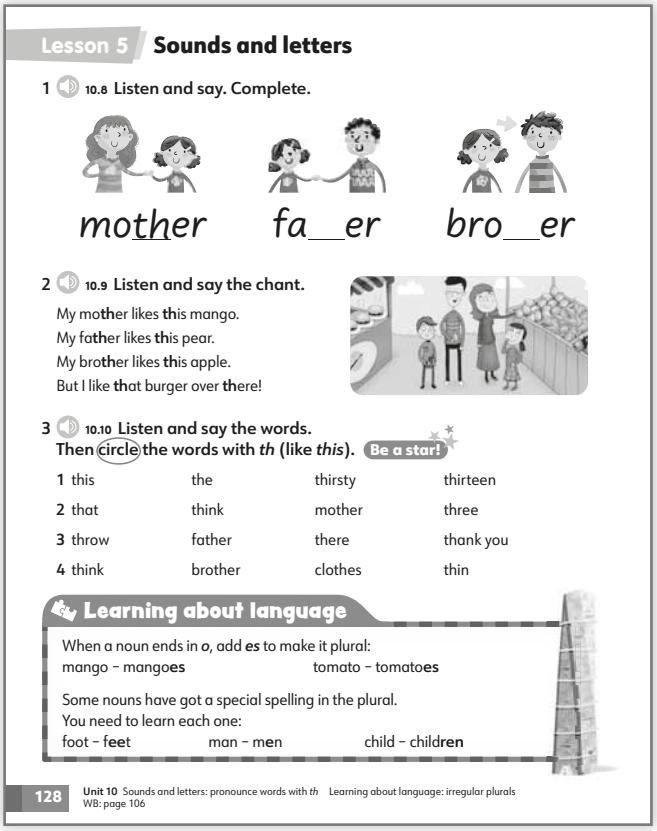
Answers: 1 ✓ **2** ✕ **3** ✓ **4** ✕ **5** ✓ **6** ✓

2 Look, read and write *F* for Fact and *O* for Opinion.

Answers: 1 F **2** F **3** O **4** F **5** F **6** O

Lesson 5 Sounds and letters

Pupil's Book page 128


Lesson 5 Sounds and letters

1 10.8 Listen and say. Complete.

mother fa__er bro__er

2 10.9 Listen and say the chant.

My mother likes this mango.
My father likes this pear.
My brother likes this apple.
But I like that burger over there!

3 10.10 Listen and say the words. Then circle the words with *th* (like *this*). Be a star!

1 this	the	thirsty	thirteen
2 that	think	mother	three
3 throw	father	there	thank you
4 think	brother	clothes	thin

Learning about language

When a noun ends in *o*, add **es** to make it plural:
mango – mango**es** tomato – tomato**es**

Some nouns have got a special spelling in the plural.
You need to learn each one:
foot – f**ee**t man – m**e**n child – child**ren**

128 Unit 10 Sounds and letters: pronounce words with *th* Learning about language: irregular plurals
WB: page 106

Learning objectives: Sounds and letters: pronounce words with *th* sound; Learning about language: irregular plurals

Sounds and letters words: brother, father, mother

Resources: Sounds and letters worksheet

Warm-up: Team spelling

- Play *Team spelling* (see the Games bank, pages 14–15) with key words from the text *My little brother's food*, e.g. *chicken, ice cream, pink, taste, tomato sauce*.

1 10.8 Listen and say. Complete.

- With the children's books closed, point to each of the pictures in your book and ask *Who's this*? Ask questions, if necessary, to prompt suitable suggestions.
- Now play the audio and have the children open their books and check.
- Play the audio again for the children to repeat the words chorally. Then ask a few individuals to say each word to check pronunciation.
- Point to the th in the words in your book. Ask *What are these letters?* (*th*) *What's the sound?* (*/ð/*)
- Write a big, clear *th* on the board as a model for the children. Have them complete the words.

Audioscript
/ð/ /ð/ /ð/ mother
/ð/ /ð/ /ð/ father
/ð/ /ð/ /ð/ brother

Answers: mother, father, brother

2 10.9 Listen and say the chant.

- Play the chant and have the children follow in their books. Have them raise their hands every time they see / hear a word with *th*.
- Play the chant again, pausing after each line for the children to repeat. Pay particular attention to the *th* sound.
- Play the chant once more and have the children join in as much as they can.
- Divide the class into two groups. Have each half of the class say alternate lines.

3 10.10 Listen and say the words. Then circle the words with *th* (like *this*).

Be a star!

- Write on the board *1 brother, this* and *2 think, thirteen*.
- Read out the words to the class and ask if the pronunciation of th is the same or different in the two groups. Point out it is different and model the two sounds clearly. Have the children repeat the sounds: */θ/ /θ/ /θ/*, */ð/ /ð/ /ð/*.
- Play the audio and have the children repeat the words.
- Play the first part of the audio again and stop after each word to ask if the *th* sound is like the *th* of group 1 or 2 on the board (1, 1, 2, 2). Ask them to circle the words that are like the *th* of group 1 (*this*, *the*).
- Play the rest of the audio and have the children circle the */ð/* words.
- Then play the audio again for them to check their answers.
- Play the audio once more and have the children raise their hands when they hear a */ð/* sound. Write the words on the board.

Answers: 1 this, the **2** that, mother **3** father, there **4** brother, clothes

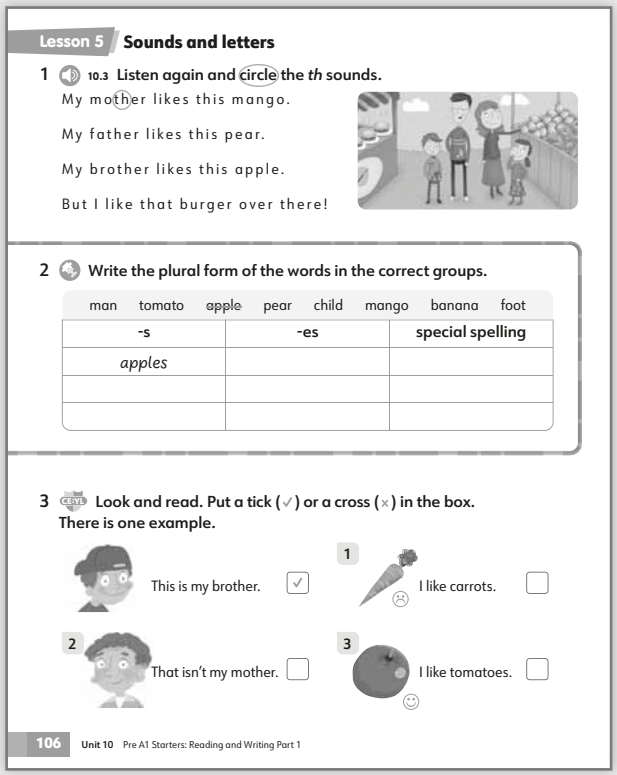
Learning about language

- Read out and clarify the information in the *Learning about language box*. Write the first set of examples on the board and drill the pronunciation.
- Then quickly draw a volcano on the board and label it *volcano*. Draw another next to it and elicit the plural form and its spelling (*volcanoes*).
- Read out and have the children repeat the singular and plural forms of the irregular plural words. Then call out *One foot, two …?* and have the children reply with the plural. Do this for *men* and *children*, too.

Cooler: Physical spelling

- Play *Physical spelling* (see the Games bank, pages 14–15) with some of the words from Activity 3.

Workbook page 106



Lesson 5 Sounds and letters

1 10.3 Listen again and circle the *th* sounds.

My mother likes this mango.
My father likes this pear.
My brother likes this apple.
But I like that burger over there!

2 Write the plural form of the words in the correct groups.

man tomato apple pear child mango banana foot

-s	-es	special spelling
apples		

3 CE:YL Look and read. Put a tick (✓) or a cross (×) in the box. There is one example.

This is my brother. ✓
1 I like carrots.
2 That isn't my mother.
3 I like tomatoes.

106 Unit 10 Pre A1 Starters: Reading and Writing Part 1

1 10.3 Listen again and circle the *th* sounds.

Answers:
My mo(th)er likes (th)is mango.
My fa(th)er likes (th)is pear.
My bro(th)er likes (th)is apple.
But I like (th)at burger over (th)ere!

2 Write the plural form of the words in the correct groups.

Answers: -s: apples, pears, bananas; -es: tomatoes, mangoes; special spelling: feet, men, children

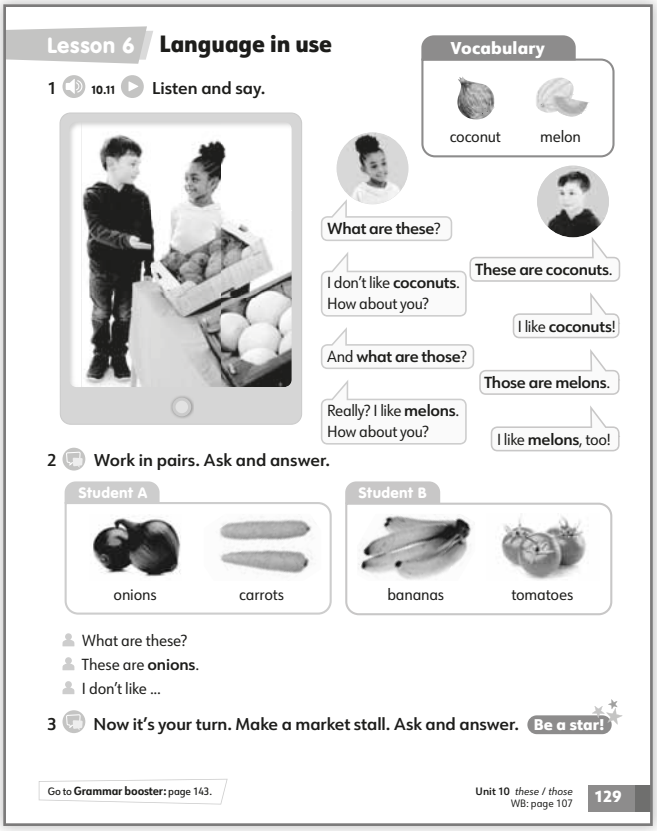
3 CE:YL Look and read. Put a tick (✓) or a cross (✗) in the box. There is one example.

- This activity helps the children prepare for Part 1 of the Reading and Writing paper of the Cambridge English: Pre A1 Starters test. The children look, read and tick or cross the boxes.
- If done in class, go through the example first: read out the sentence and point to the picture of the boy. Elicit that the sentence is correct and indicate the tick.
- Point to the other pictures and read out the sentences. Then give them some quiet time to read and tick or cross the boxes accordingly.
- Invite different children to read out the sentences and have the rest of the class call out *yes* or *no*. Write the ticks and crosses on the board next to the corresponding number.

Answers: 1 ✗ **2** ✓ **3** ✓

Lesson 6 Language in use

Pupil's Book page 129



Learning objectives: *these / those*

Vocabulary: coconut, melon

Review vocabulary: food

Resources: Language in use video; Grammar worksheet 2

Materials: coloured pencils

10.9 Warm-up: Say the chant again

- Using mime if necessary to prompt them, ask the children to recall the chant from Lesson 5. Then play the audio to see how well they remembered. Write it on the board.
- Have the whole class say the chant together.

Vocabulary

- Refer the children to the words in the vocabulary panel. Read out the words and have them repeat. Ask them if they like coconut and melon.

1 10.11 Listen and say.

- Play the audio and have the children follow in their books.
- Play the audio again for the children to repeat chorally.
- Ask the children what the difference is between *these* and *those* (*these* for plural things near us, *those* for plural things further away). Ask how we ask for the other person's opinion (*How about you?*).
- Play the audio one more time, and have the children repeat and point near to them for *these* and further away for *those*. Have them imitate the intonation as closely as possible.

- If using the video, play it and let the children watch and enjoy it.
- Play the video again and stop after each question to elicit the answer from the class. Play the video to confirm and have them all repeat it.
- Now play the video one more time and have the children repeat the questions and answers. Encourage them to imitate the intonation as closely as possible.

2 Work in pairs. Ask and answer.

- Elicit the names of the items in the pictures.
- Invite two confident children to read out the example dialogue. Point out that it is the same as the beginning of the dialogue in Activity 1, but the blue word is changed for an item in the box. Elicit the next line from the class.
- Then divide the class into pairs to continue the activity. Circulate, monitor and pay attention to the children's use of *these* and *those*.

3 Now it's your turn. Make a market stall. Ask and answer. Be a star!

- In their notebooks, have the children draw a market stall – prompt them to draw between four and six squares filled with food shapes of different colours. Point out that the pictures don't have to be perfect, but the children should know what they have on their stall! Draw your own on the board while they are doing this.
- Alternatively, if you have downloaded the flashcards, you can use these to set up a market stall.
- Demonstrate the activity with a confident child. Look together at the child's 'stall', point and ask *What are these?* and have the child answer. Then have the child point to your drawing and ask *What are those?* and you answer.
- Divide the class into pairs. Drill sample questions and answers again and then have the children use their drawings to ask and answer.

Teaching star!

Groupwork

Activity 3 is also a good opportunity to have the children interact in groups.

- Divide the class into groups of five or six. Have the children draw their market stall as above and turn their picture so everyone in the group can see it.
- Join one group and demonstrate that everyone can ask questions about the things near to them (their neighbour's 'stall'): *What are these?* (*These are …*), and further away (ask the child next to you about the stall of another child in the group): *What are those?* (*I don't know!*) Then move to ask the other child *What are these?*
- Have the children continue in their groups.

The interaction is still very controlled, but there is a chance to talk to more people and extend the number of questions and answers.

Grammar booster

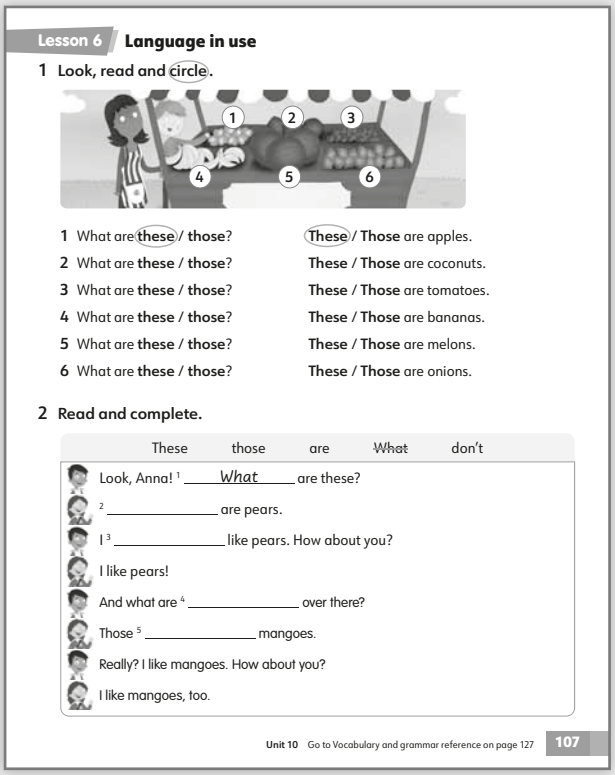
Ask the children to turn to page 143 of their Pupil's Book to complete Activity 2. You may also wish to have the children complete this activity at home.

Answers: 1 These are bananas. These are carrots. These are apples. **2** Those are onions. Those are pears. Those are cakes.

Cooler: Visualisation

- Ask the children to close their eyes and imagine what you tell them. Say: *You're at a market – look at the food. What fruits and vegetables can you see? What colours are they? What are those fruits? Can you see food you like? What can you see? Can you see food you don't like? What can you see? Can you smell food with a bad smell? What is it? Choose something to eat now!*
- Have the children open their eyes. Recall the questions and encourage the children to share some of their ideas with the class, or in groups.

Workbook page 107



Lesson 6 **Language in use**

1 Look, read and circle.

1 What are these / those? These / Those are apples.
2 What are these / those? These / Those are coconuts.
3 What are these / those? These / Those are tomatoes.
4 What are these / those? These / Those are bananas.
5 What are these / those? These / Those are melons.
6 What are these / those? These / Those are onions.

2 Read and complete.

These those are What don't

Look, Anna! [1] What are these?
[2] _____ are pears.
I [3] _____ like pears. How about you?
I like pears!
And what are [4] _____ over there?
Those [5] _____ mangoes.
Really? I like mangoes. How about you?
I like mangoes, too.

Grammar reference

Remind the children that they can refer to the grammar reference on page 127 to help them when completing these activities.

1 Look, read and circle.

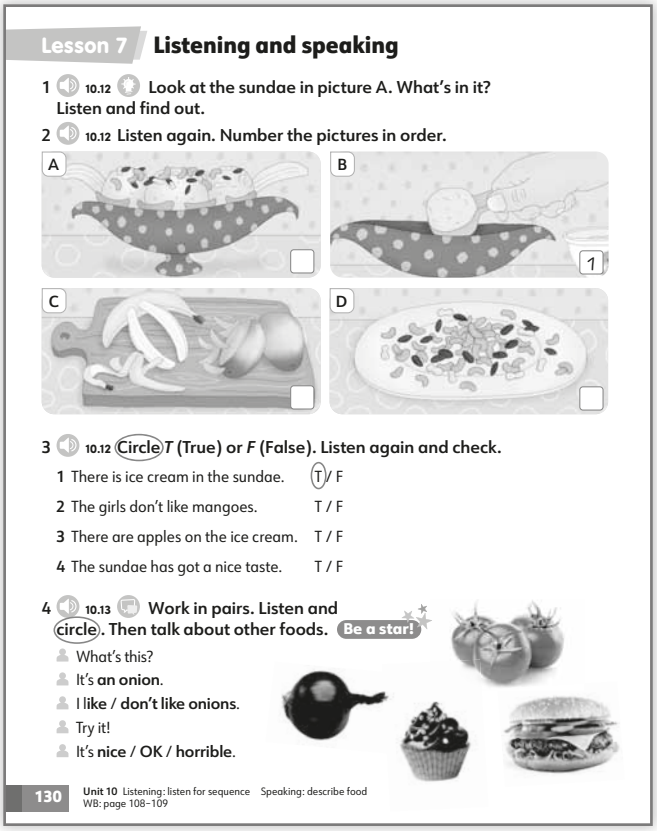
Answers: 1 these, These **2** those, Those **3** those, Those **4** these, These **5** those, Those **6** those, Those

2 Read and complete.

Answers: 1 What **2** These **3** don't **4** those **5** are

Lesson 7 Listening and speaking

Pupil's Book page 130


Lesson 7 Listening and speaking

1 10.12 Look at the sundae in picture A. What's in it? Listen and find out.

2 10.12 Listen again. Number the pictures in order.

A B 1 C D

3 10.12 Circle *T* (True) or *F* (False). Listen again and check.

1 There is ice cream in the sundae. T / F
2 The girls don't like mangoes. T / F
3 There are apples on the ice cream. T / F
4 The sundae has got a nice taste. T / F

4 10.13 Work in pairs. Listen and circle. Then talk about other foods. Be a star!

What's this?
It's an onion.
I like / don't like onions.
Try it!
It's nice / OK / horrible.

130 Unit 10 Listening: listen for sequence Speaking: describe food
WB: page 108–109

Learning objectives: Listening: listen for sequence; Speaking: describe food

Resources: Vocabulary worksheet 2

Warm-up: Team spelling

- Play Team spelling (see the Games bank, pages 14–15) with food words from this unit, e.g. (*banana, burger, cake, carrot, mango, onion, pear, tomato, coconut, melon, etc.*).

1 10.12 Look at the sundae in picture A. What's in it? Listen and find out.

- Refer the children to the sundae pictures (drill the pronunciation!) and ask what food they think is in it. Write their ideas on the board.
- Play the audio and tick the ingredients that they predicted correctly. Check the meaning of nuts.

Audioscript

1 Girl 1: *Have you got the ice cream?*
Girl 2: *Yes, I have.*
Girl 1: *OK. Put the ice cream in the bowl.*
Girl 2: *OK. The ice cream is in the bowl now.*
Girl 1: *Good!*
2 Girl 2: *What are these?*
Girl 1: *These are mangoes and bananas.*
Girl 2: *Mmmm. I like mangoes.*
Girl 1: *Me too! Put the mangoes on the ice cream. And put the bananas in the bowl.*
Girl 2: *OK.*
3 Girl 2: *What are those?*
Girl 1: *Those are nuts.*
Girl 2: *I like nuts.*
Girl 1: *Me too! Put the nuts on the ice cream.*
Girl 2: *OK.*
4 Girl 1: *Ta-da! It's an ice cream sundae with ice cream, mangoes, bananas and nuts. It looks amazing.*
Girl 2: *Mmmm. Let's taste it.*
Girl 1 & 2: *Mmmm. It's really nice!*
Girl 1: *I like sundaes!*
Girl 2: *Me too!*

Answers: ice cream, bananas, mangos and nuts

2 10.12 Listen again. Number the pictures in order.

- Elicit what they can see in example answer 1 (*ice cream*). Play part 1 of the audio. Have them count how many times *ice cream* is said (3).
- Play the rest of the audio for the children to identify and number the other pictures in order.

Answers: A 4 **B** 1 **C** 2 **D** 3

3 10.12 Circle *T* (True) or *F* (False). Listen again and check.

- Invite a child to read out the first sentence and answer. Point out the example answer.
- Repeat with the second sentence, but don't confirm the answers at this point.
- The children read and choose *True* or *False*.
- Play the audio and let them check their answers.
- Invite different children to read out the sentences and the rest of the class to call out *True* or *False*.

Answers: 1 T **2** F **3** F **4** T

4 10.13 Work in pairs. Listen and circle. Then talk about other foods.

Be a star!

- Elicit the foods in the pictures. Play the audio and have the children listen and circle the words used.
- Play it again for them to repeat.
- Act out the dialogue with a confident child. The child starts and you use a different food name.

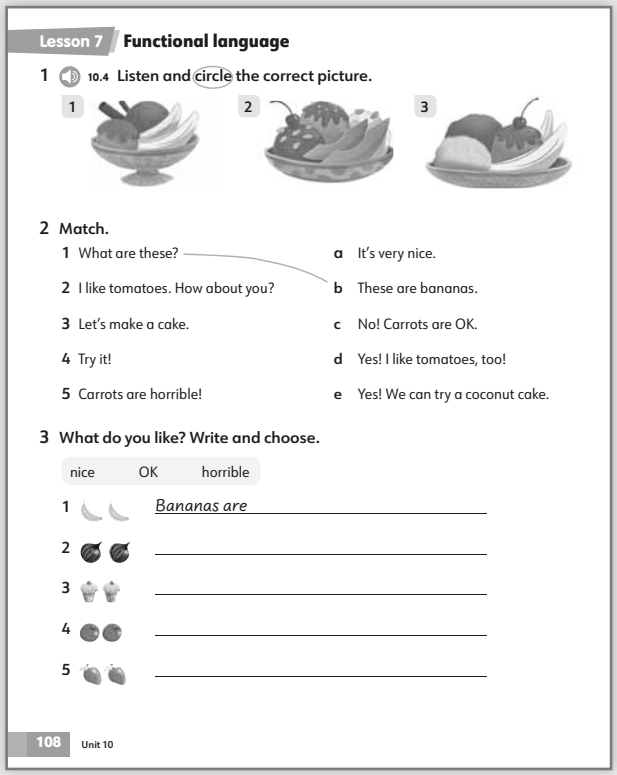
- Divide the class into pairs to make new dialogues.

Answers: don't like, OK

Cooler: Team vocabulary race

- Play *Team vocabulary race* (see the Games bank, pages 14–15) with the topic food.

Workbook page 108



Lesson 7 **Functional language**

1 10.4 Listen and circle the correct picture.

1 2 3

2 Match.

1 What are these?	a It's very nice.
2 I like tomatoes. How about you?	b These are bananas.
3 Let's make a cake.	c No! Carrots are OK.
4 Try it!	d Yes! I like tomatoes, too!
5 Carrots are horrible!	e Yes! We can try a coconut cake.

3 What do you like? Write and choose.

nice OK horrible

1 Bananas are _____

2 _____

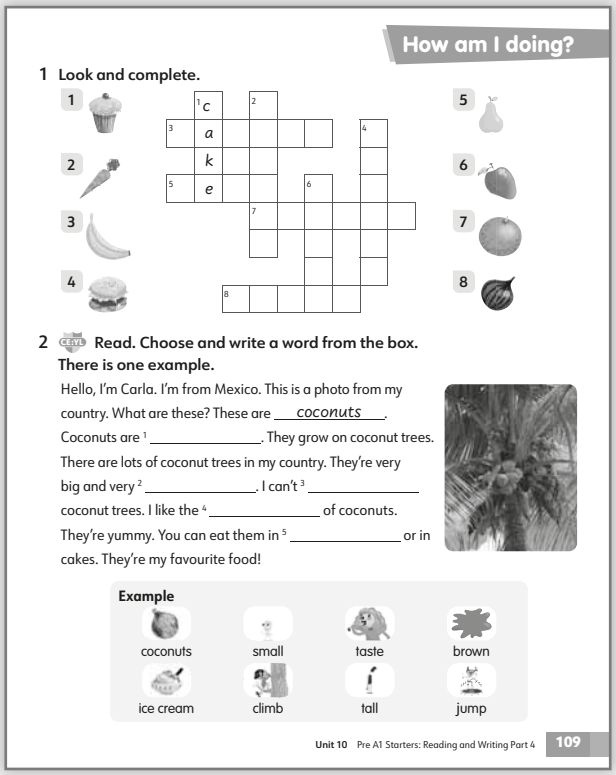
3 _____

4 _____

5 _____

108 Unit 10

Workbook page 109



How am I doing?

1 Look and complete.

2 CE:YL Read. Choose and write a word from the box. There is one example.

Hello, I'm Carla. I'm from Mexico. This is a photo from my country. What are these? These are coconuts. Coconuts are [1] _____. They grow on coconut trees. There are lots of coconut trees in my country. They're very big and very [2] _____. I can't [3] _____ coconut trees. I like the [4] _____ of coconuts. They're yummy. You can eat them in [5] _____ or in cakes. They're my favourite food!

Example

coconuts small taste brown

ice cream climb tall jump

Unit 10 Pre A1 Starters: Reading and Writing Part 4 109

1 10.4 Listen and circle the correct picture.

Audioscript

Let's make an ice cream sundae.
Oh yes. What's this?
It's a mango.
I don't like mangoes.
Try it!
It's nice.
OK. Ice cream, mangoes, nuts ... It's an ice cream sundae.
It's very nice.

Answer: 2

2 Match.

Answers: 1 b **2** d **3** e **4** a **5** c

3 What do you like? Write and choose.

Answers: Children's own answers.

1 Look and complete.

Answers: 1 cake **2** carrot **3** banana **4** burger **5** pear **6** mango **7** orange **8** onion

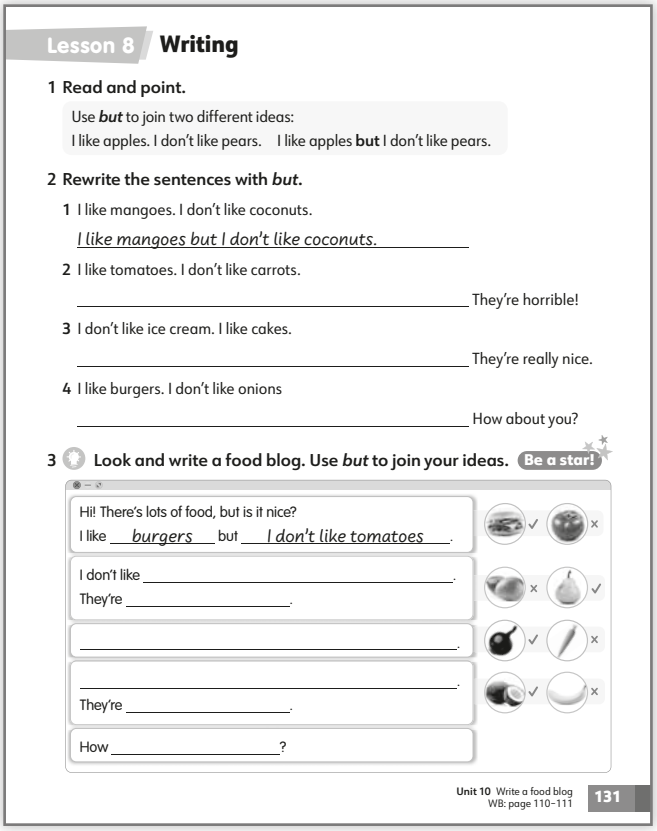
2 CE:YL Read. Choose and write a word from the box. There is one example.

- This activity helps the children prepare for Part 4 of the Reading and Writing paper of the Cambridge English: Pre A1 Starters test. The children complete the text by choosing words from the illustrated list in the box.
- If done in class, go through the example first. Then have the children work in pairs. Ask them to read each sentence and guess the word before looking at the word box.
- Check the answers with the class.
- (To prepare, they should practise reading a text quickly for general meaning.)

Answers: 1 brown **2** tall **3** climb **4** taste **5** ice cream

Lesson 8 Writing

Pupil's Book page 131



Lesson 8 Writing

1 Read and point.

Use ***but*** to join two different ideas:
I like apples. I don't like pears. I like apples **but** I don't like pears.

2 Rewrite the sentences with ***but***.

1 I like mangoes. I don't like coconuts.
I like mangoes but I don't like coconuts.

2 I like tomatoes. I don't like carrots.
_____ They're horrible!

3 I don't like ice cream. I like cakes.
_____ They're really nice.

4 I like burgers. I don't like onions
_____ How about you?

3 Look and write a food blog. Use *but* to join your ideas. Be a star!

Hi! There's lots of food, but is it nice?
I like *burgers* but *I don't like tomatoes*.
I don't like _____.
They're _____.
_____.
_____.
They're _____.
How _____?

Unit 10 Write a food blog
WB: page 110–111
131

Learning objectives: Use *but* to join two different ideas; Write a food blog

Resources: Unit 10 test

Materials: paper, pens or pencils

Warm-up: Team sentences

- Play *Team sentences* (see the Games bank, pages 14–15). Suggested sentences: *There is ice cream in the sundae. The girls don't like mangoes. There are apples on the ice cream. The sundae has got a nice taste.*

1 Read and point.

- Write the first two example sentences on the board side by side. Read them out and ask *Is the opinion the same or different?* (*different*). Now write the third sentence below the other two. Point out that but joins the information between opposite opinions.
- Give an example about you, e.g. *I like carrots but I don't like pears*. Elicit more examples from volunteers.

2 Rewrite the sentences with *but*.

- Write the example sentences on the board. Elicit how to join them with *but* and compare to the finished example in the book.
- Elicit the answer to number 2 orally.
- Have the children continue the activity in their books.
- Finally, invite different children to read out the complete sentences with *but*. Ask for whole-class agreement each time. Write them on the board.

Answers: 1 I like mangoes but I don't like coconuts. **2** I like tomatoes but I don't like carrots. **3** I don't like ice cream but I like cakes. **4** I like burgers but I don't like onions.

Teaching star!

Fast finisher extension

Some children will be faster than others to finish a writing task like Activity 2.

- Ask the children who finish early to write another example of their own – two sentences, one with *like* and one with *don't like*.
- After showing it to you, they can write it on the board to test the other children at the end of the activity.

3 Look and write a food blog. Use *but* to join your ideas.

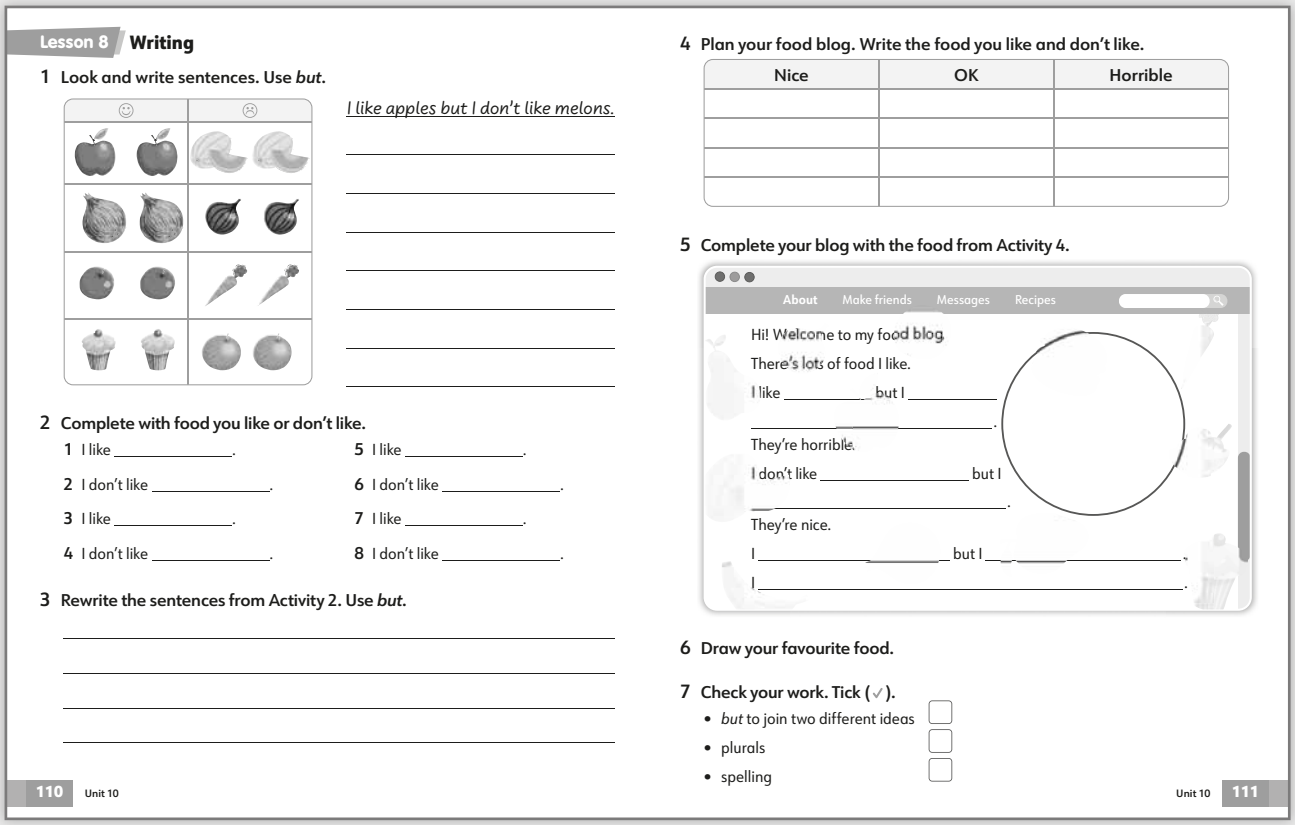
Be a star!

- Ask the children where they can see information like this (it's an internet blog giving opinions on food).
- Refer the children to the first pair of pictures and read through the example with the class.
- Then use the pictures on the right to elicit sentences, first separate and then with *but*. Elicit suitable adjectives to give an appropriate opinion on the foods. Each time, ask for whole-class agreement and write the sentences on the board.
- Have the children copy the completed text into their books.

Suggested answer: I like burgers but I don't like tomatoes. I don't like mangoes but I like pears. They're nice. I like onions but I don't like carrots. I like coconuts but I don't like bananas. They're horrible. How about you?

Cooler: Chant

- Either write the names or stick the flashcards of the foods on the board. Put ticks and crosses against them as shown here and two question marks underneath, like this:
  apples ✓, *pears* ✗.
  (*I like apples but I don't like pears.*)
  melons ✗, *mangoes* ✓.
  (*I don't like melons but I like mangoes.*)
  ? ? (*How about you? How about you?*)
- Elicit sentences using but, and the question *How about you?* for the question marks.
- Encourage the children to join you saying it as a rhythmic clap-along chant. Repeat it several times getting faster and faster!



Lesson 8 **Writing**

1 Look and write sentences. Use *but*.

I like apples but I don't like melons.

2 Complete with food you like or don't like.

1 I like _____.
2 I don't like _____.
3 I like _____.
4 I don't like _____.
5 I like _____.
6 I don't like _____.
7 I like _____.
8 I don't like _____.

3 Rewrite the sentences from Activity 2. Use *but*.

4 Plan your food blog. Write the food you like and don't like.

Nice	OK	Horrible

5 Complete your blog with the food from Activity 4.

About Make friends Messages Recipes

Hi! Welcome to my food blog.
There's lots of food I like.
I like _____ but I _____.
They're horrible.
I don't like _____ but I _____.
They're nice.
I _____ but I _____.
I _____.

6 Draw your favourite food.

7 Check your work. Tick (✓).

- *but* to join two different ideas ☐
- plurals ☐
- spelling ☐

110 Unit 10

Unit 10 111

1 Look and write sentences. Use *but*.

- The children look and write sentences according to the happy and sad faces.

Answers: I like apples but I don't like melons. I like coconuts but I don't like onions. I like tomatoes but I don't like carrots. I like cakes but I don't like oranges.

2 Complete with food you like or don't like.

- The children complete the sentences about their own likes and dislikes.

Answers: Children's own answers.

3 Rewrite the sentences from Activity 2. Use *but*.

- The children join their sentences from Activity 2 using *but*.

Answers: Children's own answers.

4 Plan your food blog. Write the food you like and don't like.

- The children complete the chart with their food likes and dislikes.

Answers: Children's own answers.

5 Complete your blog with the food from Activity 4.

- The children use their plan to complete their blog.

Answers: Children's own answers.

6 Draw your favourite food.

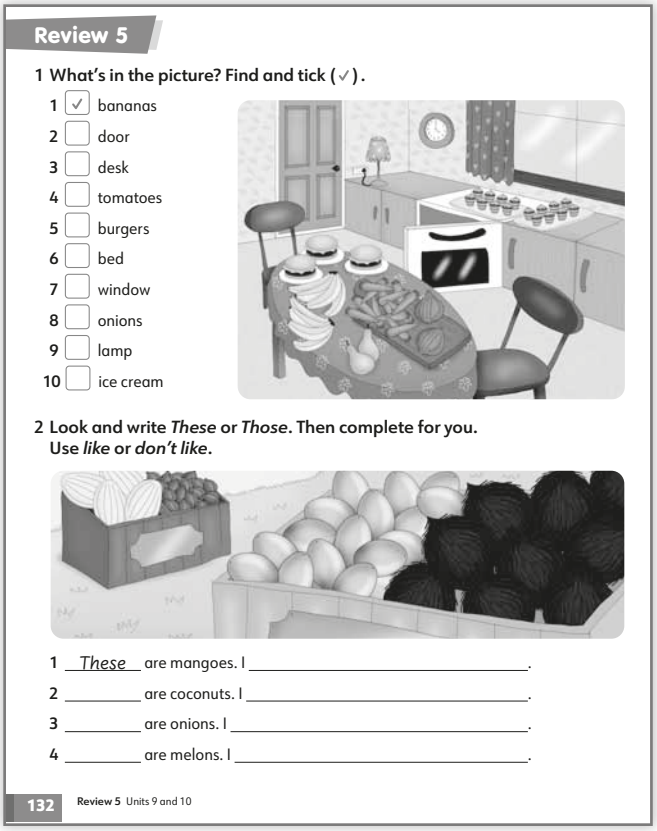
- The children draw a picture of their favourite food in the circle.

Answers: Children's own answers.

7 Check your work. Tick (✓).

- The children use the check list to make sure their work is correct and complete.

Pupil's Book page 132



Review 5

1 What's in the picture? Find and tick (✓).

1 ✓ bananas
2 ☐ door
3 ☐ desk
4 ☐ tomatoes
5 ☐ burgers
6 ☐ bed
7 ☐ window
8 ☐ onions
9 ☐ lamp
10 ☐ ice cream

2 Look and write *These* or *Those*. Then complete for you. Use *like* or *don't like*.

1 *These* are mangoes. I _____.
2 _____ are coconuts. I _____.
3 _____ are onions. I _____.
4 _____ are melons. I _____.

132 Review 5 Units 9 and 10

Learning objectives: Review vocabulary, grammar and sounds from Units 9 and 10; Pre A1 Starters: Reading and Writing Part 3; Speaking Part 3

Grammar: *there is / there are*; present simple affirmative and negative

Vocabulary: bedroom furniture and food

Sounds: *ck* and hard *th*

Resources: Flashcards; Speaking exam practice video

Warm-up: The shark game

- Play *The shark game* (see the Games bank, pages 14–15) with some of the key vocabulary from Units 9 and 10.

1 What's in the picture? Find and tick (✓).

- Refer the children to the picture and ask *What can you see?*
- Point out the example answer and have them find the bananas. Ask *Where are they?* (*They're on the table.*)
- Then ask them if they can find the door and the desk (*door – yes, desk – no*). Have them tick door.
- The children continue the activity and tick the other items they find.
- For feedback, read out the items from the list and have the children say *yes* or *no*.

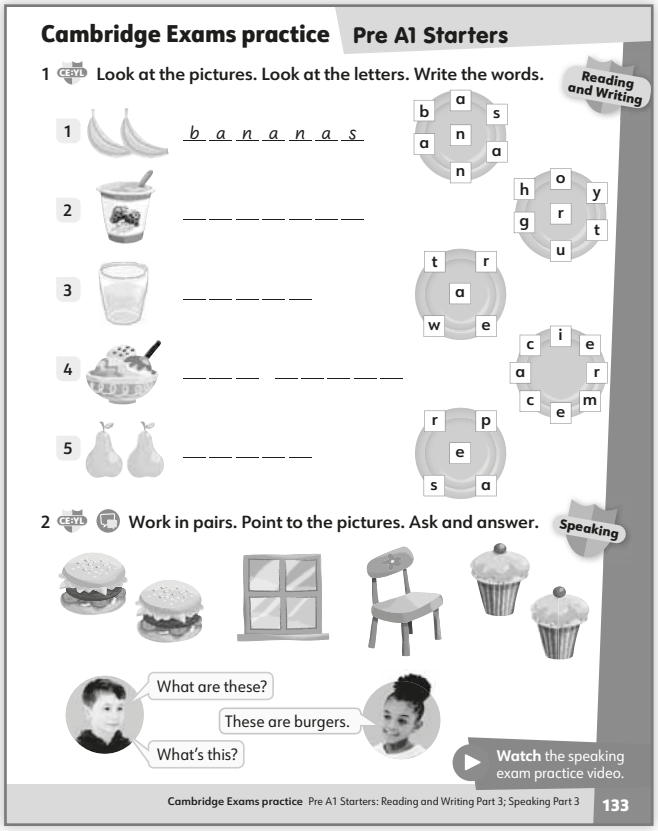
Answers: 1 ✓ **2** ✓ **5** ✓ **7** ✓ **8** ✓ **9** ✓

2 Look and write *These* or *Those*. Then complete for you. Use *like* or *don't like*.

- Refer the children to the picture and ask *What can you see?*
- Read out the example answer and ask *Why 'these'?* (*they're near*). Elicit the possible answers for the second part and write them on the board: *I like mangoes. / I don't like mangoes*. Tell the children to write what is true for them.
- Have the children complete the activity individually.
- Invite different children to read out the sentences. Ask if anyone has a different answer.

Answers: 1 These **2** These **3** Those **4** Those; Children's own answers.

Pupil's Book page 133



1 CE:YL Look at the pictures. Look at the letters. Write the words.

- This activity helps the children prepare for Part 3 of the Reading and Writing paper of the Cambridge English: Pre A1 Starters test. The children look, unscramble the letters and write the words.
- If done in class, go through the example first: point to the picture of the bananas. Guide the children to unscramble the letters on the plate so they make the word *bananas*.
- Give the children some quiet time to complete the activity.
- Invite different children to share their answers and have the rest of the class call out *yes* or *no*. Write the words on the board next to the corresponding number.
- (To help prepare for this part of the test, the children need plenty of practice in recognising and naming items, and unscrambling letters to form words.)

Answers: 1 bananas **2** yoghurt **3** water **4** ice cream **5** pears

2 CE:YL Work in pairs. Point to the pictures. Ask and answer.

- This activity helps the children prepare for Part 3 of the Speaking paper of the Cambridge English: Starters test. The children look, point and answer questions about what they see.
- Invite two children to read out the example dialogue and have the class repeat chorally.
- Ask *What are these?* (*These are burgers.*) Check the difference between *These* and *Those*.
- Elicit one or two more questions and answers. Then divide the class into pairs to take turns to ask and answer.

Cooler: Disappearing words

- Play *Disappearing words* (see the Games bank, pages 14–15), recalling all the key words from this Review lesson.

My progress: Units 9 and 10 (page 117)

- Clarify the meaning of each *I can …* statement. Elicit examples to help the children remember the content.
- Show the children the correct stickers for the *My progress check*. Give them time to decide if they are ready to give themselves a sticker. Provide encouragement if necessary.
- Have all the children hold up their books and show all their stickers to the class. Encourage them to give themselves a round of applause for their effort and achievement!

Mid-year review

Page 58

Audioscript

1 *This girl is small.*
2 *That's my grandpa. He's tired.*
3 *The baby is sad.*
4 *His name is Dan. He's funny.*
5 *They're thirsty.*
6 *My teacher is tall.*

1 **a** 4 **b** 3 **c** 2 **d** 6 **e** 1 **f** 5
2 **1** cat **2** ball **3** friend **4** big **5** horse **6** paint
3 **1** ruler **2** catch **3** family **4** throw

Page 59

1 **1** b **2** a **3** d **4** f **5** c **6** e
2 **1** a **2** an **3** She's **4** His **5** she **6** aren't
3 **1** can't **2** Are **3** isn't **4** 'm **5** 's **6** aren't

Page 60

1 **1** are **2** can **3** tall **4** eight **5** isn't
2 **1** no **2** yes **3** no **4** no **5** yes

Page 61

1 **1** sister **2** cat **3** small **4** jump **5** kick **6** scared
2 Children's own answers.
3 Children's own answers.

End-of-year review

Page 112

Audioscript

1 *That's my sister.*
2 *He can kick a ball.*
3 *It isn't big. It's small.*
4 *There are two books.*
5 *They've got big ears.*
6 *He's got short hair. He's happy.*

1 **1** e **2** d **3** c **4** f **5** b **6** a
2 **1** sandpit **2** bike **3** melon **4** wardrobe **5** shoes **6** cake **7** tail **8** lamp
3 **1** lamp **2** grey **3** circus **4** long **5** bedroom **6** like

Page 113

1 **1** in **2** an **3** 's **4** 've **5** hasn't **6** are
2 **1** b **2** e **3** f **4** a **5** d **6** c
3 **1** 've **2** isn't **3** can **4** Are **5** hasn't **6** 's

Page 114

1 **1** yes **2** yes **3** yes **4** no **5** yes
2 **1** isn't **2** long **3** can't **4** has **5** under

Page 115

1 **1** cats **2** grey **3** legs **4** tail **5** run
2 Children's own answers.
3 Children's own answers.

Academy Stars 1

SECOND EDITION

Aspire to excellence!

Academy Stars Second Edition is a highly acclaimed primary course which helps pupils to excel in their learning journey.

Make learning English memorable

The *Graphic Grammar* animations, new *Grammar Booster*, new *Extra Stars* communicative activities, and new readings and listenings collectively lay down solid foundations for pupils' future success in learning English.

Prepare for exam success

Extra Cambridge Young Learners exam activities and a focus on developing learning skills all promote learner autonomy and prepare pupils for success in exams.

Cultivate a sense of active global citizenship

Activities focused on Education for Sustainable Development & Citizenship and Social & Emotional Learning help pupils to become responsible citizens.

Enhanced digital experience

Navio App provides gamified language practice in immersive 3D worlds that encourages students to repeat activities, creating opportunities for better language acquisition.

mee

Digital platform for teachers contains a Classroom Presentation Kit with integrated audio, video and interacative activities, helping to deliver stimulating lessons. All useful files and documents are available at the click of a button.

Please see inside the front cover for the minimum system requirements and other terms and conditions for the digital components of the course.

For Pupils

- Pupil's Book
- Digital Pupil's Book
- Workbook
- Digital Workbook
- Pupil's Resource Centre
- Navio App

For Teachers

- Teacher's Book
- Classroom Presentation Kit with interactive activities, audio, video and animations
- Progress Tracker
- Test Generator
- Teacher's Resource Centre
  - Printable flashcards
  - Printable worksheets
  - Methodology handbook
  - Assessment pack

CEFR and Cambridge English Qualifications mapping

S	1	2	3	4	5	6
PRE A1			A1		A2	Pre B1
STARTERS			MOVERS		FLYERS KEY FOR SCHOOLS	

ADVANCING FUTURES
Education for Sustainable Development and Citizenship

ISBN 978-1-035-10004-0

9 781035 100040

www.macmillanenglish.com/academy-stars-2e